

# **A Grammar of Donno So or Kamma So**

(Dogon language family, Mali)

Jeffrey Heath  
University of Michigan

July 2016

author's email  
[schweinehaxen@hotmail.com](mailto:schweinehaxen@hotmail.com)

color coding

blue ordinary transcriptions for this language  
green underlying and phonetic transcriptions, formulas, other languages, reconstructions

# Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1	Dogon languages .....	1
1.2	Donno So (Kamma So) language .....	1
1.3	Environment .....	6
1.4	Previous and contemporary study of Donno So .....	6
1.4.1	Previous work .....	6
1.4.2	Fieldwork .....	7
1.4.3	Acknowledgements.....	7
<b>2</b>	<b>Sketch.....</b>	<b>8</b>
2.1	Phonology .....	8
2.1.1	Segmental phonology.....	8
2.1.2	Prosody .....	9
2.1.3	Key phonological rules .....	10
2.2	Inflectable verbs .....	10
2.3	Noun phrase (NP) .....	10
2.4	Case-marking and PPs .....	11
2.5	Main clauses and constituent order .....	11
2.6	Relative clauses .....	11
2.7	Interclausal syntax .....	12
<b>3</b>	<b>Phonology .....</b>	<b>13</b>
3.1	General .....	13
3.2	Internal phonological structure of stems and words.....	13
3.2.1	Syllables.....	13
3.2.2	Metrical structure .....	14
3.3	Consonants .....	14
3.3.1	Alveopalatals ( <i>c, j</i> ) .....	15
3.3.2	<i>g</i> -Spirantization ( <i>g</i> → [ɣ]) .....	15
3.3.3	Nasals ( <i>ŋ, n, m</i> ) are distinct before front vowels .....	15
3.3.4	Labial fricative <i>f</i> .....	15
3.3.5	Voiceless stops ( <i>p, t, k</i> ) .....	15
3.3.6	Laryngeals ( <i>h, l̥</i> ) .....	16
3.3.7	Sibilants ( <i>s, ſ, z, ſz</i> ) .....	16
3.3.8	Intervocalic <i>d/z</i> dialectal split .....	16
3.3.9	Nonnasal sonorants ( <i>l, r, w, y</i> ) .....	16
3.3.10	Nasalized sonorants ( <i>r<sup>n</sup>, w<sup>n</sup>, y<sup>n</sup></i> ) absent .....	16
3.3.11	Dialectology of word-final nasals .....	17
3.3.12	Consonant clusters .....	17
3.3.12.1	Word- and morpheme-initial <i>NC</i> clusters .....	17
3.3.12.2	Medial geminated <i>CC</i> clusters .....	17
3.3.12.3	Medial nongeminate <i>CC</i> clusters .....	18
3.3.12.4	Medial triple <i>CCC</i> clusters .....	18

3.3.12.5	Final <i>CC</i> clusters .....	18
3.4	Vowels .....	18
3.4.1	Short and (oral) long vowels .....	19
3.4.2	Nasalized vowels .....	19
3.4.3	Initial vowels .....	20
3.4.4	Stem-final vowels .....	20
3.4.5	ATR harmony and Back/Rounding Harmony .....	20
3.4.6	Diphthongs .....	21
3.4.7	Vocalism of verb-stem alternations .....	21
3.4.8	Vocalic sound symbolism .....	21
3.5	Segmental phonological rules .....	22
3.5.1	Trans-syllabic consonantal processes .....	22
3.5.2	Vocalism of suffixally derived verbs .....	22
3.5.2.1	Suffixal Vowel-Spreading .....	22
3.5.3	Other vocalic rules sensitive to syllabic or metrical structure .....	22
3.5.3.1	Vocalic epenthesis (absent) .....	22
3.5.3.2	Syncope (unproductive) .....	23
3.5.3.3	Apocope (unproductive) .....	23
3.5.3.4	Palatal Coalescence .....	23
3.5.4	Processes affecting individual consonants .....	24
3.5.4.1	Intervocalic <i>I</i> -Deletion .....	24
3.5.4.2	Intervocalic Nasal-Deletion .....	24
3.5.4.3	Intervocalic Tapping ( <i>/d/</i> → <i>r</i> ) .....	24
3.5.4.4	<i>d</i> ~ <i>j</i> alternation .....	25
3.5.4.5	<i>I</i> ~ <i>r</i> alternation .....	25
3.5.4.6	<i>y</i> -Epenthesis .....	25
3.5.4.7	<i>/l/</i> → <i>n</i> after nasalized vowel .....	25
3.5.5	Local consonant cluster processes .....	26
3.5.5.1	Intervocalic alternations of <i>NC</i> with simple nasal .....	26
3.5.5.2	Intervocalic alternation of <i>mm</i> with <i>m</i> .....	26
3.5.5.3	Nasal Assimilation .....	26
3.5.6	Vowel-vowel and vowel-semivowel sequences .....	27
3.5.6.1	Prevocalic V-Raising .....	27
3.5.6.2	<i>VV</i> -Contraction .....	27
3.5.7	Local vowel-consonant interactions .....	28
3.5.7.1	Vowel-Semivowel Assimilation ( <i>/uy/</i> → <i>iy</i> , <i>/iw/</i> → <i>uw</i> ) .....	28
3.5.7.2	Monophthongization ( <i>/iy/</i> → <i>i:</i> , <i>/uw/</i> → <i>u:</i> ) .....	28
3.6	Criticization .....	29
3.7	Tones .....	29
3.7.1	Lexical tone melodies .....	29
3.7.1.1	One H-tone in each stem .....	29
3.7.1.2	Lexical tone melodies of verbs .....	30
3.7.1.3	Lexical tone patterns for unsegmentable noun stems .....	30
3.7.1.4	Lexical tone patterns for adjectives and numerals .....	31
3.7.1.5	Melody or pitch-accent? .....	32
3.7.1.6	Candidates for lexically /L/-toned stems .....	32
3.7.1.7	Tone-Component location for bitonal non-verb stems .....	32
3.7.1.8	Tone-Component location for tritonal non-verb stems .....	33
3.7.2	Grammatical tone patterns .....	34

3.7.2.1	Grammatical tones for verb stems.....	34
3.7.2.2	Grammatical tone overlays for noun stems.....	34
3.7.2.3	Grammatical tone overlays for adjectives and numerals .....	34
3.7.3	Tonal morphophonology.....	35
3.7.3.1	Autosegmental tone association (verbs).....	35
3.7.3.2	Tone polarization (dissimilation) in decimal numerals.....	35
3.7.3.3	Rightward H-Tone Shift from third-person perfectives to particles .....	35
3.7.4	Low-level tone rules .....	36
3.7.4.1	Contour-Tone Mora-Addition .....	36
3.7.4.2	Final High-to-Rising Tone .....	36
3.7.4.3	Contour-Tone Stretching.....	37
3.7.4.4	Stranded-Tone Re-Linking.....	37
3.7.4.5	Leftward Tone-Pushing.....	37
3.8	Intonation contours .....	38
3.8.1	Phrase-final prolongation.....	38
3.8.2	Expressive elements with lexically specified prolongation (→) .....	38
3.8.3	Dying-quail intonational effect :.....	38
3.8.4	Polar interrogative final L-tone.....	39
<b>4</b>	<b>Nominal, pronominal, and adjectival morphology .....</b>	<b>40</b>
4.1	Nouns.....	40
4.1.1	Simple nouns (singular <i>-nv</i> , plural <i>-ŋ</i> and <i>-mbè</i> ) .....	40
4.1.2	Irregular nouns ('man', 'child', 'person').....	41
4.1.3	'So-and-so' ( <i>má:nù</i> ) .....	42
4.1.4	Initial <i>Cv(N)</i> - reduplication in nouns.....	42
4.1.5	Final reduplications in nouns.....	42
4.1.6	Nouns with full-stem iteration .....	42
4.1.6.1	Two-part.....	42
4.1.6.2	Three-part .....	44
4.1.7	Frozen initial <i>a-</i> in nouns .....	45
4.2	Derived nominals.....	45
4.2.1	Characteristic derivative ( <i>-gí-nè</i> ) .....	45
4.2.2	Verbal nouns .....	46
4.2.2.1	Productive verbal noun with suffix <i>-du</i> .....	46
4.2.2.2	Nominalization with suffix <i>-IV</i> .....	47
4.2.2.3	Product-of-action nominals with suffix <i>-ú ~ -ý</i> .....	47
4.2.3	Derivational suffix <i>-e:</i> .....	48
4.2.4	Uncompounded agentives.....	48
4.2.5	Iterated deadjectival abstractives .....	48
4.3	Pronouns .....	49
4.3.1	Basic personal pronouns .....	49
4.3.2	Personal pronouns as complements of postpositions.....	50
4.3.3	Lengthened forms of pronouns .....	50
4.4	Determiners .....	51
4.4.1	Definite <i>=(g)ò</i> (plural <i>=(g)ò-mbè</i> ).....	51
4.4.2	'This/that' (deictic demonstrative pronouns).....	52
4.4.3	Demonstrative adverbs.....	52
4.4.3.1	Deictic and discourse-definite locative adverbs.....	52
4.4.4	Presentatives ('here's ...!') .....	53

4.5	Adjectives .....	53
4.5.1	Inventory of adjectives.....	53
4.5.2	Deverbal adjectives (-ú ~ -ý) .....	56
4.6	Numerals.....	57
4.6.1	Cardinal numerals .....	57
4.6.1.1	‘One’ ( <i>túrù</i> , <i>tí→</i> ), ‘same (one)’, and ‘other’ ( <i>yàgá</i> ) .....	57
4.6.1.2	‘2’ to ‘10’ .....	57
4.6.1.3	Decimal multiples (‘10’, ‘20’, ...) and composites (‘11’, ‘59’, ...).....	57
4.6.1.4	Large numerals (‘100’, ‘1000’, ...) and their composites.....	59
4.6.1.5	Currency .....	59
4.6.1.6	Distributive iteration of numerals .....	59
4.6.2	Ordinal adjectives .....	60
4.6.2.1	‘First’ ( <i>nâ:y</i> , <i>ké:</i> ) and ‘last’ ( <i>dògòndó</i> ) .....	60
4.6.2.2	Other ordinals ( <i>ènné</i> ).....	60
4.6.3	Fractions and portions.....	61
<b>5</b>	<b>Nominal and adjectival compounds .....</b>	<b>62</b>
5.1	Nominal compounds.....	62
5.1.1	Compounds of type [ñ ñ] (no tone change) .....	62
5.1.2	Compounds of type [ñ ñ̄] .....	62
5.1.3	Compounds with nominalized verb and incorporated object .....	63
5.1.3.1	Nominalized object-verb combinations .....	63
5.1.3.2	Nominalized subject-verb with suffix <i>-lìv</i> or <i>-rùy</i> .....	63
5.1.4	Possessive-type compounds [ñ ñ̄] .....	64
5.1.5	Agentive and locational compounds with objects .....	65
5.1.5.1	Agentive compounds of type [ñ õ] .....	65
5.1.5.2	Locational and instrumental compounds (final with -ú ~ -ý, -ý̄) .....	66
5.1.5.3	Other nominalized noun-verb compounds .....	66
5.1.6	Compounds with <i>f</i> ‘child’ and other diminutive compounds .....	67
5.1.7	Compounds with variants of ‘man’ ( <i>àn-ná</i> ) and ‘woman’ ( <i>yà:ná</i> ) .....	70
5.1.8	Compounds with <i>báŋà</i> ‘owner’ .....	70
5.1.9	<i>nâ:</i> (“authentic”, ‘entire’) .....	71
5.1.10	Natural-species X-Y-X compounds .....	71
5.1.10.1	<i>X-nâ:-X</i> compounds .....	71
5.1.10.2	<i>X-Cèm-X</i> compounds .....	72
5.1.11	Instrumental compounds with verbal noun in <i>-du</i> .....	72
5.1.12	Nasal linker between initial and final .....	72
5.1.13	Final nonpossessive <i>-mv</i> on compound finals .....	73
5.1.14	Linker <i>-mù-</i> in ‘shea-butter’ compound.....	73
5.1.15	Phrasal compounds .....	73
5.2	Adjectival compounds .....	74
5.2.1	Bahuvrihi compounds [ñ à] or [ñ nùm].....	74
5.2.1.1	With adjectival compound final [ñ à] (‘Blackbeard’) .....	74
5.2.1.2	With numeral compound final [ñ nùm] (‘three-legged’) .....	74
<b>6</b>	<b>Noun Phrase structure.....</b>	<b>75</b>
6.1	Organization of NP constituents.....	75
6.1.1	Linear order and tonosyntactic bracketing of multi-word NPs.....	75
6.1.2	Headless NPs (absolute function of demonstratives, etc.) .....	79

6.1.3	“Bifurcation” of relative-clause head NP .....	79
6.2	Possessives .....	80
6.2.1	Alienable possession .....	80
6.2.1.1	Nonpronominal alienable possessor .....	80
6.2.1.2	Pronominal alienable possessor .....	81
6.2.1.3	Tone-dropping of modifiers of alienably possessed nouns .....	81
6.2.2	Inalienable possession .....	83
6.2.2.1	Kin and relationship terms .....	83
6.2.2.2	Tone contour of modifiers of an inalienably possessed noun .....	84
6.2.3	Recursive possession .....	84
6.2.4	Possessive <i>mò</i> replacing omitted possessum .....	85
6.3	Core NP (noun plus adjective) .....	85
6.3.1	Noun plus regular adjective .....	85
6.3.2	Adjective <i>gàmbăŋ</i> ‘certain (ones)’ .....	85
6.3.3	Expansions of adjective .....	86
6.3.3.1	Adjective sequences .....	86
6.3.3.2	Adjectival intensifiers .....	87
6.3.3.3	‘Good to eat’ .....	87
6.4	Noun or N-Adj plus numeral .....	87
6.4.1	Regular N-Num and N-Adj-Num sequences .....	87
6.4.2	Adjective-Numeral Inversion (N-Adj-Num to N-Num-Adj) .....	88
6.4.3	<i>gă:w</i> ‘many/much’ .....	88
6.5	NP with determiner .....	89
6.5.1	Prenominal discourse-definite marker absent .....	89
6.5.2	Noun (and modifiers) plus demonstrative .....	89
6.5.3	Noun (and modifiers) plus definite clitic .....	90
6.6	Universal and distributive quantifiers .....	90
6.6.1	‘All’ ( <i>wôy</i> , <i>yà-wôy</i> , <i>fû</i> → ~ <i>pû</i> →, <i>sé:nèŋ</i> ) .....	90
6.6.2	<i>nànâŋ</i> ‘all, everything’ .....	92
6.6.3	Universal and distributive quantifiers with negation .....	93
6.7	Accusative (= <i>ŋ</i> ) .....	93
<b>7</b>	<b>Coordination.....</b>	<b>95</b>
7.1	NP coordination .....	95
7.1.1	NP conjunction [ <i>X lè</i> ] [ <i>Y lè</i> ] ‘X and Y’ .....	95
7.1.1.1	Ordering of coordinands .....	96
7.1.1.2	‘X and Y’ with a modifier or postposition .....	96
7.1.2	“Conjunction” of verbs, VPs, and clauses .....	97
7.1.3	Plural <i>-mbè</i> in lists .....	97
7.2	Disjunction .....	98
7.2.1	‘Or’ ( <i>mà</i> →) .....	98
7.2.2	Clause-level disjunction .....	99
<b>8</b>	<b>Postpositions and adverbials.....</b>	<b>100</b>
8.1	Dative and instrumental .....	100
8.1.1	Dative <i>lè</i> .....	100
8.1.2	Instrumental-comitative <i>lè</i> .....	101
8.1.3	Temporal <i>lè</i> .....	101
8.1.4	<i>lè</i> after locational (‘toward’) .....	102

8.2 Locational postpositions .....	102
8.2.1 Locative ‘in, on’ ( <i>rà: ~ dà:</i> ) .....	102
8.2.2 Locative <i>nì</i> (suffixed <i>-nì</i> ) and <i>nè</i> .....	103
8.2.3 ‘Inside X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> kòlò] rà:</i> ) .....	104
8.2.4 ‘On (the head of) X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> kù:] rà:</i> ) .....	104
8.2.5 ‘Next to, beside X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> bòmbùrù] dà:</i> ) .....	105
8.2.6 ‘In front of’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> gírù] dà:</i> ) .....	105
8.2.7 ‘Behind/ X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> ùnnò-đ] rà:</i> ), ‘after X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> ùnnù] nè</i> ) .....	105
8.2.8 ‘Over/above X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> dà:] rà:</i> ), ‘below/under X’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> jòè] rà:</i> ) .....	106
8.2.9 ‘Between’ ( <i>[[X Y]<sup>L</sup> bìnñò=đ] rà:</i> ) .....	107
8.3 ‘For’ and ‘about’ .....	108
8.3.1 Purposive-causal ‘for’ ( <i>[X lè] jă:</i> ) .....	108
8.3.2 ‘About, concerning’ ( <i>[X<sup>L</sup> tàngjà] nè</i> ) .....	108
8.4 Other adverbs (or equivalents) .....	108
8.4.1 Similarity ( <i>gìnè</i> ‘like’, suffix <i>-njì:</i> ) .....	108
8.4.2 Extent (‘much, ‘a little’) ( <i>èdú→, gă:w, dăy, gă:léy</i> ) .....	109
8.4.3 Specificity .....	110
8.4.3.1 ‘Exactly, truly, specifically’ ( <i>té<sup>n</sup>→</i> ) .....	110
8.4.4 Evaluation .....	111
8.4.4.1 ‘Well’ ( <i>èdú→</i> ) and ‘badly’ .....	111
8.4.4.2 ‘Being well’ ( <i>jâŋ, sê:w</i> ) .....	111
8.4.4.3 ‘Correctly’ ( <i>sá<sup>n</sup>→</i> ) .....	112
8.4.5 Deadjectival and other manner adverbials .....	112
8.4.6 Spatiotemporal adverbials .....	112
8.4.6.1 Temporal adverbs .....	112
8.4.6.2 ‘First(ly)’ ( <i>kě:=gò</i> ) and ‘later’ ( <i>pìnñ-á:-nì</i> ) .....	113
8.4.6.3 Spatial adverbs .....	113
8.4.7 Expressive adverbials (EAs) .....	114
8.4.7.1 List of representative EAs .....	114
8.4.7.2 ‘Straight’ ( <i>těŋ→, těŋ-těŋ</i> ) .....	116
8.4.7.3 ‘Apart’ ( <i>děŋ, děŋ-děŋ</i> ) .....	117
8.4.7.4 Adjectival intensifiers .....	118
8.4.7.5 Deadjectival <i>CýCvŋ-CýCvŋ</i> ‘-ish’ .....	119
8.4.7.6 Deadjectival EA with suffix <i>-ŋ</i> or final <i>(-g)ù:</i> .....	119
8.4.8 Iterated distributive adverbials .....	120
<b>9 Verbal derivation .....</b>	<b>121</b>
9.1 Reversive verbs ( <i>-Iv</i> ) .....	121
9.2 Causative .....	123
9.2.1 Productive causative <i>-mv</i> .....	123
9.2.2 Suffix <i>-gvlv</i> .....	124
9.3 Passive suffix <i>-mv</i> .....	125
9.4 Mediopassive and transitive derivational suffixes .....	125
9.4.1 Mediopassive (reflexive) <i>-e:- ~ -e:- ~ -i:-</i> versus underived transitive .....	126
9.4.2 Mediopassive <i>-e: ~ -e: ~ -i:</i> versus transitive <i>-rv-</i> .....	127
9.4.3 Mediopassive <i>-e: ~ -e: ~ -i:</i> versus transitive <i>-ndv</i> .....	128
9.4.4 Transitive (causative) <i>-ndv</i> versus underived stem .....	129
9.4.5 Transitive <i>-Iv</i> versus unsuffixed stem .....	129
9.4.6 Possible frozen suffix <i>-dv</i> .....	129

9.5	Deadjectival inchoative and factitive verbs.....	130
9.6	Denominal verbs.....	131
9.7	Obscure verb-verb relationships.....	132
<b>10</b>	<b>Verbal inflection.....</b>	<b>133</b>
10.1	Inflection of regular indicative verbs .....	133
10.1.1	AN suffixes or chained auxiliary verbs?.....	133
10.1.2	Overview of AN categories .....	133
10.1.3	Verb stem shapes .....	134
10.1.3.1	<i>Cv:</i> verb stems.....	135
10.1.3.2	<i>Cv:</i> verbs with <i>a/e</i> alternation.....	136
10.1.3.3	<i>Cv:</i> verbs with irregular <i>e/i</i> , <i>e/i</i> , or <i>o/u</i> alternation .....	138
10.1.3.4	<i>CvC</i> verb stems .....	139
10.1.3.5	<i>nCv(:)</i> verb ( <i>ñd-é:-</i> ‘bathe’).....	139
10.1.3.6	Regular bisyllabic stems, E-class .....	139
10.1.3.7	Regular bisyllabic stems, I-class .....	140
10.1.3.8	<i>óbò</i> ‘give’ .....	141
10.1.3.9	Irregular <i>CvIv</i> stems (‘go’, ‘get’, ‘come’, ‘pass’) .....	142
10.1.3.10	<i>já-yèlé</i> ~ <i>jè:lé</i> ‘bring’ .....	142
10.1.3.11	<i>jé-bòló</i> ‘convey, take (away)’ .....	143
10.1.3.12	<i>kán(à)</i> ‘do’ .....	144
10.1.3.13	Trisyllabic stems .....	144
10.1.3.14	Quadrisyllabic stems .....	145
10.2	Positive indicative AN categories .....	146
10.2.1	Perfective positive system (including perfect).....	146
10.2.1.1	Perfective (E-stem or I-stem) .....	146
10.2.1.2	Augmented perfective .....	149
10.2.1.3	Experiential perfect ‘have ever’ (- <i>tíyà wò-</i> ) .....	151
10.2.1.4	Present perfect (- <i>a: wò</i> or - <i>a: sè</i> ) .....	152
10.2.1.5	Recent perfect (- <i>a: dò:</i> ) .....	153
10.2.2	Imperfective positive system .....	153
10.2.2.1	Imperfective (- <i>dè</i> or - <i>jè</i> ) .....	153
10.2.2.2	Augmented imperfective .....	155
10.2.2.3	Progressive-1 ( <i>wò</i> ‘be’ after verb with - <i>w</i> suffix) .....	157
10.2.2.4	Progressive-2 ( <i>wò</i> after unsuffixed verb) .....	158
10.2.2.5	Stative <i>gèlè</i> ‘be holding’ as an alternative progressive auxiliary .....	159
10.2.2.6	Augmented future (3Sg - <i>à</i> , 3Pl - <i>mmò</i> ) .....	159
10.2.2.7	Periphrastic future (- <i>d-à: sè</i> , - <i>j-à: sè</i> ) .....	160
10.2.2.8	Immediate future ‘be about to VP’ (- <i>njá: wò</i> ) .....	161
10.2.3	Negation of indicative verbs .....	161
10.2.3.1	Perfective negative - <i>lí</i> (3Pl - <i>ñ-ní</i> ) .....	161
10.2.3.2	Experiential perfect negative - <i>tà-lí</i> .....	162
10.2.3.3	Present perfect negative (- <i>a: wò-lí</i> ) is marginal .....	163
10.2.3.4	Imperfective negative - <i>èlè</i> (3Pl - <i>ñ-nì</i> ~ - <i>ñ-nì</i> ) .....	163
10.2.3.5	Progressive-1 and -2 negative ( <i>wò-lí</i> ) .....	165
10.2.3.6	Future negative (- <i>ri</i> ~ - <i>di</i> ) .....	165
10.2.3.7	Periphrastic future negative ( <i>sè-lé</i> ) .....	165
10.2.3.8	Immediate future negative .....	166
10.3	Pronominal paradigms for indicative verbs.....	166

10.3.1	Subject pronominal suffixes .....	166
10.4	Stative form of verbs .....	167
10.4.1	Derived stative positive (augmented and unaugmented) .....	167
10.4.2	Stative negative (-Iv, 3Pl -ñ-ní) .....	169
10.5	Temporal clitics and particles.....	170
10.5.1	Past clitic (=bè) .....	170
10.5.1.1	Past progressive-1 (positive and negative).....	170
10.5.1.2	Past progressive-2 (positive and negative).....	171
10.5.1.3	Past future (future-in-past, positive and negative) .....	172
10.5.1.4	Past periphrastic future (positive and negative) .....	172
10.5.1.5	Past immediate future (positive and negative) .....	173
10.5.1.6	Past perfect (positive and negative) .....	173
10.5.1.7	Augmented past counterfactual (positive and negative) .....	174
10.5.1.8	Past experiential perfect (positive and negative).....	174
10.5.1.9	Past stative (positive and negative) .....	175
10.6	Imperatives and hortatives.....	176
10.6.1	Imperatives and prohibitives.....	176
10.6.1.1	Imperative (unsuffixed singular, plural -ij) .....	176
10.6.1.2	<i>hɔn</i> → ~ <i>hɔn</i> → ‘here, take this!’ .....	178
10.6.1.3	Prohibitive (-w or -naw, plural -gí-ij or -naw-gí-ij) .....	178
10.6.2	Hortatives.....	180
10.6.2.1	Hortative (-mo, plural -mv-ij).....	180
10.6.2.2	Hortative negative (-nnì) .....	180
10.6.3	Non-second person imperatives and prohibitives .....	181
10.6.3.1	Positive with third-person agent.....	181
10.6.3.2	Prohibitive with third-person agent.....	181
10.6.3.3	First person agent .....	182
<b>11</b>	<b>Clause, VP, and predicate structure .....</b>	<b>183</b>
11.1	Clausal constituents .....	183
11.1.1	Subjects .....	183
11.1.1.1	Subjects in indicative main clauses .....	183
11.1.1.2	Subjects in relative and complement clauses .....	183
11.1.1.3	Subjects of imperative and hortative verbs .....	183
11.1.1.4	Pseudo-subjects of lexicalized subject-verb combinations .....	184
11.1.2	Simple transitives.....	187
11.1.2.1	Direct objects of simple transitives .....	187
11.1.2.2	<i>kán(à)</i> ‘do’ in collocations.....	188
11.1.2.3	<i>gɛ:</i> ‘say’ in collocations.....	188
11.1.2.4	Lexicalized low-referentiality objects .....	189
11.1.2.5	Forms of cognate nominals associated with verbs .....	189
11.1.2.6	Grammatical status of cognate nominal .....	191
11.1.3	Clauses with additional arguments and adjuncts .....	191
11.1.3.1	Syntax of expressive adverbials (EAs).....	191
11.1.3.2	Spatial adverbial phrases with position and motion verbs .....	191
11.1.3.3	Ditransitives .....	192
11.1.3.4	Valency of causatives.....	193
11.1.4	Verb phrase (VP) .....	194
11.2	‘Be’, ‘become’, ‘have’, and other statives and inchoatives.....	194

11.2.1	‘It is’ clitics .....	194
11.2.1.1	Positive ‘it is’ (=ŋ) .....	194
11.2.1.2	‘It is not’ (=lǎ:-) .....	195
11.2.1.3	‘It is’ clitic in predicates of experienced physical states .....	196
11.2.2	Existential and locative quasi-verbs and particles .....	197
11.2.2.1	Existential particle (yé, yí, yó, yó) .....	197
11.2.2.2	Locational-existential ‘be’ (wò, wò-ló, bè, bè-lé) .....	200
11.2.3	Other stative locational and positional quasi-verbs .....	201
11.2.3.1	<i>tò</i> ~ <i>tò</i> : ‘be in’ and <i>túyy-è:-</i> ‘stay inside’ .....	201
11.2.3.2	Other statives derived from active verbs (‘be on’) .....	202
11.2.4	‘Become (noun)’, ‘happen’, and ‘remain’ predicates .....	202
11.2.4.1	‘Remain’ (wàdá, bě:, pínnè) .....	202
11.2.4.2	‘Become, turn into’ (tájá) .....	202
11.2.4.3	‘Become, turn into’ (bilé) .....	203
11.2.5	Mental and emotional statives .....	203
11.2.5.1	‘Know’ (igù wó), ‘not know’ (inné) .....	203
11.2.5.2	‘Want’ (nàmà), ‘not want’ (nàmà-lá) .....	204
11.2.5.3	‘Like, love’ (ibé), ‘not like’ (ibè-lé) .....	204
11.3	Quotative verb .....	205
11.3.1	‘Say’ (gě:) .....	205
11.4	Adjectival predicates .....	205
11.4.1	Positive adjectival predicates .....	205
11.4.1.1	With wò ‘be’ .....	205
11.4.1.2	With ‘it is’ clitic =ŋ .....	206
11.4.2	Negative adjectival and stative predicates .....	207
11.5	Possessive predicates .....	208
11.5.1	‘Have’ predicates .....	208
11.5.1.1	Positive ‘X have Y’ (sè) .....	208
11.5.1.2	Negative ‘X not have Y’ (sè-lé) .....	208
11.5.2	‘Y belong to X’ predicates .....	209
<b>12</b>	<b>Comparatives.....</b>	<b>210</b>
12.1	Asymmetrical comparatives .....	210
12.1.1	Comparative adjectival predicate .....	211
12.1.1.1	Productive type (‘be redder’, ‘be longer’) .....	211
12.1.1.2	‘Be more (in quantity)’ (gă:) .....	212
12.1.1.3	‘Be more/better’ as predicate (conjugated sigé) .....	212
12.1.1.4	‘Be better’ (conjugated èré) .....	213
12.1.2	Asymmetrical comparatives with adverb and comparandum .....	214
12.1.2.1	VP plus adverbial sigé ‘more’ .....	214
12.1.2.2	VP plus adverbial èré ‘better’ .....	214
12.1.3	‘Surpass’ (gálá) .....	214
12.1.4	Superlative ‘most’, ‘best’ .....	214
12.2	Symmetrical comparatives .....	215
12.2.1	‘Equal’ (kéy-kéy, kēw, bă:, dă) .....	215
<b>13</b>	<b>Focalization and interrogation.....</b>	<b>217</b>
13.1	Focalization .....	217
13.1.1	Basic syntax of focalization .....	217

13.1.1.1	Which constituents can and cannot be focalized? .....	217
13.1.1.2	Linear position and form of focalized constituent .....	217
13.1.2	Verbs in focalized clauses.....	217
13.1.2.1	Propositional truth-value focalization .....	217
13.1.2.2	VP focalization with {HL} verb plus <i>jă</i> :.....	218
13.1.2.3	Augmented verb forms as verb or VP focalizers .....	218
13.1.2.4	Form of verb following a focalized constituent .....	219
13.1.3	Subject focalization.....	219
13.1.4	Object focalization .....	220
13.1.5	Focalization of PP or other adverbial phrase .....	220
13.2	Interrogatives .....	221
13.2.1	Polar (yes/no) interrogatives .....	221
13.2.1.1	Final L-tone .....	221
13.2.1.2	Clause-final <i>mà</i> → .....	221
13.2.1.3	Critic = <i>lò</i> or = <i>là</i> (rhetorical tag question).....	222
13.2.2	Content (WH) interrogatives.....	223
13.2.2.1	'Who?' ( <i>ă</i> ) .....	223
13.2.2.2	'What?' ( <i>injú</i> ~ <i>njí</i> ~ <i>injé</i> : ), 'with what?', 'why?' .....	223
13.2.2.3	'Where?' ( <i>yògó</i> <i>rà</i> : , <i>yògó-ní</i> ) .....	224
13.2.2.4	'When?' ([ <i>wàgùrù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>yògó</i> ] <i>lè</i> , etc.) .....	225
13.2.2.5	'How?' ( <i>yògó-njì</i> :).....	225
13.2.2.6	'How much/many?' ( <i>ànjá</i> ).....	226
13.2.2.7	'Which?' ( <i>yògó</i> ).....	227
13.2.3	Embedded interrogatives .....	227
<b>14</b>	<b>Relativization.....</b>	<b>229</b>
14.1	Basics of relative clauses.....	229
14.2	Internal head NP .....	229
14.2.1	Tone-dropping on final word(s) of head NP in relative clause.....	229
14.2.2	Restrictions on the head of a relative clause .....	231
14.2.3	Conjoined NP as head.....	231
14.2.4	Headless relative clause .....	231
14.2.5	Head noun not usually doubled after relative clause .....	232
14.3	Preparticipial subject pronoun in non-subject relative .....	232
14.4	Verbal participle in relative clause .....	232
14.4.1	Participles of positive perfective-system verbs.....	233
14.4.1.1	Perfective participle (-ú, -ý) and pseudo-participle (-é/-é/-í) .....	233
14.4.1.2	Experiential perfect participle .....	234
14.4.2	Participles of positive imperfective-system verbs .....	235
14.4.2.1	Imperfective participle .....	235
14.4.2.2	Augmented imperfective participle (absent).....	235
14.4.2.3	Progressive participle .....	235
14.4.2.4	Future participle .....	235
14.4.2.5	Periphrastic future participle .....	236
14.4.2.6	Immediate future participle .....	236
14.4.3	Participles of negative perfective-system verbs.....	236
14.4.3.1	Perfective negative participle .....	236
14.4.3.2	Experiential perfect negative participle.....	237
14.4.4	Participles of negative imperfective-system verbs .....	237

14.4.4.1	Imperfective negative participle.....	237
14.4.4.2	Progressive negative participle.....	237
14.4.4.3	Future negative participle.....	237
14.4.4.4	Periphrastic future negative participle.....	238
14.4.4.5	Immediate future negative participle.....	238
14.4.5	Participles of statives .....	238
14.4.5.1	Stative (positive) participle .....	238
14.4.5.2	Stative negative participle .....	239
14.4.6	Participle of past clitic = <i>bè</i> .....	239
14.4.6.1	Participle of positive past forms.....	239
14.4.6.2	Participle of negative past forms.....	239
14.5	Relative clause involving verb- or VP-chain.....	240
14.5.1	True verb chains.....	240
14.5.2	Frozen verb chains ('bring' and 'convey') .....	241
14.6	Late-NP elements that follow the verb (or verbal participle).....	241
14.6.1	Determiners (demonstrative and definite) .....	241
14.6.2	Plural suffix (- <i>mbè</i> ).....	242
14.6.3	Universal quantifier ('all') .....	243
14.7	Grammatical relation of relativized-on NP .....	243
14.7.1	Subject relative clause.....	243
14.7.2	Object relative clause.....	245
14.7.3	Possessor relative clause.....	246
14.7.4	Relativization on the complement of a postposition.....	246
<b>15</b>	<b>Verb (VP) chaining and adverbial clauses .....</b>	<b>248</b>
15.1	Direct chains .....	248
15.1.1	Verbal noun of directly chained verbs .....	249
15.1.1.1	Simple verbs.....	249
15.1.1.2	Verbal nouns of 'bring' and 'convey' .....	249
15.1.2	Arguments of directly chained verbs .....	249
15.1.3	Negation of direct verb chains .....	250
15.1.4	Chains with final <i>bèlé</i> 'get' .....	250
15.1.4.1	'Be able to VP' in imperfective contexts .....	250
15.1.4.2	'Finish VPing' .....	251
15.1.5	Direct chains with final <i>pádà</i> 'leave (behind)' .....	251
15.1.6	Direct chains with final <i>óbò</i> 'give' .....	252
15.1.7	Chains with final <i>té</i> : 'send' .....	252
15.1.8	Loose chains with nonfinal <i>mòl-é:-</i> 'assemble, come together' .....	253
15.1.9	Chains with nonfinal <i>já</i> : 'take (sb)' .....	254
15.1.10	Chains including a motion verb .....	254
15.1.10.1	Direct chain of manner verb and directional verb .....	254
15.1.10.2	Disparaging use of additional motion verb in nonliteral sense .....	254
15.1.10.3	Motion event precedes or follows the other event .....	254
15.1.10.4	Imperative <i>bà</i> as generic motion verb at end of chain.....	255
15.1.11	Verb iterations.....	256
15.2	Temporal adverbial clauses with overt subordinating morpheme.....	256
15.2.1	Adverbial clauses expressing temporal simultaneity or overlap.....	256
15.2.1.1	Noun-headed temporal relative clause ('[at] the time when ...').....	256
15.2.1.2	Simultaneous - <i>njà</i> : on activity verb before motion verb .....	256

15.2.1.3	Imperfective subordinators <i>-ni</i> and <i>-wà</i> .....	257
15.2.1.4	Imperfective <i>-ni</i> or <i>-wà</i> on activity verb plus time-of-day verb.....	258
15.2.1.5	<i>kán(à)</i> ‘do’ plus imperfective clause .....	259
15.2.1.6	Temporal ‘since ...’ clauses and related forms ( <i>nè</i> , <i>bà:y</i> , <i>gò-é mò-nì</i> ) .....	260
15.2.2	Adverbial clauses expressing a chronological sequence .....	261
15.2.2.1	Past anterior <i>-a:</i> and nonpast anterior <i>-a:-ní</i> .....	261
15.2.2.2	Clauses with <i>-a:</i> ‘and then’ (same-subject, anterior, past) .....	261
15.2.2.3	Clauses with <i>-a:</i> ‘and then’ (different-subject, anterior, past).....	263
15.2.2.4	Clauses with <i>-a:-ní</i> ‘and then’ (same-subject, anterior, future).....	263
15.2.2.5	Pseudo-conditional <i>=yò</i> (same- or different-subject, anterior, future) ....	264
15.2.2.6	‘VPed until got tired’ = ‘VPed for a very long time’ .....	265
15.2.2.7	‘No sooner..., than ...’ .....	265
15.2.2.8	<i>kànà</i> (A-stem) after subject proclitic for switch reference .....	265
15.2.3	‘Before ...’ clause ( <i>-mì-ní</i> ) .....	266
15.2.4	<i>gè:</i> as filler in verb chains .....	267
15.3	Spatial and manner adverbials .....	267
15.3.1	Spatial adverbial clause ('where ...') .....	267
15.3.2	Manner adverbial clause .....	268
15.3.2.1	Ordinary manner adverbial ('how ...') .....	268
15.3.2.2	‘As though ...’ clause.....	268
15.3.3	‘From X, until/all the way to) Y’ ( <i>nè</i> , <i>bă:</i> , <i>pâ:</i> ) .....	269
<b>16</b>	<b>Conditional constructions .....</b>	<b>271</b>
16.1	Hypothetical conditional ( <i>=yò ~ =yè ~ =jè</i> ) .....	271
16.1.1	Positive antecedent.....	271
16.1.2	Negative antecedent.....	273
16.2	Alternative ‘if’ particles .....	274
16.2.1	‘Even if ...’ .....	274
16.2.1.1	<i>=yò lò ~ =ye lè, hállù</i> .....	274
16.2.1.2	VERB- <i>yà</i> -VERB .....	274
16.3	Willy-nilly antecedents ('whether X or Y ...') .....	274
16.4	Counterfactual conditional ( <i>bènè</i> ) .....	275
<b>17</b>	<b>Complement and purposive clauses .....</b>	<b>277</b>
17.1	Quotative complements .....	277
17.1.1	Direct versus indirect in quotative complements.....	277
17.1.2	‘Say that ...’ with inflectable ‘say’ verb ( <i>gě:</i> ) .....	277
17.1.3	Quotative clitic .....	279
17.1.3.1	Clause final <i>wà</i> .....	279
17.1.3.2	Quotative subject <i>wà</i> .....	281
17.1.3.3	Pronominal-subject suffixation in quoted clauses.....	281
17.1.4	Jussive complement (reported imperative or hortative).....	282
17.1.4.1	Quoted imperative and prohibitive.....	282
17.1.4.2	Quoted hortative .....	283
17.2	Propositional complements .....	283
17.2.1	Clausal complements of ‘know’ and ‘forget’ .....	284
17.2.1.1	Positive ‘know that ...’ with main-clause complement .....	284
17.2.1.2	‘Not know’ with ‘whether’ complement .....	284
17.2.1.3	‘Forget’ with ‘whether’ complement .....	285

17.2.2 Complements of perception verbs ('see', 'find', 'hear') .....	285
17.2.2.1 Imperfective complement <i>-w̄</i> .....	285
17.2.2.2 Perception verb ('see', 'hear') with main-clause complement .....	286
17.3 Verbal noun complements .....	287
17.3.1 Structure of verbal-noun complement .....	287
17.3.2 'Be afraid to' ( <i>níjpn-è:</i> ) with verbal-noun or other complement .....	287
17.3.3 'Like' ( <i>ibé</i> ) with verbal-noun or {L}-{HL} complement .....	288
17.3.4 'Forget' ( <i>nă:</i> ) with verbal-noun or {L}-{HL} complement .....	289
17.3.5 <i>yàbá</i> 'consent' with verbal-noun complement .....	289
17.4 Tonal {L}-{HL} complements .....	290
17.4.1 'Prevent' ( <i>gà:nd-é:-</i> ) with {L}-{HL} complement .....	290
17.4.2 'Help' ( <i>bárá</i> ) with {L}-{HL} or verbal-noun complement .....	292
17.4.3 'Begin' ( <i>tóló</i> ) with {L}-{HL} or <i>-j̄</i> complement .....	292
17.4.4 Motion verb plus purposive {L}-{HL} complement .....	293
17.4.5 <i>pádà</i> 'abandon' with {L}-{HL} or verbal-noun complement .....	294
17.4.6 'Want' ( <i>námà</i> ) with anterior and relative complements .....	294
17.4.7 Obligational 'must' with invariant perfective verb .....	295
17.5 Purposive and causal clauses .....	296
17.5.1 Purposive clauses with <i>-ni</i> .....	296
17.5.2 Purposive clauses with <i>jă:</i> particle .....	296
17.5.3 Causal ('because') clause .....	297
17.5.4 <i>wó-w̄ nà</i> 'it being the case that' or 'while/when' .....	298
17.6 <i>-nú</i> or <i>-nda</i> plus <i>be:</i> 'remain' ('keep VP-ing') .....	299
<b>18 Anaphora .....</b>	<b>300</b>
18.1 Reflexive .....	300
18.1.1 Reflexive object expressed by mediopassive verb .....	300
18.1.2 Reflexive PP complement expressed by regular pronouns .....	301
18.1.3 Reflexive possessor expressed by regular pronouns .....	301
18.1.4 <i>kû:</i> 'head' in reflexives .....	301
18.1.5 "Sama" reflexives .....	301
18.2 Emphatic pronouns .....	302
18.2.1 'X unassisted' .....	302
18.2.2 'X instead of others' .....	302
18.3 Logophoric and indexing pronouns .....	303
18.3.1 Third person logophoric noun ( <i>ñjémé</i> ) .....	303
18.3.2 Transpersonal logophoric subject (- <i>ŋ̄</i> ) .....	303
18.3.3 Logophorics in stacked quotations .....	304
18.3.4 No subject-to-subject indexing .....	305
18.3.5 <i>bàŋá:</i> 'owner' as 'the (same) fellow' .....	305
18.4 Reciprocal .....	305
18.4.1 Reciprocal use of mediopassive .....	305
18.4.2 Reciprocal object <i>tùmò=j̄</i> .....	306
<b>19 Grammatical pragmatics.....</b>	<b>307</b>
19.1 Topic .....	307
19.1.1 Topic ( <i>gày</i> ) .....	307
19.1.2 'Now' ( <i>nê:</i> ) .....	307
19.1.3 'Also, too' ( <i>lè</i> ) .....	307

19.1.4 ‘Even’ ( <i>hállù</i> ) .....	308
19.2 Preclausal discourse markers .....	309
19.2.1 ‘Well, ...‘ ( <i>háyà</i> ) .....	309
19.2.2 ‘So, ...‘ ( <i>wálà:</i> ) .....	309
19.2.3 ‘But ...‘ ( <i>lă:-Ø=yè ~ lă:-Ø=yò</i> ) .....	309
19.3 Pragmatic adverbs or equivalents .....	310
19.3.1 ‘Again’ ( <i>ígèlè, kígùl-ì-à:, kígùl-ì-à:-ní</i> ) .....	310
19.3.2 ‘More, additionally’ ( <i>yágá</i> ) .....	310
19.4 ‘Only’ particles .....	311
19.4.1 ‘Only’ ( <i>kâ:ŋ, -mɔŋ</i> ) .....	311
19.5 Final emphatics .....	312
19.5.1 Confirmation of interlocutor’s statement .....	312
19.5.2 Clause-final <i>gøy</i> ‘sure’ (emphatic agreement) .....	312
19.5.3 Clause-final <i>dé</i> (admonitive) .....	312
19.6 Backchannel and uptake checks .....	312
19.7 Greetings .....	312
<b>Texts .....</b>	<b>315</b>
Text 01: Hare outsmarts the other animals .....	315
Text 02: Report on trip to Burkina .....	322
Text 03: Where’s the blacksmith when you need him? .....	329
Text 04: Squirrel and hare (tale) .....	335
Text 05: Fulbe herders .....	339
<b>References .....</b>	<b>347</b>
<b>Abbreviations and symbols .....</b>	<b>348</b>
Abbreviations .....	348
Symbols .....	350
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>351</b>
1. prosody .....	351
2. selected morphemes .....	353
3. grammar .....	363

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Dogon languages

The Dogon languages are spoken in an essentially contiguous block in eastern Mali, though this “Dogon country” also includes smaller Fulfulde-speaking communities and overlaps with or abuts a few ethnically cosmopolitan cities (Douentza, Bandiagara, Mopti-Sevare). The family as a whole has traditionally been included in the Niger-Congo phylum, but the relationship has not been demonstrated and not all Africanists are convinced. There are probably around 80 locally named varieties, including some associated with a single village or village cluster. Linguists have roughly grouped them into about 20 “languages,” but the language/dialect boundary is especially difficult in the Dogon case.

An approximate genetic subdivision of Dogon is in (1). Within eastern Dogon, Donno So is especially close to its northern neighbor Tommo So, which is described in McPherson (2013) and Plungian 1998).

- (1)     a. eastern Dogon
  - Toro Tegu
  - Jamsay including Gourou and montane dialects like Perge Tegu
  - Ben Tey, Bankan Tey, and Nanga
  - Tommo So and Donno So
  - Toro So (several varieties)
  - southeastern Dogon
    - Togo Kan, Tene Kan, Tengou Kan, Wolu Kan, Guimri Kan
    - Tomo Kan
  
- b. western Dogon
  - Najamba-Kindigué (Bondu So)
  - Dogul Dom
  - Tiranige (Duleri)
  - Yanda Dom
  - Tebul Ure
  - southwestern Dogon
    - Bunoge, Penange, Ampari, Mombo (Kolu So)

## 1.2 Donno So (Kamma So) language

Kervran glosses “donné” as “concernant les Dogon de la région de Bandiagara jusqu’au Kamma,” and the compound “donno so” (i.e. *dònnò-sɔ:*) as “le parler donne.” In some areas, a different local language name is used, generally based on the name of a village cluster or administrative “secteur.” From the Kamba (~Kamma) village cluster on the road to Sangha west to Bandiagara, the local variety is called *kàmmà-sɔ:*. This is also the usual exonym, i.e. the name of the language in neighboring Dogon languages. Farther north, in the Mentely (*mèrè:*) sector east of Nandoli, the local variety of the same language is called *mèndèlì-sɔ:*.

This language is spoken in a block in the southeastern portion of the Bandiagara plateau. Approximate boundaries, in degrees and decimal fractions of degrees, are from 14.30 to 14.45 north by from 03.39 to 03.69 west. In theory, Bandiagara itself (14.35 x 03.62) is Donno So-speaking. However, it has become a bustling and cosmopolitan administrative center, linked to Mopti-Sevare to the west and Bankass to the east by a paved highway, and its major lingua francas now are the regionally important Fulfulde and Bambara. The core Donno So-speaking block consists of over twenty villages, radiating east, north(east), and south(east) from Bandiagara, but not quite reaching the villages on the edge of the high plateau such as Sangha and Dourou.

The most common surnames, which function somewhat like clan labels, are those in (2). The distribution information is based on an informal survey.

(2)	spelling	pronunciation	main concentrations
Babadji	<i>bàbàjí</i>		Kédiély and Tabitonga (people of caste)
Banou	<i>bànú</i>		Andioubolo, Dioubairou, Dobolo, Korou
Djiguiba	<i>jìgibá</i>		Andaba, Bargoumou, Daga, Kalibombo, Kamba-Bandie, Sassari, Sibi-Sibi, Tegourou, Wedié, Wolo-wolo, Yame, Yelema
Guindo	<i>gìndó</i>		Bodio, Soroli, Tabagolo
Karambé	<i>kàràmmé</i>		Diombolo, Dioubairou, Kalibombo, Kolountanga, Sassari, Sibi-Sibi, Sokolo
Kassogué	<i>kàsògé</i>		Dioubairou, Sassambourou, Tognon, entire Mentély sector
Kélépily	<i>kèlèpílù</i>		Dagabide, Wendegele
Kene	<i>kénè</i>		Bodio, Tabagolo
Nantoumbé	<i>nàntúmmè</i>		Gologoudo, Goulombo, Kamba, Lougourougoumbo, Pouralgu, Tognon
Napo	<i>nàpô:</i>		Kédiély (people of caste)
Ouologuem	<i>wòlògém</i>		Dandoli, Kokolo, Sinde, Sinkarma
Tembeli	<i>témbélí</i>		Dandoli, Pelou
Togo	<i>tógò</i>		Tabagolo (a few)
Yanogué	<i>yánògè</i>		Kédiély (people of caste)
Yébéizé	<i>yèbèzé</i>		Sassambourou, Tabagolo (chiefhood), Tabitonga

Villages known to speak Donno So are listed in (3). An official name (sometimes there are alternate spellings) is followed by a transcribed Donno So name. The coordinates are N. longitude and W. latitude degrees followed by decimal fractions of degrees (not by minutes). The coordinates are from our own GPS readings.

(3)	Andaba	<i>àndá:bà</i>	14.44 x 03.61
	village on high plateau; surname Djiguiba		
	Andioubolo	<i>àpúmbòlò</i>	14.41 x 03.49
	village in two sections on plateau overlooking river to Bandiagara; extensive gardens (onion, tobacco); surname Banou		
	Bargoumou	<i>bàrgùmú</i>	14.27 x 03.56
	village on plateau; dam, gardening; surnames Djiguiba, Kassogué, Nantouummé		
	Bissongo	<i>bì"súñò</i>	14.47 x 03.39
	village on rocky plateau, Mentely area; surname Kassogué		

Bodio	<i>bódò</i>	14.24 x 03.69
	village on plateau at southwestern limit of Donno So zone; surnames Kene, Guindo	
Boundou	<i>bündú</i>	14.47 x 03.38
	village on rocky plateau next to Tabitonga, Mentely area; surname Kassogué	
Daga	<i>dágà</i>	14.24 x 03.57
	village on plateau near southern limit of Donno So zone; surname Djiguiba	
Dagabide	<i>dágàbídè</i>	14.41 x 03.44
	village on plateau, on Bandiagara-Kamma-Sangha road; extensive gardening (onion, tobacco, mango); surname Kélépily	
Dandoli	<i>dànnólì</i>	14.39 x 03.54
	village on plateau overlooking river that flows to Bandiagara, on road Sangha to Bandiagara; extensive gardens (onion, tobacco); surnames Ouologuem and Tembeli	
Diombolo	<i>jòmbòlò</i>	14.30 x 03.60
	village on plateau south of Bandiagara, in two sections; surname Karambé	
a) Diombolo-Do	<i>jòmbòlò-dò:</i>	14.28 x 03.59
	village on rocky elevation; surname Djiguiba	
b) Diomobo-Leye	<i>jòmbòlò-lé:</i>	14.30 x 03.60
	village on plateau on road Bandiagara-Bankass; surnames mainly Karambé and Djiguiba, plus some Napo (leatherworkers)	
Dioubairou	<i>jùbòl</i>	14.32 x 03.54
	village on plateau; extensive onion gardens; surnames Banou (dominant) plus some Djiguiba, Kassogué, and Karambé	
Dobolo	<i>dòbòlò</i>	14.29 x 03.53
	village on plateau; surnames Banou, Kassogué, Saye	
Dologou	<i>dòlògú</i>	14.47 x 03.41
	village on rocky plateau, chef-lieu of Mentély secteur; surname Kassogué; school, gardens	
Domo	<i>dómù</i>	14.44 x 03.46
	village on plateau near Soroli; surname Tapily	
Donno(-Mentély)	<i>dónnò</i>	14.47 x 03.41
	village on rocky plateau next to Dologou, Mentely area; can be called Donno-Mentély to distinguish it from Donno village (part of Ningari, Tommo So-speaking); surname Kassogué	
Doumbogou	<i>dúmbògù</i>	1443 x 03.44
	village on plateau; surname Djiguiba	
Edé	<i>été</i>	14.28 x 03.51
	village on rocky prominence in plateau; surnames Kéné and Yébédié	
Gologou	<i>gólgù</i>	
	village in two parts on plateau on opposite sides of river	
a) Gologou-Leye	<i>gólgù-lé:</i>	14.41 x 03.51
	village on plateau overlooking river that flows to Bandiagara, on road Sangha to Bandiagara; extensive gardens (onion, tobacco); surname Nantouumbé	
b) Gologou-Do	<i>gólgù-dò:</i>	14.40 x 03.51
	village on plateau; surnames Nantouumbé, Kélépily	
Gondodié	<i>góndò</i>	14.46 x 03.40
	village on rocky plateau, Mentely area; surname Kassogué; dam and off-season gardens	

Gouloumbo	<i>gùlùmbó</i>	14.27 x 03.52
	village on an elevation in plateau; dam, gardening; surname Nantouumbé	
Guinéwolo	<i>ginè-wólò</i>	14.36 x 03.48
	village on flat area in plateau; surname Kassogué	
Kalibombo	<i>kàlibòmmó</i>	14.39 x 03.60
	village on road going due north from Bandiagara to Kendie, on the edge of the high plateau overlooking the lower plateau to the south including Bandiagara; they bring wood to Bandiagara for sale; last Donno So-speaking village before Dogulu-dominated area on high plateau; surnames Djiguiba, Karambé	
Kamba (village cluster)	<i>kámmà</i>	
	village cluster on on Bandiagara-Sangha road, close to Sangha; gardening (onion, tobacco, mango); zaban fruits collected from shrubs ( <i>Saba senegalensis</i> ) among boulders and sold	
Kamba-Bandie	<i>kàmmà-bánjèŋ</i>	14.42 x 03.39
	surnames Djiguiba and Nantouumbé	
Kamba-Digilli	<i>kòmmò-dígùlù</i>	14.42 x 03.41
	surname Nantouumbé	
Kédiély	<i>kèjélù</i>	14.47 x 03.41
	village on rocky plateau, Mentely area; people of caste, surnames Yanogué, Babadji, and Napo	
Kokolo	<i>kòkòlò</i>	14.41 x 03.54
	village on plateau overlooking river that flows to Bandiagara, on road Sangha to Bandiagara; extensive gardens (onion, tobacco); surname Ouologuem; one of Kervran's two main informants was from here	
Kolountanga	<i>kòlúntàŋà</i>	14.33 x 03.52
	village on plateau; dam, gardening; culturally traditional (no mosque or church observed); surname Karambé	
Kondoli	<i>kòŋjúlù</i>	14.46 x 03.38
	village on rocky plateau, Mentely area; surname Kassogué	
Korou	<i>kó:lù</i>	14.30 x 03.45
	village on plateau, almost adjacent to Guimri-Kan speaking Dourou Tanga; surname Banou	
Lougourougoumbo	<i>lùgùrù-gùmmó</i>	14.41 x 03.45
	village on plateau overlooking river that flows down to Bandiagara, on road Bandiagara-Kamba-Sangha; extensive gardening (onion, tobacco, mango); surname Nantouumbé	
Moé	<i>mò:</i>	
	pair of villages (upper and lower) on rocky plateau, Mentely area	
a) Moé-Da (Upper)	<i>mò:-dá:</i>	14.48 x 03.42
	village on rocky plateau; surnames Kassogué and Fofana (Dogon), Babadji (leatherworker caste)	
b) Moé-Joye (Lower)	<i>mò:-jóy</i>	14.48 x 03.42
	village on rocky plateau; surname Kassogué	
Molou	<i>mó:lù</i>	14.46 x 03.44
	village on rocky plateau, Mentely area; surname Kassogué; school	
Pelou	<i>pè:lú</i>	14.34 x 03.44
	village on elevation in rocky plateau not far from cliffs at Douro; dam, gardens; one of Kervran's two main informants was from here; surname Tembélé	

Pouralgu	<i>púrɔlù</i>	14.38 x 03.54
	village on rocky plateau; dam, gardening; surnames Nantuumbé, Djiguiba, Sagara	
Sassambourou	<i>sàmbúrù</i>	14.30 x 03.49
	village on plateau; gardens (onions); surnames Yébédié and Kassogué	
Sassadi	<i>sàsàrí</i>	14.31 x 03.57
	village on plateau; dam, gardening; surnames Djiguiba, Karambé	
Sibi-Sibi	<i>sìbì-sìbì</i>	14.33 x 03.55
	village on rocky elevation on plateau; extensive gardens (onions, some chili pepper); surnames Djiguiba, Karambé	
Sinde	<i>séndè</i>	14.42 x 03.42
	village on plateau, on road Sangha to Bandiagara; farming and herding; gardening (onion, tobacco, mango); zaban fruits collected from shrubs ( <i>Saba senegalensis</i> ) among boulders and sold; surname Ouologuem	
Sinkarma	<i>sìŋkánùmò</i>	14.37 x 03.57
	village on plateau overlooking river that flows to Bandiagara, on road Bandiagara-Kamma-Sangha; gardens (onion, tobacco); surname Ouologuem	
Sokolo	<i>sóglò</i>	14.32 x 03.57
	village on plateau; surnames Karambé and Yébédié	
Soroli	<i>sóllù</i>	14.44 x 03.49
	village on rocky elevation in plateau near Bandiagara-Ningari road; surnames Guindo, Tapily, Kélémily, Kassogué	
Tabagolo	<i>tàbágòlò</i>	14.37 x 03.66
	village in low plateau; surnames Yébédié (they hold the chieftaincy), Togo, Nantuumbé, Kassogué, Kéné, Guindo	
Tabitonga	<i>tàbitóngò</i>	14.47 x 03.38
	village on rocky plateau, Mentely area; surnames Kassogué and Yebi-Isse; school	
Tegourou	<i>tégùrù</i>	14.43 x 03.61
	village on plateau near southwestern limit of Donno So zone; surnames Djiguiba and others	
Tognon (Tonniome)	<i>tójòŋ</i>	14.36 x 03.57
	village on plateau on a rocky shelf; gardening; surnames Kassogué and Nantuumbé	
Wedié	<i>wédè</i>	14.36 x 03.47
	village on plateau; surname Djiguiba	
Wendeguélé (Wendegele)	<i>wèndègélè</i>	14.36 x 03.37
	village on plateau in rocky area; originally split off from Tagabide; surname Kélémily	
Wolo-Wolo, Ouolo-Ouolo	<i>wòlò-wòlò</i>	14.33 x 03.51
	village on plateau ; surname Djiguiba	
Yamé	<i>yámè</i>	14.34 x 03.49
	village on plateau; surname Djiguiba	
Yelema	<i>gìnè-yàlèmò</i>	14.42 x 03.45
	small village on small rocky elevation across the road from Lougouroucoumbou; extensive gardening (onion, tobacco); surname Djiguiba	

The Donno So-speaking area is sufficiently large and densely populated that many villagers do not speak a second Dogon language, though they manage simple communication with others with each speaking their own language. Villages on the periphery of the Donno zone

are in contact with another language: Dogul Dom to the northwest (e.g. for Kalibombo and Soroli), Tommo So to the north (e.g. for Nandoli), Toro So varieties near the top of the cliffs to the northeast (e.g. for Kamba), and Tengou Kan (including Guimiri Kan) near the edge of the plateau at the cliffs to the southeast (for e.g. Korou and Konsogoudo).

In spite of the fact that Donno So (eastern) and neighboring Dogul Dom (western) are on opposite sides of the major internal genetic split in Dogon languages, they share many features, especially in tonology.

Aside from French which is learned by those who complete basic schooling, the ambient non-Dogon languages are Fulfulde and Bambara. Fulfulde is widely used in Bandiagara, and there are Fulbe herders around Doucombo just west of Bandiagara, but there appear to be few Fulbe living in the main Donno area, much of which is on terrain that doesn't lend itself well to cattle herding. Bambara is increasingly important in Bandiagara, since many southerners who work or visit there speak no other local language. Bambara is also learned by the many young Dogon who migrate seasonally to southern Mali for work during the dry season.

### 1.3 Environment

The Donno area is part of the Bandiagara plateau and it does not quite reach the cliffs that go down from the plateau to the sandy plains to the east and south. The terrain is irregular and somewhat rocky in many places. A number of rivers, swollen in the rainy season (especially July to September) and completely dry by the middle of the dry season, converge on Bandiagara from the east. Several of the Donno villages straddle these rivers. *Combretum glutinosum* dominates the lightly wooded savanna except in depressions and riversides.

The grain staple is pearl millet (*Pennisetum glaucum*), followed by sorghum and a little maize. These are grown in the rainy season with harvests around late October. Other rainy-season crops are fonio (*Digitaria exilis*), peanut, groundnut (*Vigna subterranea*), cowpea (*Vigna unguiculata*), and roselle (*Hibiscus sabdariffa*), along with a little sesame. Rainy-season agriculture is supplemented by small-scale herding (sheep, goat, cattle).

Gardens along the rivers, or in other spots where irrigation is possible, produce off-season cash crops, primaril onion. Others are garlic, tobacco, chili pepper, European and African eggplant, and salad vegetables such as lettuce and carrots. Mango is the main planted fruit tree, followed by tamarind, guava, banana, and papaya. Wild fruits that can be collected for sale include zaban (*Saba senegalensis*), karité (*Vitellaria paradoxa*), and wild grape (*Lannea microcarpa*). Cash crops and fruits are generally sold in the markets in Bandiagara (Monday and Friday) or Sangha (every fifth day).

### 1.4 Previous and contemporary study of Donno So

#### 1.4.1 Previous work

The major previous work on Donno So was carried out by French missionary Marcel Kervran in collaboration with André Prost. It was based on work with one speaker each from Pelou and Kokolo villages.

The second edition of Kervran's *Dictionnaire dogon - français, Donno So, Région de Bandiagara* was published in 1993, eleven years after the first edition (1982). This document of 643 pages contains a wealth of information about Donno So lexicon and culture.

Kervran and Prost had teamed up to produce *Les parlers dogon, 1: Donno so*, in 1969. Kervran produced a revision *Un parler dogon, le Donno So: Notes de grammaire* in 1986. In spite of its modest title this is a substantial work of 188 pages, with much information about segmental phonology, morphology, and basic phrasal syntax.

Donno So data occur in various papers by Christopher Culy and collaborators on Dogon morphosyntax (Culy 1994a, 1994b, 1995; Culy, Kodio & Togo 1994; Culy & Fagan 2002)

My practice, based on past experiences, has been to turn to previous literature during the middle of my own fieldwork rather than beforehand. This allows me to first form my own views about grammatical topics, and then use the prior literature as a check and for dialectal elaboration.

#### 1.4.2 Fieldwork

I and my junior colleagues have been working on Dogon languages since 2004 when I began work on Jamsay. Donno So was targeted rather late in the overall project, which initially focused on the more northerly languages including Jamsay, Toro Tegu, Ben Tey, and Nanga and has slowly worked south.

The first project member to tackle Donno So was Samantha Farquharson, then an undergraduate at University of North Carolina. When she came in 2012, we had relocated to a base in Bobo Dioulasso, Burkina Faso, because of fighting in northern Mali. A Donno So informant was brought to Bobo and two months of work was done. However, Farquharson did not return for subsequent fieldwork, and subsequent project recruits have done fieldwork on Burkina languages rather than Dogon. I therefore took over the Donno So part of the Dogon project. I began working with an informant from Wendegele village in June 2014 and continued with him into August of that year. I made a short trip to the village with him, during which I went over flora-fauna vocabulary with a “committee” of men of all ages in the public square, and recorded a few stories and interview-type texts, some of which appear at the end of this grammar.

#### 1.4.3 Acknowledgements

The overall project on Dogon languages began with grant PA-50643-04 (2004-06) from the National Endowment for the Humanities (NEH) for solo fieldwork by me primarily on Jamsay. Brief survey work during that project led to the idea of a comparative Dogon linguistic project. Its three phases have been funded by The National Science Foundation, Documenting Endangered Languages program: grants BCS-0537435 (2006-09), BCS-0853364 (2009-13), and BCS-1263150 (2013-17).

My fieldwork on Donno So was carried out as part of the third phrase.

## 2 Sketch

Like most Dogon languages, Donno So (DS) is verb-final (SOV). Verbs are marked suffixally for aspect, negation, and pronominal-subject (agreement) category. NPs (“DPs”) consist of a noun followed by its modifiers, except that nonpronominal (and some pronominal) possessors precede the noun, as in Poss-N-Adj-Num-Dem. There is no case-marking for subject NPs, while animate object NPs and especially pronouns are marked accusative. A simple SOV sentence is in (4a), and an N-Adj-Dem noun phrase is in (4b). The bracketing and superscripts in (4a) are tonosyntactic, see §2.1.2 below.

- (4) a. *ŋà:-ná=gò      pédu=ŷ      èbè-lí-∅*  
woman-Sg=Def      sheep=Acc      buy-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
‘The woman didn’t buy (a/the) sheep-Sg.’
- b. *[pèdu      jèm]<sup>L</sup>      ŋgó*  
[sheep      black]<sup>L</sup>      Prox  
‘this black sheep’

Focusing on issues where Dogon languages differ among themselves, this chapter presents a few highlights, in all cases adumbrating more detailed treatment later.

### 2.1 Phonology

#### 2.1.1 Segmental phonology

DS has relatively conservative consonantism (in the context of comparative Dogon). Stops and (medial) nasal-stop *NC* clusters are generally well-preserved. In the dialect treated here, intervocalic *d* is sporadically tapped to *r*, but phonemic merger of the two has not occurred. In the dialects emphasized by K&P, intervocalic \**d* has shifted to “z.” There are no phonemic nasalized sonorants {*w<sup>n</sup> y<sup>n</sup> r<sup>m</sup>*}.

There is some attrition and merger of word-final sonorants, especially nasals, though not to the extent seen in e.g. Togo Kan. In the focal dialect, this attrition has led to partial neutralization of the oppositions between 1Sg *-ŋ* (\*-m), 1Pl *-ŋ* ~ *-yŋ* (\*-ŋ), both atonal, and L-toned 2Pl *-ŋ̊* ~ *-yŋ̊* (\*-ŋ̊).

Vowels show the seven vowel qualities usual for Dogon. Vowel length is mainly distinguished in word-initial syllables, but there are some word-final long vowels as well. Due to contractions of original \**Cv-* reduplications in verbal morphology, vowel-lengthening is now a grammatically meaningful ablaut-like morphophonemic process in DS verbal morphology. For this language I use the term “augmented” to include both overt *Cv-* reduplication and first-syllable vowel lengthening due to contraction of \**Cv-* reduplication; the two are in complementary distribution.

+ATR {*e o*} and -ATR {*e o*} constitute the polar harmonic sets and do not ordinarily co-occur within noncompound stems. High vowels {*i u*} are extra-harmonic and may co-occur in a stem with either set. Low vowel *a* is associated with -ATR vowels in verbal derivation

(mediopassive allomorphs). There is also a tendency toward back/roundness harmony, seen especially in forward spreading of back/rounding values into suffixes, but this process is usually not categorical.

### 2.1.2 Prosody

DS is particularly interesting within Dogon because it lends itself to a pitch-accent model for lexical and in most cases word-level (post-phonology) tones. In particular, it lacks *C<sup>H</sup>C<sup>V</sup>* and other stem- and word-forms with adjacent H-toned syllables. It shares this accentual pattern with Dogul Dom. The two languages belong to different genetic divisions (eastern versus western), but are adjacent and have considerable intermarriage.

Like several other Dogon languages, DS does not allow lexically /L/-toned stems (nouns, verbs, adjectives, numerals). Verbs are lexically /LH/ or /HL/. The choice is preordained for obstruent-initial verbs, lexical for other verbs. Nouns and other non-verb stems allow the H-tone to occur in various positions: the melodies /HL/, /LHL/, and /LH/ are well-attested. There are no /HLH/ stems (leaving compounds aside). This can be summarized as an underlying accentual system (one accented syllable per stem). However, the lexical melody is regularly overridden by stem-, word- or phrase-level grammatical tone overlays (tonomorphological and tonosyntactic), represented in curly brackets, with {L} the most general overlay (I often call it **tone-dropping**). Because of the constraint against lexical /L/, the {L} overlay is always audible.

NP-internal tonosyntax fits the predominant Dogon pattern, being strongly associated with reference restriction. {L} is controlled both by postnominal modifiers (adjectives, demonstratives, relative clauses) and by pronominal possessors. A superscripted <sup>L</sup> indexes tone-dropping, and is placed on the left or right edge of the affected target domain, “pointing” to the relevant controller. In (4b) above, the proximal demonstrative controls {L} on the preceding N-Adj combination. As usual, a controller targets the lexical head (the noun) and any intervening words. Tonosyntactic conflicts can arise in Poss-N-Mod combinations, where Mod is an adjective, demonstrative, or relative clause, but they are less troublesome in DS than in other Dogon languages where possessors control {HL} rather than {L} on possessed nouns. In NPs with two or more controllers, some of the outputs can be generated simply by allowing the highest controller to operate, but some combinations have quirky noncompositional constructional tonosyntactic patterns. For example, adding a definite clitic (not itself a controller) to Poss <sup>L</sup>[N Num] produces Poss [N Num]<sup>L+H=Def</sup>, with an {L}+H overlay that is only present in certain combinations. Schematic arrays of NP-types are in §6.1.1.

Grammaticalized intonational effects are less conspicuous in DS than in some other Dogon languages (Jamsay, Ben Tey, Nanga). NP conjunction involves a postposition-like particle attached to both conjuncts (*[X lè] [Y lè]* ‘X and Y’), rather than being expressed just by intonational effects, but the particle (particularly its first occurrence) may be prolonged (*[X lè→]*). An analogue of Jamsay “dying-quail” terminal intonational effect (prolongation plus pitch decline) is found in parallelistic willy-nilly conditional antecedents (§16.3).

### 2.1.3 Key phonological rules

There are a few rather minor consonantal alternations, mostly unproductive and limited to derivational verb morphology. There is no nasalization-spreading process of the Jamsay type.

VV-Contraction applies in most cases where two vowels come together within a word (§3.5.6.2). However, some unusual diphthongs like œ occur in perfective verbs, and sequences like *-i-à:* and *-i-èlè* with no clear epenthetic semivowel occur in inflected forms of mediopassive verbs.

## 2.2 Inflectable verbs

DS has suffixally derived reversives ('un-tie') and causatives ('cause to jump') of the standard Dogon type. The most distinctive derivational phenomenon in DS verbs is the extremely productive "mediopassive" in *-e:* ~ *-ε:* alternating with *-i:*. It is used not only in the fashion of cognate mediopassives in the other Dogon languages, but also as a way to express reflexive-object predicates and one way to express reciprocals (§9.4, §18.1.1, §18.4.1).

Active verbs are inflected suffixally for aspect and negation. The core of the inflectional system is [ $\pm$ perfective] crossed with [ $\pm$ negative], constituting four subsystems whose primary suffixes are **aspect-negation** (AN) portmanteaus. A sample paradigm is (5).

- (5) Four key inflected forms of *jɔbɔ* 'run'

	positive	negative
perfective	<i>jɔb-è</i>	<i>jɔbɔ-lí</i>
imperfective	<i>jɔbɔ-dè</i>	<i>jɔbé-èlè</i>

Suffixal inflections are complemented by various periphrastic constructions including auxiliaries 'be' and 'have'. The deictic basis for both the suffixal and periphrastic constructions can be shifted from the time of speaking into the past by means of a conjugatable past clitic or auxiliary *bè*.

Some active verbs, notably those denoting stance ('sit', 'lie down'), also have derived stative forms ('be sitting/seated', 'be lying down/prone') that do not make perfectivity distinctions. There are also several defective stative-only quasi-verbs ('be', 'have', 'be in', 'know', 'want', 'like') that do not have aspectually-marked active counterparts. Derived statives and stative quasi-verbs share a distinctive negation with suffixed or cliticized *Iv* with vowel quality often spread from the stem.

Deontic modals are imperative and hortative ('let's!') and their negations.

## 2.3 Noun phrase (NP)

Excluding possessors, plural *-mbè*, and relative clauses, the basic order is N-Adj-Num-Det-'all'-DF, where Det[erminer] is demonstrative or definite and DF is discourse-functional particle ('also', Topic, etc.). As mentioned in §2.1.2 above, tonosyntactic patterns are pervasive within multi-word NPs; see §6.1.1 for details.

Nonpronominal possessors are pronominal. Pronominal possessors are usually postnominal, in the slot between numeral and determiner, but especially with kin terms they

may be prenominal. Most human nouns other than kin terms take suffixes **-nv** (singular) or **-ŋ** (plural). There is also a more mobile plural suffix **-mbè** that may follow adjectives.

## 2.4 Case-marking and PPs

Direct objects, and “indirect” objects of ditransitives like ‘give’, have a postposition-like accusative clitic **=ŋ** that occurs at the end of the NP. It is limited to animates and is most systematic with pronouns and with definite human NPs. There is no case-marking of subjects, except insofar as they trigger suffixal agreement on predicates.

There are several postpositions that combine with NPs to create PPs (locative, instrumental, dative, etc.). Thus **àndɔ́=ð** ‘the village’, locative **àndɔ́=ð rà:** ‘in/to/from the village’.

## 2.5 Main clauses and constituent order

As indicated at the beginning of this chapter, DS is an SOV language. More precisely, it is S-Adv-O-V<sub>subj</sub>-Z, where Adv means a setting adverbial like ‘yesterday’, V<sub>subj</sub> means a verb with subject agreement, and Z is either an emphatic particle or a subordinator such as clitic **=yo** ‘if’. An example of S-Adv-O-V<sub>subj</sub>-Z is (6a). Any other adverbials or additional objects are smuggled in before or after the object (O) (6b-c). In some high-frequency subject-verb collocations, the pseudo-subject stays close to the verb (following setting adverbials) and in general has limited subject properties (6d). A pseudo-subject may even co-occur with a distinct true subject (§11.1.1.4).

- (6) a. **sé:dù yògó pédð=ð=ŋ sèm-è-∅=yô:**  
 S tomorrow sheep=Def=Acc slaughter-Pfv-3SgSbj;if  
 ‘if Seydou slaughters the sheep-Sg tomorrow’
- b. **sé:dù [wó <sup>L</sup>bà: =ŋ] kè:lé ób-ì-∅**  
 S [3SgPoss <sup>L</sup>father=Acc] money give-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Seydou gave the money to his father.’
- c. **sé:dù mùnjù-mù-ně: [tá:sð=ð rà:] künd-ì-∅**  
 S shea.tree-oil [bowl=Def Loc] put-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Seydou put the shea-butter in the bowl.’
- d. **yâ: nǎŋ númb-è-∅**  
 yesterday sun fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Yesterday the sun rose.’

## 2.6 Relative clauses

In a DS relative clause, the core of the head NP (maximally Poss-N-Adj-Num) is internal to the relative clause. If it is the subject of the relative-clause verb, it may (but need not) follow a setting adverbial. The internal head NP, whatever its grammatical function in the relative, is tone-dropped, e.g. **i:<sup>L</sup>** from **î:** ‘child’ in (7a-b). Late-NP elements such as determiners

(definite, demonstrative) and ‘all’ follow the verb, which takes noun-like participial (Ppl) form.

- (7) a. *[yògó i:<sup>L</sup> yè-j-â: sé:=gɔ]*  
           [tomorrow child<sup>L</sup> come-Ipfv-PastAnt have.Ppl=Def]  
           [[yògɔ́ rà:] wɔ-∅]  
           [[which? Loc] be-3SgSbj]  
           ‘Where is the child who will come tomorrow?’
- b. *[yâ: i:<sup>L</sup> yèl-é=gɔ]*  
           [yesterday child<sup>L</sup> come-Pfv.Ppl=Def]  
           [[yògɔ́ rà:] wɔ-∅]  
           [[which? Loc] be-3SgSbj]  
           ‘Where is the child who came yesterday?’

Full details are in chapter 14.

## 2.7 Interclausal syntax

Verb-chaining takes different forms depending on whether the overall event is conceptualized as already completed or future. This applies both to direct chains, where (in the future subtype) the nonfinal verb appears in its chaining form with no other subordinator, and to loose chains, which do have an overt subordinator. DS has analogues to the pseudo-conditional construction also found in some other Dogon languages, where the ‘if’ subordinator is used systematically in the nonfinal verb in a same-subject future-time chain where the two events are chronologically sequenced (§15.2.2.5). The pseudo-conditional is just one of four basic constructions for event sequences, based on a same/different subject division combined with completed versus future time reference. A distinct set of basically imperfective subordinators are used when the two events overlapped.

There are two ways to convert a clause into a nominalized subordinated clause comparable to an English infinitival complement. One is a verbal noun with nonsubject complements. The other is a tonally expressed pattern {L}{HL} with a falling-tone overlay on the subordinated verb following an {L}-toned object (or pro forma cognate nominal). The two types are partially interchangeable (§17.3-4).

## 3 Phonology

### 3.1 General

This chapter begins with brief coverage of syllabic structure (§3.2), then reviews consonants, consonant clusters, and vowels (§3.3-4). Phonological processes are in §3.5 and cliticization in §3.6. Tonology is covered in §3.7 followed by “intonation” in §3.8.

NP tonosyntax is deferred to chapter 6, beginning in §6.1.1.

### 3.2 Internal phonological structure of stems and words

#### 3.2.1 Syllables

Using “L” for a variable sonorant, attested shapes of monosyllabic words are *Cv* (allowed for particles and quasi-verbs), *Cv:*, *CvL*, and *Cv:L*. The initial *C* position may be vacant, as in *î*: ‘child’. In verbs, final *L* is a suffix like 1Sg *-ŋ*.

The same set of syllabic shapes can occur in final and nonfinal syllables of nonmonosyllabic words.

*Cv:* is the minimal shape for a regular verb stem (I have no examples of *v:*, probably an accidental gap). *Cv:* and *CvL* with the initial *C* optional are minimal shapes for nouns and other non-verb stems. Examples are *ɔ:* ‘well (for water)’, *ã:* ‘who?’, *yɔ:w* ‘nasty’, *mă:y* ‘dry’, and *gēŋ* ‘black’.

Superheavy *Cv:L* is the most marked syllable type. It is very rare in unsegmentable stems, but I can cite the numeral *nă:y* ‘4’. *Cv:L* can also be created by combining a *Cv:* syllable with a suffix or clitic. It can also be created by a vowel-lengthening process in augmented verbs that have contracted an original \**Cv-* reduplication. Examples are in (8). In e.g. *pà:-ñ-ní* the tonal marking on the medial nasal is optional in my transcriptions when it has the same tone as the preceding vowel.

- (8) a. 3Pl negative *-ñ-ní* (perfective) and *-n-ní* (imperfective)

<i>pà:-ñ-ní</i>	‘they didn’t eat’
<i>pá:-ñ-ní</i>	‘they don’t eat’
<i>gò:-ñ-ní</i>	‘they didn’t go out’
<i>gò:-ñ-ní</i>	‘they don’t go out’

- b. *CvCCv* verbs subject to initial-syllable vowel-lengthening

<i>gè:ndé-dè-ñ</i>	‘I will look’ (lengthened < <i>gèndé-dè-ñ</i> ‘I look’)
--------------------	---

- c. *=ŋ* clitic (accusative or ‘it is’)

<i>í:=ñ</i>	‘child’ (accusative) (< <i>î</i> )
<i>í:=ñ</i>	‘it’s a child’
<i>pà:dé:=ñ</i>	‘it’s bad’

Monosyllabic perfectives like *nè-è-íj* [nè(:)íj] ‘I ate’, and monosyllabic plural-addressee imperatives like *ná:-ñ* [ná(:)ñ] ‘eat!-2Pl’, can also be mentioned, but vowel length is not always clearly articulated in these forms. The same is true of mediopassives: *dàjn-é:-ñ* [dàjn:é(:)ñ] ‘sit!-2Pl’.

### 3.2.2 Metrical structure

The organization of multisyllabic words into metrical subdivisions is not well-developed in DS. However, there are some attrition processes that apply to the middle syllable in *CvCvCv*, suggesting that this is a metrically weak position in some morphological patterns.

Segmental alternations such as *pegere* versus *pegiri* or *peguru* for the verb ‘winnow by shaking’ are our starting point. The former full form occurs in perfective negative *pègèrè-ñ* and imperfective positive *pégèrè-dè*. The latter reduced form is found in perfective positive *pégir-ì* and chaining form *pégùr-ù*. The final *-i* and *-u* in the latter are endings that also occur in I-class bisyllabics, as in *yàbá* ‘accept’, perfective *yáb-ì*, chaining form *yàb-ú*. If we recognize /*pégér-i*/ and /*pégér-ù*/ as pre-surface representations, we need to account for the raising of medial /e/ to *i* or *u*. We could think of this either as assimilation to the word-final high vowel, or as lenition in a metrically weak environment. (The medial vowels in these forms do sound brief to me.)

We do not, however, find extensive syncope of the sort we would expect if this medial position were fatally weak metrically. See §3.5.3.2 for discussion of a few minor cases of syncope in verbal morphology.

### 3.3 Consonants

The dialect described here (village of Wendegele) has the consonants in (9). (Double) parentheses indicate (doubly) marginal status, i.e. restriction to unintegrated loanwords, onomatopoeias, and the like.

(9) Consonants

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
labial	<i>p</i>	<i>b</i>	<i>m</i>	<i>(f)</i>	<i>((v))</i>			<i>w</i>	
alveolar	<i>t</i>	<i>d</i>	<i>n</i>	<i>s</i>	<i>(z)</i>	<i>l</i>	<i>r</i>		
alveopalatal	<i>(c)</i>	<i>j</i>	<i>n̪</i>	<i>((š))</i>	<i>((ž))</i>			<i>y</i>	
velar	<i>k</i>	<i>g</i>	<i>ŋ</i>						
laryngeal						<i>(h)</i>	<i>((?))</i>		

*c* represents IPA [tʃ], *j* is [dʒ], *š* is [ʃ], *y* is [j], *r* is tap [ɾ]

key to columns: 1. aspirated voiceless stops (*c* is affricated); 2. voiced stops; 3. nasals, 4. voiceless fricatives (including sibilants); 5. voiced fricatives (including sibilants); 6. laterals; 7. nonnasal sonorants (approximants and tap); 8-9. laryngeals

For *z* in some DS dialects corresponding to intervocalic *d* in the dialect described here, see §3.3.8 below.

Because **v** as voiced labial fricative is virtually nonexistent, I use “v” as a vowel variable in formulae like **CvCV**. The lower-case permits tone markings which are difficult typographically for capital **V**.

Consonants generally occur initially and medially in stems. All verb stems are V-final, though **kán(à)** ‘do’ and a few **CvV** verbs have **CvC-** shape before some inflectional suffixes. At word-level including suffixes, verbs may (and often do) end in a velar nasal **ŋ** or **w** (pronominal-subject suffixes). Noun, adjective, and numeral stems generally end in vowels. Less often they end in a semivowel {**w** **y**} or velar nasal **ŋ**, e.g. **jěŋ** ‘agama lizard’, **kēy** ‘shrub sp. (*Strophanthus*)’, **gòŋěy** ‘elephant’, **kìmēŋ** ‘porcupine’ **yōw** ‘nasty’, **măy** ‘dry’, **jāŋ** ‘difficult’, **nă:y** ‘4’. In my assistant’s dialect, nearly all original \***m** have become **ŋ**, with the exception of **jím** ‘disease, malady’, cf. verb **jímé** ‘be sick’. At word-level, most human nouns other than kin terms can end in plural suffix **-ŋ** after stem-final vowel. Dialectally, **m** and reportedly **n** also occur word-finally (1Sg **-m**, 1Pl and 2Pl **-ŋ**).

### 3.3.1 Alveopalatals (**c**, **j**)

These are affricate-like stops. Voiceless **c** is a marginal consonant. Voiced **j** is a well-established consonant before all vowel qualities, as in **jă:** ‘take (sb)’.

**g** does not palatalize to **j** before front vowels, so the two are phonemically distinct in this position: **g** in **gě:n** ‘steal’, **gìné** ‘house’, versus **j** in **jimbé** ‘pull’, **ùnj-é:-** ‘lie down’.

### 3.3.2 **g**-Spirantization (**g**→[**ɣ**])

Subphonemic phonetic spirantization of **g** to fricative [**ɣ**] is observed between two **a** or **ɔ** vowels. For example, the verb ‘catch’ has unspirantized **g** in perfective **ág-i**, but the spirantized allophone in imperfective **ága-dè**.

### 3.3.3 Nasals (**ŋ**, **n**, **n**) are distinct before front vowels

**n**, **ŋ**, and **n** are distinguishable before front vowels as well as other vowels. Examples with **i** are **dàŋn-í-èlə** ‘does not sit’, **táŋ-i** ‘became (sth)’, and **nìŋé** ‘be afraid’.

### 3.3.4 Labial fricative **f**

**f** is not present in native Dogon vocabulary, and is replaced by **p** in well-integrated loanwords like **màrpɔ:** ‘rifle’ (from Arabic, cf. Songhay **malfa**)

### 3.3.5 Voiceless stops (**p**, **t**, **k**)

Voiceless stops occur stem-initially: **pád-i** ‘left, abandoned’. **kéd-è** ‘cut-Past’, **tò** ‘be in’. They do not occur medially or finally in native Dogon vocabulary.

**k** does not palatalize before front vowels: **kígùl-i-ŷ** ‘went back’.

### 3.3.6 Laryngeals (*h*, *?*)

Laryngeals are not regular consonant phonemes. *h* occurs mainly in Fulfulde loanwords, some of which are now common, e.g., *hákìlè* ‘mind, attention’. The regional (and international) *ጀhɔ̄n* ‘uh-huh (yes)’ is also present.

Glottal stop *?* occurs in *ጀ?ጀn* ‘no’ and in perfective *Cv-* reduplications of vowel-initial stems, as in *ጀ-ጀb-ጀ* ‘bought’ from stem *ጀbጀ* ‘buy’, see (219) in §10.2.1.2. However, most original reduplications of this type have contracted to form a long vowel, as in stative *ጀ:njò* ‘be lying down’ (likely < \*ጀ-ጀnjò) related to active verb *ጀnj-ጀ:-* ‘lie down’. The same process has created many augmented (formerly reduplicated) perfectives, imperfectives, and statives with long first-syllable vowels (§10.2.1.2, §10.2.2.2, §10.4.1).

### 3.3.7 Sibilants (*s*, *š*, *z*, *ž*)

Of these, only *s* is a well-established consonant phoneme in the dialect described here. It does not palatalize noticeably before front vowels: *síndú* ‘sharp (blade)’, sí:r-è ‘pointed at’.

For *z* dialectally corresponding to intervocalic *d*, see §3.3.8 just below.

Alveopalatal *š* and *ž* occur in unassimilated borrowings, especially from French (*chanson*, *gendarme*). The same is true of *z* except in dialects that have *z* corresponding to *d*.

### 3.3.8 Intervocalic *d/z* dialectal split

There is a dialectal alternation of *z* and *d* intervocally. The dialect described here (Wendegèle) has *d* in the relevant words, e.g. *pédù* ‘sheep’, *kédè* ‘cut’, and *pádà* ‘lease (abandon)’. K&P (p. 11) write “z” in these words and comment that *d* is typical of Bandiagara and certain other (unnamed) villages; Wendegèle is near Bandiagara. K&P (p. 13) indicate that *z* does not occur word-initially in any dialect.

### 3.3.9 Nonnasal sonorants (*l*, *r*, *w*, *y*)

{*w* *y* *l*} can occur initially: *wé:* ‘see’, *yím-è* ‘died’, *lálá-dè* ‘gives birth’. Tap *r* does not occur initially in stems. All four consonants occur intervocally. The two semivowels {*w* *y*} also occur word-finally, for example in the suffixes *-w* (2Sg) and *-y* (perfective of some monosyllabic stems).

### 3.3.10 Nasalized sonorants (*r<sup>n</sup>*, *w<sup>n</sup>*, *y<sup>n</sup>*) absent

These consonants are absent in DS.

*r<sup>n</sup>* (nasalized tap) occurs in several Dogon languages, due to some combination of tapping of original intervocalic nasal stop \**n* and progressive nasalization of \**r* following a nasal syllable. Neither process has taken place in DS.

*w<sup>n</sup>* in some Dogon languages likewise reflects lenition of original intervocalic \**m* or else progressive nasalization of \**w*. Again, neither process has taken place in DS.

### 3.3.11 Dialectology of word-final nasals

K&P state (p. 13) that, in the dialect(s) that they focus on, all nasal-final *CvN* stems have a phonetically retroflexed nasal [ɳ]. There are no phonemic oppositions among nasals and the retroflexed nasal does not occur elsewhere (i.e. prevocalically). K&P also state that words (as opposed to stems) can end in the suffix *-m* (1Sg) or *-ŋ* (1Pl or 2Pl).

K&P also indicate (p. 13) that the final *-ŋ* (1Pl, 2Pl) is pronounced as *n* in Bandiagara and some other (unnamed) dialects.

In the dialect described here (Wendegele, near Bandiagara), virtually the only word-final nasal I hear is *-ŋ*, sometimes faint or reduced to nasalization of the preceding vowel. Final *m* was recorded only in the noun *jîm* ‘sickness, malady’. The 1Sg and 1Pl suffixes are usually merged as *-ŋ* (atonal), while the 2Pl is L-toned *-ŋ̊*. After a back rounded vowel, the 1Pl and 2Pl suffixes (but not 1Sg) have a faint palatal onset, hence 1Pl *-yŋ* and 2Pl *-yŋ̊*.

### 3.3.12 Consonant clusters

#### 3.3.12.1 Word- and morpheme-initial *NC* clusters

A handful of words begin with a nasal-stop cluster. However, they pattern as bisyllabic, with the first syllable reduced to a syllabic nasal. The nasal syllable can bear its own tone.

The only known verb of this type is *ñd-é:-* ‘bathe’, whose paradigm (§10.1.3.5) includes 3Sg perfective *ñd-ì-ŷ*, chaining form *ñd-í-ŷ*, and imperfective *ñd-é:-dè*.

There are only a few nouns of this type: *ñdé* ‘person’ (§4.1.2), *ŋgábù* ‘hippopotamus’, *ñnâ:* ‘grindstone’, and *ñnâ:* ‘viper sp. (*Bitis*)’.

#### 3.3.12.2 Medial geminated *CC* clusters

DS has more medial geminated nasals than most Dogon languages. To find them, we need look no farther than the two names of the language: *dònnò-sđ:* and *kàmmà-sđ:*. Other examples:

*nn* : *tànná* ‘stick’, *ùnnú* ‘back (body)’, *binné* ‘middle’, *dànná:-nà* ‘hunter’, *yànná:-nà* ‘old woman’, *tónnò* ‘hard’, ordinal suffix *-ènné*, verb *mùnné* ‘bend’, *ìnne* ‘not know’, 3Pl perfective negative or stative negative *-ñ-ní*;

*mm* : *émmè* ‘we’, *tìmmé* ‘tree’, *ómmù* ‘rotten’, *kómmò* ‘lean (animal)’, *tòmmò-gìné* ‘north’, *témmè* ‘put lid on’, *kómmò* ‘tie’, *námmà* ‘step on’;

*ŋŋ* : *dàŋŋ-é:-* ‘sit’. *ŋŋ-é:-* ‘stand, stop’.

There are also cases of *ll* and *yy*.

*ll* : *hállù* ‘even’, *kèllú* ‘cold’, *èllú* ‘sweet’, *gàllú* ‘bitter’, *tállò* ‘(not) any’ (< \*túrù lò); at suffixal boundary, several perfective negative forms like *bòl-lí* ‘did not go’ (§10.1.3.9)

*yy* : *yéyy-è:* ‘sleep’; at suffix boundary, *gíyy-ì-ŷ* ‘said to himself’ (< *gě:*)

Most examples of *nj* and *yy* occur at the boundary between a verb stem and the mediopassive suffix (which is also used in reflexives and some reciprocals), and may be historically secondary (resyllabification of \*ni: and \*yi:), see §3.5.3.4.

### 3.3.12.3 Medial nongeminate *CC* clusters

Homorganic nasal-voiced stop clusters are common medially. I transcribe *nj* for homorganic [ndʒ].

- mb* : *nùmbó* ‘fall’, *dàmbá* up’, *bòmb-é:-* ‘carry on back’, *yèmbè-lé* ‘awaken (sb)’, *yàmbà-lá* ‘damage (sth)’, *sémbè* ‘sweep’, plural suffix *-mbè* in NPs;
- nd* : *àndá* ‘village’, *dògòndó* ‘last’ (adj), *gèndé* ‘look’, *kúndò* ‘put’, *gà:nd-é:-* ‘prevent’, transitive suffix allomorph *-ndv*;
- nj* : *mùnjú* ‘thousand’, *kùnjú* ‘coarse’, *ùnj-é:-* ‘lie down’, *ìnjú* ‘what?’, *yògó-njì:* ‘how?’;
- ng* : *màngòrò* ‘mango’, *gèng-é:-* ‘(sth) tilt’, *dòngó* ‘push’, *dòngó* ‘pound (in mortar)’, *jáŋgù jàŋgá* ‘go to school, study’.

All other medial clusters are uncommon within uncompounded stems except in borrowings, names, and the like. They include homorganic nasal plus voiceless stop (*bànàŋkù tàngná* ‘cassava’), liquid plus stop (*kórgò* ‘fasting’), liquid plus nasal (*bármà* ‘modern pot’) and nonhomorganic nasals (*kémněy* ‘cotton’). Religious vocabulary includes *tàbsí:rù* ‘unofficial sermon’ and *ná:flè* ‘surerogatory (optional) prayer’. Some additional clusters occur at morpheme boundaries, especially in compounds, but the inventory is limited by the restriction of word-final consonants to {*y w y*} in the focal dialect.

An unusual nonhomorganic cluster *ŋb* occurs in compounds and was recorded stem-internally in *dìŋb-é:-* ‘follow’; see §3.5.5.3 for discussion of this word, and cases where a final nasal does assimilate to a following consonant.

A glance through the list of Donno So-speaking villages and surnames in §1.2 yields *nt* (*nàntúmmè*, *kòlúntàŋà*), *ŋk* (*sìŋkánùmò*), and *rg* (*bàrgùmú*).

### 3.3.12.4 Medial triple *CCC* clusters

Medial clusters of the type nonnasal sonorant plus homorganic nasal-voiced stop cluster occur in a few loanwords: *wáyŋgè-nè* ‘butcher (n)’.

### 3.3.12.5 Final *CC* clusters

No stem- or word-final consonant clusters have been found, except in unassimilated French words like *disque*. Even single consonants are limited to nasals (in this dialect, just *nj*) and semivowels.

## 3.4 Vowels

The inventory is (10). Oral vowels are much more common than phonemic nasalized vowels. I recognize the latter only when not followed immediately by a nasal or nasalized consonants.

(10)	oral		nasalized	
	short	long	short	long
<i>u</i>	<i>u:</i>		( <i>u<sup>n</sup></i> )	( <i>u.<sup>n</sup></i> )
<i>o</i>	<i>o:</i>		<i>o<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>o.<sup>n</sup></i>
<i>ɔ</i>	<i>ɔ:</i>		<i>ɔ<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>ɔ.<sup>n</sup></i>
<i>a</i>	<i>a:</i>		<i>a<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>a.<sup>n</sup></i>
<i>ɛ</i>	<i>ɛ:</i>		<i>ɛ<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>ɛ.<sup>n</sup></i>
<i>e</i>	<i>e:</i>		<i>e<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>e.<sup>n</sup></i>
<i>i</i>	<i>i:</i>		( <i>i<sup>n</sup></i> )	( <i>i.<sup>n</sup></i> )

Long nasalized vowels occur in a few *Cv:<sup>n</sup>* stems: *gě:<sup>n</sup>* ‘steal’, *sô:<sup>n</sup>* ‘dip’, *sê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘(animal) fat’. Short nasalized vowels occur in *ð<sup>n</sup>hð<sup>n</sup>* ‘yes’ and *ð<sup>n</sup>?ð<sup>n</sup>* ‘no’, and in *tá<sup>n</sup>yy-è*: ‘branch out’. Perfective and imperative forms of *Cv:<sup>n</sup>* verbs can be pronounced with reduced duration of the vowel, approaching *Cv<sup>n</sup>*, as in *gê(:)<sup>n</sup>* ‘steal!-2Sg’. It is not clear whether the absence of nasalized long or short *u* and *i* is accidental (there are very few stems with nasalized vowels) or principled.

### 3.4.1 Short and (oral) long vowels

There is no lexical distinction between *Cv* and *Cv:* verb stems. Stems of this type are basically *Cv:*. The imperative is *CV:*, with inconsistent realization of vowel length: *kâ:* ‘shave!’, *tâ:* ‘sow!’, *dê:* ‘insult!’. The long vowel is usually clear in the suffixed plural-addressee form: *ká:-ñ* ‘shave!-2Pl’.

Some of these *Cv:* verbs have a monophthongal perfective, e.g. *né-è* ‘ate (meal)’ from *nâ:*. In principle this is realized with a long vowel as [nê:], but again the length of the vowel is not always clear. Suffixed forms include 1Sg *nè-è-ñ* ‘I ate (meal)’, realized as [nè(:)ñ].

*Cv:* and *CvC* are also minimal shapes for nouns, adjectives, and other non-verb words; see §3.2.1.

*Cv* is an acceptable shape for stative quasi-verbs, which are preceded by an NP, by the existential particle, and/or by a locational expression: *sè* ‘have’ (§11.5.1.1), *wò* ‘be (somewhere)’ (§11.2.2.2). The quasi-verb ‘be in’ is interesting: *yó tò* with existential *yú*, but *tò*: following more specific locational expressions (§11.2.3.1).

### 3.4.2 Nasalized vowels

Clearcut phonemically nasalized vowels occur in a very small number of *Cv:<sup>n</sup>* stems whose initial consonant is not a nasal.

Verbs (all known cases): *gě:<sup>n</sup>* ‘steal’, *sô:<sup>n</sup>* ‘dip’, *sê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘douse (fire)’, *tâ:<sup>n</sup>* ‘spread (sth) out’.

Nouns (all known cases): *ê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘soda ash’, *jí:<sup>n</sup>* ‘fart (n)’, *kê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘squirrel’, *kê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘handcuffs’, *silèmmé<sup>n</sup>* ‘folding knife’, *sê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘(animal) fat’, *sù<sup>n</sup>yî*: ‘thread’.

Adjectives (all known cases): *ê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘tight’, *sê:<sup>n</sup>* ‘good’.

Expressive adverbials and similar (examples): *té<sup>n</sup>→* ‘exactly’, *ká<sup>n</sup>→* ‘wide open (mouth)’, *sí:<sup>n</sup> (gě:)* ‘(make) a derogatory sound with the lips’.

### 3.4.3 Initial vowels

The initial consonantal position in stems like *Cv*, *CvCv*, *CvCvCv* is not obligatory. Many verbs, nouns, and other stems begin with a vowel. There are no restrictions as to which vowel may be initial.

Examples are *àndá* ‘village’, *ébè* ‘buy’, *é* 2Pl pronoun, *óbò* ‘give’, *òbí:* ‘stepmother’, *ùnj-é:-* ‘lie down’ and *ìdú* ‘dog’. There are only a handful of cases involving long vowels: *á:* ‘who?’, *í:* ‘child’, *é:n* ‘soda ash’.

### 3.4.4 Stem-final vowels

Any short vowel may occur word-finally in stems and/or suffixes. Among derived verb stems, the mediopassive can end in *-e:*, *-e:*, or *-i:* (depending on the inflection and on the ATR-harmonic class of the verb).

### 3.4.5 ATR harmony and Back/Rounding Harmony

Within noncomposite verb, noun, adjective, and numeral stems, the +ATR vowels {*e o*} and the -ATR vowels {*e o*} do not normally co-occur. There are a few exceptions involving the order +ATR then -ATR, the latter being word-final after a nasal consonant. This is consistent with the fact that human singular *-nv* suffix on nouns and causative suffix *-mv* on verbs have -ATR vowels {*e a o*} even after +ATR stems.

The logophoric pronoun *njémé* (§18.3.1) is one disharmonic example. Another is *silèmmé* ‘folding knife, razor’. *kólommò* ‘burgrass (*Cenchrus biflorus*)’ is a puzzling case; the ending looks like 1Sg possessor *m-mò* but it is not, at least synchronically. Curiously, the less common but closely related *Cenchrus prieurii* is called *kúlummò*, which does not violate ATR harmony.

There is no regular phonological rule changing +ATR to -ATR after nasals, cf. *émè* ‘milk (a cow)’, *yímè* ‘die’, *támòrò* ‘date (fruit)’, *kómmò* ‘lean (emaciated)’.

ATR harmony generally extends to verbal derivational suffixes, whose vowels can be predicted from the stem vowel. As noted, causative *-mv* is an exception and does not allow +ATR quality.

High vowels {*i u*} freely co-occur within stems with either +ATR or -ATR vowels of the same back/front and rounding features. The regular vowel sequences in verb stems whose first syllable has a high vowel are *i\_e*, *i\_e*, *u\_o*, and *u\_o*. At word-level, suffix *-u* or *-i* may be added to verbs with any vowel quality in the preceding syllable.

The low vowel *a* patterns with the -ATR vowels. This is seen in mediopassive verbs, whose derivational suffix appears as *-e:-* rather than *-e:-* after stems with *a*-vowels: *dànn-é:-* ‘sit’, *lár-é:-* ‘touch oneself’, *tág-è:-* ‘put one’s shoes on’, *bà:g-é:-* ‘learn (a trade)’.

Stems also generally respect Back/Rounding harmony, so that {*u o o*} and {*i e e*} do not easily combine. However, there are some frozen mediopassives like *sóyy-è:-* ‘speak’ that respect ATR but not back/rounding harmony and that seem to be turning into unsegmentable stems (*sóyyè*). There are also a few cases of *oe* and *oe* diphthongs, either in stems (*jóè* ‘bottom’) or in perfective verb forms of *Co:* and *Co:* verbs.

In the perfective paradigm of verbs, the E-stem always ends in *e ~ e* in the otherwise unsuffixed 3Sg subject form, even when the preceding syllable has a back/rounded vowel as in *kómm-è-Ø* ‘he/she became skinny’, never #*kómm-ò-Ø*, which would be homophonous

with imperative *kómmò*. However, the 1st/2nd person forms are optionally harmonized: *kòmm-è-ŋ* ~ *kòmm-ò-ŋ* ‘I became skinny’.

Imperfective negative *-èlè* does not harmonize with the stem, either for ATR or back/rounding. It combines with all *Cv(C)Cv* stems as *Cv(C)Cε-èlè*, regardless of the ATR or back/rounding features of the first vowel.

Back/Rounding Harmony can also work syllable-internally in combinations involving suffixes and clitics. For example, 2Sg subject suffix *-w̄* ~ *-w̄* on verbs and imperfective subordinator *-w̄* induce optional rounding of a preceding *ε* to *ɔ*, *e* to *o*, or *i* to *u*. This affects many verb forms, for example all 2Sg forms of E-stem perfectives, imperfective negative *-èlè* (as in 2Sg *-èlɔ-w̄*) perfective negative *-lí*, and imperfective *-dè*. Definite clitic *=gò* optionally contracts to *=ɔ*, and then contracts with any stem-final short vowel as [ɔ:], written ...*ɔ=ɔ*. Because definite *=gò* ~ *=ɔ* is also regularly added to participles (verb forms in relative clauses), and these participles are usually segmentally identical to any of the inflected verb forms mentioned above (including the aspect-negation suffix), participles also often show back rounded vowels, e.g. imperfective *-dɔ=gò* ~ *-dɔ=ɔ* for main-clause *-dè*. The vocalism of such participles is at various stages of morphologizing the back rounded variants, creating an unstable synchronic situation.

### 3.4.6 Diphthongs

Sequences like syllable-final *aw* and *ay* are structurally similar to e.g. *aj*, i.e. a vowel plus a sonorant coda.

More interesting are the tightly knit diphthongs *oe* and *oe*, where neither element is particularly more syllabic than the other. There is no hiatus. These diphthongs occur primarily in perfective forms of monosyllabic *Cɔ:* and *Co:* verbs, but I can also cite the noun *jóè* ‘bottom, base’.

By contrast, the combination of the mediopassive suffix, in the variant *-i-*, with a following vowel-initial suffix involves a syllable break (hiatus), though not a glottal stop: *mà:ndùg-i-èlè* ‘does not think’.

### 3.4.7 Vocalism of verb-stem alternations

Vocalic alternations within verb stems are limited to stem-final position. Verbs do distinguish a lexically basic form (used before most aspect-negation suffixes, and therefore here called the **presuffixal stem**) from either an E-stem or an I-stem used in the perfective positive (§10.2.1.1). For a vestigial A-stem, see §15.2.2.8.

### 3.4.8 Vocalic sound symbolism

Vocalic mutations within a word-family, especially bisyllabic and longer verbs, are fairly common in Dogon languages. Since all verb stems in DS have a non-high vowel {*e ε a ɔ o*}, *e* and *ε* are diminutive, for example denoting a small-scale or gentle version of an action type. The following have been noted:

- (11) a. *gògòdó* ‘gnaw at’  
*gègèdé* ‘(mouse) nibble at’

- b. *pódò-gòlò* ‘crush (bone), squash (sth)’  
*pódò-gòlò* ‘squash (e.g. frog) violently’  
*pédè-gèlè* ‘crush (bone) into small pieces’
  
- c. *dòŋgó* ‘push, shove’  
*dòngó* ‘pound (grain, in mortar, with pestle)’  
*dàŋgá* ‘patch (garment)’  
*dèŋgé* ‘tamp down on (with foot or hand)’
  
- d. *póllò* ‘snap, break in half (cassava, baguette)’  
*pállà* ‘snap (rubber band, etc.) by pulling both ends’  
*péllè* ‘pull or break off (small piece)’  
*péllè* ‘pull or break off (small piece)’
  
- e. *lállà* ‘pull or yank off (chunk, branch)’  
*léllè* ‘pull or break off (small piece)’

Further examples involving expressive adverbials are in §8.4.7.1.

### 3.5 Segmental phonological rules

#### 3.5.1 Trans-syllabic consonantal processes

None observed. There is no progressive nasalization-spreading.

#### 3.5.2 Vocalism of suffixally derived verbs

##### 3.5.2.1 Suffixal Vowel-Spreading

Some derivational suffixes on verbs have unspecified vowel quality, and adopt their surface quality by spreading from the left. Examples are reversive *-lv* (§9.1), transitive allomorphs *-ndv*, *-lv*, and *-rv* (§9.4), both syllables of suffix *-gvlv* (§9.2.2), and stative negative *-lV* (§10.4.2). The surface vowels are never high {*i u*} since these do not occur as stem-final segments in verbs.

Causative *-mv* (§9.2), the very limited passive *-mv* (§9.3), and hortative *-mv* are different in that they are prespecified as -ATR. They can therefore appear as *-ma*, *-me*, or *-mo* but not as #*-mo* or #*-me*.

#### 3.5.3 Other vocalic rules sensitive to syllabic or metrical structure

##### 3.5.3.1 Vocalic epenthesis (absent)

There are no epenthetic vowels. The only consonant clusters that occur at compound or stem-suffix boundaries are easily pronounceable with at most small adjustments (nasal assimilation).

### 3.5.3.2 Syncope (unproductive)

Syncope is not productive but there are some cases involving the medial syllable in *CvCvCV* combinations (words or noun-postposition combinations), where *C<sub>2</sub>* is a sonorant:

*gìné* ‘house’ is syncopated in the high-frequency PP *gín da:* ‘at/in the house(s)’, by extension ‘in the village’ (as opposed to the fields or the outback).

Logophoric pronoun *njèmè* tends to syncopate in plural *njém-bè* (suffix *-mbè*) and possessive *njém-mò*. The flanking *m*’s may have favored the syncope.

*jòmmó* ‘ride (horse)’ or ‘drive (motor vehicle)’ may be derived from \**jòbò-mò*, causative of *jòbó* ‘run’, via syncope and \**bm* → *mm*.

A few irregular verbs that have *CvCv* shape in some inflections have a *CvC* form in others. Four high-frequency *Cvlv* verbs like *bòló* ‘go’, and one *Cvn(v)* verb *kán(à)* ‘do’, have perfective negatives of the type *CvC-lí* (*bòl-lí*, *kàn-lí*).

In *màr(ù)př*: ‘rifle’, a regional loanword ultimately from Arabic and occurring as *malfa* in some local languages including Songhay, it isn’t clear (synchronously) whether the base form is trisyllabic or bisyllabic, and therefore whether the alternation is due to syncope or to epenthesis (after a tap).

### 3.5.3.3 Apocope (unproductive)

There is no systematic apocope (word-final vowel-deletion).

For *ŋgɔ́-ní* ~ *ŋgɔ́-ñ* ‘here’ and similar forms see §4.4.3.1 and §8.2.2.

The alternation of prohibitive *-w* and its plural-addressee counterpart *-gí-ŋ*, cf. imperative plural-addressee *-ŋ*, suggests a combination of spirantization and apocope from \**-gí* to *-w* (§10.6.1.3). However, neither process is productive and the alternation is now certainly allomorphic.

### 3.5.3.4 Palatal Coalescence

A number of mediopassive verbs have a stem-final *yy* or *nn* before the mediopassive suffix, which is *-e:-* ~ *-e:-* (depending on stem ATR value) in some inflections, and *-i:* in others. Examples are *dàjjn-é:-* ‘sit’, *wèyy-é:-* ‘winnow in wind’, *sɔyy-è:-* ‘speak’, and *yéyy-è:* ‘sleep’. In some cases where the mediopassive verb is derived from a *Cv*: verb, the *yy* is arguably epenthetic, see *y*-Epenthesis §3.5.4.6.

When *-e:-* ~ *-e:-* occurs before a vowel-initial suffix (imperfective negative *-èlè*, past anterior subordinator *-à:*), it raises and shortens to *-i-* by Prevocalic V-Raising (§3.5.6.1). In cases like *kigùl-i-èlè* ‘does not go back’ there is no further change. However, *-i-* created in this way tends to coalesce with a preceding *nn* or *yy*. Pronunciations approximating the regular *dàjjn-i-èlè* ‘does/will not sit’, *wèyy-i-èlè* ‘does/will not winnow in wind’, and *sɔyy-i-èlè* ‘does/will not speak’ co-occur with coalesced pronunciations like *dàjjn-Ø-èlè*, *wèyy-Ø-èlè*, and *sɔyy-Ø-èlè*. Historically, the gemination of *yy* and *nn* in these stems may have originated due to ambiguities in segmentation of simple stem-final \**y* or \**n* before *-i-* or *-e:-* ~ *-e:-* (originally \**-ye-*), and then generalized.

In the case of /LH/-toned stems like ‘sit’ and ‘winnow in wind’, the coalescence also feeds Stranded-Tone Re-Linking (§3.7.4.4), resulting in an initial-syllable rising tone.

### 3.5.4 Processes affecting individual consonants

The second consonant (*C<sub>2</sub>*) in trisyllabic \*CvC<sub>2</sub>vCv, including suffixed \*CvC<sub>2</sub>v-Cv, has been subject over time to various modifications, typically lenitions (including deletions). There are a few synchronic alternations but nothing productive.

#### 3.5.4.1 Intervocalic *I*-Deletion

There are traces of a no longer productive process by which intervocalic \*l was deleted, with the resulting vowel sequence contracting into a long vowel. The usual context for the process was \*CvIvCv, i.e. with C<sub>2</sub> = I in a trisyllabic or longer word, not in bisyllabic \*CvIv. As a result, a few alternations of the type CvIv versus suffixed Cv:-Cv have been preserved.

Mediopassive verb *mòl-é*: '(group) come together, meet' has a transitive counterpart *mò:-ndɔ* 'assemble (a group)' with *mò:-* < \*mòl- (§9.4.4). Similarly, mediopassive *kól-è:-* 'pour (water) on oneself' corresponds to transitive *kó:-rò* < \*kól-*rò*, see (187c) in §9.4.2.

Four high-frequency CvIv verbs ('go', 'come', 'pass', 'get') delete the I in their (irregular) imperfective forms of the type Cv:-jè. See §10.1.3.9.

#### 3.5.4.2 Intervocalic Nasal-Deletion

For a few verbs, a C<sub>2</sub> nasal disappears when a transitive or causative suffix is added. The result is Cv:-(N)Cv from \*CvNv-Cv. In some cases the suffix itself begins with a nasal that in some way reflects the nasality of the original second syllable.

For *dàjn-é:-* 'sit down' and transitive *dà:-ndá* 'have (sb) sit, seat', and for *inj-é:-* 'stand up, stop' and transitive *i:-ndé* 'stop, erect (sth)', see §9.4.3. The prototypes for the transitives may have been \*dànà-rá and \*injí-ré, parallel to numerous surviving transitive derivatives with -rv suffix (§9.4.2). The alternations are synchronically opaque, more so than with Intervocalic I-Deletion.

#### 3.5.4.3 Intervocalic Tapping (/d/ → r)

Noninitial intervocalic d frequently lenites to tap r (IPA [r]), much as in American English.

This is a significant synchronic issue for locative postposition *dà:* ~ *rà:*, which is closely phrased with a preceding noun or NP. The strongly predominant variant in my assistant's speech is *rà:*, but *dà:* occurs after a consonant or to avoid two consecutive rv syllables. For details and examples see §8.2.1.

Imperfective -dè is often heard as -rè in allegro speech, but my assistant corrects to -dè whenever queried.

The alternation between -rv and -ndv as transitive suffixes (the latter sometimes accompanied by Intervocalic Nasal-Deletion) is probably explained by the tapping of original \*-dv when not blocked by a preceding nasal consonant.

#### 3.5.4.4 *d* ~ *j* alternation

The normal imperfective suffix is *-dè*. A few verbs have *-jè*. Except for *kán-jè* ‘does’, all of the cases involve \**Cv<sub>v</sub>* stems that simultaneously underwent Intervocalic *I*-Deletion in the imperfective, which takes the form *Cv:-jè*. See §10.2.2.1.

#### 3.5.4.5 *I* ~ *r* alternation

For mediopassive *dàl-é:-* ‘get dressed’ and transitive *dàrà-ndá* ‘dress (sb)’, see §9.4.3.

#### 3.5.4.6 *y*-Epenthesis

A possibly epenthetic *yy* occurs in a number of mediopassive verbs including *dùyy-é:-* ‘carry on head’, *jòyy-é:-* ‘hide (oneself)’, and *jùyy-é:-* ‘(sth) flip over’. If an agent is added the verb takes transitive form (suffix *-rv*), with the *yy* absent: *dù:-rò* ‘put (load) on (sb’s) head’, *jò:-rò* ‘hide (sb, sth)’, and *jù:-rò* ‘flip (calabash) over’. Stative derivatives have a single *y*, hence *dú:yò* ‘be carrying (sth) on one’s head’, *jó:yò* ‘be hidden’, and *jú:yò* ‘be upside-down’. For a fuller list see of relevant mediopassives see §9.4.

A similar case is the verb *sóyy-é:-* ‘speak’, compare the related noun *sɔ:* ‘words, talk’.

One option is an epenthesis rule inserting *y* or *yy*, and assuming lexical /dú:/, /só:/, etc. for the verbs. The other is to have lexical /dùyò/, /sóyò/, etc., have one rule geminating it in mediopassives (where the semivowel coalesces with the following nonlow front vowel of the mediopassive suffix), and have a second rule deleting /yv/ before transitive *-rv*. The phonology is opaque and a more surface-y stem-to-stem relational network would work better than underlying to surface derivations.

#### 3.5.4.7 /l/ → *n* after nasalized vowel

/l/ becomes *n* in the common predicate *se:(n)=ná:-Ø* ‘it isn’t good’ from *se:n* ‘good’ (§6.3.3.3). This is pronounced [sé:ná:] with no extra nasalization of the *e*: over and above the usual subphonemic nasalization before a nasal, so in effect the nasal feature on the vowel is absorbed by the consonant.

In verbal morphology, the relevant forms are those with perfective negative *-lí* after a *Cv:n* verb. An example is *gě:n* ‘steal’, *gè:(n)-ní* ‘did not steal’.

This nasalization of /l/ does not happen after a nasal consonant, where /ŋl/ outputs *nl* with just point-of-articulation assimilation and where the one case of pre-surface /nl/ (due to syncope of ‘do’) is unchanged. Examples are *úlù-n=lá:-Ø* ‘it isn’t/they aren’t (the) children’ and *kàn-lí* ‘did not do’.

### 3.5.5 Local consonant cluster processes

#### 3.5.5.1 Intervocalic alternations of *NC* with simple nasal

For *nìnjé* ‘be afraid’ versus causative *nìndù-mó* ‘frighten, scare’, see (180d) in §9.2.1. Tommo So causative *níyí-ndé* ‘scare’ suggests that the DS causative is etymologically a double causative with causative *-mv* superimposed on an already causative form.

*pí:ndè* ‘shut (door)’ has a variably pronounced reversive *píjnè-lè* ~ *píjè-lè* ‘open (door)’, cf. also augmented stative *pí:ŋjè* ‘(door) be shut’. On the reversive see (178f) in §9.1. Cognates include Tommo So *píi-ndé* ‘shut (door)’ and reversive *píl-lé* ‘open (door)’. The morphology is synchronically non-transparent, but DS *pí:ndè* likely contains an original *-ndv* suffix (§9.4.3-4) that is absent from the reversive (and stative).

A few alternations of the type *mb* ~ *m* have been observed in *C<sub>2</sub>* position in the context of derivational suffixation. For *yémé* ‘wake up’ versus *yèmbè-lé* ‘awaken (sb)’, and *yàmá* ‘be ruined’ versus *yàmbà-lá* ‘ruin (sth)’, see §9.4.5. These alternations are unexpected since usually *C<sub>2</sub>* is lenited when a suffix is added to make the stem trisyllabic; here the trisyllabic stem has the heavier *NC* cluster in *C<sub>2</sub>* position.

A somewhat opaque case is *té:-ndè* ‘cover with lid’ and reversive *témmè-lè* ‘take lid off’, cf. nouns *témmùrù* ‘lid of waterjar’ and *té:ndù* ‘lid of cooking pot’. For ‘cover with lid’, cognates include Tommo So *tímmé*, Jamsay *tímné*, and Dogul Dom *tímbù-rù*.

#### 3.5.5.2 Intervocalic alternation of *mm* with *m*

Medial geminated *mm* is degeminated to *m* in verbs derived from two adjectives. Either the heaviness of the overall stem or the presence of another nasal *n* seems to have degeminated the nasal.

Adjective *èmmú* ‘cramped, confined (space)’ has two inchoative verbs: *émm-è:* and *émè-nd-è:*, both meaning ‘become cramped’, see (193) in §9.5.

For *kómmò* ‘lean (emaciated)’ I recorded an unsuffixed inchoative *kómmò* ‘become lean’, but factitive *kómò-mò* ‘cause/let (animal) become lean’, with degemination only in the latter.

#### 3.5.5.3 Nasal Assimilation

The only stem-final consonants in the focal dialect are *ŋ* and semivowels {*w y*}, so there is little need for *CC*-cluster assimilation processes.

Velar *ŋ* is tolerated before labials. *ŋb* occurs in *dìŋb-é:-* follow, an etymologically difficult form that may have once been composite (Toro Tegu *diŋú* and Ben Tey *dimbi-yí* are representative of many potential cognates showing a mix of velar *g* and labial *mb*). It functions synchronically as a simple mediopassive. *ŋb* is also tolerated at compound boundaries: *jàn-ŋ-bédè* ‘hot coal, ember’.

However, *ŋ* does assimilate its point of articulation to coronals at boundaries, except in careful pronunciation: *nǎŋ* ‘sun’ in *nàŋ-[númbò-lò]* ‘sunset’ and *nàŋ-[túmbò-lò]* ‘sunrise’.

Though not shown in my (normalized) transcriptions, this assimilation can also happen before postpositions *lè* and *dà:*, and to a lesser extent any other coronal-initial word, in tightly connected phrases. Thus *jâŋ* ‘well-being’, PP *jâŋ lè* ‘(being) well’, pronounced with [nl]; *děŋ* ‘waterjar’, *děŋ dà:* ‘in (a/the) waterjar’, pronounced with [nd].

### 3.5.6 Vowel-vowel and vowel-semivowel sequences

#### 3.5.6.1 Prevocalic V-Raising

In verbs, a mid-height long vowel is shortened and raised to the homorganic high vowel in some combinations involving V-initial suffixes. The process, which bleeds VV-Contraction (see below), applies to *Cv:* stems (*Ce:*, *Ce:*, *Co:*, *Cɔ:*) and to suffixed mediopassives with *-e:* ~ *-e:* (~ *-i:*), in either case when they are followed immediately by imperfective negative *-èlè* or by past anterior subordinator *-a:*.

(12)	stem	with <i>-èlè</i>	with <i>-a:</i>	gloss of stem
------	------	------------------	-----------------	---------------

##### a. monosyllabics

<i>dě:</i>	<i>dí-éłè</i>	<i>dì-â:</i>	‘insult’
<i>tě:</i>	<i>tí-éłè</i>	<i>tí-à:</i>	‘send’
<i>d᷑:</i>	<i>dù-éłè</i>	<i>dù-â:</i>	‘arrive’
<i>g᷑:</i>	<i>gù-éłè</i>	<i>gù-â:</i>	‘go out’

##### b. mediopassives

<i>dàjŋ-é:-</i>	<i>dàjŋ-í-éłè</i>	<i>dàjŋ-í-à:</i>	‘sit’
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-í-éłè</i>	<i>kígùl-í-à:</i>	‘go back’

The vowel sequences in these forms are optionally improved by a fleeting epenthetic semivowel, often *y* even in the *u-a:* cases. But the epenthesis is unsystematic and the forms can be pronounced essentially as shown.

Stem-final short vowels do not undergo this process; instead, they contract with a suffix-initial vowel (see just below).

For variants like *dăjŋ-Ø-èlè* see Palatal Coalescence (§3.5.3.4) and Stranded-Tone Re-Linking (§3.7.4.4).

#### 3.5.6.2 VV-Contraction

A case can be made for one or more VV-Contraction processes, but in verbal morphology there are some difficulties in formulating it.

For nouns and other NP-final words, the obvious case is definite clitic *=g᷑*, which has a common variant *=᷑*. The latter contracts with any stem-final short vowel as long *ɔ:*, transcribed *ɔ=᷑*. Thus *pédù* ‘sheep’, definite *pédù=g᷑* or *péd᷑=᷑* ‘the sheep’; *nàŋá* ‘cow’, definite *nàŋá=g᷑* or *nàŋ᷑=᷑* ‘the cow’. After a long vowel (or a consonant), only uncontracted *=g᷑* is allowed: *î=g᷑* ‘the child’, *ân-nà pàd᷑= =g᷑* ‘the bad man’.

The closest analogue to this in verbal morphology is the imperfective negative with suffix *-èlè*. It contracts with any preceding final short vowel of a nonmonosyllabic stem (all examples involve nonhigh vowels) as [ɛ:lè], transcribed *e-èlè*, as in *tómbè-èlè* ‘does not jump’ (<*tómb᷑*) and *yàbé-èlè* ‘does not accept’ (<*yàb᷑*). The suffix may also follow *Cv:* stems (nonlow vowels) and mediopassives with suffix allomorph *-i:*. The *Cv:* stems divide into *Ca:*, which combines as *Ca:lè* (transcribed *Ca-alè*), and stems with mid-height vowels, which raise and shorten to {*i u*} before *-èlè*, see Prevocalic V-Raising §3.5.6.1. Mediopassive *-i:* also shortens to *-i-* to produce *-i-èlè*. Examples are *ká-àlè* ‘does not shave’ (<*kâ:*), *gù-éłè*

‘does not go out’ (<*gō:*>), *dī-éłè* ‘does not insult’ (<*dě:*>), and mediopassive *dàŋŋ-í-éłè* ‘does not sit’.

The mediopassive suffix has allomorphs *-e:-* ~ *-ε:-* (ATR-harmonizing) and *-i:-*, depending on the inflectional category. All allomorphs contract with a preceding stem-final vowel. Usually the stem is bisyllabic or longer and the stem-final vowel is short, as we can verify when the unsuffixed stem also occurs independently. The stem-final vowel is absorbed by the mediopassive suffix: *jòŋ́* ‘treat (medically)’, mediopassive *jòŋ-é:-* ~ *jòŋ-í:-* ‘care for oneself, have oneself cared for’; *yàbá* ‘accept’, mediopassive *yàb-é:-* ~ *yàb-í:-* ‘accept oneself’. Given the pattern seen above by which *V<sub>1</sub>V<sub>2</sub>* with two short vowels usually contracts as *V<sub>2</sub>:*, one could argue that the mediopassive allomorphs have underlying short *e*, *ε*, or *i* and contract with the stem-final vowel to form the observed long vowel.

There is a process of augmentation affecting verb stems by which an original \**Cv-Cv...* reduplication has contracted to *Cv:...* Synchronously this is now a first-vowel lengthening process, so it is not necessary to model it by means of VV-Contraction.

In all cases so far, VV-Contraction has resulted in a long vowel. However, there are two other verb forms where we might posit a VV-Contraction rule that produces a short vowel. These are the perfective, whether E-stem or I-stem, and the chaining form. The perfective of nonmonosyllabic nouns ends either in *e* ~ *ε* (E-stem) or in *i* (I-stem), depending on the verb: *jób-è* ‘ran’ (<*jóbó*>), *yáb-i* ‘accepted’ (<*yàbá*>). In the chaining form, some verbs just use the bare stem (*jóbó* ‘run’) and are not at issue, but others end in *u* (*yáb-ú* ‘accept’). We may disregard monosyllabic stems with chaining form *Cv-y*.

If we derive perfectives and chaining forms by addition of a suffixal vowel, the base forms are /jób-è/, /yáb-ì/, /yáb-ú/, and we must then allow VV-Contraction to produce short vowels. The alternative is to take the E-stem, I-stem, and U-stem (chaining form) as ablaut mutations of the lexical stem.

Other contractions may have occurred historically in some of the more archaic nominal diminutives, whose underlying forms are nontransparent (§5.1.6). However, productive compounds with *-í:* ‘child’ do not contract.

### 3.5.7 Local vowel-consonant interactions

#### 3.5.7.1 Vowel-Semivowel Assimilation (/uy/ → *iy*, /iw/ → *uw*)

2Sg-subject suffix *-w* on verbs and other predicates tends (unsystematically) to convert a preceding *e* to *o* (E-stem perfectives, also imperfective *-dè* and imperfective negative *-éłè*) and a preceding *i* to *u* (I-stem perfectives, also perfective negative *-lí*). See the paradigms in chapter 10 for examples.

#### 3.5.7.2 Monophthongization (/iy/ → *i:*, /uw/ → *u:*)

Word- or syllable-finally, there is no clear distinction between *iy* and *i:*, or between *uw* and *u:*. In cases where the morphological structure points to *iy* or *uw* rather than to a long vowel, Monophthongization applies.

/iy/ → *i:* occurs in I-stem perfective *tí-ý* ‘sent’ from *tē:* ‘send’, parallel to e.g. perfective *yó-ý* ‘went in’ or *ká-ý* ‘shaved’, see (217) in §10.2.1.1.

/uw/ → *u*: occurs in 2Sg subject perfective negative /-lí-w/ → /-lí-ŵ/ → -lú-ŵ. Monophthongization is fed by the intervening rule Vowel-Semivowel Assimilation (see the preceding section).

### 3.6 Cliticization

Typologically, clitics may be mobile or phonological. The latter are elements that occur in the syntactically correct linear position but that are phonologically phrased like suffixes on the preceding or following word (the “host”).

The best case for mobile clitics is subject pronominals that immediately precede the final verb in a relative clause. These pronominals have the same form as independent pronouns but have arguably moved from their regular clause-initial position. They are in complementary distribution to pronominal-subject suffixes on verbs, which do not occur in relative clauses. The subject pronominals could be considered to be proclitics to the final verb based on their linear position, but there is no systematic phonological interaction between proclitic and verb.

The ‘it is’ morpheme =*ŋ* and its negative counterpart (§11.2.1.1-2), the accusative morpheme =*ŋ* (§6.7), the definite morpheme =*gò* ~ =*ð* (§4.4.1), and the conjugated past morpheme =*bè* (§10.5.1) are the best candidates for phonological enclitics, i.e. following rather than preceding their hosts. There is no reason to think that they have moved, but they are pronounced much like suffixes on the preceding host. The first two are realized as syllabic codas after fusing with the host, and both of these are added at the end of full NPs. The definite morpheme is etymologically a reduced demonstrative, and it often contracts with the final vowel of the host to form a long *ɔ:*. The past clitic, although syllabic, is closely fused morphologically to the preceding verb. See the sections cited for examples and discussion.

### 3.7 Tones

Syllables may have H[igh], L[ow], <HL>, <LH>, or rarely <LHL> tones. For <LHL> I can cite *ă*: ‘who?’ (§13.2.2.1) and combinations like =*lă:-ň* (‘it is not’ clitic plus 2Pl suffix) and *n᷑:-ŵ* (‘drink’ plus subordinator). Contour tones <HL>, <LH>, and <LHL> are confined to monosyllabic words and to word-final heavy (bi- or trimoraic) syllables. Word-final heavy syllables (*CvC*, *Cv:*, etc.) can be L-toned but cannot be entirely H-toned (an H-tone must choose which mora to fall on).

#### 3.7.1 Lexical tone melodies

##### 3.7.1.1 One H-tone in each stem

Each lexical stem (verb, noun, adjective, numeral) has one lexically H-toned syllable or mora. That is, /L/ lexical melody is excluded. Exceptions to this exclusion include grammatical particles and stative quasi-verbs: *sè* ‘have’, *wò* ‘be’, *nàmà* ‘want’, etc. However, even these quasi-verbs have some forms (especially participles) suggesting a latent H-tone.

At word-level there is also generally just one H-tone, with a few exceptions involving nominal compounds and morphologically complex hortatives and periphrastic verb inflections which may have two tones. A few expressive adverbials are all-L-toned (§8.4.7).

DS differs from most Dogon languages in limiting the H-tone to a single syllable within a word.

### 3.7.1.2 Lexical tone melodies of verbs

All regular verbs are lexically /HL/ or /LH/. In a pitch-accent model, this means that the accent is either initial or final. In some inflected and derived forms, such as the perfective and perfective negative and some deontic modals, the lexical melody is erased by tone overlays (tonomorphology). Inflected forms that do reflect the lexical melody include the imperfective (positive) and imperfective negative. The latter is most useful for determining the melody because it is not subject to the augmentation process that can affect imperfective positives, and because it is less likely to undergo clause-final tone-dropping due to downdrift. The chaining form also preserves the lexical melody distinction.

Examples of /HL/ are *nâ:* ‘eat (meal)’, *kédè* ‘cut’, and *kígùl-è:-* ‘return, go/come back’. The chaining forms are *nâ:*, *kédè*, and *kígùl-ì-ý*. The imperfective negatives are *pá-àlè*, *kédè-èlè*, and *kígùl-ì-èlè*. As these forms show, the lexical H-tone is realized on the onset, and later syllables are L-toned.

Examples of /LH/ are *gō:* ‘exit, go/come out’, *yàbá* ‘accept’, and *yàgìl-é:-* ‘reply’. Chaining forms are *gō:*, *yàb-ú*, and *yàgìl-ì-ý*. Imperfective negatives are *gù-élè* (arguably </gòó-élè/>), *yàb-é-èlè*, and *yàgìl-í-èlè*. As these forms show, the H-tone is realized as far to the right as the stem allows, but does not reach the suffix proper except in contracted forms like *gù-élè*.

As in many other Dogon languages, all stems beginning with a voiceless obstruent are /HL/-toned, and all those beginning with a voiceless obstruent are /LH/-toned. By contrast, those beginning with a sonorant have a lexical choice between /HL/ and /LH/: *yímè* ‘die’ but *yàbá* ‘accept’.

V-initial stems include /HL/-toned *ábà* ‘catch’, *óbò* ‘give’, *ábàrà* ‘lay out’, and *ébè* ‘buy’, and /LH/-toned *ùrɔ* ‘skin and butcher’. The /HL/-toned type predominates.

‘Bring’ and ‘convey, take (away)’ are more or less fused verb chains. If treated as units, some of their forms will require recognition of an /HLH/ lexical melody (§10.1.3.10-11).

### 3.7.1.3 Lexical tone patterns for unsegmentable noun stems

Noncomposite noun stems may have /HL/, /LH/, or /LHL/ as basic lexical melody. /LH/ is particularly common in all syllabic shapes. In monosyllabics, the pitch decline for /HL/ stems is not always audible.

The lexical melody is heard in isolation, before a numeral, or before a postposed possessor. It is erased by a following adjective, demonstrative, or relative clause, or by a preposed possessor, all of which impose an overlay {L}. Some examples of the melodies follow.

/HL/: *kû:* ‘head’, *bôy* ‘name’, *írù* ‘milk’, *ódù* ‘road’, *tóŋùnù* ‘red kapok tree (*Bombax*)’, *ségètèrè* ‘tree sp. (*Commiphora*)’, *tóŋònɔ:jɔ* ‘duck’;  
/LH/: *ɔ:* ‘well (water)’, *pòlú* ‘knife’, *gìné* ‘house’, *èmmé* ‘sorghum’, *kè:lé* ‘money; cowry’, *tà:bøy* ‘puffball’, *kùmbă:* ‘fig tree sp.’, *ògùlú* ‘outback, the bush’;

/LHL/: *ñnâ*: ‘viper (Bitis), *sàdâ*: ‘bird’, *tàrâ*: ‘hyena’, *gìrî*: ‘eye(s)’, *ŋgábù* ‘hippo’, *nânsâ* ‘cidada’, *tègúrù* ‘clapping, applause’, *pèdíŋè* ‘a spice (*Xylopia*)’, *ènjéégè*: ‘herb sp. (*Achyranthes*)’, *sànàkénè* ‘sweet sorghum’.

Lexical melodies for nouns and other non-verb words pay no attention to the initial consonant. The pitch range within the syllable is greater for /HL/ and especially /LH/ than for /LHL/, which in monosyllabics sounds almost level.

Monosyllabic nouns divide into tone-melody groups as follows (*L* in *CvL* = sonorant):

(13) a. /HL/

- (C)v: stems: *i*: ‘child’, *ɛ:n*: ‘soda ash’, *bâ*: ‘day/night transition’, *dô*: ‘paper’, *jî:n*: ‘fart (n)’, *kê:n*: ‘handcuffs’, *kû*: ‘head’, *dî*: ‘water’, *nî*: ‘blood’, *yû*: ‘millet’, *dô*: ‘parasitic herb (*Striga*)’, *sê*: ‘tree sp. (*Celtis*)’  
(C)vL stems: *bôy* ‘name’, *gêŋ* ‘begging (n)’, *jâw* ‘fight (n)’, *jôy* ‘medical care’, *kêy* ‘black ant (*Messor*)’

b. /LH/

- (C)v: stems: *đ*: ‘well (n)’, *dě*: ‘fatigue’ (also *dèyé*), *gě*: ‘thorn’, *kă*: ‘roan antelope’, *kě*: ‘bone’, *tě*: ‘granary’, *ně*: ‘trunkfish’, *ně*: ‘oil, butter’, *nô*: ‘medication’, *sř*: ‘kind, sort’, *sô*: ‘words, talk’  
(C)vL stems: *ăŋ* ‘Nile monitor lizard’, *bôy* ‘tomtom’, *děŋ* ‘waterjar’, *dǒŋ* ‘hip’, *dǒy* ‘pestle’, *jây* ‘flexible branch’, *jǔŋ* ‘fromager tree (*Ceiba*)’, *kěy* ‘shrub sp. (*Strophanthus*)’, *lăy* ‘garlic’ (< French), *năŋ* ‘sun’, *něŋ* ‘honey bee’, *nǚŋ* ‘cowpea’, *sôŋ* ‘horse’, *sǔŋ* ‘rope’, *tôy* ‘seeds (for sowing)’, *tây* ‘ground’

c. /LHL/

- (C)v: stems: *ă*: ‘who?’, *sâ*: ‘man’s sister’, *dâ*: ‘trust (n)’, *tû*: ‘termite’  
(C)vL stems: *dây* ‘small’, *năŋ* ‘fire’, *môy* ‘laughter’

/HL/ and /LH/ are about equally common for *Cv*: , but /LH/ is more common for *CvL*. Tonal minimal pairs in (13): *kêy* versus *kěy*, *bôy* versus *bôy*.

### 3.7.1.4 Lexical tone patterns for adjectives and numerals

An inventory of the basic modifying adjectives is given in §4.5.1. Most are mono- or bisyllabic, with a few trisyllabics. The tone melodies are like those for nouns. A few examples are repeated here.

- /HL/: *wê*: ‘fresh (milk)’, *dây* ‘small’, *gêŋ* ‘black’, *kómmò* ‘lean (animal)’, *púrùgù* ‘yellow’, *dóggòdo* ‘heavy’  
/LH/: *tô*: ‘deep’, *măy* ‘dry’, *pàlá* ‘long’, *dùmbú* ‘short’ or ‘blunt’, *sâgòlò* ‘multicolored’  
/LHL/: *dây* ‘small’

Numerals are listed in §4.6.1.2. Their tone melodies are like those of nouns and adjectives.

- /HL/: *kúlè*: ‘6’, *gágàrà* ‘8’  
/LH/: *nă:y* ‘4’, *tâ:ndú* ‘3’  
/LHL/: *lëy* ‘2’

### 3.7.1.5 Melody or pitch-accent?

Of the Dogon languages I have worked on, DS and Dogul Dom come closest to satisfying a pitch-accent (i.e. tonal accent) model. At the lexical level, each noncomposite stem (verb, noun, etc.) has exactly one H-toned syllable or mora. This can be handled by a model with an obligatory, one-per-word H-tone accent. At word-level too, after all phonological rules have operated, there is almost always exactly one H-toned syllable or mora, except when all tones have dropped due to tonosyntactic control or (in the case of clause-final verbs) downdrift.

The reason this model will work fairly well for DS is that it has no words with adjacent-syllable H-tones. In most other Dogon languages like Jamsay, a *CvCv* word can be lexically /H/ *CVCV*, /HL/ *CVCV*, or /LH/ *CVCV*. A Jamsay-type system does not lend itself well to an accentual model, unless one arbitrarily treats one of the three types as lexically unaccented.

The difficulty with fully implementing a pitch-accent model in DS is that H-tone may appear on one mora or the other of a bimoraic syllable, as in *gòněy* ‘elephant’ and the above-mentioned minimal pairs *kēy* versus *kĕy* and *bōy* versus *bĕy*. Therefore DS cannot be compared to pitch-accent languages that are based on syllables rather than moras.

### 3.7.1.6 Candidates for lexically /L/-toned stems

There is no need to recognize any lexically /L/-toned stems. However, one could adopt an abstract analysis that posits such stems underlyingly, then equips them with an H-tone by a phonological rule. Presumably this would involve what I am calling /LH/-toned stems, taking the surface H-tone as secondary.

### 3.7.1.7 Tone-Component location for bitonal non-verb stems

The issue here is the location of the tone break in /HL/- and /LH/-toned nouns when they are not subject to an {L} overlay.

For /HL/, the H-tone is heard on the initial syllable of nonmonosyllabics. For monosyllabics, the pitch decline is heard clearly only on the final mora, and it may not be audible at all if the word is followed by an L-tone.

#### (14) /HL/ melody (nouns)

##### a. monosyllabic

<i>kâ:</i>	‘head’
<i>bōy</i>	‘name’
<i>kú:=j</i>	‘it’s a head’

##### b. nonmonosyllabic

<i>írù</i>	‘milk’
<i>sé:rè</i>	‘witness’
<i>tójùnù</i>	‘red kapok tree ( <i>Bombax</i> )’
<i>tójùnù:j</i>	‘duck’

For /LH/, the tone break is as far to the right as possible, i.e. on the final mora if the final syllable is at least bimoraic.

(15) /LH/ melody (nouns)

a. monosyllabic

<i>đ:</i>	‘well (water)’
<i>kă:</i>	‘roan antelope’

b. nonmonosyllabic

*light final syllable*

<i>pòlú</i>	‘knife’
<i>kè:lé</i>	‘money; cowry’
<i>ògùlú</i>	‘outback, the bush’

*heavy final syllable*

<i>kùmbă:</i>	‘fig tree sp.’
<i>tà:bøy</i>	‘puffball’
<i>gòŋěy</i>	‘elephant’

### 3.7.1.8 Tone-Component location for tritonal non-verb stems

In /LHL/ bisyllabics, if the first syllable is light and the final syllable is heavy, the output is L.<HL>. In stems of three or more syllables, the H-tone is located on the penult.

(16) a. bisyllabic

*CvCv: and similar*

<i>ìnâ:</i>	‘viper ( <i>Bitis</i> )’
<i>sàdâ:</i>	‘bird’
<i>tàrâ:</i>	‘hyena’
<i>gìrî:</i>	‘eye(s)’

*Cv:Cv (uncommon type)*

<i>bɔ:nɔ</i>	‘comrade’, cf. <i>bɔ:</i> ‘kin’
--------------	---------------------------------

*CvCCv (uncommon type)*

<i>nănsà</i>	‘cicada’
--------------	----------

b. trisyllabic

<i>ংgábù</i>	‘hippo’
<i>tègúrù</i>	‘clapping, applause’
<i>jápé:rè</i>	‘donkey’s back padding’
<i>ènjége:</i>	‘herb sp. ( <i>Achyranthes</i> )’

c. quadrисyllabic

<i>sànakénè</i>	‘sweet sorghum’
-----------------	-----------------

This is also consistent with the common L.L-H.L pattern for (lexically) iterated nouns like *mènè-ménè* ‘ants’ (§4.1.6.1).

### 3.7.2 Grammatical tone patterns

#### 3.7.2.1 Grammatical tones for verb stems

Verb stems are subject to tone overlays in some inflections. These overlays erase lexical tone-melody distinctions.

{L} overlay, i.e. tone-dropping, applies to stems before perfective negative *-lɪ* (and 3Pl *-n̩-ni*). The effect is that /HL/-toned verbs lose their H-tone element: *kâ:* ‘shave’, *kâ:-lɪ* ‘did not shave’ (§10.2.3.1). Alternatively, we could think of a word-level {LH} overlay that includes the suffix. The same situation occurs in the 1st/2nd person perfective (§10.2.1.1) and the prohibitive with suffix *-w̩* (§10.6.1.3).

A clearer case of {LH} occurs in perfective participles (§14.4.1.1).

{HL} overlay occurs in the third-person perfective forms (§10.2.1.1). The effect is that /LH/-toned verbs join /HL/-toned verbs in having a falling tone pattern: *yábil-é:-* ‘reply’, 3Sg perfective *yábil-i-ŷ*, 3Pl perfective *yábil-i-Ø-yà*. {HL} also occurs in agentive derivative (§5.1.5.1).

Verbs are subject to a morphophonological process, unique to DS among Dogon languages, that I call **augmentation**. For monosyllabics, this takes the form of an L-toned *Cv-* reduplication: *gō:* ‘exit, go/come out’, augmented *gō-gó:-*. For nonmonosyllabic stems, an original \**Cv-Cv...* reduplication has undergone contraction to *Cv:...* In addition, the rest of the stem undergoes a tonal change. In the augmented perfective, the overlay on the original stem proper is falling: *yábil-é:-* ‘reply’, augmented perfective *yá:bil-i-ŷ* (<\**yá:yábil...*). This is also the case with the augmented stative (§10.4.1). In the augmented imperfective, by contrast, the overlay is rising: *pégèrè* ‘winnow by shaking’, augmented imperfective *pè:gèrè-dè* (<\**pè:pégèrè...*).

#### 3.7.2.2 Grammatical tone overlays for noun stems

The lexical melody of a noun stem is subject to the {L} overlay (tone-dropping). It is controlled by reference-restricting modifiers to the right (adjective, demonstrative, relative clause) or to the left (preposed possessor). A postposed pronominal possessor or a definite clitic by itself does not control {L}, but there are certain combinations that contain them that trigger a noncompositional constructional tone overlay that also happens to drop tones on the noun. See §6.1.1 for a summary of NP tonosyntax.

Nouns are also common as {L}-toned compound initials (§5.1.2-3).

#### 3.7.2.3 Grammatical tone overlays for adjectives and numerals

Adjectives and numerals are subject to tone overlays imposed by an external tonosyntactic controller: demonstrative, relative clause, or preposed possessor. They are also part of the target domain of certain constructional tone overlays; see §6.1.1.

Adjectives and numerals also occur as finals in bahuvrihi compounds (§5.2.1.1-2).

### 3.7.3 Tonal morphophonology

#### 3.7.3.1 Autosegmental tone association (verbs)

Verbs have an /HL/ or /LH/ lexical melody, partially predictable from the initial consonant. There are various ways this can be modeled. One could, for example, take the H-tone in one or both categories as nonlexical, inserted by rule. This would require a lexically specified initial L-tone for stems with the /LH/ melody. Alternatively, we could take both H and L tones as part of autosegmental melodies, exactly as suggested by the /HL/ versus /LH/ notation.

The benefit of an autosegmental analysis is that the surface location of the H-tone in the /LH/ verbs shifts rightwards in some morphological combinations. For example, in the imperfective and imperfective negative, the H-tone appears on the stem-final syllable, before the inflectional suffix: *yàbil-é:-* ‘reply’, imperfective negative *yàbil-í-èlè*. But in some other forms the H-tone is borne by the suffix, as in verbal noun *yàbil-è:-dú*. That these forms present lexical, not grammatical tones is shown by comparison with /HL/-toned *kígùl-è:-* ‘return, go/come back’, imperfective negative *kígùl-ì-èlè*, verbal noun *kígùl-è:-dú*. The H-tone in /LH/ is also realized on derivational suffixes such as reverative *-lv*. It therefore suffices to demarcate the morphological domain to which the autosegmental melody attaches in order to generate the forms.

Of course the lexical melody is erased when a grammatical overlay is applied. However, the overlaid melody can also be treated autosegmentally.

#### 3.7.3.2 Tone polarization (dissimilation) in decimal numerals

Decimal multiples of single digits, e.g. ‘20’ and ‘30’, are given in §4.6.1.3. They consist of *pélù* ‘10’ and the relevant single-digit numeral ‘2’ to ‘9’. *pélù* has the segmental variants *pe:-*, *pe:-* (by irregular ATR harmony), and in one case the full *pelu-* in these combinations.

The tone(s) of the ‘10’ element polarize to the initial tone of the digit term. It is therefore L-toned in *pè:-něy* ‘20’, *pélù-kúlè* ‘60’, *pè:-sôy* ‘70’, and *pè:-gágàrà* ‘80’, but H-toned in *pé:-tà:ndú* ‘30’, *pé:-nă:y* ‘40’, *pé:-ñnó* ‘50’, *pé:-tù:gó* ‘90’.

#### 3.7.3.3 Rightward H-Tone Shift from third-person perfectives to particles

Something superficially similar to tone polarization occurs with certain enclitic-like particles including *=yo* ‘if’, but only in the third-person perfective positive. The particle appears as *=yò* after {L}-toned third-person perfectives, as in *pàd-ì-Ø=yò* ‘if he/she abandoned’ (cf. *pàd-ì-Ø* ‘he/she abandoned’). It appears as *=yò* after {LH}-toned 1st/2nd person perfectives, as in *pàd-ì-ý=yò* ‘if you-Sg left’, and as *=yò* in all other inflectional categories regardless of subject category.

The same tonal alternation occurs in combinations of 3Sg and 3Pl subject perfective positives with any of the following: interrogatives *mà→* (§13.2.1.2) and *=lò ~ =là* (§13.2.1.3), quotative *wà* (§17.1.3.1), and any inflected form of ‘say’ (§17.1.2). In quotations, otherwise conjugated verbs are stripped of their pronominal-subject suffix (which reappears in a clause-initial quotative subject phrase), the result is a form identical to the regular 3Sg (zero) perfective positive, and this form is treated tonally just like the regular 3Sg form (i.e. the tone shift occurs). Thus *[ú wà] pàd-ì gí-y-Ø* ‘he said that you abandoned’ (elsewhere

*gì-y-Ø* after a quotation) from *pád-i*. With a non-third-person subject of ‘say’, we have [ú wà] *pàd-i gì-y-í* ‘I said that you abandoned’.

Since third-person perfectives have an initial H-tone in isolation (*pád-i-Ø* etc.), a reasonable analysis is that this H-tone shifts rightward onto the following particle or ‘say’ verb. If the particle or ‘say’ verb is otherwise L-toned, it grows an initial H-tone. If the particle or ‘say’ verb already has a H-tone (initial or final), the shifted H-tone fuses with it and there is no audible change (as with *gì-y-í* ‘I said’).

### 3.7.4 Low-level tone rules

#### 3.7.4.1 Contour-Tone Mora-Addition

Single-syllable contour tones <HL> and <LH> require at least two moras in DS, so if a monomoraic syllable were to carry a contour tone it would have to lengthen. The only actual alternation of this type is the combination of a word-final *CV* syllable with the final L-tone added to verbs in polar interrogatives (§13.2.1). An example is *yèl-lí-Ø* ‘he/she did not come’ versus interrogative *yèl-lí:-Ø* ‘didn’t he/she come?’.

#### 3.7.4.2 Final High-to-Rising Tone

A final H-tone preceded in the word by an L-tone associates with the final mora of the last syllable. In many cases this already happens at stem level: *gòŋey* ‘elephant’, where it is understood that the pitch rise is on the final semivowel: [gòŋe᷑].

This constraint applies especially to cases where a stem- or suffix-final *CV* is followed by an atonal suffix or clitic consisting of a sonorant (e.g. 1Sg *-ŋ*, 2Sg *-w*, ‘it is’ clitic *=ŋ*, or accusative clitic *=ŋ*). In these cases, the final syllable is realized with rising pitch. For example, 1Sg *mí* plus either clitic becomes *mì=ŋ*, and perfective negative *bòl-li* ‘did not go’ has conjugated forms like *bòl-li-ŋ* ‘I did not go’. This does not affect tone-marked suffixes like 2Pl *-ŋ*, hence *bòl-lí-ŋ* ‘you-Pl did not go’.

In allegro speech, especially at the end of a long word or phrase, there is little or no phonetic distinction between H and <LH> tones.

It is less clear whether the H to <LH> process also applies to medial syllables with long vowels. The relevant forms are imperfectives with L-toned suffix *-dè* following a lexically /LH/-toned stem with a final long vowel, i.e. monosyllabic *Cv:-* in reduplicated form *Cv-Cv:-dè* or mediopassives with final *-ε:- ~ -e:-*.

- (17)    a. *nò-nó:-dè-Ø*  
Augm-drink-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She drinks.’
- b. *bòmb-é:-dè-Ø*  
carry.on.back-MP-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She carries (on back)’

In my assistant’s speech, the long vowels in (17a-b) are most often pronounced with level H-tone, though on some occasions I thought I heard a rising tone. The situation is

complicated by the fact that medial syllables normally begin with voiced consonants, which have a slight phonetic depressor effect.

#### 3.7.4.3 Contour-Tone Stretching

A *Cv:L* syllable (*L* = sonorant) with <HL> or <LHL> tone tends to have the tone transition close to the coda. When a suffix or clitic consisting of a sonorant is added to a *CV:* or *CV̄:* syllable, the tone transition is shifted toward the coda.

For example, *yǎ:* ‘woman, female’ occurs in *yǎ:-j̄* ‘women’, with atonal plural suffix *-ŋ̄*. If we start with /yǎ:-ŋ̄/ and end up with *yǎ:-j̄*, we need a minor rule to shift the tone transition. Likewise with *i:* ‘child’ when atonal ‘it is’ clitic *=ŋ̄* is added to produce *i:=j̄*. There are also a few *Cvyŋ̄* syllables, as in *kà-ŷ-j̄* ‘I shaved’, with perfective allomorph *-ŷ*.

#### 3.7.4.4 Stranded-Tone Re-Linking

Neither syncope nor apocope being productive in DS, there is little need for a re-linking process of the type *Cv̄Cv̄(Cv)* > *Cv̄C(Cv)* or *Cv̄Cv̄(Cv)* > *Cv̄C(Cv)*. Such a process is common in those Dogon languages that do have productive vowel-deletion rules.

§3.5.3.2 mentions *gín dà* ‘at/in (the) house’ from *gìné dà:*, as well as plural logophoric *ŋjém-bè* from singular *ŋjémé*. §3.5.3.3 mentions alternations in locative adverbs of the type *ŋgó-nì ~ ŋgó-ñ* ‘here’.

A more complex situation is that of imperfective negatives and past anterior subordinated forms of mediopassive verbs based on /LH/-toned stems ending in *yy* and *ŋŋ*, such as *dàŋŋ-é-* ‘sit’ and *wéyy-é-* ‘winnow in wind’. The mediopassive suffix appears as short *-í-* for these verbs before vowel-initial suffixes, by Prevocalic V-Raising (§3.5.6.1), and the combinations */yyi/* and */ŋŋi/* are subject to Palatal Coalescence (§3.5.3.4), effectively erasing *-í-* segmentally and stranding its tone. This leads to outputs of the type *dàŋŋ-Ø-éłé* ‘does not sit’ and *wéyy-Ø-éłé* ‘does not winnow’, where the stranded H-tone is realized in the coda of the first syllable. The phonetics (syllabification, duration of palatal) are tricky, but I usually hear a rising tone on the first syllable.

#### 3.7.4.5 Leftward Tone-Pushing

*jé:lè-w* ‘don’t bring!’ becomes *jé:lé-w* with polar interrogative final L-tone, see (282) in §10.6.3.3. When a final L-tone is appended to H.<LH>, the result is <HL>.<HL>. That is, both tone components of the original <LH> syllable are shifted one mora to the left.

In spite of a suggestive resemblance, this is analytically distinct from what happens in alternations like that in the perfectives *yél-è-j̄* ‘I came’ versus *yél-é-ŋ̄* ‘you-Pl came’. The difference here is that 1Sg *-ŋ̄* is atonal while 2Pl *-j̄* is L-toned. The {LH} overlay for 1st/2nd person perfectives is therefore realized with the H-tone on the suffixal nasal in the 1Sg form, but it is blocked by the preexisting L-tone on the 2Pl suffix. There is no need to push the H-tone leftward in the 2Pl form, rather it never reaches the suffixal nasal.

Leftward Tone-Pushing as in *jé:lé-w* is a rarity, since only ‘bring’ and ‘convey’ (frozen verb compounds) ever have two separate H-toned, and of these only ‘bring’ ever contracts the onset of the compound into a *Cv:* syllable.

## 3.8 Intonation contours

### 3.8.1 Phrase-final prolongation

The basic NP conjunction construction ‘X and Y’ is *[X lè] [Y lè]*. The two conjuncts may be separated by a prosodic break similar to sentence-final breaks. Especially in the first conjunct, the conjunction particle *lè* (presumably identifiable as the all-purpose, including comitative, postposition *lè*), is often intonationally lengthened: *[X lè→] [Y lè]* ‘X and Y’. For examples see §7.1.1.

*mà→* is the disjunction (‘or’) for clauses and NPs (§7.2.1) and the polar interrogative particle (§13.2.1.2). These two functions are related and may be reducible to one, since a yes/no question is logically a choice between two mutually exclusive options (usually positive and negative). The particle is frequently prolonged beyond normal phonemic long-vowel duration.

These are just the most grammaticalized cases of intonational prolongation. In narrative and conversation, above- or below-median pitch can be applied at the end of prosodic groups for rhetorical effect or turn management.

### 3.8.2 Expressive elements with lexically specified prolongation (→)

Certain expressive adverbials such as *těj→* ‘straight’ (§8.4.7.2) are regularly pronounced with variable prolongation of the final segment (vowel or sonorant), except when iterated (*těj-těj*). The duration of the prolongation is variable, with above-average duration used for rhetorical effect. The fact that a final sonorant can be prolonged shows that this is an “intonational” effect rather than ordinary phonemic gemination (final *CC* clusters do not occur in DS).

The evaluative adverb *èdú→* ‘well’ brings out an important phonetic point. This is because the prolongation here is of an H-toned syllable. Within the regular tone system, a final long vowel would have to be contoured <HL> or <LH> rather than a prolonged H-tone.

### 3.8.3 Dying-quail intonational effect .:

In some other Dogon languages, a grammaticalized “intonational” effect is found in certain constructions, consisting of variable prolongation of the final segment (→) combined with gradual pitch decline. The pitch decline is only audible after a final H-tone, but prolongation is always audible. I call this the **dying quail** effect. The most obvious example is NP conjunction in Jamsay and a few other languages, where this effect functions as the ‘and’ conjunction, there being no other conjunctive marker: Jamsay *je-m.: àr"ú-m.:* ‘women and men’, heard as [*je-m* *àr"ú-m*] with a possible prosodic break between the two.

In Dogon languages with an overt ‘and’ particle following both conjuncts, the only intonational effect is prolongation on the particle, especially after the left conjunct. This was noted for DS as mentioned in the preceding section.

However, a dying-quail effect was observed in “conjoined” antecedents in willy-nilly conditionals, which lack the usual ‘if’ clitic *=yo* or any other conjunction or subordinator. The DS construction can be approximated by the formula [[it rained.:] [it didn’t rain.:]], [I’m going to the fields], meaning ‘whether it rains or not, I’m going ...’. See §16.3 for

details and an example. The dying-quail effect applies to both antecedent clauses, though as mentioned above the pitch drop is only audible when the verb otherwise ends in an H-tone.

### 3.8.4 Polar interrogative final L-tone

Polar questions ('Did you go?', 'Aren't you coming?') can be formed by adding a terminal tone modification to the final syllable of the clause-final verb, with no (other) overt interrogative morpheme. There is no audible change if the verb already ends in an L-tone. If it ends in an H-tone (including rising <LH>), the change is the addition of a terminal L-tone to make the final syllable <HL>-toned. A final *CV* becomes *CV̄:*, the vowel lengthened enough to allow the contour tone to be articulated (§3.7.4.1). A final *CVL* (with *L* a sonorant) becomes *CV̄L*, with the H-tone element pushed back (§3.7.4.5) to allow the sonorant to carry to intonational L-tone. For examples see (371a-c) in §13.2.1.

The interrogative modification differs from the dying-quail intonational effect (§3.8.3) found in willy-nilly conditional antecedents (§16.3) in that prolongation of the final segment is absent, except for vowel lengthening necessary to articulate a contour tone. The polar-interrogative effect can be accounted for by the regular tonology; it suffices to add a final L-tone to the verb.

In interlinears, the interrogative effect is indicated by ".Q" at the end of the verb.

## 4 Nominal, pronominal, and adjectival morphology

### 4.1 Nouns

#### 4.1.1 Simple nouns (singular *-nv*, plural *-ŋ* and *-mbè*)

Most human nouns, other than kin terms and a few irregular nouns, have a suffixed opposition of *-nv* (with variable vowel quality) for singular versus *-ŋ* for plural. The plural suffix is sometimes also found on nonhuman nouns. These suffixes are only added to nouns, and are not repeated on adjectives. A second plural suffix, *-mbè*, is not limited to humans and is added once, to the last word in the N(-Adj)(-Det) sequence. If *-mbè* is added directly to human plural *-ŋ*, the latter is usually inaudible except in very careful pronunciation. If *-mbè* occurs on a postnominal modifier, a human noun may take either singular or plural form. *-mbè* is absent if a nonsingular numeral is present. After a stem-final H-tone, as in *idú-mbè* ‘dogs’, the suffixal *m* continues the H-tone, i.e. [idúmbè].

*-mbè* also has a second function as a list conjunction, added to each member of a list, usually of three or more elements, but implying that there are additional unmentioned elements beyond the overt ones. In this function, *-mbè* can be added to singular nouns, including place names (§7.1.3).

The surface forms of the singular suffix, omitting tone, are *-na*, *-ne*, and *-nɔ*. We find *-na* only after a stem with an *a*-vowel. Other stems have +ATR *-ne* or, with Back/Rounding Harmony, *-nɔ*. Both the singular and plural suffixes are preserved before a modifying adjective.

#### (18) Human nouns

singular	plural	gloss
a. simple noun		
<i>bèl-gír(ù)-nè</i>	<i>bèlì-ŋ-gírì-ŋ</i>	‘herder’
<i>írì-nè</i>	<i>írì-ŋ</i>	‘blacksmith’
<i>yù:-wán-nè</i>	<i>yù:-wálì-ŋ</i>	‘farmer’ (< verb <i>wàlá</i> )
<i>púlò-nò</i>	<i>púlò-ŋ</i>	‘Fulbe person’
<i>dògò-nó</i>	<i>dògò-ŋ</i>	‘Dogon person’
<i>wònjù-nó</i>	<i>wònjù-ŋ</i>	‘visitor’
<i>dònnò-nó</i>	<i>dònnò-ŋ</i>	‘Donno person’
<i>yà:-ná</i>	<i>yà:-ŋ</i>	‘woman’
b. noun plus adjective		
<i>írì-nè<sup>L</sup> pà:dé:</i>	<i>írì-ŋ<sup>L</sup> pà:dé:-mbè</i>	‘bad blacksmith’
or: <i>írì-nè<sup>L</sup> pà:dé:-mbè</i>		

Nonhuman nouns, whether animate or inanimate, have a basic stem that can be used without modification for singular or plural reference. Those nouns that are semantically individuatable are optionally pluralized by suffix *-mbè*.

(19) Nonhuman nouns

	stem	marked plural	gloss
a. animate			
	<i>ìdú</i>	<i>ìdú-mbè</i>	'dog'
	<i>ènē</i>	<i>ènē-mbè</i>	'goat'
	<i>nàŋá</i>	<i>nàŋá-mbè</i>	'cow'
	<i>pédù</i>	<i>pédù-mbè</i>	'sheep'
b. inanimate			
	<i>tànná</i>	<i>tànná-mbè</i>	'stick'
	<i>tíbú</i>	<i>tíbú-mbè</i>	'stone'
	<i>tímmé</i>	<i>tímmé-mbè</i>	'tree'
c. noun plus adjective			
	<i>ènè<sup>L</sup> g̊éŋ</i>	<i>ènè<sup>L</sup> g̊é(y)-mbè</i>	'black goat'
	<i>tíbù<sup>L</sup> pílù</i>	<i>tíbù<sup>L</sup> pílù-mbè</i>	'white stone'

The minimal shape of a noun stem is *Cv*: or *CvL* with final sonorant. Examples are *bôy* 'name' and *dô:* 'parasitic herb sp. (*Striga*)'. The lexical tone of a bimoraic (monosyllabic or *CvCv*) noun stem is either /HL/ or /LH/. Heavier stems may be /HL/, /LH/, or /LHL/ (§3.7.1.3).

#### 4.1.2 Irregular nouns ('man', 'child', 'person')

No morphologically irregular nonhuman nouns have been observed, since the only common suffix, plural *-mbè*, does not interact phonologically with the stem. Among high-frequency nonhuman nouns are *kidé* 'thing' and *yàlú* 'place'.

Irregular nouns with human reference are in (20).

(20)	singular	plural	gloss
	<i>àn-ná</i>	<i>ànà-íj</i>	'man'
	<i>í:</i>	<i>úlù-ŋ</i>	'child'
	<i>ñdé</i>	<i>ñdé-(íj-)mbè</i>	'person'

'Man' is only slightly irregular phonologically (syncope of the second vowel of *àná* in the singular), cf. adjective *àná* 'male'. 'Child' has a suppletive plural. 'Person' is irregular in being pluralizable only with *-mbè* instead of just *-ŋ*. In *ñdé-(íj-)mbè*, the *ŋ* is rarely heard. Historically, it is possible that the etymon of *ñdé* 'person' is related to the source of the human singular suffix *-nv* (with variable vowel).

*yà:-ná* (plural *yà:-ŋ*) 'woman', not shown in (20), is morphologically regular as a common noun.

For compounds containing 'child', 'woman', and 'man' as initials or finals, see §5.1.6-7.

#### 4.1.3 ‘So-and-so’ (*má:nù*)

‘So-and-so’ (Fr *un tel, une telle*), is a variable denoting a function over personal names. It is used in generalizations that require mention of a generic personal name. For example, “if some guy gives you trouble, tell him ‘hey so-and-so, ...’”

#### 4.1.4 Initial *Cv(N)*- reduplication in nouns

This is not a regular pattern in DS, which favors full-stem iteration §4.1.6. The examples in (21) also occur in other Dogon languages and may be inter-Dogon borrowings.

- (21) a. *Cv-*  
*bè-bèlé* ‘tree sp. (*Pterocarpus*)’
- b. *CvN-*  
*tén-tèŋènè* ‘mole viper (*Atractaspis*)’

A minor *Cv-Cv:* pattern including well-adapted loanwords is seen in (22).

- (22) a. vowel quality constant
- pà-pây* ‘papaya’ (Fr. *papaye*)  
*nà-nây* ‘mint’ (ultimately Arabic *naʃnaaʃ-*)
- b. vowel quality different  
*sì-sô.* ‘scissors’ (Fr. *ciseaux*)

#### 4.1.5 Final reduplications in nouns

This too is not a regular pattern. One isolated example is in (23).

- (23) *gàmmà-kòñòñó* ‘genet (mammal)’

#### 4.1.6 Nouns with full-stem iteration

##### 4.1.6.1 Two-part

Quite a few nouns have a lexicalized iterated form. They include flora-fauna and body parts (especially joints). The uniterated stem is generally not attested. Tone melodies are lexically variable, but there is only one H-tone per word. The base is typically bisyllabic.

- (24) a. H.L-L.L
- kódù-kòdù* ‘viper’ (*Echis*)  
*kóybè-kòybè* ‘plant sp.’ (*Sansevieria*)  
*tábù-tábù* ‘shoulder’  
*tóŋgù-tóŋgù* ‘elbow’

<i>as compound final</i>	
<i>bilè-[kólò-kòlò]</i>	‘tree sp.’ ( <i>Maerua</i> )
<i>nùmò-[kárù-kárù]</i>	‘armpit’
<b>b. L.L-H.L</b>	
<i>kèdè-kédè</i>	‘fun, playing’
<i>kìdù-kídù</i>	‘bat’
<i>kindù-kíndù</i>	‘soul’
<i>mènè-ménè</i>	‘ants’
<i>pérù-pérù</i>	‘sandgrouse’
<i>pùrù-púrù</i>	‘millet fritters’
<i>tèbù-tébù</i>	‘hawk spp.’
<i>wòbò-wóbò</i>	‘thick-knee (bird)’
<i>kìndù-kíndù</i>	‘shadow’ (cf. <i>kindé</i> : ‘shade’)
<i>as compound final</i>	
<i>[kàŋ-kàŋ]-[bélè-bélè]</i>	‘hiccough’
<i>nùmò-[kòlò-kòló]</i>	‘wrist’
<b>c. L.L-L.H</b>	
<i>bérè-béré</i>	‘belly’
<i>gàbà-gàbá</i>	‘spitting cobra’
<i>kòlò-kòló</i>	‘neck’
<i>lògò-lògó</i>	‘foothold (in well shaft)’
<i>wèlè-wélè</i>	‘swift (bird)’
<i>kàlì-kálí</i>	‘tall grass ( <i>Aristida</i> )’ (< <i>kálí</i> ‘bamboo’)
<i>dímmè-dímmé</i>	‘forehead’
<i>gèmmè-gèmmé</i>	‘waterjar shard (for carrying embers)’
<i>nòmmù-nòmmú</i>	‘low spot, depression in ground’
<i>mediopassive</i>	
<i>jùbì:-jùbí:</i>	‘fan (n)’, cf. verb <i>jùb-é:-</i> ‘fan oneself’
<i>borrowing</i>	
<i>(wògòtòrò)-pù:sù-pù:sú</i>	‘push-cart’ (local Fr. <i>pousse-pousse</i> )

*kéb-kébè* ‘herb sp. (*Zornia*)’ is similar tonally to (24a) but it appears to have lost a vowel by syncope.

In each example in (25) we observe a vowel change in an otherwise iterated form. A mid-height vowel in the first iteration is replaced by *a* in the second.

(25)	<i>gòlòŋ-gálāj</i>	‘long-tailed glossy starling’
	<i>gòlò-gálà</i>	‘tree sp. ( <i>Gardenia</i> )’
	<i>tèŋgè-táŋgà</i>	‘Dogon stilt dancers’
	<i>gùlɔ́ lòbù-làbú</i>	‘small trimming ax’ (< <i>gùlɔ́</i> ‘ax’)

There are a few lexically iterated stems with monosyllabic bases. Cognates in several other Dogon languages have short-voweled *Cv-* reduplication instead of full-stem iteration.

- (26) a. *Cv:-Cv:*  
*/L/-/HL/*
- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <i>kè:-kē:</i>                   | ‘beetle, bug’                           |
| <i>kà:-kâ:</i>                   | ‘grasshopper’                           |
| <i>bà:-bâ:</i>                   | ‘grandfather’                           |
| <i>gè:dè<sup>L</sup> pè:-pê:</i> | ‘breeze’, cf. <i>gé:dè</i> ‘wind (n)’   |
| <i>bò:-bô:-nò</i>                | ‘Bobo (=Bwamu) person’ (with Sg suffix) |
| <i>gò:-gô:-nò</i>                | ‘griot’ (with Sg suffix)                |
- /LH/-/L/*
- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>gă:“-gă:”<sup>n</sup></i> | ‘pied crow’ (onomatopoeic) |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|

- b. *CvL-CvL* (*L* = sonorant)

*/H/-/L/*

<i>kéy-kèy</i>	‘tree sp. ( <i>Combretum</i> )’
<i>bóy-bòy</i>	‘carp’, variant <i>bó:-bòy</i>

*/L/-/HL/*

<i>tùn-tûŋ</i>	‘leech’
<i>pùm-pûŋ</i>	‘shrub sp. ( <i>Calotropis</i> )’

Another caste name similar to ‘griot’ is *né:né* ‘griot who travels with holy men’, but since the second syllable is not long it does not qualify as an iteration.

A *CvCvCv-CvCvCv* iteration with tones in parallel is *gòrúbù-gòrúbù* ‘shrub sp. (*Guiera*)’.

An intriguing but difficult case is *pùdòŋkùdɔŋ* ‘menstruation house’, which might be “parsed” as *[pù-dɔŋ]-[kù-dɔŋ]* though the ingredients do not occur elsewhere. A similar form is *bìdīŋgìdīŋ* ‘traditional animist rites’, possibly parsable as *[bì-dīŋ]-[gì-dīŋ]* attested in *bìdīŋ-gìdīŋ<sup>L</sup> ságùrù-[bà-ŷ]*, a type of rattle (*ságùrù*) formerly played (*bà:*) in rites. It is obscurely related to *bìdigìn-né* ‘traditional animist’ (compare Jamsay *bìdigà-bídígé-n* ‘magician’).

#### 4.1.6.2 Three-part

In tripartite X-X'-X, the medial iteration has *a*-vowels. In the fauna terms (27a) the flanking iterations also happen to have *a*-vowels, so one does not notice the change. In the semi-onomatopoeic (27b-c) the flanking iterations have a nonlow vowel and the change is obvious. The tone pattern is either L-L-LH (final rise) or symmetrical X-L-X with medial L-tone and some other tone on both flanking iterations.

- (27) a. *jàn-jàn-jàrú* ‘climbing vine sp. (*Cissus*)’.  
*gàŋ-gàŋ-gă:”<sup>n</sup>* ‘noisy bustard sp. (*Eupodotis*)’
- b. *hō:-hà:-hō: ~ hō:-hà:-hō:* ‘noisy chatter’  
*wō:-wà:-wō:* ‘noisy chatter’
- c. *wěy-wày-wěy ~ wèy-wày-wěy* ‘children’s noisy chatter’

#### 4.1.7 Frozen initial *a-* in nouns

There are very few candidates for a recognizable *a-* prefix in noun stems. Among fauna terms I can cite only ‘crocodile’. This and ‘wrestling’ are not clearly segmentable (28a). The prefix is recognizable in (28b), compare verb *témbè* ‘find’, with extended sense ‘inherit, acquire (sth passed down by elders)’.

- (28) a. *ágèŋ* ‘crocodile’  
*àjírì* ‘wrestling’
- b. *à-témbù* ‘(animist) rites, customary practices’

## 4.2 Derived nominals

### 4.2.1 Characteristic derivative (-gí-nè)

This suffix can be added to a noun stem that denotes a chronic attribute, such as a distinctive appendage or a long-lasting condition such as a disease. The noun stem is tone-dropped. The derivative functions as a noun or adjective denoting the whole entity, usually a person or animal. The suffixed human forms, singular *-gí-nè* and plural *-gí-ŋì*, are extended to animals.

	noun	gloss	Characteristic	gloss
a. condition				
	<i>lùlò</i>	‘disease’	<i>lùlò-gí-nè</i>	‘sick person’
	<i>gě:</i>	‘hunger’	<i>gě:-gí-nè</i>	‘malnourished one’
	<i>wéde</i>	‘insanity’	<i>wéde-gí-nè</i>	‘crazy person’
	<i>yàmùlú</i>	‘stupidity’	<i>yàmùlú-gí-nè</i>	‘idiot’
b. body part				
	<i>jóŋgò</i>	‘hump’	<i>jóŋgò-gí-nè</i>	‘humped’ (e.g. cow)
	<i>gámbùrù</i>	‘wing’	<i>gámbùrù-gí-nè</i>	‘winged’ (e.g. ant)
	<i>kílè</i>	‘horn’	<i>kílè-gí-nè</i>	‘horned’ (e.g. viper)
c. abstract attribute				
	<i>kè:lé</i>	‘money’	<i>kè:lé-gí-nè</i>	‘rich person’
	<i>děw</i>	‘poverty’	<i>děw-gí-nè</i>	‘poor person’
	<i>sémbè</i>	‘power’	<i>sémbè-gí-nè</i>	‘strong, powerful (one)’
	<i>bíndú</i>	‘stomach’	<i>bíndú-gí-nè</i>	‘glutton’

This morphological construction competes with a transparent syntactic construction consisting of a relative clause with ‘have’ plus object, or with ‘be’ plus a comitative PP.

- (30) a. *yùgùrù*<sup>L</sup> *kílè* *sé:=gò*  
 snake<sup>L</sup> horn have.Ppl=Def  
 ‘a snake that has horns’

- b. *yùgùrù<sup>L</sup>* [kílè lè] wó:=gò  
 snake<sup>L</sup> [horn Comit] be.Ppl=Def  
 ‘a snake that is with horns’

When the defining feature is expressed as an N-Adj combination, as in *[nùmò-mày]-gí-nè* ‘miserly’ from *nùmò mǎy* ‘dry (=hard) hand’ (cf. *tight-fisted*), the characteristic derivative competes with bahuvrihi compounds (§5.2).

## 4.2.2 Verbal nouns

### 4.2.2.1 Productive verbal noun with suffix *-du*

This is the productive abstractive verbal noun. For most verbs (but not quasi-verbs) it can be elicited in contexts such as ‘dancing/swimming/walking is (not) good’. For some verbs whose cognate nominal is very common, it can be initially difficult to elicit the verbal noun with *-du*.

/HL/-toned verbs have an initial-syllable H-tone followed by L-tones. /LH/-toned verbs realize the H-tone only on the suffix (*-dú*). The irregular *Cv lv* stems that have imperfectives of the type *Cv:-jè* have similar verbal nouns of the form *Cv:-ju*. This detail points to a morphological (and by extension semantic) relationship of this verbal noun with the imperfective aspect. See also (472d-e) and comments thereon in §15.3.2.1.

#### (31) a. /HL/-toned

<i>yô:</i>	<i>yó:-dù</i>	‘go in’
<i>yâ:</i>	<i>yá:-dù</i>	‘spend night’
<i>jâ:</i>	<i>já:-dù</i>	‘eat (meal)’
<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká:-dù</i>	‘shave’
<i>ágà</i>	<i>ágà-dù</i>	‘catch’
<i>égré</i>	<i>égré-dù</i>	‘hear’
<i>kédè</i>	<i>kédè-dù</i>	‘cut’
<i>kán(à)</i>	<i>kánà-dù</i>	‘do’
<i>óbò</i>	<i>óbò-dù</i>	‘give’
<i>údò</i>	<i>údò-dù</i>	‘build’
<i>yímè</i>	<i>yímè-dù</i>	‘die’
<i>támbà</i>	<i>támbà-dù</i>	‘kick’
<i>yéyy-è:-</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-dù</i>	‘sleep’
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-dù</i>	‘go back’

#### b. /LH/-toned

<i>gó:</i>	<i>gó:-dú</i>	‘go out’
<i>wă:</i>	<i>wà:-dú</i>	‘see’
<i>ńd-é:-</i>	<i>ńd-é:-dú</i>	‘bathe’
<i>ùrò</i>	<i>ùrò-dú</i>	‘skin and butcher’
<i>yàbá</i>	<i>yàbà-dú</i>	‘accept’
<i>gèndé</i>	<i>gèndè-dú</i>	‘look’
<i>dàjn-é:-</i>	<i>dàjn-é:-dú</i>	‘sit’
<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yàbìl-é:-dú</i>	‘reply’

c. irregular *CvIv* verbs

<i>bèlē</i>	<i>bè-jú</i>	'get, obtain'
<i>bòlō</i>	<i>bò-jú</i>	'go'
<i>gàlá</i>	<i>gà-jú</i>	'pass'
<i>yèlē</i>	<i>yè-jú</i>	'come'

This verbal noun cannot be formed from any stative quasi-verb. Attempts to elicit 'having X' with *sè* 'have' and even 'wanting X' with *nàmà* 'want' were rephrased with the verbal noun *bè-jú* of active verb *bèlē* 'get, obtain'. Likewise *wò* 'be' and *tò* 'be in' as verbal nouns were rephrased with *bè:-dú* from *bě:* 'remain'. This extends to other constructions involving *wò*, e.g. *igù wó* 'know', whose verbal noun was rephrased based on *igù bě:*.

In verb chains, only the final verb can be made into a verbal noun. The nonfinal verb may be in the chaining form, or it may have the suffix complex *-a:-nì* (§15.2.2.4). For examples and discussion see §15.1.1.

#### 4.2.2.2 Nominalization with suffix *-Iv*

The vowel quality of the suffix is spread from the stem. This suffix is used in compound nominalizations, which are listed in §5.1.3.2. The initial corresponds to a specialized subject noun in predication of temporal transition, whether day-night or seasonal (§11.1.1.4).

#### 4.2.2.3 Product-of-action nominals with suffix *-ú ~ -ý*

Some verbs are associated with a nominal in *-ú* (except *-ý* after monosyllabic stem or mediopassive derivative) alongside the abstractive verbal noun in *-du*. The stem is {L}-toned. The nominal denotes the product or result of the action.

(32)	nominal	gloss	verb and gloss
	<i>jòr-ú</i>	'blister (n)'	<i>jòró</i> '(blister) form'
	<i>pàg-ú</i>	'bundle (n)'	<i>págà</i> 'tie up, bind'
	<i>yím-ú</i>	'death'	<i>yímè</i> 'die'
	<i>sàgünd-ú</i>	'announcement'	<i>ságàndà</i> 'broadcast, spread (news)'
	<i>mùŋ-ú</i>	'knot'	<i>mùŋó</i> 'tie a knot'
	<i>tùm-ú</i>	'a dry measure'	<i>tùmò</i> 'weigh'
	<i>tòŋ-ú</i>	'writing'	<i>tòŋð</i> 'write'
	<i>mà:ndùg-ú</i>	'(a) thought'	<i>mà:ndùg-é:-</i> 'think'
	<i>kùbò-[nàmm-ú]</i>	'footprint'	<i>námmà</i> 'step on' ( <i>kúbò</i> 'foot')

Other nouns of this shape such as *tòy* in *tòy tɔ̄:* 'slash earth to sow seeds' may have originated in this way.

These nominals are closely related to deverbal adjectives of the same shapes that are used as modifiers after other nouns, as in *nàjà<sup>L</sup> pòr-ú* 'castrated bull (ox)' from *pòrð* 'castrate' (§4.5.2). Locational and instrumental compounds also have finals with these shapes (§5.1.5.2). There are also many cognate nominals ending in *-u*, though most have a falling rather than rising word-level tone pattern (§11.1.2.5).

#### 4.2.3 Derivational suffix *-e*:

In (33), a nominal appears to have an *-ê*: suffix related to the mediopassive suffix on the cognate verb. In this case, the nominal denotes the instrument.

(33)	nominal	gloss	related verb
	<i>ùd-ê</i> :	‘bellows (blower)’	<i>ùd-é:-</i> ‘blow’

There is no productive morphology for instrument nominals (‘scrubber’, ‘grinder’, etc.). There are a number of cognate nominals of verbs that end in a possibly segmentable *e*: , *i*: , or (*e*)*y*, see (303e) in §11.1.2.5. *mòmè*: ‘scorpion’ is most likely an old diminutive.

#### 4.2.4 Uncompounded agentives

Nearly all attested agentive nominals are compounds. For example, ‘dancer’ is expressed as ‘dance(n)<sup>L</sup>-dance(v)-Agentive’, with incorporated object in the form of a cognate nominal. See §5.1.5.1 for examples and discussion.

A possible uncompounded agentive is *dùgù-nó* ‘sorceror’. It is related to the noun-verb collocation *dúgù dùgó* ‘cast spells, practice sorcery’, which also yields a productive compound agentive *dùgù-dúgù-nè* ‘sorceror’. The semantic difference is that *dùgù-nó* is more essentialistic, denoting a member of a caste or guild of sorcerors, while *dùgù-dúgù-nè* could refer to anyone who practices sorcery.

The few underived “agentive” nominals such as ‘hunter’ in (34) are likewise best considered caste names rather than agentives in the usual sense. Each (low) caste is associated with one or two specific occupations (hunting, dye-ing, leatherwork, forging metal, etc.).

(34)	“agentive”	gloss	related predicate	gloss
	<i>dànná:-nà</i>	‘hunter’	<i>dànná kán(à)</i>	‘do hunting, hunt’
	<i>wáyngè-nè</i>	‘butcher’	<i>wáyngè kán(à)</i>	‘do butchery’
	<i>írù-nè</i>	‘blacksmith’	(none)	

#### 4.2.5 Iterated deadjectival abstractives

A number of adjectives denoting scalar dimensions have an abstractive nominalization with full-stem iteration. The first iteration drops tones to {L}. The second iteration has either rising (35a) or falling (35b) tone pattern. The tone pattern partially follows the lexical melody of the adjective, but for adjectives not denoting spatial measurement (‘cold’, ‘sweet’) we get the falling pattern even for /LH/ adjectives. Either member of a scale (‘tall’, ‘short’) may feed into this derivation.

(35)	abstractive	gloss	adjective	gloss
a. {L}-{LH}				
<i>adjective /LH/</i>				
	<i>pàlà-pàlá</i>	'length'	<i>pàlá</i>	'long'
	<i>dùmbù-dùmbú</i>	'shortness'	<i>dùmbú</i>	'short'
	<i>tòlò-tòló</i>	'height'	<i>tòló</i>	'tall'
	<i>tō:-tō:</i>	'depth'	<i>tō:</i>	'deep'
	<i>wàgù-wàgú</i>	'distance'	<i>wàgú</i>	'distant'
b. {L}-{HL}				
<i>adjective /HL/</i>				
	<i>gèŋ-gèŋ</i>	'blackness'	<i>gèŋ</i>	'black'
	<i>bànù-bánù</i>	'redness'	<i>bánù</i>	'red'
	<i>wàyà-wàyà</i>	'breadth'	<i>wàyà</i>	'wide, broad, spacious'
	<i>tònnò-tònnò</i>	'hardness'	<i>tònnò</i>	'hard'
	<i>dògòdò-dògòdò</i>	'weight'	<i>dògòdò</i>	'heavy'
<i>adjective /LH/</i>				
	<i>kèllù-kéllù</i>	'coldness'	<i>kèllú</i>	'cold'
	<i>èllù-èllù</i>	'sweetness'	<i>èllú</i>	'sweet'

For 'height' there is also an underived synonym *gòbě:*.

Abstractives may be combined phrasally with other words. The noun *dégè* means 'statuette' referring to small animist idols carved from wood or stone. It can also mean 'unusually short person (dwarf, pygmy)'. To clarify that the latter sense is at hand one can say *dùmbù-dùmbó=ò dégè* with the definite form of *dùmbù-dùmbú* 'shortness'. The two nouns in this construction are tonally independent; see §5.1.1.

### 4.3 Pronouns

#### 4.3.1 Basic personal pronouns

Nonpossessive personal pronouns are in (36). The independent forms also occur in relative clauses as subject proclitics to the verb. Accusative forms are phonologically regular. Pronominal-subject suffixes on verbs may co-occur with optional overt independent pronouns in subject function. The suffixes partially merge 1Sg, 1Pl, and 2Pl. After back rounded vowels, a palatalized onset is audible for 1Pl and 2Pl but not 1Sg. In some inflectional categories the 1Sg and 1Pl differ tonally from the 2Pl: *mí yèlè-íj* 'I came', *émmè yèlè-íj* 'we came', but *é yèlé-íj* 'you-Pl came'. The 1Sg suffix (or a homophone) is also used for logophoric subject (§18.3.2).

#### (36) Personal pronouns (nonpossessive)

			subject	
	independent	accusative	preverbal	suffixed
1Sg	<i>mí</i>	<i>mì=íj</i>	<i>mí</i>	<i>-íj (-íj ~ -íj̝)</i>
1Pl	<i>émmè</i>	<i>émmè=íj</i>	<i>émmè</i>	<i>-(y)íj (-íj ~ -íj̝)</i>

2Sg	<u>ú</u>	<u>ù=ý</u>	<u>ú</u>	- <u>ŵ</u> (perfective - <u>ŵ</u> )
2Pl	<u>é</u>	<u>è=ý</u>	<u>é</u>	-( <u>ŷ</u> )
3Sg	wó	wò=ý	wó	-∅
3Pl	bé	bè=ý	bé	[varies by AN category]

For inanimate *kó* and related forms, see §4.4.2.

Possession is inalienable (kin terms) or alienable. For inalienable possession, the independent pronouns precede the noun: *mí<sup>L</sup> bá:* ‘my father’, *ú<sup>L</sup> bá:* ‘your-Sg father’, etc. For alienable possession (all other nouns), a special set of L-toned possessor pronouns including a morpheme *-mò* follow the noun: *pédù m̄-mò* ‘my sheep-Sg’, etc. When they occur absolutely, i.e. without a noun (but normally with the definite clitic), the pronominal is H-toned, and the 1Sg form is resyllabified.

### (37) Alienable possessor pronouns

	postnominal	absolute (definite)
1Sg	<i>m̄-mò</i>	<i>m̄ó=ð</i>
1Pl	<i>ém-mò</i>	<i>ém-mò=ð</i>
2Sg	<i>ù-mò</i>	<i>ú-mò=ð</i>
2Pl	<i>è-mò</i>	<i>é-mò=ð</i>
3Sg	<i>wò-mò</i>	<i>wó-mò=ð</i>
3Pl	<i>bè-mò</i>	<i>bé-mò=ð</i>

Plural *-mbè* is added to the postposed possessor, but plural suffix *-ŋ* stays with the noun: *pédù m̄-mò-mbè* ‘my sheep-Pl’, *yà:-ý ù-mò-mbè* ‘your-Sg women (wives)’.

1Pl *émmè* is reduced to one syllable in possessive *èm-mò*. A similar reduction occurs optionally in the high-frequency combination *émmè lèy* ~ *émm lèy* ~ *ém lèy* ‘we two, the two of us’.

1Sg *m̄-mò* usually simplifies to *mò* after a noun ending in *ŋ* (including nouns ending in the plural suffix): *ènè-ý mò* ‘my goats’. Likewise absolute *m̄ó* ‘mine’ in *m̄ó rà:* ‘at my house, chez moi’ (§8.2.1).

### 4.3.2 Personal pronouns as complements of postpositions

Simple postpositions (not possessive in form) like dative or instrumental *lè* are added to the independent forms of the pronoun: *mí lè* ‘to me’, *ú lè* ‘to you’.

### 4.3.3 Lengthened forms of pronouns

3Pl *bé* can be expanded to *bě*: prepausally or as topic. The shift to rising tone is phonologically regular as the H-tone seeks the final mora. Examples are (556a) and text 01 at 00:31 and 01:30.

- (38) *n̩ē:* *y̩eŋ* *g̩i-â:* *b̩e:*,  
now thus say-PastAnt 3Pl,  
*b̩ɔy=g̩ɔ* *t̩ilù* *b̩é* *k̩an-ð=ð*  
tomtom=Def finish(n) 3Pl do-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
‘Now having said that, when they had finished (covering) the tomtom, ...’

Likewise 1Sg *m̩i*: from *m̩í* and 2Sg *ú*: from *ú*. This suggests that the ordinary *CV* forms are proclitic, requiring a following clitic or word.

## 4.4 Determiners

### 4.4.1 Definite =(*g̩*)*ð* (plural =(*g̩*)*ð*-*mb̩e*)

The definite clitic is =*g̩ð*. It optionally contracts with a final short vowel in a nonmonosyllabic stem, resulting in long [ɔ:] transcribed *ɔ-ɔ*, e.g. *p̩édù=g̩ð* ~ *p̩édð=ð* ‘the sheep-Sg’, *nàŋá=g̩ð* ~ *nàŋð=ð* ‘the cow’. Contraction does not occur after a long vowel or after a consonant: *p̩édù s̩é:n=g̩ð* ‘the good sheep-Sg’, *sé:dù l̩àŋùg̩è=g̩ð* ‘Seydou’s (same-sex) friend’, *i:g̩ð* ‘the child’, *yà:-j̩y=g̩ð-mb̩e* ‘the women’ (variant).

Definite clitic =*g̩ð* may occur with human or nonhuman nouns. Its linear position, following N-Adj-Num sequences and postposed pronominal possessors, is the same as that of demonstratives. Unlike demonstratives, the definite morpheme has no tonal effect on a preceding noun or N-Adj combination. For a constructional tonosyntactic interaction with numerals, see §6.5.3.

For nonhumans, plural suffix *-mb̩e* is added to =(*g̩*)*ð*. The same =(*g̩*)*ð*-*mb̩e* combination is used after human nouns, in which case the noun itself may be singular or plural in form, like *yà:-ná* (singular) and *yà:-j̩y* (plural) in (39b2).

- (39) a1. *p̩édù=g̩ð* ‘the (aforementioned) sheep-Sg’  
a2. *p̩édù=g̩ð-mb̩e* ‘the (aforementioned) sheep-Pl’  
b1. *yà:-ná=g̩ð* ‘the (aforementioned) woman’  
b2. *yà:-j̩y=g̩ð-mb̩e* ‘the (aforementioned) women’  
or: *yà:-ná=g̩ð-mb̩e*

=(*g̩*)*ð* is an ancient offshoot of demonstrative *k̩ð* (see just below) but the two are now divergent tonosyntactically.

Semantically, =(*g̩*)*ð* is a weak (i.e. nonemphatic) discourse-definite marker. It is used when the referent in question has been previously introduced in the discourse. My assistant accepted its combination with a personal name (*sé:dù=g̩ð* ‘that [same] Seydou’), though I do not believe it is common with such proper nouns except in special contexts like (40a). The definite suffix is not used English-style in connection with unique referents like ‘the sun’ that are cognitively accessible but that have not been part of the preceding discourse (40b).

- (40) a. *sé:dù=g̩ð* [[*hákile ù-mð*] *nì*] *y̩el-â:* *wð-Ø*  
S=Def [[mind 2Sg-Poss] Loc] come-PastAnt be-3SgSbj  
‘Is (that) Seydou coming into your mind?’ (i.e. ‘Do you remember ... ?’)

- b. *năŋ*      *dámb-i-*Ø  
 sun      go.up-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The sun has gone up.’ (around 9 AM)

#### 4.4.2 ‘This/that’ (deictic demonstrative pronouns)

Deictics are proximal *ŋgɔ́*, near-distal *kɔ́:* (< \*kú-kɔ́) and far-distal *yó-gò* (< \*yó-kɔ́). The near-distal demonstrative can also function as a strong discourse-definite, glossable as ‘that same X’.

These demonstratives contain skewed cognates of definite =*gò* ~ =*ɔ́* but they have diverged in form. *ŋgɔ́* and *yó-gò* do not co-occur with an additional definite marker. *kú=gò* however appears to be a definite-marked form of *kɔ́:*. It is generally used as a (recent) discourse-anaphoric ‘that (same)’, but *kɔ́:* occasionally has this function.

(41)	category	singular	plural
	proximal	<i>ŋgɔ́</i>	<i>ŋgɔ́-m̩bè</i>
	near-distal or discourse-definite	<i>kɔ́:</i>	<i>kɔ́:-m̩bè</i>
	discourse-definite	<i>kú=gò</i>	<i>kú=gò-m̩bè</i>
	far-distal	<i>yó-gò</i>	<i>yó-gò-m̩bè</i>

*kɔ́:* shortens to *kɔ́* before the locative postposition: (*X<sup>L</sup>*) *kɔ́-rà:* ‘in that (X)’. I hyphenate this as a single word (see the next section below). *kú* or definite *kú=gò* occurs instead of *kɔ́:* especially in discourse-definite combinations like [*bày<sup>L</sup> kú(=gò)*] *lè* ‘on that (same) day’, with postposition *lè* in temporal function. It appears as *kó* in the combinations *kó yá-wóy* ‘all that’ (§6.6.1) and instrumental *kó lè* ‘with that’. In some other Dogon languages, such as Jamsay, *kó* is an inanimate pronoun, often but not always discourse-definite.

These demonstratives, unlike the definite morpheme, control tone-dropping on a preceding noun or core NP: *pèdù<sup>L</sup> kɔ́:* ‘that sheep (nearby)’, *pèdù<sup>L</sup> yó-gò* ‘that sheep (distant)’, [*pèdù kùlè:*]<sup>L</sup> *kɔ́:-m̩bè* ‘those six sheep (nearby)’.

#### 4.4.3 Demonstrative adverbs

##### 4.4.3.1 Deictic and discourse-definite locative adverbs

The basic demonstrative-based locative adverbs are in (42). One type ends in *-nì*, the other in *-rà:*. Both endings occur elsewhere as locative postpositions (§8.2.1-2), with *dà:* ~ *rà:* being more productive. The near-distal form *kɔ́-rà:* ‘there’ with shortened *ɔ́* suggests that the postposition has become fused as a suffix in these adverbs. This is confirmed by the optional contraction *ñ-dâ:* for proximal *ŋgɔ́-rà:*. Cf. *kɔ́-njí:* ‘like that’ (§8.4.1).

My assistant rejected combinations of *-nì* with *lè* in the sense ‘toward, in the direction of’. He accepted only the *-rà:* in this combination (§8.1.4).

(42)	form	gloss
a. with <i>-nì</i>		
<i>ŋgó-nì</i> ~ <i>ŋgɔ̄-nì</i>	'here'	
<i>kó-nì</i>	'over there' (deictic, not far)	
<i>yó-gɔ̄-nì</i>	'over there' (deictic, farther away)	
(# <i>kú-nì</i> rejected)		
b. with <i>-rà:</i>		
<i>ŋgó-rà:</i> ~ <i>ndâ:</i>	'here'	
<i>kó-rà:</i>	'over there' (not far, or recent discourse-definite)	
<i>kú-rà:</i>	'over there' (not far, or recent discourse-definite)	
<i>yó-gɔ̄-rà:</i>	'over there' (deictic, farther away)	
<i>yé-rà:</i>	'there' (discourse-definite)	

In elicited utterances, *ŋgó-nì* is the common 'here' adverb. *ŋgó-rà:* has a more diffuse spatial sense and can mean 'around here'; see text 05 at 00:40. A similar distinction may be present with the near-distal and far-distal demonstratives, though analysis is difficult. Only *-rà:* occurs in the discourse-definite category.

#### 4.4.4 Presentatives ('here's ...!')

Presentative forms (cf. French *voici X*, *voilà X*) follow the relevant NP (often a pronoun): *ú kúwà:* 'there you-Sg are!', *sé:dù ñgà:* 'here's Seydou!'. The distal and proximal forms are related to the regular demonstrative stems. Singular and plural are distinguished, but I have some examples where the singular form is extended to plural NPs.

(43)	distal	singular	<i>kú-wò</i> ~ <i>kú-wà:</i>
		plural	<i>kú-wò-yà</i>
	proximal	singular	<i>ígà:</i>
		plural	<i>ígɔ̄-yà</i>

For *wálà:* (< French *voilà*) as a preclausal discourse marker, see §19.2.2.

### 4.5 Adjectives

#### 4.5.1 Inventory of adjectives

This section describes the forms of modifying adjectives. For adjectival predicates see §11.4. For de-adjectival verbs (inchoative and factitive) see §9.5. For adjectival intensifiers, either suppletive or derived by a special final reduplication, see §8.4.7.4. For other EAs derived from adjectives see §8.4.7.5-6.

Modifying adjectives immediately follow the noun and control tone-dropping on it (and on any intervening adjective). Human nouns that take the *-nv* singular suffix keep it on the noun and do not repeat it on the adjective. However, plural *-mbè* is added to the final adjective. For more on the syntax see §6.3.1.

Some adjectives also have an expressive adverbial (EA) counterpart ending in *-i→* with the tone carried over from the adjective. This form is occasionally found in modifying function within an NP, see *údú* and *ùd-i→* in (44a). In this case the EA, like the regular form, may be followed by plural *-mbè*, as in *ndè<sup>L</sup> ùd-i→-mbè* ‘small people’. However, the EA is especially associated with adjectival predicates involving the ‘it is’ clitic (§11.4.1.2). Other adjectives add the ‘it is’ clitic directly to the unmodified stem.

The main modifying adjectives are those in (44), organized roughly into semantic domains.

(44)	adjective	gloss
------	-----------	-------

a. size (2 or 3 dimensional) and age

<i>pô:</i>	‘big (house, tree, animal); fat (person)’
<i>dãy</i>	‘small (house)’
<i>ùdú</i>	‘small (house), thin (stick)’ (also <i>ùd-i:</i> )
<i>wáyà</i>	‘wide (passage), spacious (area)’
<i>èmmú</i>	‘cramped, confined (space)’
<i>òrî:</i>	‘young (e.g. 2-year old)’ (old diminutive)
<i>gùlɔ̄</i>	‘adolescent female (person, animal)’
<i>gàbú</i>	‘adult, full-grown (person, animal, tree)’
<i>păy</i>	‘old, elderly (person)’
<i>pěy</i>	‘old, used (object)’
<i>kàndá</i>	‘new’

b. length (one-dimensional measure)

<i>pàlá</i>	‘long; tall’
<i>tóló</i>	‘tall (person); lofty (tree, mountain)’
<i>dùmbú</i>	‘short (rope, person)’
<i>tō:</i>	‘deep (well, hole)’

c. distance (cf. adverbial *wàgú:* and *bérú:*, §8.4.5)

<i>wàgú</i>	‘distant, far away’
<i>bérú</i>	‘nearby, close by’

d. temperature and speed

<i>númò</i>	‘hot’ = ‘fast’
<i>kèllú</i>	‘cold, cool’ = ‘slow’

e. surface qualities

<i>ónònò</i>	‘smooth, sleek (texture)’
<i>kúnjú</i>	‘coarse (texture)’
<i>tónnò</i>	‘hard’
<i>yòrú</i>	‘soft; loose, slack’
<i>măy</i>	‘dry (clothing)’
<i>òlú</i>	‘wet (clothing)’

f. ease and pressure (see also *yɔ̄rú* above)

<i>pâŋ</i>	‘difficult (work)’ = ‘expensive’
<i>nàná</i>	‘easy (work)’ = ‘cheap’
<i>ɛ:.n</i>	‘tight’

g. weight

<i>wêy</i>	‘lightweight; weak; thin (wall)’
<i>dógòdò</i>	‘heavy; strong; thick (wall)’

h. taste

<i>nōŋ</i>	‘(cooked grain) plain, without sauce’
<i>wē:</i>	‘fresh (milk)’
<i>ámà</i>	‘sour (lemon, milk)’, homonym ‘plump’
<i>kúrò</i>	‘thick (liquid), undiluted, concentrated’
<i>sèlé</i>	‘diluted (with water), watery, soggy’
<i>èllú</i>	‘delicious, sweet’
<i>gallú</i>	‘bitter (like some medicines, e.g. from <i>Khaya</i> tree)’

i. sharpness

<i>sìndú</i>	‘sharp (blade)’
<i>dùmbú</i>	‘blunt (blade)’ (homonym ‘short’, with different inchoative)

j. ripeness

<i>ilé</i>	‘ripe (grain)’ = ‘cooked, done (meat)’
<i>àdá</i>	‘half-ripe (fruit)’
<i>kò:ló</i>	‘unripe (fruit)’ = ‘raw, uncooked’
<i>ómmù</i>	‘rotten (fruit, meat)’

k. color

<i>bánù</i>	‘red (brown)’
<i>gêŋ</i>	‘black (dark)’
<i>pílù</i>	‘white (light-colored)’
<i>wérù</i>	‘green; fresh (vegetation)’
<i>púrùgù</i>	‘yellow’
<i>sògòlò</i>	‘multicolored’
<i>tòpí:</i>	‘spotted’
<i>sì:dí:</i>	‘striped’

l. livestock condition

<i>ámà</i>	‘plump (animal)’, homonym ‘sour’
<i>kómmò</i>	‘lean, emaciated (animal)’

m. fullness

<i>sálàŋ</i>	‘empty’ = ‘deserted’
	[for ‘full’ see comments below]

n. evaluation

<i>sé:.n</i>	‘good’
<i>nâ:</i>	‘authentic, primary’ (§5.1.9)

<i>pà:dè:</i>	‘bad’ = ‘ugly’
<i>yôw</i>	‘nasty’

*nâ:* forms a compound-like fusion with ‘man’ and ‘woman’, and number suffixes are added at the end, unlike the normal N-Adj pattern: *ànná:-nâ* ‘old man’, *yànná:-nâ* ‘old woman’, cf. *àná* ‘male’ and *yă:* ‘female’. The final *-nâ* in both cases is the human singular suffix.

*jù-á:-dè* ‘full’ is a participial derivative of the verb *jō:* ‘become full’. The form *jó→* is also used as an expressive adverbial.

#### 4.5.2 Deverbal adjectives (-ú ~ -ý)

Adjectives denoting states that result from an action performed on the entity can be derived from the relevant verb, with suffix *-ú* after nonmonosyllabic stem, and *-ý* after monosyllabic stem. The stem is {L}-toned.

(45)	adjective	verb
------	-----------	------

a. monosyllabic  
*tè-ý* ‘woven’

*tê:* ‘weave’

b. nonmonosyllabic

*pòr-ú* ‘castrated’

*pɔ́rò* ‘castrate’

*dùmb-ú* ‘emasculated’

*dùmbó* ‘emasculate (e.g. bull) by crushing testicles’

*dòng-ú* ‘pounded’

*dòngó* ‘pound (in mortar)’

*pìd-ú* ‘pounded into flour’

*píde* ‘pound (grain) into flour’

*jàng-ú* ‘pounded into dough’

*jàngá* ‘pound lightly in mortar (sth soft or moist)’

An example is *yèñé<sup>L</sup> tè-ý* ‘woven mat’ from *yèñé* ‘mat’. A number of regular adjectives with shapes like *Cì(C)Cú*, *Cý*, or even *CíL* with *L* another sonorant (*ŋ* or *w*), may have originated in this way. There are also some product-of-action nouns of these shapes, but they do not normally function as adjectival modifiers (§4.2.2.3). See also the locational and instrumental compounds whose finals are of the same shape (§5.1.5.2).

Most of the verbs in transparent examples as in (45) are transitive action verbs. Intransitive *wàdá* ‘remain’ can also be used: *dì:<sup>L</sup> wàd-ú* ‘the remaining water (in a container)’.

In *pòlù nèn-ú* ‘file (tool)’ from *pòlú* ‘knife’ and *nèné* ‘file, smooth (sth) with a file’, the verb appears to describe the function of the tool rather than its state. The regular construction for instrumental compounds is described in §5.1.11.

The terms *yìmù<sup>L</sup> sà-ý* ‘skeleton’, *nùmò<sup>L</sup> sà-ý* ‘finger’, *kùbò<sup>L</sup> sà-ý* ‘toe; claw, talon’, and *bù:dù<sup>L</sup> sà-ý* ‘coin’, all denoting hard (ossified) objects, seem to belong in this category, since a verb *sâ:* ‘become a skeleton, become ossified’ is attested. However, these combinations are rather compound-like now.

## 4.6 Numerals

### 4.6.1 Cardinal numerals

#### 4.6.1.1 ‘One’ (*túrù*, *tí→*), ‘same (one)’, and ‘other’ (*yàgá*)

Numerical ‘1’ is *túrù*. Unlike higher numerals, it behaves like an adjective (cf. English *single*, *sole*), tone-dropping the preceding noun (or adjective): *ìdù<sup>L</sup> túrù* ‘one dog’ (<*ìdú*), *pèdù<sup>L</sup> túrù* ‘one sheep’ (<*pédù*), *yà:-nà<sup>L</sup> túrù* ‘one woman’ (<*yà:-ná*), *nàŋà<sup>L</sup> túrù* ‘one cow’ (<*nàŋá*), and with an adjective [*pèdù jém*]<sup>L</sup> *túrù* ‘one black sheep’ (<*pèdù<sup>L</sup> jém*). An exception is *mùnjú túrù* ‘one thousand.’

In the counting sequence (without nouns): ‘1, 2, 3, 4, ...’, the form for ‘1’ is *tí→*.

‘Other (not the same)’ is the adjective *yàgá*, as in *ìdù<sup>L</sup> yàgá* ‘another dog’. For *yàgá* as an adverb ‘more, additionally’ or ‘again’, see §19.3.2.

#### 4.6.1.2 ‘2’ to ‘10’

(46)    gloss                form

‘2’	<i>lĕy</i>	(for <i>lè</i> see below)
‘3’	<i>tà:ndú</i>	
‘4’	<i>nă:y</i>	
‘5’	<i>nnó</i>	
‘6’	<i>kúlè:</i>	
‘7’	<i>sɔy</i>	
‘8’	<i>gágàrà</i>	
‘9’	<i>tù:gɔ</i>	
‘10’	<i>pélù</i>	

These numerals do not affect the tones of a preceding noun.

In a counting sequence (‘1, 2, 3, 4, ...’), the vowel of *lĕy* is prolonged (*lĕ→y*) to match the rhythm of the flanking numerals (*tí→* ‘1’ plus the long vowel of *tà:ndú* ‘3’). However, the later numerals including *sɔy* ‘7’ are not prolonged.

After a noun (with or without modifiers), a phrase-final numeral beginning with an H-tone is subject to phonetic downdrift. For example, in *ódù lĕy* ‘two roads’ and *gìné pélù* ‘ten houses’, the H-tone on the numeral is lower-pitched than that of the noun if the whole phrase is prepausal. However, addition of definite =*gɔ* restores the high pitch, so in *gìné lĕy=gɔ* ‘the two houses’ the H-tones are at about the same pitch level. ‘2’ appears in L-toned and truncated form in *lè wōy*, the combination with *wōy* ‘all’. The most common instance is *ém(mè) lè wōy* ‘the two of us (you-Sg and I)’. After 2Pl *é* and 3Pl *bé*, the *l* of *lè* is geminated: *é llè wōy* ‘the two of you’ and *bé llè wōy* ‘the two of them’.

#### 4.6.1.3 Decimal multiples (‘10’, ‘20’, ...) and composites (‘11’, ‘59’, ...)

The multiples of ‘10’ are in (47). Beginning with ‘20’ they consist of (mostly contracted and in some cases tone-dropped) combinations of *pélù* ‘10’ with the relevant single-digit numeral.

(47)	gloss	form
‘10’		<i>pélu</i>
‘20’		<i>pè:-nĕy</i>
‘30’		<i>pé:-tă:ndú</i> ~ <i>pé:-ră:ndú</i>
‘40’		<i>pé:-nă:y</i>
‘50’		<i>pé:-nñó</i>
‘60’		<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>
‘70’		<i>pè:-sŷy</i>
‘80’		<i>pè:-gágàrà</i>
‘90’		<i>pé:-tù:gó</i>

In ‘30’, ‘40’, ‘50’, and ‘90’, i.e. those whose digit term has /LH/ melody, the final H-tone is not heard phrase-finally or in isolation. In this position one hears *pé:-tă:ndú* etc. with final L-tone.

In composites with a decimal and a digit such as ‘11’ and ‘22’, the decimal comes first, then the digit, then a particle *sigè* related to *sigé* ‘more’ but without the H-tone. A linking suffix *-gù* (“-Link” in interlinears) is added to the digit term, and also to ‘10’ but not to other decimal terms. Initial H-tones in the digit term are downstepped after a final H-tone (‘20’, ‘90’). In allegro speech, H-tones in the noninitial words in such combinations are not always clearly articulated.

The forms with ‘1’ as the digit term are in (48).

(48)	‘11’	<i>pélù-gù</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘21’	<i>pè:-nĕy</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘31’	<i>pé:-ră:ndú</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘41’	<i>pé:-nă:y</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘51’	<i>pé:-nñó</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘61’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘71’	<i>pè:-sŷy</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘81’	<i>pè:-gágàrà</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘91’	<i>pé:-tù:gó</i>	<i>túrù-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>

The forms of the other digit terms in such combinations are illustrated in (49). The lexically /LH/-toned ‘3’, ‘4’, ‘5’, and ‘9’ shift the H-tone onto *-gù* (which becomes *-gú*), and falling-toned ‘7’ tends to spread its H-tone to the syllable break.

(49)	‘62’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>lĕy-gù</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘63’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>tă:ndú-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘64’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>nă:y-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘65’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>nñó-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘66’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>kúlè:-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘67’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>sóy-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘68’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>gágàrà-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>
	‘69’	<i>pélù-kúlè:</i>	<i>tù:gò-gú</i>	<i>sigè</i>

#### 4.6.1.4 Large numerals ('100', '1000', ...) and their composites

The stems in (50) are usually noun-like morphosyntactically.

(50)      gloss      form

- a. 'hundred' *témdèrè*      (<Fulfulde)
- b. 'thousand' *mùnjú* (*mùnjú* *tùrù*)
- c. 'million' *mìlyɔ̃n*      (<French)

'Thousand' normally requires a numeral even for 'one thousand'. This is not the case with 'hundred' or 'million' which are used without a numeral in the senses 'a hundred' and 'a million', though of course they can be followed by other numerals beginning with '2' (*témdèrè lëy* 'two hundred', *mìlyɔ̃n lëy* 'two million').

A numeral expressing a multiple of 'hundred', 'thousand', or 'million' can be combined with another numeral based on a lower order. The modified noun occurs at the beginning.

(51)    *pédù*    [*témdèrè lëy*]    [*pé:-ññò*    *tà:ndù-gú*    *sìgè*]  
sheep    [hundred two]    [ten-five three-Link plus]  
          'two hundred fifty three sheep'

#### 4.6.1.5 Currency

As in other Malian languages, except local French, currency is calculated based on a unit equivalent to five francs CFA except for large amounts beginning with one million francs CFA. In Donno So the regular currency unit is *búdù*. The smallest coin in circulation, now increasingly rare, worth five francs CFA, is therefore *búdù*<sup>L</sup> *túrù* 'one boudou'.

#### 4.6.1.6 Distributive iteration of numerals

Numerals are iterated to indicate distributivity: 'two each', 'two by two', 'two at a time', etc. The second iteration is L-toned if not phrased with a following word or particle. Forms for the basic numerals are in (52).

(52)	gloss	simple	distributive
'1'	<i>túrù</i>		<i>túrù-túrù</i>
'2'	<i>lëy</i>		<i>lëy-lëy</i>
'3'	<i>tà:ndú</i>		<i>tà:ndú-tà:ndú</i>
'4'	<i>nǎ:y</i>		<i>nǎ:y-nǎ:y</i>
'5'	<i>ññó</i>		<i>ññó-ññó</i>
'6'	<i>kúlè:</i>		<i>kúlè:-kúlè:</i>
'7'	<i>sɔ̃y</i>		<i>sɔ̃y-sɔ̃y</i>
'8'	<i>gágàrà</i>		<i>gágàrà-gágàrà</i>
'9'	<i>tù:gò</i>		<i>tù:gò-tù:gò</i>
'10'	<i>pélù</i>		<i>pélù-pélù</i>

See also *àŋá-àŋà* ‘how much (each)?’, §13.2.2.6.

Morphologically complex numerals are simplified by iterating only the final stem. They also tend to be contracted phonologically, though full articulations can be elicited.

(53)	gloss	simple	distributive
‘20’	<i>pè:-něy</i>		<i>pè:-něy-nèy</i>
‘30’	<i>pé:-tà:ndù ~ pé:-rà:ndù</i>		<i>pé:-tà:n-tà:ndù</i>
‘50’	<i>pèlù-kúlè:</i>		<i>pèlù-kúlè:-kùlè:</i>
‘11’	<i>pélù-gù túrù-gù sigè</i>		<i>pélù-gù túrù-gù sigè-sigè</i>
‘100’	<i>témdèrè</i>		<i>témdèrè-témdèrè</i>

Distributive numerals can be made predicative by using the ‘it is’ and ‘it is not’ clitics. These also have the effect of restoring a final H-tone in the second iteration for /LH/-toned numerals like ‘3’.

- (54) a. *úlù-y            tà:ndú-tà:ndù = j*  
           child-Pl       three-three=it.is  
           ‘The children are three by three (in groups of three).’
- b. *émmè            tà:ndú-tà:ndú = là:-j*  
           1Pl           three-three=it.is.not-1PlSbj  
           ‘We are not three by three.’

#### 4.6.2 Ordinal adjectives

Ordinals from numerals are covered in the subsections below. For interrogative *àŋà-ènné* ‘how-manieth?’ see §13.2.2.6.

##### 4.6.2.1 ‘First’ (*nâ:y*, *kě:*) and ‘last’ (*dògòndó*)

These are adjectives, as shown by tone-dropping on the noun: *gìnè<sup>L</sup> nâ:y* or *gìnè<sup>L</sup> kě:* ‘first house’, *ndè<sup>L</sup> dògòndó* ‘last person’.

For adverbial ‘first(ly)’ see §8.4.6.2.

##### 4.6.2.2 Other ordinals (*ènné*)

Other ordinals are formed by adding *ènné* to the numeral, whose tones are dropped. There are no glaring irregularities, and in most combinations *ènné* is pronounced as a separate word, but ‘second’ (expected #*lèy-ènné*) is contracted.

(55)	form	gloss
a. single-digit numeral		
<i>lè:-nné</i>		‘second’
<i>tà:ndù ènné</i>		‘third’

<i>nà:y ènné</i>	‘fourth’
<i>ìnò ènné</i>	‘fifth’
<i>kùlè ènné</i>	‘sixth’
<i>sòy ènné</i>	‘seventh’
<i>gàgàrà ènné</i>	‘eighth’
<i>tù:gò ènné</i>	‘ninth’
<i>pèlù ènné</i>	‘tenth’
b. decimal	
<i>pè:-nè ènné</i>	‘twentieth’
c. decimal plus single-digit numeral	
<i>[pèlù-gù tìrù-gù sìgè]<sup>L</sup> ènné</i>	‘eleventh’
d. hundred	
<i>tèmdèrè ènné</i>	‘hundredth’

#### 4.6.3 Fractions and portions

*péjèrè* means ‘half’, and more generally ‘(substantial) division’ (one of two, three, or perhaps more parts, not necessarily exactly equivalent. It can be quantified: *péjèrè tà:ndú* ‘three divisions (=thirds)’. *kùló* ‘share, portion’ is a possessed (semantically inalienable) noun that denotes a division allocated to an individual: *kùló m-mò* ‘my share’.

## 5 Nominal and adjectival compounds

In the tonal-type notation I use for compounds,  $\acute{x}$  = {H} tone overlay,  $\hat{x}$  = {HL} overlay,  $\check{x}$  = rising {LH} overlay,  $\grave{x}$  = {L} overlay, and  $\bar{x}$  = regular lexical tone (no overlay). The  $x$  variable can be replaced by n (noun), v (verb), adj[ective], or num[eral]. For example, [ñ ñ] is a noun-noun compound type with tone-dropped initial and unchanged lexical tone on the final. [ñ ñ] could also be represented as  $X^L Y$  using a tonsyntactic superscript.

### 5.1 Nominal compounds

#### 5.1.1 Compounds of type [ñ ñ] (no tone change)

In this unusual type, the initial and final retain their independent tones, each having one H-tone.

In *ànjú-ŋgò:ló* ‘a cultivar of roselle (*Hibiscus*)’, the initial is clearly *ànjú* ‘roselle’ though the final is not otherwise attested. Each component has an H-tone. A similar example is *úlù-ŷ* *bàràsórò* ‘scolopender’ with *úlù-ŋ* ‘children’.

A compound pattern of type [ñ ñ] may also be discerned in certain very long nouns, often flora-fauna terms, with two separated H-tones. These sound like compounds even though the components may be nontransparent. Examples are *sàné-dòmólò* ‘herb sp. (*Cyanotis*)’, *dùmbún-dènjélè* ‘tree sp. (*Stereospermum*)’, and *ɔrɔ-mè:mé* ‘herb sp. (*Corchorus*)’.

As noted in §4.2.5, a deadjectival abstractive noun can be juxtaposed to another noun to specify the relevant semantic domain. The two nouns are tonally independent and the combination could be thought of as a loose compound.

#### 5.1.2 Compounds of type [ñ ñ]

Here the initial is tone-dropped and the final keeps its tones. This is the basic noun-noun compound type, rivaled only by the possessive-type compound [ñ ñ]. I hyphenate, and generally omit the tone superscript <sup>L</sup> word-internally.

(56)	compound	literal gloss	reference
a. segmental shapes regular			
	<i>kàjànà-gùnnó</i>	“slave of <i>kájànà</i> ”	herb sp. similar to <i>kájànà</i> (both are <i>Senna</i> spp.)
	<i>ògùlù-ìdú</i>	“bush dog”	jackal; wild dog ( <i>Lycaon</i> )
	<i>ɔrɔ-pjá:</i>	“baobab meal”	tô (millet cakes), with baobab-leaf sauce
	<i>kàmà-dí:</i>	“macari water”	macari (spice) mixed with water
	<i>nèŋ-tíbú</i>	“salt stone”	bar or slab of salt
	<i>àmà-gìné</i>	“affine(s) house”	family visit to affines’ families on a holy day
	<i>màrpò:-pùnó</i>	“musket powder”	gunpowder

- b. change in segmental shape of initial
- |                   |                  |                           |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>à:gà-pàná</i>  | “morning food”   | lunch (< <i>à:gă:</i> )   |
| <i>dì:gè-pàná</i> | “afternoon food” | supper (< <i>dì:gă:</i> ) |

The initial usually functions semantically as a modifier, as in ‘morning food’ or ‘baobab meal’. Less often it functions as head, but in that case there is no clear boundary between an [n̩ n̩] compound and a N<sup>L</sup> Adj sequence, which have the same tones. In specific instances, if the final is obscure and is not used adjectivally with a range of nouns, I treat the combination as a compound.

### 5.1.3 Compounds with nominalized verb and incorporated object

#### 5.1.3.1 Nominalized object-verb combinations

The regular object-verb nominalization has {L}-toned incorporated object noun and {HL}-toned verb, with no nominalizing suffix.

- (57) a. *èmmé*<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>*wálà* ‘sorghum cultivation’  
*yù:*<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>*wálà* ‘millet cultivation, agriculture’  
*gìnè*<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>*údò* ‘house-building, construction’
- b. *[gìnè-gà:]*<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>*gálà* ‘passing (=end) of rainy season’

The initials here correspond to the nouns *èmmé*, *yù:*, *gìnè*, and the compound *gìnè-gă:*.

This construction can be used in simple argument NPs, as in ‘Sorghum cultivation is good’. However, it is also productive as an alternative to verbal-noun (infinitival) VP complements in multiclausal syntax. Although ostensibly limited to transitive clauses, cognate nominals can be used to make seemingly intransitive verbs transitive. A typologically unusual consequence of this productivity is that the object can be expanded (determined, quantified over, possessed). See §17.4 for examples and discussion of {L}-{HL} complements.

#### 5.1.3.2 Nominalized subject-verb with suffix *-Iv* or *-rùy*

This very restricted compound type is associated with lexicalized subject-verb combinations denoting transitions between night and day or among seasons. In full clauses, the “subject” sticks close to the verb and fails some subject tests (§11.1.1.4). In the nominalization, the initial is the incorporated subject, either *năŋ* ‘sun’ or the untranslatable *bâ:* (associated with day/night and dry-/rainy-season transitions) in the usual L-toned form for compound initials. The nominalized verb is {HL}-toned and has suffix *-Iv*, which gets its vowel quality from the verb stem. The tone pattern is consistent with the suffixless {L}-{HL} type for verb-object compounds (preceding section).

- (58) a. with *năŋ* ‘sun’
- |                       |                                     |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>năŋ-[yímè-lè]</i>  | ‘twilight’ (as sun is about to set) |
| <i>năŋ-[númbò-lò]</i> | ‘sunset’                            |
| <i>năŋ-[túmbò-lò]</i> | ‘sunrise’                           |

- b. with *bâ:* in the sense ‘day/night transition’
- |                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>bâ:-[yá:-lâ]</i>  | ‘daybreak (first light, before dawn)’ |
| <i>bâ:-[dénè-lè]</i> | ‘twilight’                            |

Examples (59a-b) are similar but the suffix is now *-rùŋ*. Cf. verbs *súgò* ‘descend, go/come down’ and *gō:* ‘exit’.

- (59) a. with *gìnè-gă:* ‘rainy season’  
*[gìnè-gă:]-[súgù-rùŋ]* ‘descent (=onset) of the rainy season’
- b. with *bâ:* in the sense ‘dry-/wet-season transition’  
*bâ:-[gó:-rùŋ]* ‘exit (=end) of the harvest season’

#### 5.1.4 Possessive-type compounds [ñ ñ]

Some noun-noun compounds have possessive form: ‘X’s Y’, tone type [ñ ñ]. The initial is a noun with its regular tones, and denotes a generic possessor. The final is tone-dropped as it would be following a preposed true possessor. Consider the flora-fauna terms in (60).

(60)	compound	literal gloss	comment
a. resemblance to animal body part			
	<i>ìdú</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>inù</i>	“dog’s tooth”	succulent plant ( <i>Caralluma</i> )
	<i>nàŋá</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>nè:ndè</i>	“cow’s tongue”	aloe
b. plant inedible for humans			
	<i>tàrà:</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>jàbà</i>	“hyena’s onion”	wild onion spp.
	<i>jěŋ</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>kàmbù</i>	“lizard’s zaban”	tiny melon ( <i>Momordica</i> )
	<i>wílù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pɔ̄lì</i>	“gazelle’s sesame”	wild sesame sp.
	<i>pèrègérè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>ìrù</i>	“dove’s milk”	latex-bearing herb ( <i>Euphorbia</i> )
	<i>pèrègérè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>nùjì</i>	“dove’s cowpea”	wild legume ( <i>Vigna</i> )
	<i>dòbú</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>èlè</i>	“hornbill’s peanut”	persistent weed ( <i>Commelina</i> )
c. habitat or food			
	<i>dî:</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>sàdà:</i>	“water’s bird”	birds found on or near water
	<i>tăy</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>idù</i>	“ground’s fish”	lungfish ( <i>Protopterus</i> )
	<i>nŭŋ</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>kè:-kè:</i>	“cowpea’s bug”	a weevil sp.
	<i>béde</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>kè:-kè:</i>	“dung’s bug”	a scarabaeid dung beetle
d. other			
	<i>àmbá</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>ènjè</i>	“God’s chicken”	cattle egret (brilliant white)
	<i>gùdú</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>yà:bù</i>	“skin’s waterbag”	goatskin waterbag for a well

If the initial denotes a human category it may be pluralized by *-ŋ* (61).

(61)	compound	literal gloss	comment
	<i>ènè-ŋgírì-ŋ<sup>L</sup>òmbùlù</i>	“goatherds’ tamarind”	herb sp. ( <i>Chamaecrista</i> )
	<i>ànà-í<sup>L</sup>sàmìnè</i>	“men’s soap”	herb sp. ( <i>Aeschynomene</i> )
	<i>yímì-ŋ<sup>L</sup>tànnà</i>	“corpses’ stick”	

The initial may itself be composite. In “goatherds’ tamarind” (62), ‘goatherds’ is the plural of an agentive compound. In (62), the initial includes an adjective (‘male’).

(62)	compound	literal gloss	comment
	<i>[ènjè àná] <sup>L</sup>kèlè</i>	“rooster’s eggplant”	poisonous thorny bush ( <i>Solanum incanum</i> )

### 5.1.5 Agentive and locational compounds with objects

#### 5.1.5.1 Agentive compounds of type [n̩ v̩]

Agentives may refer to occupations or to characteristic actions such as laughter. Uncompounded agentives are generally absent except for caste names (§4.2.4). The productive agentive pattern includes a tone-dropped compound initial, which may be a cognate nominal (‘dance-dancer’) or a noun denoting the prototypical object (‘cloth-weaver’). In the case of ‘singer’ in (63a), the initial may have been reinterpreted as stem-iteration. The verb takes agentive form, consisting segmentally of the chaining form of the stem, but with {HL} tone overlay. Compounds with ‘hunter’ plus a specific prey type (here illustrated with ‘gazelle’) are based on *-dáy-nè* rather than on the uncompounded agentive (or caste) name *dànná:-nà*. The human singular suffix is *-nè* in this construction, optionally becoming *-nò* after a back rounded vowel (‘singer’, ‘builder’), never #*-nà* or #*-nò*. The corresponding plurals, not shown, have *-ŋ* replacing *-nè*.

(63)	agentive	gloss	initial	gloss
a. cognate nominal				
	<i>nùŋù-[núŋ-ù-nè]</i>	‘singer’	<i>núŋò</i>	‘song’
	<i>gò:-[gó-ý-nè]</i>	‘dancer’	<i>gɔ:</i>	‘dance (n)’
	<i>mòy-[mónd-ù-nè]</i>	‘laugher’	<i>mõy</i>	‘laughter’
b. noncognate noun (prototypical object)				
	<i>jèdù-[té-ý-nè]</i>	‘weaver’	<i>jèdú</i>	‘cotton thread’
	<i>gìnè-[úd-ù-nè]</i>	‘builder’	<i>gìné</i>	‘house’
	<i>wìlù-[dá-ý-nè]</i>	‘gazelle hunter’	<i>wílù</i>	‘gazelle’
	<i>yù:-[wál-ù-nè]</i>	‘farmer’	<i>yû:</i>	‘millet’
	<i>yù:-[dóng-ù-nè]</i>	‘pounder’	<i>yû:</i>	‘millet’
	<i>bèlù-[gír-ù-nè]</i>	‘herder’	<i>bèlú</i>	‘goat’
	<i>nà:-[sí:r-ù-nè]</i>	‘cook (n)’	<i>nă:</i>	‘meal, cooked food’

The formula [n̩ v̩] for compounds is equivalent to {L} plus {HL} on the respective parts. This compound type is therefore tonally equivalent to the {L}{HL} nominalized clause type, common in complements (§17.4). However, that type is not agentive semantically.

### 5.1.5.2 Locational and instrumental compounds (final with -ú ~ -ý, -í)

This type of compound denotes a place where an activity type is regularly performed, or an instrument used in the activity. The compound may occur by itself, or adjectivally after *yàlú* ‘place’ or some other modified noun in {L}-toned form. The initial of the compound is also {L}-toned. It may be a cognate nominal, or it may denote some other conventional object. No agent is specified. The final is a nominalized form of the verb with {L}-toned stem and final H-toned -ú (nonmonosyllabic) or -ý (monosyllabic, or mediopassive). Morphologically the final is identical to the deverbal adjective (§4.5.2) and the product-of-action nominal (§4.2.2.3) with the same suffix allomorphs. For monosyllabics and mediopassives it is also identical to the chaining form. The high-frequency verb *kán(â)* ‘do’ has -í rather than -ý.

- (64)      compounds      ‘place/instrument for...’

a. with incorporated nominal (cognate or not)

*verb stem monosyllabic, suffix -ý*

<i>jà:-[jn̩-ý]</i>	‘... eating’	<i>jă:</i> ‘meal’, <i>jâ:</i> ‘eat’
<i>kù:-[kà-ý]</i>	‘... shaving heads’	<i>kû:</i> ‘head’, <i>kâ:</i> ‘shave’

*verb stem nonmonosyllabic, suffix -ú*

<i>yù:-[dòmb-ú]</i>	‘... pounding millet’	<i>yû:</i> ‘millet’
<i>kè:lè-[bèl-ú]</i>	‘... getting money’	<i>kè:lé, bélé</i>

b. with iterated verb

<i>[ùnj-ì-ý]-[ùnj-i-ý]</i>	‘... lying down’	<i>ùnj-é:</i>
<i>[yà-ý]-[yà-ý]</i>	‘... spending the night’	<i>yâ:</i>

c. like (a) but with suffix -í

<i>pàñà-[kànì-í]</i>	‘... cooking food’	i.e. ‘kitchen’, <i>pàñá</i> ‘food’
<i>wàlù-[kànù-í]</i>	‘... doing work’	<i>wálù</i> ‘work (n.)’

*tèmbè:-[mà-ý]* from *tèmbê:* *mă:* ‘make (=mold) bricks’ can be used in this way, meaning ‘brick-making place’, preferably with *yàlù*<sup>L</sup>. It can also mean ‘brick mold’.

*màñà*<sup>L</sup> *yù:-[tùm-ú]* ‘plastic (*mánà*) container for measuring (*túmð*) millet (*yû:*)’ is a good example of an instrumental compound.

### 5.1.5.3 Other nominalized noun-verb compounds

*gìnè-sùgò* ‘(sb’s) host, one who provides lodging (for sb)’ consists of {L}-toned *gìné* ‘house’ and an apparent perfective participle of *súgò* ‘go down’ in the sense ‘live, dwell (at a house)’. Even local French *descendre* is used in this sense, generalized from ‘go back down (after work or study) to (a home)’. The full relative clause implied by this would be ‘person at whose home (one) lodges’. However, the tone-dropping on ‘house’ is inconsistent with a synchronic relative-clause analysis.

### 5.1.6 Compounds with *i*: ‘child’ and other diminutive compounds

*i*: ‘child’ is readily compounded with a {L}-toned initial denoting a plant or animal species. The compound denotes a juvenile animal, or the fruit or other conspicuous product of a plant.

(65)	stem	gloss	with <i>-i</i>	gloss
------	------	-------	----------------	-------

#### a. plants

<i>màŋgòró</i>	‘mango’	<i>màŋgòrò-î:</i>	‘mango (fruit)’
<i>éłè</i>	‘peanuts’	<i>éłè-î:</i>	‘peanut fruit (pod, nut)’

#### b. animals

<i>idú</i>	‘dog’	<i>idù-î:</i>	‘puppy’
<i>pédù</i>	‘(a) sheep’	<i>pèdù-î:</i>	‘lamb’
<i>nàŋá</i>	‘cow’	<i>nàŋà-î:</i>	‘calf’
<i>yùgúrù</i>	‘snake’	<i>yùgùrù-î:</i>	‘baby snake’

Numerous nouns appear to be frozen diminutives with a reduced form of \*-î:, either a final -ý or a final contracted -i: or -ê: (perhaps from \*-y). The preceding stem is {L}-toned, like a compound initial. In some cases the whole diminutive is an {L}-toned compound initial. Examples of (e)-ý, in some cases unsegmentable, are in (66). The stem-final e is a mutation from a or o in some examples. I exclude combinations ending in C Vy monosyllables like sà-ý in e.g. *nùmò sà-ý* ‘finger’ from nùmó ‘hand’, since the endings might be Cv-ý verbal nouns turned deverbal adjective (§4.5.2), in this case from *verb sâ:* ‘become a skeleton’.

(66)	form	gloss	comment
------	------	-------	---------

#### a. (e)-ý

related to <i>yá:</i> ‘female’	<i>yà.-ná</i> ‘woman’	
<i>jèŋ<sup>L</sup> yàrè-ý</i>	‘female agama’	<i>jěŋ</i> ‘agama lizard’

#### b. (e)-ý in compound initials

from *tímmé* ‘tree’

<i>[tímmè-ý]-gállù</i>	‘neem tree’	<i>gállú</i> ‘bitter’
<i>[tímmè-ý]-[pùrg-î:]</i>	‘eucalyptus’	<i>púr(ù)gì</i> ‘yellow’

from *nùmò* ‘hand’

<i>[nùmè-ý]-dùmòndó</i>	‘pinky finger’
-------------------------	----------------

from *kùbó* ‘foot’

<i>[kùbè-ý]-dùmòndó</i>	‘little toe’
-------------------------	--------------

#### c. (e)-ý as final in possessive-type compounds

from *sàdâ:* ‘bird’

<i>òrò-pùnó</i>	<i>sàdè-ý</i>	‘bee-eater’ (green bird)	“baobab-leaf’s bird”
-----------------	---------------	--------------------------	----------------------

from *màrpõ:* ‘musket’

<i>úlù-ìj</i>	<i>màrpõ:-ý</i>	‘toy musket’	“children’s musket”
---------------	-----------------	--------------	---------------------

#### d. final éy, suggestive but doubtfully segmentable synchronically

<i>bèndéy</i>	‘loincloth (for circumcised boys)’
<i>dùgěy</i>	‘necklace’

<i>gòběy</i>	‘hourglass-shaped tomtom’
<i>gòŋěy</i>	‘elephant’
<i>kèmněy</i>	‘cotton’
<i>kùnněy</i>	‘ladle (n.)’
<i>pè:rěy</i>	‘small earthenware ablutions bowl’
<i>gèbilěy</i>	‘short-handled pick-hoe’
<i>iterated</i>	
<i>gòmbù-gòmběy</i>	‘butterfly’
<i>gòndù-gònděy</i>	‘herder’s staff (one end hooked, one forked)’
<i>compound final</i>	
<i>tibù-sàgěy</i>	‘gravel’ ( <i>tibú</i> ‘stone’)

Examples of final *-î:* are in (67). They might alternatively be segmented as *(i)-ŷ*, but the tone pattern makes direct equation with *(è)-ý* difficult. The sense may be diminutive size or, as with ‘key’ and ‘small grindstone’, a small object regularly paired with the larger one. (Two grindstones are paired, a large flattish one on which grain is placed, and a small round one that is held in the hand to grind.)

(67)	form	gloss	related form
a. diminutive <i>-î:</i> contrasting with unsuffixed noun			
	<i>bòŋg-î:</i>	‘(ordinary) navel’	<i>bòŋgó</i> ‘protruding navel’
	<i>jɔg-î:</i>	‘exterior throat’	<i>jɔgù</i> ‘Adam’s apple’
	<i>kòd-î:</i>	‘small calabash’	<i>kòdú</i> ‘calabash’
	<i>kòr-î:</i>	‘small trough’	<i>kórò</i> ‘animals’ drinking trough’
	<i>tànn-î:</i>	‘twig’	<i>tànná</i> ‘stick, staff’
	<i>tàŋ-î:</i>	‘key’	<i>tàŋá</i> ‘door’
b. as compound final			
from <i>tibú</i> ‘stone’			
	<i>ìnà:-[tib-î:]</i>	‘small grindstone’	<i>ìná:</i> ‘large grindstone, quern’
	<i>kèbùl-[tib-î:]</i>	‘flint (for lighter)’	
	<i>kìndè-[tib-î:]</i>	‘gizzard’	<i>kíndè</i> ‘liver/heart’
c. not easily segmentable			
	<i>bòmmî:</i>	‘street’	
	<i>dèŋgî:</i>	‘earthenware cooking pot’	
	<i>kèbî:</i>	‘crack (narrow gap)’	
	<i>tòmî:</i>	‘turban’	
	<i>pòlî:</i>	‘sesame’	
	<i>tòlî:</i>	‘star’	
	<i>sù"yî:</i>	‘thread’	
	<i>kòmbilî:</i>	‘(finger-/toe-)nail’	
	<i>tèŋgàrî:</i>	‘conical hat’	
d. phonologically unusual			
	<i>kè:n-î:</i>	‘arrow’	<i>kěŋ</i> ‘bow (and arrow)’

Nonmonosyllabic nouns ending in *ɛ:* (68a) and especially *ɛ̄:* (68b) may involve ‘child’ etymologically. *ɛ̄:* is the +ATR counterpart of *ɛ-ŷ* but is less morphologically transparent. The forms in (68) are synchronically unsegmentable. Final *ɛ:* is also fairly common in cognate nominals, see (303e) in §11.1.2.5, and it may reflect a different morphological construction.

(68)	form	gloss	comment
a. final <i>ɛ:</i>			
	<i>mòmē:</i>	‘scorpion’	
	<i>nènē:</i>	‘flank (side of body)’	
	<i>sònē:</i>	‘five-lined skink’	
	<i>tèmbē:</i>	‘mud brick’	
<i>in compound final</i>			
	<i>kùbò-pèlē:</i>	‘anklebone’	
b. final <i>ɛ̄:</i>			
	<i>àrùḡé:</i>	‘boubou (garment)’	
	<i>kòmb̄é:</i>	‘shell’	
	<i>yàgùr̄é:</i>	‘chaff’	

The borrowings *nà-nây* ‘mint’ (< Arabic) and *pà-pây* ‘papaya’ (< French) have a similar final *y* but do not match the tones of the inherited diminutives and have a reduplicative look, see (22b) in §4.1.4.

There are also some compound finals consisting of diminutive forms (*-î:*) of adjectives, especially color adjectives. They are shown in (69) along with a few unusual bahuvrihi compounds including these adjectives.

(69)	compound	gloss	comment
a. related to <i>pílù</i> ‘white’			
	<i>old diminutive</i>		
	<i>tè-[píl-î:]</i>	‘sparrowhawk’	<i>tèbù-</i> ‘hawk’
	<i>sèl-[píl-î:]</i>	‘tree sp. ( <i>Boscia</i> )’	
	<i>bahuvrihi-like semantics</i>		
	<i>gìlè-pílù</i>	‘bustard sp.’	cf. <i>gìr-î:</i> ‘eye’
b. related to <i>bánù</i> ‘red’			
	<i>old diminutive</i>		
	<i>[mènè-mènè]-[bàn-î:]</i>	‘brown ants’	<i>mènè-ménè</i> ‘ants’
	<i>bahuvrihi-like semantics</i>		
	<i>dúlò-m-bà:nù</i>	‘tigerfish’	“tail-red”
c. related to <i>púrùgù</i> ‘yellow’			
	<i>old diminutive</i>		
	<i>[tìmmè-ŷ]-[pùrg-î:]</i>	‘eucalyptus’	<i>tìmmè-ý</i> ‘tree-Dimin’
d. related to <i>dùmbú</i> ‘short’			
	<i>èmmè-[dùmb-î:]</i>	‘sweet sorghum’	<i>èmmé</i> ‘sorghum’

The third adjective in the core color triangle is *gêŋ* ‘black’. Unlike ‘white’ and ‘red’ it ends in a consonant, which may have blocked an overtly suffixed diminutive. ‘Black’ does, however, occur in several fauna terms of the same general type as the color-diminutive compounds just illustrated, and one suspects they might have had diminutive form if such a form existed.

- (70) with *gêŋ* ‘black’

a. possible covert diminutive compounds

<i>[mènè-mènè]-gêŋ</i>	‘stinging ant’	<i>mènè-ménè</i> ‘ants’
<i>nànù-gêŋ</i>	‘paper wasp’	<i>nànú</i> ‘wasp’
<i>ìnà:-gêŋ</i>	‘cobra’	<i>ìnâ:</i> ‘viper ( <i>Bitis</i> )’
<i>mòmè:-gêŋ</i>	‘emperor scorpion’	<i>mòmè:</i> ‘scorpion’

b. bahuvrihi-like semantics

<i>gilè-gêŋ</i>	‘ground hornbill’	cf. <i>girî:</i> ‘eye’
-----------------	-------------------	------------------------

‘Ground hornbill’ in (70b) is an inter-Dogon borrowing.

For vocalic symbolism, which can involve diminution of an action or diminution of products of an action, see §3.4.8.

### 5.1.7 Compounds with variants of ‘man’ (*àn-ná*) and ‘woman’ (*yà:-ná*)

*àná* ‘male’ and *yá:* ‘female’ are adjectives that can be added to any relevant fauna term. Thus *sàdâ:* ‘bird’, *sàdâ:*<sup>L</sup> *àná* ‘male bird’ and *sàdâ:*<sup>L</sup> *yá:* ‘female bird’. With human categories (such as ethnicities and castes), the suffixed singular forms *àn-ná* ‘man’ and *yà:-ná* ‘woman’ are used: *púlô-nò* ‘Fulbe (person)’, *púlô-nò*<sup>L</sup> *àn-ná* ‘Fulbe man’ and *púlô-nò*<sup>L</sup> *yà:-ná* ‘Fulbe woman’. However, *yà:-* rather than *yà:-nà* is used as compound initial in generic contexts, as in *yà:-[táŋà-ndà]* ‘wedding, marriage ceremony’ and *yà:-sâ:* ‘sister’ (also just *sâ:*).

Adjectives *àná* ‘male’ and *yá:* ‘female’ can be used opportunistically to distinguish two similar species of plants.

‘Boy’ is *àn-nà-î:* or contracted *àn-nà-ŷ*, plural *ànà-úlù-ŷ* with ungeminated *n* (cf. *î:* ‘child’, *úlù-ŷ* ‘children’). ‘Girl’ is *yà:-nà-î:* or contracted *yà:-nà-ŷ*, plural *yà:-úlù-ŷ*.

*yànná:-nà* ‘old woman’ has plural *yànná:-ŷ*. The male counterparts are *ànná:-nà* ‘old man’, *ànná:-ŷ*. The morphology is non-transparent; the geminate *nn* makes more sense etymologically for ‘old man’ (\**àñ ná:-nà*) than for ‘old woman’, where we would expect an ungeminated *n*.

*ànà*<sup>L</sup> *kú:-nò* ‘bachelor’, based on *àná* rather than on suffixed *àn-ná*, has plural *ànà*<sup>L</sup> *kú:-ŷ*. For ‘unmarried woman’ I recorded singular *yà:-nà*<sup>L</sup> *kú:-nò* varying with *yà:*<sup>L</sup> *kú:-nò*, plural *yà:*<sup>L</sup> *kú:-ŷ*.

### 5.1.8 Compounds with *báŋà* ‘owner’

*báŋà* or *bàŋâ:* ‘owner’ is usually possessed or compounded, it but can be used in isolation in the sense ‘owner’ (of an understood entity) or ‘master’ (of a slave). See also §18.3.5 for its use as ‘the (same) guy’. In compounds it appears with a rising (LH) tone pattern. The initial has its regular tones. The human singular suffix *-nv* is optional in compounds that have singular reference. The plural is *báŋá-mbè*. The unsuffixed form in compounds is *bàŋâ:*.

- (71) *gìné* / *bidígù* / *nàŋá*      *bàŋâ:* / *bàŋá-nà*  
house / shop /                                 owner(-Sg)  
‘house-/shop-/cattle-owner’

Aside from the unusual rising tone pattern, this resembles a possessive-type compound. The initial may be a full NP including its own determiner (72).

- (72) *[gìnè<sup>L</sup>*    *ŋgó]*      *bàŋá-nà=ð*  
[house<sup>L</sup>      Prox]                     owner-Sg=Def  
‘the owner of this house’

*kû:* *bàŋá* or *kû:-nà* means ‘chief, head (of a village)’, from the body part *kû:* ‘head’.

The ‘owner of X’ construction competes with the characteristic derivation with suffix *-gí-nè* (§4.2.1) when X is a simple noun.

### 5.1.9 *nâ:* ('authentic', 'entire')

One can distinguish the normal cultivar of millet (*yû:*) as *yû:<sup>L</sup> nâ:* from others, such as *yû:-tɔ:* (an early-ripening variety). For sorghum (*èmmé*) one can likewise distinguish the normal cultivar as *èmmè<sup>L</sup> nâ:* from sweet sorghum (whose short stem is sucked like sugar cane) *sànákénè* or *èmmè-[dùmb-î:J]*, and from a weedy wild sorghum (*Sorghum arundinaceum*) *èmmè sàdàlá*.

From *tògù* ‘shed’ (any covered shelter with one or more open sides) we get *tògù<sup>L</sup> nâ:* denoting the primary men’s palaver shed in a village.

Noncanonical (“false”) subcategories opposed to the primary or basic category X are typically expressed by adding a pro forma nonhuman possessor for X, e.g. “hyena’s onion” for inedible wild onions, or else by making X the possessor of ‘slave’ to indicate subordination. See §5.1.4 above for examples.

*nâ:* can also mean ‘entire plant’ when the relevant flora term primarily denotes a fruit or other product, as in *màŋgòrò<sup>L</sup> nâ:* ‘mango tree’. However, my assistant preferred compounds with *-tìmmé* ‘tree’ as the final.

*ñnă:* ‘large flat grindstone’ may have originated as a compound, compare *nùm-ná:* for this gloss in Jamsay and Tommo So. However, the DS term is quite frozen now. Compare *ñnâ:* with different tones ‘snake sp.’, focally *Bitis arietans*, the puff adder (deadly viper).

### 5.1.10 Natural-species X-Y-X compounds

#### 5.1.10.1 *X-nâ:-X* compounds

This construction is fairly productive in terms for small insects and prickly herbaceous plants. X is a *CvCv-* stem ending in a high vowel that may be subject to syncope. X is iterated with an intervening *-nâ:-*. The first X is L-toned (tone-dropped) as in many compound initials, but the second is /HL-toned. Usually X does is unattested elsewhere as a lexical item. The known examples are in (73).

(73) a. fauna

<i>dòrù-nà:-dórù</i>	'grasshopper sp.' ( <i>Hieroglyphus</i> )
~ <i>dòn-nà:-dórù</i>	
<i>sèn-nà:-sénì</i>	'grasshopper sp.' ( <i>Kraussella</i> )
<i>kèmì-nà:-kém</i>	'tiny predatory bee' or 'earwig' (cf. <i>kéŋ</i> 'pointed tool, awl; arrow' < *kém)
~ <i>kèmì-nà:-kém</i>	
<i>gùdù-nà:-gúdù</i>	'blister beetle' (family Meloidae)

b. flora

<i>pèn-nà:-pélù</i>	'bristly herb' ( <i>Acanthospermum</i> )
~ <i>pèn-nà:-pél</i>	

#### 5.1.10.2 *X-Cém-X* compounds

Terms for two rather similar bird spp. show a possible pattern *X-tém-X* or *X-dém-X*.

- (74) *pèn-tém-pènē* 'thick-knee (*Burhinus*)'  
*pèn-dém-pénè* 'lapwing (*Vanellus*)'

#### 5.1.11 Instrumental compounds with verbal noun in *-du*

Substances like 'water' and 'oil' that can be designated for particular functions have compounds with the noun in {L}-toned form modified by an adjective or compound final in the form of a verbal noun with suffix *-du* (§4.2.2.1).

(75) a. compounds of *dî:* 'water'

<i>dî:<sup>L</sup> nđ:-dú</i>	'drinking water'
<i>dî:<sup>L</sup> ñđ-è:-dú</i>	'water for washing'

b. compounds of *ně:* 'oil'

<i>ně:<sup>L</sup> já:-dù</i>	'eating (=cooking) oil'
<i>ně:<sup>L</sup> pár-è:-dù</i>	'rubbing (=body or hair) oil'

Compare the possessive compound *mò:búlù<sup>L</sup> ně:* 'vehicle (=motor) oil'.

For *pòlù nèn-ú* 'file (n)' see §4.5.2.

#### 5.1.12 Nasal linker between initial and final

There are a few examples of a nasal linker between the initial and the final. It is syllabified with the initial and my bracketing takes its cue from this, but it assimilates place of articulation from the first consonant of the final.

(76)	compound	gloss	comment
a.	from <i>kòmbilî</i> : ‘nail (of digit)’		
	[ <i>kùbɔ̃-jɔ̃</i> ]- <i>kòmbilî</i> :	‘toenail’	<i>kùbɔ̃</i> ‘foot’
	[ <i>nùmɔ̃-jɔ̃</i> ]- <i>kòmbilî</i> :	‘fingernail’	<i>nùmɔ̃</i> ‘hand’
b. other			
	<i>sòmè:-n-dòngú</i>	‘a red spice’	<i>sòmè</i> : ‘spices’, <i>dòng-ú</i> ‘pounded’
c. irregular (cf. <i>bánù</i> ‘red’)	<i>dúlɔ̃-m-bà:nù</i>	‘tigerfish’	“tail-red”

### 5.1.13 Final nonpossessive *-mv* on compound finals

From *tànná* ‘stick, staff’ we get *tànnà<sup>L</sup> jàngá* ‘forked end (of staff)’, which in turn leads to *tànnà<sup>L</sup> jàngà-mó* ‘staff with one forked end’. A similar combination is *yù:<sup>L</sup> jàngà-mó* ‘forked millet plant (i.e. with divided stem)’. The pronunciation *jàngà-má* also occurs. The final *-mv* suffix functions here like the characteristic suffix (§4.2.1), except that the *-mv* word is a modifier (adjective or compound final) requiring a distinct head noun.

In *sɔ̃y<sup>L</sup> sémmèlè-mò* ‘tattered clothes’, the final *-mò* is not possessive *-mò*, since the whole phrase ‘tattered clothes’ can be followed by a real possessor like 1Sg *m̩-mò*. Here *sɔ̃y* ‘cloth, clothing’ is L-toned, so the phrase could be a N-Adj combination, a compound, or a relative clause. The other stem from this word-family is inchoative *sémmìl-è:-* ‘(garment) become tattered’.

[*gìr-í:-j-[tùrù-mò]* ‘one-eyed person’ is based on *gìr-í:* ‘eye’ and *tùrù* ‘1’.

The vocalism of *-mv* suggests a relationship with the causative suffix of the same form. Compare the causative verbs *jàngà-mó* ‘form (sth) into a fork’ and *sémmèl-è:-mò* ‘make (sth) into tatters’ (whose long *è:-* is often pronounced short). For this connection to be full-fledged, the compounds with *-mv* would have to be (or have originated as) relative-clause participles of causative verbs, presumably perfective (‘stick that has been forked’, ‘clothes that have been made into tatters’). Given the {LH} overlay on perfective participles, this would be consistent with the tones of *jàngà-má* but not those of *sémmèlè-mò*. The tones of these forms are consistent with those of the simple verbs, *jàng-é:-* ‘become forked’ and *sémmìl-è:-* ‘become tattered’. So it seems best to take the combinations in question as a specialized, specifically compound construction distinct from ordinary relative clauses.

### 5.1.14 Linker *-mù-* in ‘shea-butter’ compound

From *mùnjú* ‘shea (karité) tree (*Vitellaria*)’ and *ně:* ‘oil, butter’ we get a compound *mùnjù-mù-ně:* ‘shea-butter’, with unexplained *-mù-*. It could be reduplicative or a possessive marker. Compare Dogul Dom *mùnjù-mà-ně:g* ‘shea-butter’.

### 5.1.15 Phrasal compounds

*dí:-nɔ̃:-lú* ‘thirst (n)’ is derived from a form (perhaps participial) of the phrase *dí: nɔ̃:-lí* ‘did not drink water’. It has close parallels in several other Dogon languages. For the constructions that it occurs in see §11.2.1.3.

[*pób-à:*-]*nǎ:-yàbà* (“strip off [seeds] and take a cow [as a reward]”), cf. *póbà* ‘strip off’ and *yábá* ‘accept, receive’, is a tongue-in-cheek name for a grass sp. (*Elionurus*) whose seeds are difficult to strip off. In this form it is probably an inter-Dogon borrowing, since DS preserves bisyllabic *nàyá* ‘cow’ (compare Tommo So *nǎ:*). However, *pób-à:* is a good DS form (past anterior subordinator) and *yàbà* is a clause-final L-toned (downdrift) version of imperative *yábá*.

## 5.2 Adjectival compounds

### 5.2.1 Bahuvrihi compounds [ñ à] or [ñ nùm]

A bahuvrihi compound is of the type N-Adj or N-Num where the noun denotes a body part or other attribute of a referent Z, and the adjective or numeral describes or quantifies over the attribute as possessed by Z. The whole compound functions as an adjective or noun denoting Z as a whole. Compare English *two-headed* (syntactically an adjective in pseudo-participial form) and *Blackbeard* (name of a pirate). The special stress pattern of *Blackbeard* (versus *black beard*) shows that bahuvrihis have a special prosodic structure even in English.

#### 5.2.1.1 With adjectival compound final [ñ à] (‘Blackbeard’)

The core noun has its regular tones. The adjective is tone-dropped. In both respects the bahuvrihi differs from the underlying N-Adj combination which is expressed as N<sup>L</sup> Adj with tone-dropped noun and tonally free adjective.

(77)	bahuvrihi	gloss	N-Adj	gloss
	<i>/bèrè-bèrè]-pò:</i>	‘big-bellied’	<i>bèrè-bèrè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pò:</i>	‘big belly’
	<i>gùdú-gèj</i>	‘black-skinned’	<i>gùdú</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>gèj</i>	‘black skin’
	<i>kû:-gèj</i>	‘black-headed’	<i>kû:</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>gèj</i>	‘black head’
	<i>dúlò-pílù</i>	‘white-tailed’	<i>dúlò</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pílù</i>	‘white tail’
	<i>kíndè-pílù</i>	‘generous, kind’	<i>kíndè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pílù</i>	‘white liver/heart’

#### 5.2.1.2 With numeral compound final [ñ nùm] (‘three-legged’)

The tone pattern is the same as for deadjectival bahuvrihis. Since numerals do not control tone-dropping on nouns, the tonal difference between the bahuvrihi and the underlying N-Num combination is that the numeral is tone-dropped in the bahuvrihi.

(78)	bahuvrihi	gloss	N-Adj	gloss
	<i>kû:-lèy</i>	‘two-headed’	<i>kû:</i> <i>lèy</i>	‘two heads’
	<i>kúbò-kúlè:</i>	‘six-legged’	<i>kúbò</i> <i>kúlè:</i>	‘six legs’

## 6 Noun Phrase structure

### 6.1 Organization of NP constituents

#### 6.1.1 Linear order and tonosyntactic bracketing of multi-word NPs

The combinations of (unpossessed) noun, adjective, numeral, demonstrative, and ‘all’ quantifier are those in (79). These modifiers are all postnominal. The formulae show the linear order and indicate tone-dropping by superscripted <sup>L</sup>. In (79), tone-dropping is controlled by an adjective or demonstrative to the right of the target domain. If the target domain contains more than one word (the noun plus one or more intervening words), the target domain is shown in brackets (tonosyntactic, not phrasal). Within a multi-word target domain, all words are tone-dropped. If a superscript is present, it is placed on the side of the target domain that “points” toward the controller. In (79), it is always on the right of the target domain for the reason given above. The definite clitic can be added to combinations not including a demonstrative, to indicate discourse-definiteness. When the definite clitic is added to a numeral, a special constructional tone overlay {L}+H applies not just to the numeral but also to preceding words, as shown in (79c-d) and (79k-l). The definite clitic has no tonal effect when added directly to a noun or adjective. The sequences ending in ‘all’ (79i-p) are identical to those without ‘all’ (79a-i), except that for pragmatic reasons the combination of ‘all’ plus a numeral requires definite marking.

- (79) a. N(=Def)  
b. N<sup>L</sup> Adj(=Def)  
c. N Num  
[N Num]<sup>L+H</sup>=Def  
d. N<sup>L</sup> Adj Num  
[N Adj Num]<sup>L+H</sup>=Def  
e. N<sup>L</sup> Dem  
f. [N Adj]<sup>L</sup> Dem  
g. [N Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem  
h. [N Adj Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem  
[N Num Adj]<sup>L</sup> Dem (inverted)  
i. N(=Def) ‘all’  
j. N<sup>L</sup> Adj(=Def) ‘all’  
k. [N Num]<sup>L+H</sup>=Def ‘all’  
l. [N Adj Num]<sup>L+H</sup>=Def ‘all’  
m. N<sup>L</sup> Dem ‘all’  
n. [N Adj]<sup>L</sup> Dem ‘all’  
o. [N Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem ‘all’  
p. [N Adj Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem ‘all’  
[N Num Adj]<sup>L</sup> Dem ‘all’ (inverted)

Examples are in (80). Further examples are given later in this chapter. Modifying adjectives and demonstratives control tone-dropping on the preceding string (up to and including the

noun). Numerals and the ‘all’ quantifier usually have no tonosyntactic effects on the preceding string. However, the addition of a definite clitic to a numeral catalyzes a constructional tone overlay applying to the sequence [noun ... numeral], with {L}+H overlaid, i.e. tone-dropping except for a single H-tone at the right edge of the numeral before the L-toned definite clitic (80c-d, k-l). Because numerals precede demonstratives, a numeral may be included in the tonosyntactic target domain, as in (80g).

- |      |    |  |                          |
|------|----|--|--------------------------|
| (80) | a. | <i>ìdú / ódù</i>                                   | ‘dog/road’               |
|      |    | <i>ìdú=gò</i> (~ <i>ìdó=ò</i> )                    | ‘the dog’                |
|      |    | <i>ódù=gò</i> (~ <i>ódò=ò</i> )                    | ‘the road’               |
|      | b. | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù</i>                        | ‘white dog’              |
|      |    | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílò=ò</i> (~ <i>pílù=gò</i> )  | ‘the white dog’          |
|      | c. | <i>ìdú tà:ndú / kúlè:/ lèy</i>                     | ‘3/6/2 dogs’             |
|      |    | <i>ódù tà:ndú / kúlè:/ lèy</i>                     | ‘3/6/2 roads’            |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> tà:ndó]^{L+H}=ò</i>            | ‘the 3 dogs’             |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> kúlè:]^{L+H}=gò</i>            | ‘the 6 dogs’             |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> lèy]^{L+H}=gò</i>              | ‘the 2 dogs’             |
|      | d. | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndú / kúlè:</i>         | ‘3/6 white dogs’         |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndó]^{L+H}=ò</i>       | ‘the 3 white dogs’       |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù kúlè:]^{L+H}=gò</i>       | ‘the 6 white dogs’       |
|      | e. | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> ñgò</i>                         | ‘this dog’               |
|      | f. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù]^{L+H} ñgò</i>            | ‘this white dog’         |
|      | g. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> tà:ndù]^{L+H} ñgò</i>          | ‘these 3 dogs’           |
|      | h. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndù]^{L+H} ñgò</i>     | ‘these 3 white dogs’     |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> tà:ndù pílù]^{L+H} ñgò</i>     | " (inverted)             |
|      | i. | <i>ìdú wòy</i>                                     | ‘all dogs’               |
|      |    | <i>ìdú=gò</i> (~ <i>ìdó=ò</i> ) <i>wòy</i>         | ‘all the dogs’           |
|      | j. | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù wòy</i>                    | ‘all white dogs’         |
|      |    | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílò=ò wòy</i>                  | ‘all the white dogs’     |
|      | k. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> tà:ndó]^{L+H}=ò wòy</i>        | ‘all 3 dogs’             |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> kúlè:]^{L+H}=gò wòy</i>        | ‘all 6 dogs’             |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> lèy]^{L+H}=gò wòy</i>          | ‘all 2 (=both) dogs’     |
|      | l. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndó]^{L+H}=ò wòy</i>   | ‘all 3 white dogs’       |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù kúlè:]^{L+H}=gò wòy</i>   | ‘all 6 white dogs’       |
|      | m. | <i>ìdù<sup>L</sup> ñgò wòy</i>                     | ‘all these dogs’         |
|      | n. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù]^{L+H} ñgò wòy</i>        | ‘all these white dogs’   |
|      | o. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> tà:ndó]^{L+H} ñgò wòy</i>      | ‘all these 3 dogs’       |
|      | p. | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndó]^{L+H} ñgò wòy</i> | ‘all these 3 white dogs’ |
|      |    | <i>[ìdù<sup>L</sup> tà:ndó pílù]^{L+H} ñgò wòy</i> | " (inverted)             |

If there is a preposed possessor, as in ‘Seydou’s house’, the schemas parallel to the unpossessed strings in (79) are those in (81). My assistant required an overt definite or demonstrative in combinations involving ‘all’. In the absence of a definite or demonstrative, the preposed possessor controls an {L} overlay on the following string, minimally the noun plus any modifying adjective and/or numeral. This is indicated by a superscripted <sup>L</sup> on the left of the target domain, “pointing” to the possessor. A demonstrative is not tone-dropped by the possessor. When the definite suffix is directly added to a numeral, the string including the noun and the numeral gets the {L}+H overlay (81c-d). One could argue that the preposed possessor contributed to the L-tone portion of {L}+H (joint control). A definite morpheme

also protects an adjective from tone-dropping, making it indeterminate whether the possessor or the adjective controls tone-dropping on the noun (81b).

- (81) a. Poss  $L[N(=Def)]$   
       b. Poss  $L[N \text{ Adj}]$   
           Poss  $L[N]^L \text{ Adj}=\text{Def}$   
       c. Poss  $L[N \text{ Num}]$   
           Poss  $[N \text{ Num}]^{L+H}=\text{Def}$   
       d. Poss  $L[N \text{ Adj Num}]$   
           Poss  $[N \text{ Adj Num}]^{L+H}=\text{Def}$   
           Poss  $L[N \text{ Num Adj}]$  (inverted)  
           Poss  $L[N \text{ Num}]^L \text{ Adj}=\text{Def}$  (inverted)  
       e. Poss  $L[N]^L \text{ Dem}$   
       f. Poss  $L[N \text{ Adj}]^L \text{ Dem}$   
       g. Poss  $L[N \text{ Num}]^L \text{ Dem}$   
       h. Poss  $L[N \text{ Adj Num}]^L \text{ Dem}$   
           Poss  $L[N \text{ Num Adj}]^L \text{ Dem}$  (inverted)  
       i. Poss  $L[N]=\text{Def}$  ‘all’  
       j. Poss  $L[N] \text{ Adj}=\text{Def}$  ‘all’  
       k. Poss  $[N \text{ Num}]^{L+H}=\text{Def}$  ‘all’  
       l. Poss  $[N \text{ Adj Num}]^{L+H}=\text{Def}$  ‘all’  
           Poss  $L[N \text{ Num}]^L \text{ Adj}=\text{Def}$  ‘all’ (inverted)  
       m. Poss  $L[N]^L \text{ Dem}$  ‘all’  
       n. Poss  $L[N \text{ Adj}]^L \text{ Dem}$  ‘all’  
       o. Poss  $L[N \text{ Num}]^L \text{ Dem}$  ‘all’  
       p. Poss  $L[N \text{ Adj Num}]^L \text{ Dem}$  ‘all’  
           Poss  $L[N \text{ Num Adj}]^L \text{ Dem}$  ‘all’ (inverted)

Examples are in (82). See, however, the comments about the Poss-N-Adj-Num combination in §6.2.1.3 below.

- (82) a. *sé:dù L idù* ‘Seydou’s dog’  
       *sé:dù L idù = gò ~ sé:dù L idò = ð* “ (definite)  
       b. *sé:dù L [idù pìlù]* ‘Seydou’s white dog’  
       *sé:dù L [idù] L pílò = ð* “ (definite)  
       c. *sé:dù L [idù tà:ndù]* ‘Seydou’s 3 dogs’  
       *sé:dù [idù tà:ndó]^{L+H} = ð* “ (definite)  
       d. *sé:dù L [idù pìlù tà:ndù]* ‘Seydou’s 3 white dogs’  
       *sé:dù [idù pìlù tà:ndó]^{L+H} = ð* “ (definite)  
       *sé:dù L [idù tà:ndù pìlù]* “ (inverted)  
       *sé:dù L [idù tà:ndù] L pílò = ð* “ (definite, inverted)  
       e. *sé:dù L [idù] L ñgò* ‘this dog of Seydou’s’  
       f. *sé:dù L [idù pìlù] L ñgò* ‘this white dog of Seydou’s’  
       g. *sé:dù L [idù tà:ndù] L ñgò* ‘these 3 dogs of Seydou’s’  
       h. *sé:dù L [idù pìlù tà:ndù] L ñgò* ‘these 3 white dogs of Seydou’s’  
       *sé:dù L [idù tà:ndù pìlù] L ñgò* “ (inverted)  
       i. *sé:dù L [idò = ð] wòy* ‘all Seydou’s dogs’  
       j. *sé:dù L [idù] L pílò = ð wòy* ‘all Seydou’s white dogs’

- |    |   |                                      |
|----|---|--------------------------------------|
| k. | <i>sé:dù [idù tà:ndó]L+H = ð wôy</i>      | ‘all Seydou’s 3 dogs’                |
|    | <i>sé:dù [idù kùlé:]L+H = gð wôy</i>      | ‘all Seydou’s 6 dogs’                |
|    | <i>sé:dù [idù lèy]L+H = gð wôy</i>        | ‘both of Seydou’s dogs’              |
| l. | <i>sé:dù [idù pílù tà:ndó]L+H = ð wôy</i> | ‘all 3 of Seydou’s white dogs’       |
|    | <i>sé:dù [idù tà:ndù]L pílò = ð wôy</i>   | ” (inverted)                         |
| m. | <i>sé:dù [idù]L ñgó wòy</i>               | ‘all these dogs of Seydou’s’         |
| n. | <i>sé:dù [idù pílù]L ñgó wòy</i>          | ‘all these white dogs of Seydou’s’   |
| o. | <i>sé:dù [idù tà:ndù]L ñgó wòy</i>        | ‘all these 3 dogs of Seydou’s’       |
| p. | <i>sé:dù [idù pílù tà:ndù]L ñgó wòy</i>   | ‘all these 3 white dogs of Seydou’s’ |
|    | <i>sé:dù [idù tà:ndù pílù]L ñgó wòy</i>   | ” (inverted)                         |

If there is a postnominal possessor (always pronominal), the equivalents for (79) and (81) are those in (83). A postnominal possessor has no positive tonosyntactic power over words to its left. It does, however, block a following demonstrative from controlling tone-dropping on words to its left. The string from the noun to the possessor is therefore a **tonosyntactic island**, which is indicated by the flanking  $\subset \dots \supset$  boundary markers. It is actually indeterminate whether the demonstrative controls tone-dropping on the possessor itself, since these possessors are already /L/-toned. Historically, the construction with a postnominal possessor was originally appositional, i.e. of the type [house [your thing]] where ‘thing’ is coreferential to ‘house’ in the fashion of numeral classifiers in various languages. It is difficult for a single tonosyntactic controller to enforce a tone overlay on an entire appositional structure, as it is on a conjunction of two NPs. Probably only ‘your thing’ was originally subject to control by a following demonstrative.

- (83) a. N Poss(=Def)
- b.  $N^L$  Adj Poss(=Def)
- c. N Num Poss(=Def)
- d.  $N^L$  Adj Num Poss(=Def)  
[ $N$  Num] $^L$  Adj Poss(=Def) [inverted]
- e.  $\subset N$  Poss $\supset$  Dem
- f.  $\subset N^L$  Adj Poss $\supset$  Dem
- g.  $\subset N$  Num Poss $\supset$  Dem
- h.  $\subset N^L$  Adj Num Poss $\supset$  Dem  
 $\subset [N$  Num] $^L$  Adj Poss $\supset$  Dem [inverted]
- i. N Poss(=Def) ‘all’
- j.  $N^L$  Adj Poss(=Def) ‘all’
- k. N Num Poss(=Def) ‘all’
- l.  $N^L$  Adj Num Poss(=Def) ‘all’  
[ $N$  Num] $^L$  Adj Poss(=Def) ‘all’ [inverted]
- m.  $\subset N$  Poss $\supset$  Dem ‘all’
- n.  $\subset N^L$  Adj Poss $\supset$  Dem ‘all’
- o.  $\subset N$  Num Poss $\supset$  Dem ‘all’
- p.  $\subset N^L$  Adj Num Poss $\supset$  Dem ‘all’  
 $\subset [N$  Num] $^L$  Adj Poss $\supset$  Dem ‘all’ [inverted]

Examples are in (84), with 2Sg possessor. The optional definite clitic combines regularly with *-mò* as *-mò=gð* (shown) or *-mò=ð*.

- (84) a. *ìdú ù-mò(=gò)* ‘your dog’  
      b. *ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò(=gò)* ‘your white dog’  
      c. *ìdú tà:ndú ù-mò(=gò)* ‘your 3 dogs’  
      d. *ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndú ù-mò(=gò)*  
           *[ìdù tà:ndù]<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò(=gò)* ‘your 3 white dogs’  
      e. *Cìdú ù-mò▷ ḷgós*  
      f. *Cìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò▷ ḷgós*  
      g. *Cìdú tà:ndú ù-mò▷ ḷgós*  
      h. *Cìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndú ù-mò▷ ḷgós*  
           *C[ìdù tà:ndù]<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò▷ ḷgós* “ (inverted)  
      i. *ìdú ù-mò(=gò) wòy* ‘all your dogs’  
      j. *ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò(=gò) wòy* ‘all your white dogs’  
      k. *ìdú tà:ndú ù-mò(=gò) wòy* ‘all 3 dogs of yours’  
      l. *ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndú ù-mò(=gò) wòy*  
           *[ìdù tà:ndù]<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò(=gò) wòy* ‘all 3 white dogs of yours’  
      m. *Cìdú ù-mò▷ ḷgós wòy* “ (inverted)  
      n. *Cìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò▷ ḷgós wòy* ‘all these dogs of yours’  
      o. *Cìdú tà:ndú ù-mò▷ ḷgós wòy* ‘all these white dogs of yours’  
      p. *Cìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù tà:ndú ù-mò▷ ḷgós wòy* ‘all these 3 dogs of yours’  
           *C[ìdù tà:ndù]<sup>L</sup> pílù ù-mò▷ ḷgós wòy* “ (inverted)

For the schemas applicable to internal head NPs in relative clauses, see §14.2.1.

### 6.1.2 Headless NPs (absolute function of demonstratives, etc.)

An adjective, numeral, or demonstrative by itself may function as an NP in the absence of a noun (85a). My assistant rejected simple *wóy* ‘all’ as an NP, requiring at least the morphological elaboration in (85b), compare (85c) with a common noun as head.

- (85) a. *bánù / tà:ndú / kɔ:*      *òb-ú*  
      red / three / NearDist      give.me.Imprt  
      ‘Give-2Sg (me) the red one / three / that!’
- b. *kó*      *yà-wòy*      *òb-ú*  
      DiscDef      all      give.me.Imprt  
      ‘Give-2Sg all of it (to me)!’
- c. *nú:=gò*      *wòy*      *òb-ú*  
      millet=Def      all      give.me.Imprt  
      ‘Give-2Sg (me) all the millet!'

### 6.1.3 “Bifurcation” of relative-clause head NP

In a relative clause, the head NP is seemingly split into two parts, a clause-internal head consisting maximally of Poss-N-Adj-Num, and a postparticipial coda or “tail” that contains determiners (definite, demonstrative) and non-numeral quantifiers. This apparent bifurcation is readily accounted for by taking the relative clause as one among several postnominal

modifiers, as in Poss-N-Adj-Num-RelClause-Det-..., and allowing the pre-relative portion of the NP to move into the relativization site (after being tone-dropped by the relative clause). See chapter 14 for details.

## 6.2 Possessives

Inalienable (kinship) and alienable possession are only optionally distinguished in DS.

### 6.2.1 Alienable possession

Alienable possession applies to all nouns except those kin terms that have special inalienable forms or tone patterns.

#### 6.2.1.1 Nonpronominal alienable possessor

A nonpronominal NP functioning as possessor always precedes the possessed noun or NP, which is dropped to {L} tone. A genitive linker *mò* is infrequently present, especially when the possessor is somewhat complex, as in *bà:-bâ: mò* <sup>L</sup>*bâ:* '(my) grandfather's father'. The linker appears to be more common in the speech of older persons, as is also the case in Tommo So. The possessor may be clearly identified (86a) or generic (86b). If the referent of the possessed NP is discourse-definite, the definite marker may be added (86c). Usually this entails that the possessor too is definite, so if the possessor is not a personal name it is usually marked by a demonstrative (86d) or the definite marker (86e).

- (86)    a. *sé:dù*            <sup>L</sup>*gìnè* / <sup>L</sup>*pèdù*  
             S                    <sup>L</sup>house / <sup>L</sup>sheep  
             'Seydou's house/sheep' (< *gìné*, *pédù*)
- b. *yà:-ná*            <sup>L</sup>*gìnè*  
             woman-Sg          <sup>L</sup>house  
             'a/the house of a woman'
- c. *sé:dù*            <sup>L</sup>*gìnò=ò*  
             S                    <sup>L</sup>house=Def  
             'Seydou's house' (discourse-definite)
- d. *[ànà      ñgó]*            <sup>L</sup>*gìnò=ò*  
             [man      Prox]          <sup>L</sup>house=Def  
             'this man's house'
- e. *yà:-nó=ò*            <sup>L</sup>*gìnò=ò*  
             woman-Sg=Def          <sup>L</sup>house=Def  
             'the woman's house'

For the tonal treatment of modifiers of the possessed noun, see §6.2.1.3 below.

### 6.2.1.2 Pronominal alienable possessor

If the alienable possessor is a pronoun, its form is indicated in (87), repeated from (37) in §4.3.1. The possessor pronominal follows the possessed noun and takes L-toned form. If the noun is omitted, the possessor can function absolutely with a definite clitic (cf. English *mine*), but the pronoun reverts to its usual H-toned form and the 1Sg degeminate its initial *mm* and realizes the H-tone on the first vowel.

- (87) Alienable possessor pronouns

	postnominal	absolute (definite)
1Sg	<i>m̄-m̄ò</i>	<i>m̄ò=ò</i>
1Pl	<i>èm-m̄ò</i>	<i>é̄m-m̄ò=ò</i>
2Sg	<i>ù-m̄ò</i>	<i>ú-m̄ò=ò</i>
2Pl	<i>è-m̄ò</i>	<i>é̄-m̄ò=ò</i>
3Sg	<i>wò-m̄ò</i>	<i>wó-m̄ò=ò</i>
3Pl	<i>bè-m̄ò</i>	<i>bé̄-m̄ò=ò</i>

A postnominal possessor does not normally control a tone overlay on the noun or any intervening modifiers, hence *gándà èm-m̄ò(=ò)* ‘our country’. However, there are textual examples where a possessor allows a following demonstrative adverb to tone-drop the noun. An example is *gándà<sup>L</sup> é̄m-m̄ò ñdâ:* ‘our country here’ (text 02 at 00:13), i.e. ‘this country of ours’, with tone-dropped noun but with H-tone preserved on the possessor. Likewise *yàlù<sup>L</sup> é̄m-m̄ò ñgó-rà:* ‘village of there (that area)’, text 05 at 00:40.

The possessed noun cannot be marked separately for definiteness. If present, the definite marker appears on the possessor, though it is hard to detect phonetically because possessive *m̄ò* already has an *ɔ*-vowel (88).

- (88) *giné / (#gìnò=ò) m̄-m̄ò(=ò)*  
 house / (#house=Def) 1Sg-Poss(=Def)  
 ‘my house’

### 6.2.1.3 Tone-dropping of modifiers of alienably possessed nouns

As indicated in §6.2.1.1 above, a preposed possessor controls {L} (tone-dropping) on the possessed noun. The domain of this {L} extends rightward beyond the noun itself to include an adjective and/or a numeral modifying the possessed noun. See schemata (81a-d,i-l) and exemplifying examples (82a-d,i-l) in §6.1.1. One example, here with interlinears, is (89).

- (89) *sé:dù<sup>L</sup> ìdù<sup>L</sup> pílù<sup>L</sup> t̄à:ndù<sup>L</sup> / kùlè:]*  
 S [dog white three / six]  
 ‘Seydou’s three white dogs.’ (*ìdú, pílù, t̄à:ndú, kúlè:*)

However, if a definite clitic is added directly to a string ending in a numeral like (89), with or without an adjective, the possessor-controlled {L} is pre-empted by a noncompositional constructional overlay {L}+H attributable to the definite clitic (Heath 2015). Although the first two bracketed words in (90a) have the same L-tones as in (89), it is not clear that the

possessor has anything to do with the tone-dropping in (90a). This is because the same {L}+H overlay occurs in all strings ending with a numeral-definite combination, even without a possessor (90b).

- (90) a. *sé:dù [idù (pìlù) tà:ndʒ]L+H = ð / kùlé:]L+H = gð*  
           S       [dog     :white)     three]<sub>L+H=Def</sub> / six]<sub>L+H=Def</sub>  
           ‘Seydou’s three (white) dogs’ (definite)
- b. *[idù (pìlù) tà:ndʒ]L+H = ð / kùlé:]L+H = gð*  
       [dog     :white)     three]<sub>L+H=Def</sub> / six]<sub>L+H=Def</sub>  
       ‘the three (white) dogs’

Similarly, a modifying adjective is included in the tone-dropping domain in (91a), but addition of a definite clitic to the adjective protects it from possessor-controlled tone-dropping (91b). It is then indeterminate whether tone-dropping on the noun is controlled by the possessor or by the adjective.

- (91) a. *sé:dù L[idù pìlù]*  
       S       L[dog     white]  
       ‘Seydou’s white dog’
- b. *sé:dù L[idù]L pílð = ð*  
       S       L[dog]<sub>L</sub>     white=Def  
       ‘Seydou’s white dog’ (definite)

A preposed possessor and a final demonstrative in the same NP function as flanking joint controllers of the intervening words. Either the possessor or the demonstrative by itself would be sufficient to control tone-dropping on the relevant string. See (81e-h,m-p) and (82e-h,m-p) in §6.1.1 for schemata and examples. Both the adjective and the numeral are part of the tone-dropped domain whether or not these two have been inverted (92a-b).

- (92) a. *sé:dù L[idù pìlù tà:ndù]L ïgð*  
       S       L[dog     white     three]     Prox  
       ‘these three white dogs of Seydou’s’
- b. *sé:dù L[idù tà:ndù pìlù]L ïgð*  
       S       L[dog     three     white]     Prox  
       [=(a), with adjective and numeral inverted]

As shown in (83-84) in §6.1.1 above, a pronominal possessor follows the possessed noun. Specifically, such a possessor follows the maximal string N-Adj-Num but precedes demonstratives and ‘all’. The pronominal possessor controls no tone overlay on the preceding noun or word-string. It does, however, block the expected tonosyntactic control of the possessed noun and its modifiers by a following demonstrative. In (93a), ‘dog’ is tone-dropped by the demonstrative. The intervening pronominal possessor in (93b) allows ‘dog’ to surface with its lexical /LH/ melody, just as in (93c) with no demonstrative, justifying the tonosyntactic-island notation with  $\subset \dots \supset$  in (93b).

- (93) a. *ìdú*<sup>L</sup>      *ùgɔ́*  
           dog<sup>L</sup>      Prox  
           'this dog'
- b. *Cidú*      *ù-mò*<sup>□</sup>      *ùgɔ́*  
       Cdog      2Sg-Poss<sup>□</sup>      Prox  
       'this dog of yours-Sg'
- c. *ìdú*      *ù-mò*  
       dog      2Sg-Poss  
       dog 2Sg-Poss

Since pronominal possessors are L-toned, it is indeterminate whether the possessor itself in (93b) is tone-dropped by the demonstrative, or just keeps its regular L-tones as in (93c). One interesting analytic possibility is that the possessor is in fact tone-dropped, effectively absorbing the tonosyntactic power launched by the demonstrative. Historically, these pronominal possessors were probably appositional, e.g. 'dog, [your thing]' meaning 'your dog'. With a demonstrative this would be expanded as 'dog, [your thing Dem]', with the demonstrative phrased prosodically with 'your thing'.

### 6.2.2 Inalienable possession

Basic kin terms such as *lédù* '(maternal) uncle' are preceded by nonpronominal possessors, in the same fashion as alienably possessed nouns (94a). When the possessor is a pronoun, inalienables permit either the regular construction with postposed pronominal possessor including the morpheme *mò* after a non-tone-dropped possessed noun (94b), or a specifically inalienable alternative construction with the independent form of the pronoun preceding the possessed noun and behaving tonosyntactically like a nonpronominal possessor (94c).

- (94) a. *sé:dù*      <sup>L</sup>*lèdù*  
       S      <sup>L</sup>uncle  
       'Seydou's uncle'
- b. *lédù*      *ù-mò*  
       uncle      2Sg-Poss  
       'your-Sg uncle'
- c. *ú*      <sup>L</sup>*lèdù*  
       2SgPoss      <sup>L</sup>uncle  
       [= (b)]

#### 6.2.2.1 Kin and relationship terms

Examples of kin terms that can be used with a preposed pronominal possessor such as 2Sg *ú* are in (95). The "alienable" possessive construction (not shown) may also be used. Most kin terms do not allow singular suffix *-nv*, the exception being 'grandchild', which is likely composite. The plural is *-mbè* as in *ú*<sup>L</sup>*bò:-mbè* 'your cross-cousins'.

(95)	stem	'your ...'	gloss
	<i>bă:</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>bă:</i>	'father'
	<i>nă:</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>nă:</i>	'mother'
	<i>b᷑:</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>b᷑:</i>	'cross-cousin'
	<i>să:</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>să:</i>	'sister (of a man)', also <i>yă:-să:</i>
	<i>lédù</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>lèdù</i>	'maternal uncle'
	<i>dénè</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>dénè</i>	'elder same-sex sibling'
	<i>súŋò</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>súŋò</i>	'younger same-sex sibling'
	<i>bă:-bâ:</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>bă:-bâ:</i>	'paternal grandfather'
	<i>ígè</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>ígè</i>	'husband'
	<i>ámà</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>ámà</i>	'in-law (parent, child, sibling)'
	<i>sánà</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>sánà</i>	'brother (of a woman)'
	<i>tirèmí-nè</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>tirèmí-nè</i>	'grandchild'
	<i>áy-nè</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>ày</i>	'(woman's) same-sex friend'
	<i>ànùgè:</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>ànùgè:</i>	'(man's) same-sex friend'
	<i>b᷑:nò</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>b᷑:nò</i>	'colleague; neighbor'

Some morphologically complex kin terms are *yànná:nà* 'old woman' or 'grandmother' (either side), *ndà:-păy* 'grandmother' (cf. *păy* 'old'). They are treated as alienable.

Other kin and relationship terms that are treated as alienable are *dímbì* '(man's) girlfriend', *yă:-ná* 'woman/wife', *i:* 'child', *igù-yă:* '(woman's) co-wife', i.e. the husband's other wife (contains *ígè* 'husband' and *yă:-ná* 'woman'), and *òbî:* 'mother's co-wife; stepmother'. Possessed examples are *yă:-ná ù-mò* 'your-Sg wife' and *i: m̄-mò* 'my child'.

### 6.2.2.2 Tone contour of modifiers of an inalienably possessed noun

I have found no difference in tonosyntactic bracketing between alienable and inalienable possessors. For example, inalienable 'uncle' and alienable 'cow' occur in the same tonosyntactic constructions. An example is (96), with a numeral following the possessed noun.

(96)	<i>sé:dù</i>	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>[lèdù / nàŋà    tă:ndù]<sup>L</sup></i>	<i>sé:<sup>n</sup>=g᷑</i>
	S	<i>ú<sup>L</sup>[uncle / cow    three]<sup>L</sup></i>	good=Def

'Seydou's three good uncles/cows'

### 6.2.3 Recursive possession

A possessed NP can itself be a possessor. This results in a sequence of two (or more) {L}-toned possessed nouns.

(97)	a.	<i>[sé:dù            ú<sup>L</sup>ànùgè:]            ú<sup>L</sup>gìnè</i>
		[S                    ú <sup>L</sup> friend]            ú <sup>L</sup> house

'Seydou's friend's house'

- b. [sé:dù] <sup>L</sup>[idù] <sup>L</sup>dùlò  
 [S] [dog] tail  
 ‘Seydou’s dog’s tail’

#### 6.2.4 Possessive *mò* replacing omitted possessum

Possessive *mò* can be added after a nonpronominal NP to denote an unnamed but contextually understandable possession. Thus *sé:dù mò* ‘Seydou’s’. In a sentence like ‘We will spend the night at Seydou’s’, it is understood that the reference is to a dwelling, in DS as in English. In other contexts it might refer to a sheep, vehicle, or other possession.

### 6.3 Core NP (noun plus adjective)

#### 6.3.1 Noun plus regular adjective

A noun followed by a modifying adjective is tone-dropped. The adjective retains its tones.

- (98) a. *pèdù*<sup>L</sup> *gêŋ*  
 sheep<sup>L</sup> black  
 ‘black sheep’ (< *pédù*)
- b. *ènè*<sup>L</sup> *pílù*  
 goat white  
 ‘white goat’ (< *ènè*)

A modifying adjective is included in the tone-dropping domain controlled by a possessor preceding the noun, see (91a) in §6.2.1.3 above. However, if the definite clitic is attached to the adjective, the adjective surfaces with its lexical tones, as in (91b) in §6.2.1.3 above. In this case, it is indeterminate whether the noun is tone-dropped by the possessor or by the adjective.

#### 6.3.2 Adjective *gàmbăŋ* ‘certain (ones)’

The prototypical construction for this adjective is a parallelistic clause sequence where a set (e.g. ‘young men of the village’) is partitioned into two (or occasionally more) subsets which are associated with antonymic predicates. An example is (99). *gàmbăŋ* behaves like an adjective in tone-dropping a preceding noun.

- (99) *jèlú* *jèl-â:* *bèlù-m-ì-Ø=yô:*,  
 harvest(n) harvest-PastAnt get-Pass-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
*[ànà-ñ]*<sup>L</sup> *gàmbăŋ]* *[gín* *dà:]* *bè-d-ì,*  
 [man-Pl<sup>L</sup>] [certain] [house Loc] remain-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
*gàmbăŋ* *[wàlù*<sup>L</sup> *HL kánà]* *bò-j-ì*  
 certain [work(n)<sup>L</sup>] [do] go-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘When the harvest has been completed, some men stay in the houses (=the village), others go (to the city) to work.’

*gàmbăŋ* looks at first sight like a morphological plural (*gàmbà-ŋ*). This may be correct historically, but the final nasal is also found in singular contexts with this adjective, so it is synchronically unsegmentable. Examples are *àn-nà<sup>L</sup> gàmbăŋ* ‘a certain man’, *ságatàrà<sup>L</sup> gàmbăŋ* ‘some of the youth (young men)’ with grammatically singular collective *ságatàrà* ‘youth’, and *yù:<sup>L</sup> gàmbăŋ* ‘some of the millet’ in (100).

- (100) [yù:<sup>L</sup>      *gàmbăŋ*]      *dò:nó-d-i*,  
       [millet<sup>L</sup>      certain]      Augm.sell-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
       *gàmbăŋ*      *nà-ná:-d-i*  
       certain      Augm-eat-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
       ‘Some of the millet they will sell, some (=the rest) they will consume.’

As these examples show, the noun denoting the set (‘men’, ‘millet’) need not be repeated on the second occurrence of *gàmbăŋ*. Both *wà:gùrù<sup>L</sup> gàmbăŋ* and bare *gàmbăŋ* occur as adverbs ‘sometimes’ or ‘maybe’ (text 03 at 00:10 and 01:24).

### 6.3.3 Expansions of adjective

#### 6.3.3.1 Adjective sequences

Two adjectives may modify the same noun. In this case, the final adjective retains its lexical tones, but tone-drops the preceding N-Adj sequence. Adjectival order is generally free unless an N-Adj combination is highly lexicalized. The adjectives in (101a) and (101b) can therefore be combined either as (101c) or as (101d).

- (101) a. *pèdù<sup>L</sup>      gêŋ*  
       sheep<sup>L</sup>      black  
       ‘a black sheep’ (*pédù*)
- b. *pèdù<sup>L</sup>      pô:*  
       sheep<sup>L</sup>      big  
       ‘a big sheep’
- c. *[pèdù      pô:]<sup>L</sup>      gêŋ*  
       [sheep      big]<sup>L</sup>      black  
       ‘a big black sheep’
- d. *[pèdù      gêŋ]<sup>L</sup>      pô:*  
       [sheep      black]<sup>L</sup>      big  
       ‘a big black sheep’

An alternative analysis would be that the first adjective controls tone-dropping on the noun, then the final adjective controls tone-dropping on the first adjective. However, there is independent justification for a rightmost controller imposing {L} on a multi-word sequence, as in [N Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem where the numeral is a non-controller.

### 6.3.3.2 Adjectival intensifiers

*èdú* → ‘very’ can precede any adjective: *màŋgòrò*<sup>L</sup> [*èdú* → *ilé*] ‘a very ripe mango’. For the sense ‘well’ see §8.4.4.1.

For lexicalized adjectival intensifiers, belonging to the general class of expressive adverbials, see §8.4.7.

### 6.3.3.3 ‘Good to eat’

The construction consists of an NP, a verbal noun, and a predicate adjective (positive or negative). It is therefore literally ‘eating X is/isn’t good’. The verbal noun does not undergo tone-dropping so it is not syntactically possessed by the NP.

(102)	<i>[súgù</i>	<sup>L</sup> <i>nàmà]</i>	<i>témè-dù</i>	<i>sé:<sup>n</sup>=j,</i>
	[francolin	<sup>L</sup> meat]	eat.meat-VblN	good=it.is
	<i>[gá:<sup>n</sup>-gá:<sup>n</sup></i>	<sup>L</sup> <i>nàmà]</i>	<i>témè-dù</i>	<i>sé:<sup>n</sup>=nà:</i>
	[crow	<sup>L</sup> meat]	eat.meat-VblN	good=it.is.not

‘Francolin meat is good to eat, crow meat isn’t good to eat.’

The nasalized vowel in *sé:<sup>n</sup>* ‘good’ nasalizes *I* in *=lă:* ‘it is not’ (§11.2.1.2) to *n* (§3.5.4.7).

## 6.4 Noun or N-Adj plus numeral

### 6.4.1 Regular N-Num and N-Adj-Num sequences

A cardinal numeral follows a noun and any modifying adjectives (103a-b). In the absence of a determiner or possessor, the numeral does not interact tonosyntactically with the preceding words. Both the numeral and the preceding words have the same form (including tones) that they have independently.

- (103) a. *pédù / ènē*      *tà:ndú / kúlè:*  
sheep / goat      three / six  
‘three/six sheep/goats’
- b. *[pèdù<sup>L</sup>      gēj]*      *tà:ndú / kúlè:*  
[sheep<sup>L</sup>      black]      three / six  
‘three/six black sheep’

If the definite morpheme is added to the numeral, a special construction {L}+H overlay applies to the N-Num or N-Adj-Num string, with just the final syllable H-toned. This pattern occurs with or without a preposed possessor. Relevant formulae are scattered throughout (79), (81), and (83), and corresponding examples are in (80), (82), and (83), see §6.1.1 above (look for the <sup>L+H</sup> superscripts). See also (90a-b) in §6.2.1.3. This tonal pattern is most noticeable when the numeral is lexically /HL/-toned, like ‘six’ as opposed to /LH/-toned ‘three’.

In the absence of the definite marker, a numeral is included in the tone-dropping domain controlled by a possessor preceding the noun, and/or a demonstrative following the

numeral. See formulae and examples in the lists just mentioned, as well as (89) and (92) in §6.2.1.3.

#### 6.4.2 Adjective-Numeral Inversion (N-Adj-Num to N-Num-Adj)

This optional reordering process applies to N-Adj-Num combinations that co-occur with an inversion licensor: a possessor (preposed or postposed), a demonstrative, or a relative clause. If inversion applies, the result is the linear order N-Num-Adj within the larger NP. My assistant did not approve of inversion when the only extra determiner is a definite clitic.

The uninverted and inverted orders in the presence of both a possessor and a demonstrative are illustrated in (92a-b) in §6.2.1.3. See also the formulae and examples in (79-84) in §6.1.1 above (look for “inverted” in the translations on the right).

When inversion occurs, the numeral becomes subject to the tonosyntactic power of the following adjective. This fact is masked when the entire sequence is subject to control by a peripheral controller (preposed possessor, demonstrative, relative clause). It is revealed in combinations where the only extra determiner is a postposed pronominal possessor, which is not itself a tonosyntactic controller. This is illustrated by the pair of uninverted and inverted forms in (84d) in §6.1.1, which are marked up here as (104a-b).

- (104) a. *ìdù<sup>L</sup>*    *pílù*    *tà:ndú*    *ù-mò*  
           dog<sup>L</sup>    white    three    2Sg-Poss  
           ‘your three white dogs’
- b. *[ìdù*    *tà:ndù]<sup>L</sup>*    *pílù*    *ù-mò*  
       [dog      three]<sup>L</sup>    white    2Sg-Poss  
       [=a)]

In (104a), with the regular N-Adj-Num order, the adjective controls tone-dropping on the noun, while the numeral and postposed possessor have no tonosyntactic interactions with other elements. When the order is switched to N-Num-Adj in (104b), the adjective’s regular tonosyntactic control power is now applied to the N-Num sequence. This shows that tonosyntactic control is directional. It also shows that stem-class labels “adjective” and “numeral” are still active after inversion.

Adjective-Numeral Inversion applies in many Dogon languages under very similar conditions. It is effectively impossible to model using conventional syntactic tree structures. Rather, it is a somewhat surface-y linear inversion similar to phonological metathesis. Yet it feeds into tonosyntactic processes (Heath 2016).

#### 6.4.3 *gă:w* ‘many/much’

*gă:w* behaves like a numeral insofar as it does not control tone-dropping on a preceding noun. Therefore in (105a) each noun shows its lexical tones. Human nouns normally take plural form in this combination, but ‘person’ does not. The quantifier may be followed by a demonstrative, in which case it is included in the domain of tone-dropping (105b). *gă:w* by itself may function adverbially (105c) or absolutely as a noun (with an implied noun omitted), but ‘person’ and ‘thing’ are often explicit.

- (105) a. *nàŋá / pédù / nídé / yà:-j̩ / úlù-ñ̩ gǎ:w*  
           cow / sheep / person / woman-Pl / child-Pl      **many**  
*bō:-j-i*  
      Augm.go-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
      ‘Many cows/sheep/people/women/children will go.’
- b. *[nàŋà / pèdù          gǎ:w]<sup>L</sup>          ñgɔ́*  
      [cow / sheep          **many**]<sup>L</sup>          Prox  
      ‘many (of) these cows/sheep’ or ‘these numerous cows/sheep’
- c. *gǎ:w          yèyy-ì-y-Ø*  
      **much**          sleep-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
      ‘He/She slept a lot.’
- d. *[(nídé)          gǎ:w]          ból-ì-yà*  
      [(person)          **many**]          go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
      ‘Many (people) have gone.’
- e. *[kídè          gǎ:w]          jè:l-è-Ø*  
      [thing          **many**]          bring-Pfv-3SgSbj  
      ‘He/She brought many things.’

For predicative *gǎ:* ‘be more numerous than’, see §12.1.1.2.

## 6.5 NP with determiner

### 6.5.1 Prenominal discourse-definite marker absent

No prenominal possessor-like discourse-definite marker, similar to *kó* (a special use of an inanimate possessor pronoun) in some other Dogon languages, is attested in DS.

### 6.5.2 Noun (and modifiers) plus demonstrative

A regular demonstrative (‘this’, ‘that’, §4.4.2) follows the N-Adj-Num sequence and any postposed pronominal possessor. Demonstratives may co-occur with possessors (preposed or postposed) but not with the definite clitic.

In the absence of a postposed possessor, the demonstrative controls tone-dropping on the noun and on intervening words, as in [N Adj Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem, or inverted [N Num Adj]<sup>L</sup> Dem. Examples are in (80h) in §6.1.1. If there is also a preposed possessor, either the possessor or the demonstrative individually could account for the tone-dropping: Poss<sup>L</sup>[N Adj Num]<sup>L</sup> Dem, or inverted Poss<sup>L</sup>[N Num Adj]<sup>L</sup> Dem. See (92a-b) in §6.2.1.3.

A postposed possessor, however, prevents a following demonstrative from controlling tone-dropping on the preceding words, indicating that the sequence from the noun up to and possibly including the possessor is a tonosyntactic island. It is possible that the demonstrative does control tone-dropping on the pronominal possessor itself, but since such possessors always appear in L-toned form, it is impossible to prove that (vacuous) tone-dropping is

controlled by the demonstrative. See (84e-h, m-p) in §6.1.1. One of these is marked up here as (106).

- (106) *Cidù<sup>L</sup> pilù tǎ:ndú ù-mò* ògò  
 ⊂dog white three 2Sg-Poss ⊂ Prox  
 ‘these 3 white dogs of yours’

The string within the island, enclosed by  $\subset \dots \supset$ , has the same form it would have without the demonstrative. Neither the adjective nor the numeral is affected by the presence of the demonstrative. One can debate whether 2Sg possessor *ù-mò* is vacuously affected by tone-dropping.

### 6.5.3 Noun (and modifiers) plus definite clitic

The definite clitic is *=gò*. It often contracts with a short final vowel in a noninitial syllable in the preceding word, resulting in long [ɔɔ̄] transcribed ɔ-ɔ̄, e.g. *pédù=gò ~ pédò=ò* ‘the sheep-Sg’, *nàyá=gò ~ nàyó=ò* ‘the cow’. Contraction does not occur after a long vowel or after a consonant: *pèdù sê:n=gò* ‘the good sheep-Sg’, *sé:dù<sup>L</sup> ànùgè:=gò* ‘Seydou’s (same-sex) friend’, *i:=gò* ‘the child’.

The definite clitic occupies the same linear position as a demonstrative, but it behaves phonologically like a suffix. Definite and demonstrative do not co-occur in the same NP, except insofar as demonstrative *yó-gò* ‘that’ and possibly *kó* ‘this’ appear to contain the definite morpheme (#*yó* does not occur in the absence of *gò*). Definite marking is permitted, but optional, in combination with a preposed or postposed possessor.

The definite clitic has no tonosyntactic effect on a preceding noun or N-Adj combination. However, it does have an interesting constructional tonosyntactic interaction when it is added to a string ending in a numeral. The entire string (e.g. N-Adj-Num) gets an {L}+H overlay, with the single H-tone expressed on the final syllable of the numeral before the L-toned clitic. See the formulae and examples with L+H superscript in (79-84) §6.1.1, and examples (90a-b) in §6.2.1.3.

The definite clitic also affects the tonosyntax of a Poss-N-Adj combination. In the absence of the clitic, this combination is realized as Poss <sup>L</sup>[N Adj], with the noun and adjective tone-dropped under the control of the possessor. However, adding a definite clitic results in Poss <sup>L</sup>[N]<sup>L</sup> Adj-Def, where the adjective retains its lexical tones and where we cannot determine whether the possessor or the adjective tone-drops the noun. See formulae (81b) and examples (82b) in §6.1.1, and examples (91a-b) in §6.2.1.3.

## 6.6 Universal and distributive quantifiers

### 6.6.1 ‘All’ (*wôy*, *yà-wôy*, *fû→~pû→*, *sé:nèŋ*)

The basic universal quantifier is *wôy*. It occurs in that form in several examples in (107a-b). After a pronoun it is expanded as *yà-wôy* (107c).

- (107) a. *[írò=ò wôy] nò-è-*Ø  
 [milk=Def all] drink-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She drank all the milk.’

- b. [pédù        wò-mò=ð        wôy]        dón-è-Ø  
     [sheep        3Sg-Poss=Def        all]        sell-Pfv-3SgSbj  
     ‘He sold all of his sheep.’
- c. [émmè        yà-wôy]=j        dà-dá:-dè-Ø  
     [1Pl        all]=Acc        Rdp-kill-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
     ‘He/She will kill us all.’

‘All that’ (discourse-definite) is *kó yà-wôy*.

The ‘all’ quantifier *wôy* occurs at the end of a NP, after determiners. If present, an accusative clitic as in (107c) or a postposition follows *wôy*, showing that it is syntactically part of the NP rather than a floating or adverbial quantifier.

When the NP containing ‘all’ is the subject of the clause, the verb shows plural subject agreement when the referent is construed as a group, especially of humans (108). This is true of ‘everybody’ in (108c), even though the noun usually omits plural *-mbè*.

- (108) a. [úlù-j=gò        wôy]        ból-ì-yà  
     [child-Pl=Def        all]        go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     ‘All the children went/have gone.’
- b. [yà:-j=gò        wôy]        yél-ì-yà  
     [woman-Pl=Def        all]        come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     ‘All the women came/have come.’
- c. [ndó=ð        wôy]        ból-ì-yà  
     [person=Def        all]        go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     ‘Everyone came/has come.’  
     [assistant also accepted ndó=ð-*mbè* wôy]
- d. [é        yà-wôy]        bō:-jè-jà  
     [2Pl        all]        Augm.go-Ipfv-2PlSbj  
     ‘You will all go.’

However, the examples in (109) show singular subject agreement on the verb. This suggests an individuative construal (‘every [one]’ or ‘each’ as opposed to ‘all’).

- (109) a. [mí        <sup>L</sup>lèdù        wôy]        jímé-dè-Ø  
     [1SgPoss        <sup>L</sup>uncle        all]        get.sick-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
     ‘All my uncles are sick.’
- b. [nànjá        wôy]        jímé-dè-Ø  
     [cow        all]        get.sick-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
     ‘All the cows are sick.’

A true distributive ‘each’ in a clause crucially involving a second quantified NP was not elicitable. Instead, the regular plural ‘all’ was used for the first NP, and distributive iteration (§4.6.1.6) appeared in the other quantified NP or in a quantity adverbial. For example, instead of ‘[Each child] will take [two sheep]’ we get ‘[All the children] will take [two-two sheep]’ in

(110a). In (110b), plural ‘children’ is juxtaposed to distributively iterated ‘one-one’ which is part of an adverbial phrase.

- (110) a. *[úlù-ŋ wôy] [pédù lèy-lèy] yèŋè-d-i*  
           [child-Pl all] [sheep two-two] take-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
           ‘The children will take two sheep each.’
- b. *[úlù-ŋ [túrú-tùrù lè] sóyy(-Ø)-à:] nàmà-ŋ*  
           [child-Pl [one-one Comit] speak(-MP)-PastAnt] want-1SgSbj  
           ‘I want to speak individually with all the children.’

*wôy* features in formulae (79i-p), (81i-p), and (83i-p), and the corresponding examples in (80), (82), and (84) in §6.1.1. When *wôy* has scope over a conjoined NP, as in ‘all the men and women’, it can be phrased appositionally with a resumptive plural pronoun, as in ‘the men and the women, all of them’, see §7.1.1.2.

An alternative to the regular ‘all’ quantifier *wôy* is the regionally widespread expressive *fû→ ~ pû→* ‘all’ or ‘entirely’, cf. Fulfulde *fû→*. Though it can be articulated like an interjection, it can function as part of a NP in the same way as *wôy*. This is shown by (111), where *pû→* is followed by the accusative morpheme.

- (111) *[ànà-í pú→=ŋ] dà-ỳ-Ø*  
           [man-Pl all=Acc] kill-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She killed all the men.’

A pronoun is tone-dropped before *fû→ ~ pû→*, as in *bè fû→* ‘all of them, they all’ and *èmmè fû→* ‘all of us’. This does not happen before *yà-wôy*.

*pû→* can also be adverbial; see (123b) in §7.1.1.2.

Finally, *sé:nèŋ* ‘all’ occurs in texts where it seems to function adverbially. The combination *sé:nèŋ pû→* is also attested (112).

- (112) *[sê:^n=gò sé:nèŋ pû→] [pãŋ dà:] yò:-dè-Ø*  
           [fat(n)=Def all all] [fire Loc] enter-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘(He said:) “all the fat will go (=drip down) into the fire.”’

### 6.6.2 *nànâŋ* ‘all, everything’

*nànâŋ* ‘everything’ can be used instead of more or less synonymous phrases like *kó yà-wôy* ‘all that’. It can serve as an NP as in ‘I lost everything’, or as a modifier within a longer NP.

- (113) a. *[kè:lé mìn-mò nànâŋ] mär-i-Ø*  
           [money 1Sg-Poss all] be.lost-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘All my money was lost.’
- b. *[[ànùgě: mìn-mò nànâŋ] lè] gì-ỳ-ŋ*  
           [[friend 1Sg-Poss all] Dat] say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
           ‘I told all my friends.’

### 6.6.3 Universal and distributive quantifiers with negation

When *wôy* ‘all’ is part of an NP within a negative clause, negation scopes over the quantifier. (114) implies that the protagonist did eat some of the millet.

- (114) *yâ:=gò*      *wôy*      *jâ:-lù-ý*  
 millet=Def      all      eat-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I didn’t eat all the millet.’

For universal negation, a noun X in a negative clause may be accompanied by adjective *túllò* in the slightly emphatic sense ‘(not) any X (at all)’ or ‘not a single X’. For example, the greeting in (115a) can be elaborated as (115b).

- (115) a. *bá:sù*      *wò-ló-Ø*  
 trouble      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘There’s no trouble (here).’ (part of a greeting sequence)
- b. *[bà:sù<sup>L</sup>*      *túllò]*      *wò-ló-Ø*  
 [trouble<sup>L</sup>      any]      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘There’s no trouble at all (here).’

*túllò* ~ *túrù-lò* is fused from *túrù lò* ‘even one’, cf. *lè* ‘also, too’ (§19.1.3). The uncontracted pronunciation is attested in *kìdè<sup>L</sup> túrù-lò* ‘(not) anything’, with *kìdé* ‘thing’ (116).

- (116) *mì=ý*      *[kìdè<sup>L</sup>*      *túrù-lò]*      *ðbò-lí-Ø*  
 1Sg=Acc      [thing<sup>L</sup>      any]      give-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She gave me nothing.’

### 6.7 Accusative (=g)

The accusative morpheme is postposition-like in that it comes at the end of an entire NP, including one ending in the ‘all’ quantifier, see (107c) in §6.6.1. It cannot itself be followed by a postposition. It behaves phonologically like a clitic, syllabifying with the stem-final vowel. This combination of linear externality and phonological integration suggests that it is a (phonological) clitic. I therefore use the = clitic boundary.

=g is atonal. Combinations like 1Sg pronoun /mí=g/ realized as *mì=ý* are explained in §3.7.4.2.

In most contexts, accusative =g and the equally atonal ‘it is’ clitic =g (§11.2.1.1) are phonologically indistinguishable. An accusative NP is always non-clause-final, while the ‘it is’ clitic =g is predicative and therefore normally clause-final (§11.2.1.1).

Overt accusative marking is more or less obligatory with referentially specific human direct objects of a transitive verb (117a). It is elicitable but normally omitted with animals (117b), and it does not readily occur with inanimates. It is obligatory with pronouns of human reference in object function (117c). Objects of imperative verbs are treated just like objects of indicative verbs (117d).

- (117) a. *sé:dù = ï / úlù = ï* *w-è-íj / bènd-è-íj*  
 Seydou=Acc / children=Acc see-Pfv-1SgSbj / hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I saw/hit Seydou/the children.’
- b. *pédù / [pèdù<sup>L</sup> ïgó]* *w-è-íj / bènd-è-íj*  
 sheep / [sheep<sup>L</sup> Prox] see-Pfv-1SgSbj / hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I saw/hit a sheep/this sheep.’
- c. *wò = ï* *bènd-è-Ø*  
 3Sg=Acc hit-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘She hit him.’
- d. *wò = ï* *béndè*  
 3Sg=Acc hit.Imprt  
 ‘Hit-2Sg him/her!’

For the choice between accusative and dative, see §8.1.1.

## 7 Coordination

### 7.1 NP coordination

#### 7.1.1 NP conjunction [X lè] [Y lè] ‘X and Y’

Two NPs (including pronouns) are conjoined by adding conjunction particle *lè* after both conjuncts. The particle is optionally prolonged intonationally. Prolongation is most common in the first conjunct.

- (118) a. [ú        lè→] [mí        lè]        bòlò-mó  
[2Sg        and] [1Sg        and]        go-Hort  
'Let's you-2Sg and I go.'
- b. [dògò-nó        lè]        [púlò-nò        lè]        dàgé-èlè-∅  
[Dogon-Sg        and] [Fulbe-Sg        and]        be.fine-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
'A Dogon and a Fulbe (typically) don't get along well.'
- c. [ànà-ý        lè]        [yà:-ý        lè]        jágùl-ì-yà  
[man-Pl        and] [woman-Pl        and]        fight-Pfv-3PlSbj  
'(The) men and (the) women squabbled.'
- d. [báy        wôy]        [nàmá        lè]        [ídù        lè]        èbè-dè-ŷ  
[day        all]        [meat        and]        [fish        and]        buy-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
'Every day I buy meat and fish.'

An interesting syntactic detail is that a conjunction of two singular NPs in subject position has singular agreement in the verb (118b-c). See also §14.2.3.

In a three-part conjoined NP like (119), a list-type intonation may be used. The pitch of *lè* is higher in the both nonfinal conjuncts and is lower in the final conjunct. This type of pitch variation is not indicated in transcriptions.

- (119) [yà:-ý        lè]        [ànà-ý        lè]        [úlù-ý        lè]  
[woman-Pl        and] [man-Pl        and] [child-Pl        and]  
'women, men, and children'

In examples like (120), conjunction ('and') rather than English-style disjunction ('or') is used. The sense is that that the speaker likes neither couscous nor cowpeas (not that he doesn't like their combination in one dish).

- (120) [lájùrù        lè]        [núŋ        lè]        ibè-lè-ŷ  
[couscous        and] [cowpea        and]        like-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
'I don't like couscous or cowpeas.'

### 7.1.1.1 Ordering of coordinands

There is no systematic ordering of coordinands. This is as we would expect, given the disjoint prosodic structure of conjoined and disjoined NPs ('X and Y', 'X or Y'). The combination of speaker and addressee can be expressed as either *[ú lè] [mí lè]* 'you-Sg and me' or as *[mí lè] [ú lè]*. There appears to be some tendency to follow a 1st>2nd>3rd pecking order but it is not systematic. In conjunctions of the type 'X and X's Y', where X is the possessor of Y, there is naturally a preference for putting simple X first. If X is initially expressed as a nonpronominal NP, the second X is a regular (nonanaphoric) third person pronoun, as in (121).

- (121) *[sé:dù lè] [[wó <sup>L</sup>bà:] lè]*  
 [S and] [[3SgPoss <sup>L</sup>father] and]  
 'Seydou and his father'

### 7.1.1.2 'X and Y' with a modifier or postposition

Conjunction reduction allowing a modifier or postposition to simultaneously modify both conjuncts is avoided. English *my sheep and goats* and *female sheep and goats* are phrased as 'my sheep and my goats' (122a) and 'female sheep and female goats' (122b). Likewise for demonstratives (122c), numerals (122d), accusative *=ŋ* (122e), and postpositions (122f). That is, DS places the conjunction in the highest possible syntactic position.

- (122) a. *[[pédù-ŋ mò-mbè] [ènè-ŋ mò-mbè] dòn-è-ŋ]*  
 [[sheep-Pl 1SgPoss-Pl] [goat-Pl 1SgPoss-Pl] sell-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 'I have sold my sheep and (my) goats.'
- b. *[pèdù<sup>L</sup> yǎ: lè→] [ènè<sup>L</sup> yǎ: lè] jè:lé*  
 [sheep<sup>L</sup> female and] [goat<sup>L</sup> female and] bring.Imprt  
 'Bring-2Sg the female sheep and (female) goats!'
- c. *[pèdù ñgós lè→] [ènè<sup>L</sup> ñgós lè] ébè-dè-ŋ*  
 [sheep<sup>L</sup> Prox and] [goat<sup>L</sup> Prox and] buy-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 'I am buying these sheep and (these) goats.'
- d. *[pédù tà:ndú lè→] [ènè tà:ndú lè] ébè-dè-ŋ*  
 [sheep three and] [goat three and] buy-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 'I am buying three sheep and three goats.'
- e. *[yà:-nó=ś=ŋ lè] [àn-nó=ś=ŋ lè]*  
 [woman-Sg=Def=Acc and] [man-Sg=Def=Acc and]  
*bènd-è-*Ø  
 hit-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 'He/She hit the woman and the man.'

- f. *[[ògùlú râ:] lè] [[gín dà] lè]*  
 [[outback Loc] and] [[house Loc] and]  
*wálù kàn-jè-ìj*  
 work(n) do-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I work in the bush and in the village(s).’

However, appositional or adverbial ‘all’ quantifiers can be added after the entire conjoined NP with cumulative reference. In (123a), 3PI *bé* included in the final ‘all’ phrase resumes ‘men’ and ‘women’. In (123b) expressive *pú→* is featured.

- (123) a. *[ànà-íj=gò lè] [yá:-íj=gò lè]*  
 [man-Pl=Def and] [woman-Pl=Def and]  
*[bé yá-wóy] yél-i-yà*  
 [3PI all] come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘All of the men and women came.’  
 (lit. “The men and the women, they all came.”)
- b. *[ànà-íj=gò lè] [yá:-íj=gò lè]*  
 [man-Pl=Def and] [woman-Pl=Def and]  
*pú→ yél-i-yà*  
 all come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘All of the men and women came.’  
 (lit. “The men and the women all/entirely came.”)

A conjoined NP ‘X and Y’ is usually avoided as relative-clause head NP, but it can be elicited when no paraphrase is possible because the sense is reciprocal (‘the X and Y who fought each other’); see §14.2.3.

### 7.1.2 “Conjunction” of verbs, VPs, and clauses

Verbs, VPs, and clauses are not conjoined in the same way as NPs. One cannot add *=yò* to a clause (except when it functions as a NP, as in a direct quotation under very special circumstances).

The form of combinations of two verbs or predicates depends on the exact relationship between the two, especially whether the combination denotes simultaneous or sequenced events, and whether the two can be construed as aspects of a single complex event. See chapter 15 for the different types of combination, ranging from compound-like “direct chains” to looser forms of subordination of one clause to another.

### 7.1.3 Plural *-mbè* in lists

The nominal plural suffix is sometimes found in lists of two or more items, like an ‘and’ conjunction. The items may be singular in form, or even names of individual villages. This construction implies that the list could go on and on, even if it stops after two or three overt items that serve as examples. *-mbè* is often intonationally prolonged in this construction (transcription *-mbè→*), cf exaggerated intonation in reciting English shopping lists. See ‘maize and rice’ in text 02 at 00:19.

## 7.2 Disjunction

### 7.2.1 ‘Or’ (*mà→*)

The ‘or’ particle *mà→* also functions as the polar (yes/no) interrogative. The latter is essentially disjunctive (‘did you go? [or didn’t you go?]’), see §13.2.1.2.

‘X or Y’ disjunctions functioning in English as NPs embedded in a larger clause are typically rephrased as clausal disjunctions (124a). Even without an overt disjunctive particle, a parallelistic clause-sequence like (124b) can be interpreted as a disjunction.

- (124) a. *ídù èbè-dò-wà*      *mà→(,) nàmá èbè-dò-wà*  
           fish buy-Ipfv-2SgSbj    or       meat buy-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
           ‘Will you-Sg buy fish or meat?’  
           (lit. “Will you buy fish or will you buy meat?”)
- b. *[băy wôy] [ídù èbè-dè-ñ]*      *[nàmá èbè-dè-ñ]*  
           [day all]    [fish buy-Ipfv-1PlSbj]    [meat buy-Ipfv-1PlSbj]  
           ‘Every day we buy fish or meat.’  
           (lit. “Every day we buy fish, we buy meat.”)

A more or less clause-internal NP disjunction is also possible. However, in this case both disjunct NPs are phrased as clauses, with the ‘it is’ clitic *=ŋ* (§11.2.1.1). The combination optionally assimilates phonetically to become *=ní mà→*. Where the coordinated NP functions as direct object, as in (125a), one might mistake *=ŋ* for the homophonous accusative clitic, but *=ŋ* also occurs after inanimate nouns that do not normally allow accusative marking (125b). The clincher is that *=ŋ* ‘it is’ also occurs in subject function (125c).

- (125) a. *[ènè=ŋ mà→](,) [pédù=ŋ mà→](,) ébè*  
           [goat=it.is or]    [sheep=it.is or]    buy.Imprt  
           ‘Buy-2Sg either a goat or a sheep!’
- b. *[té:=ŋ mà→](,) [kàfé:=ŋ mà→](,) ébè*  
           [tea=it.is or]    [coffee=it.is or]    buy.Imprt  
           ‘Buy-2Sg either tea or coffee!’
- c. *[sé:dù=ŋ mà→](,) [mì=ŋ mà→](,) bólò*  
           [S=it.is or]    [1Sg=it.is or]    go.Imprt  
           ‘Either Seydou or I must go.’

A disjunct ending in *mà→* can easily be set off intonationally. For example, in (125c) a distinct pause may occur after both disjuncts, before the final imperative verb. In allegro speech, however, a distinct prosodic break is not required.

In examples like (126) where only the quantity is in play, the common noun is normally not repeated with the second numeral.

- (126) *[ibè-bǎy wôy]*  
 [market-day all  
*[pédù tǎ:ndù=jì mà→] [nà:y=jì mà→]*  
 [sheep three=it.is or] [four=it.is or]  
*dɔnɔ-dè-jì*  
 sell-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘Every market day, I sell three or four sheep.’

### 7.2.2 Clause-level disjunction

Two indicative clauses can be disjoined. When *mà→* appears after the first disjunct (and optionally after the second), a polar interrogative interpretation is usual. For example, in (127a) with ‘we’ as subject, either an assertion or a question would be possible, but my assistant interpreted the utterance as interrogative. An asserted disjunction can be expressed by simple juxtaposition of two clauses, with no overt disjunctive particle (127b).

- (127) a. *[ŋgó-nù wálù kǎ:n-jè-ñì mà→]*  
 [here work(n) Augm.do-Ipfv-1PlSbj Q]  
*[yû: wàlā-dè-ñì (mà→)]*  
 [millet do.farming-Ipfv-1SgSbj (Q)]  
 ‘Shall we work here (at home), or cultivate millet (in the fields)?’
- b. *[bǎy wôy] [ŋgó-nù wálù kǎ:n-jè-ñì]*  
 [day all] [here work(n) Augm.do-Ipfv-1PlSbj]  
*[yû: wàlā-dè-ñì]*  
 [millet do.farming-Ipfv-1PlSbj]  
 ‘Every day, either we work here (at home) or we cultivate millet (in the fields).’

Imperatives and hortatives cannot be coordinated. The cue ‘pay (up) or go!’ was rephrased in translation as (128b) with two (imperfective) indicatives, or as (128b-c) with a single final imperative following a negative subordinated clause.

- (128) a. *[é:bé-dɔ-wà] mà→ bō:jɔ-wà*  
 [Augm.pay-Ipfv-2SgSbj or] Augm.go-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
 ‘You-Sg will pay, or you will go.’
- b. *[ébè-èlé-ý=yò] bólò*  
 [pay-IpfvNeg-2SgSbj;if] go.Imprt  
 ‘If you-Sg won’t pay, go!’
- c. *[ébè-èlé-ñì=jè] bólò-xñì*  
 [pay-IpfvNeg-2PlSbj;if] go.Imprt-PlAddr  
 ‘If you-Pl won’t pay, go!’

## 8 Postpositions and adverbials

### 8.1 Dative and instrumental

Postposition *lè* is a basic instrumental-comitative postposition. It can also be used under limited conditions as a dative. *lè* occurs without change after either pronouns or nonpronominal NPs.

#### 8.1.1 Dative *lè*

A PP with *lè* is regularly used for the indirect object of ‘say’ (129a-b).

- (129) a. *sé:dù [ú lè] ñjú gì-ỳ-∅*  
S [2Sg Dat] what? say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘What did Seydou say to you-Sg?’
- b. *[sé:dù lè] ñjú g-i-w*  
[S Dat] what? say-Pfv-2SgSbj  
‘What did you-Sg say to Seydou?’

Dative *lè* is also used to indicate a purpose or cause, in combination with particle *já:*, see §8.3.1. In addition, *lè* is the particle ‘and’ following both conjuncts in NP conjunction (chapter 7).

However, the accusative rather than the dative is used for the indirect object of ‘give’, ‘show’, or ‘convey’, or for the (indirect) object of ‘reply’.

- (130) a. *sé:dù=ìj bú:dù òb-ù-ìj*  
S=Acc money give-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I gave (the) money to Seydou.’
- b. *sé:dù=ìj pédiù tág-ù-ìj*  
S=Acc sheep show-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I showed (a/the) sheep to Seydou.’
- c. *émmè=ìj tê: já-yè-jè-∅*  
1Pl=Acc tea take-come-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She will bring us (some/the) tea.’
- d. *ú mì=íj yàbil-è:-lú-w*  
2Sg 1Sg=Acc reply-MP-PfvNeg-2SgSbj  
‘You-Sg didn’t answer me.’

Bare NPs without accusative or dative marking can be used for some purposive senses (131a). In (131b), the “beneficiary” is phrased as the possessor of ‘work’ rather than as a separate PP.

- (131) a. bú:dù wálù kálà wɔ̡-j̩  
     money work(n) do be-1SgSbj  
     'I am working for money.'
- b. [[mí bá:] wáI] kálà wɔ̡-j̩  
     [[1SgPoss father] work(n)] do be-1SgSbj  
     'I work for my father.' (lit. "I do my father's work.")

### 8.1.2 Instrumental-comitative *lè*

*lè* is much more productive as an instrumental ('by means of') or comitative ('in the company of') postposition, generally translatable as 'with'. It also occurs in idioms like 'by force, forcibly' (132d) and in connection with vehicles as means of transport (132e).

- (132) a. [táná lè] idù=j̩ bēnd-è-j̩  
     [stick with] dog=Acc hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I hit-Past (a/the) dog with (a/the) stick.'
- b. bé [ígé lè] yèlá wɔ̡-yyà  
     3Pl [honey with] come be-3PlSbj  
     'They are coming with (the) honey.'
- c. [sé:dù lè] wálù kálà wɔ̡-j̩  
     [S with] work(n) do be-1SgSbj  
     'I work with Seydou.'
- d. [sémbè lè] yò-ŷ-yà  
     [force with] enter-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     'They entered by force.'
- e. [kâ:r lè] bàmàkó bò-jò-j̩  
     [bus with] B go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
     'I (will) go to Bamako by bus.'

### 8.1.3 Temporal *lè*

*lè* is also the postposition regularly used with temporal adverbials based on an NP with noun '(moment in) time', 'day', 'year', or the like.

- (133) a. [bày<sup>L</sup> / ànà-kùdù<sup>L</sup>] wó yèl-đ=đ] lè  
     [day<sup>L</sup> / year<sup>L</sup>] 3SgSbj come-Pfv.Ppl=Def] at  
     'on the day / in the year when he/she came'
- b. [bày<sup>L</sup> kú] lè  
     [day<sup>L</sup> Dem.Def] at  
     'on that (same) day'

### 8.1.4 *lè* after locational ('toward')

*lè* can follow a PP denoting a location. This combination means 'toward, in the direction of'.

- (134) *[[kàló=ɔ rà:] lè bòló wò-yyà*  
       [[boundary=Def Loc] toward] go be-3PlSbj  
       'They are heading for the border (or boundary).'

'Towards here, in this direction, this way' is *ndâ: lè*.

## 8.2 Locational postpositions

### 8.2.1 Locative 'in, on' (*rà:* ~ *dà:*)

The basic spatial locative postposition is *rà:* ~ *dà:*. The vowel is optionally shortened. The best gloss is 'at', but in many contexts the postposition can loosely be translated as 'in' as long as being enclosed is not emphasized.

- (135) a. *[bàmàkó rà:] wò-ŋ*  
       [B Loc] be-1SgSbj  
       'I am in Bamako (city).'  
     b. *[sèwá:rà dà:] wò-ŋ*  
       [S Loc] be-1SgSbj  
       'I am in Sevare (city).'

My assistant usually pronounces the postposition after a vowel as *rà:* with a tap: *àndá rà:* 'in (a/the) village', *té: rà:* 'in (a/the) granary', *dí: rà:* 'in (a/the) water', *wálù rà:* 'at work'. However, *dà:* is arguably the more basic form (*wálù dà:* 'at work' was heard as a variant). My assistant pronounced *dà:* after 'Sevare' in (135b), probably because of the tap in the final syllable of the place name. 'At/in (a/the) house', by extension 'in the village', is regularly *gín dà* after syncope from *gíné* 'house', showing that *dà:* is also used after a consonant.

*kô:* 'that' combines as *kô-rà:*.

The difference between 'be at' (emphasis on the location as a Cartesian point) and 'be in' (emphasis on being enclosed) is made by the choice between stative quasi-verbs *wò* 'be (in/at a location)' and *tò* 'be in (a container or bounded space)', see §11.2.2.2 and §11.2.3.1. Both regularly co-occur with simple locative PPs.

Allative and ablative direction are not indicated by postpositions. Rather, the PP is in simple locative form, while directionality is expressed by verbs. Aside from explicitly allative 'arrive' and explicitly ablative 'exit, go out', PPs with basic motion verbs including 'go' and 'come' are usually interpreted as allative.

- (136) a. *[àndá rà:] bò-jè-ŋ*  
       [village Loc] go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
       'I will go to the village.'

- b. [àndʒ=ð]      rà:]      gò-è-íj  
 [village=Def]    Loc      go.out-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 'I left the village.'

*nàn-númò* '(in the) hot season' or '(in the) dry season (hot and cold)' and similar nouns denoting seasons can readily function adverbially without an overt postposition. Likewise with *yáŋà* '(at) night' and other time-of-day nouns.

French 'chez X', i.e. 'at/to the home of X', can be expressed without 'house' by an absolute possessive (§4.3.1) plus locative *rà:*, as in *mó rà:* 'at my place, chez moi'.

The simple locative postposition is also part of several **complex postpositions** of the type 'at (in, on) the Y of X', cf. English *in front of* and the like. When X is a nonpronominal NP, it functions as preposed possessor and controls tone-dropping on the noun Y, resulting in *[IX<sup>L</sup> Y(=gò)] rà:]*. When X is a pronoun, we get the regular postposed pronominal possessor, with no tone change on the noun Y, hence *[Y PRON-mò(=ð)] rà:]*. As elsewhere, definite marking on a pronominal possessor is usually absent (or inaudible).

### 8.2.2 Locative *nì* (suffixed -*nì*) and *nè*

An ending *-nì* ~ *-nè* competes with *-rà:* in forming deictic spatial adverbs ('here', 'there') from demonstrative stems, e.g. *ŋgó-rà:* ~ *ŋdâ:* versus *ŋgó-nì* ~ *ŋgó-nè* in the sense 'here' see §4.4.3.1. The same competition occurs with the interrogative 'where?', *yògó rà:* versus *yògó-nì*, see §13.2.2.3.

*nì* occurs as a locative postposition after spatial relative clauses that function adverbially in the higher clause, e.g. 'in [the place where ...]'. See §15.3.1 for examples.

The complex postpositions ending with *dà:* ~ *rà:* described in the following sections also have variants with *nì* and another variant *nè*. When the complement of the complex postposition is preposed (i.e. a nonpronominal NP), my assistant uses *nì* immediately after the definite clitic *=(g)ò*, but *nè* if the definite clitic is absent. In either case *rà:* is also possible.

- (137) a. [sé:dù      L<sup>L</sup>ùnnò=ð]      nì / rà:  
 [S                  rear=Def]    Loc  
 'behind Seydou'
- b. [sé:dù      L<sup>L</sup>ùnnù]      nè / rà:  
 [S                  rear]        Loc  
 [= (a)]

The role of the definite clitic is harder to determine with postposed pronominal possessors like *mò-mò* 'my', since the distinction between e.g. *mò-mò* and definite *mò-mò=ð* is difficult to hear. For example, 'behind me' can be expressed as either *ùnnú mò-mò rà:* or *ùnnú mò-mò(=ð) nì*, both literally 'at/to my rear'. In any event, *nì* is preferred over *nè* after pronominal possessors.

I cannot identify a semantic distinction between *dà:* ~ *rà:* and the less common *nì* in examples like (137a-b). In demonstrative adverbs, *-nì* is common with 'here', while the variant with *rà:* is more spatially diffuse ('around here'). Only *-rà:* occurs with discourse-definite 'there'; see §4.4.3.1. A similar distinction between two competing locative postpositions in Yanda Dom is based on proximity, e.g. '(here) in this village' versus '(over) in the other village'.

The variant *nè* also occurs, instead of *ni*, in temporal sense ‘at (a time), on (a day), in (an hour)’. An example is *bay<sup>L</sup> túrù nè* ‘in (no more than) one day’, (472b) in §15.3.2.1. Similarly, *nè* occurs in temporal ‘since’ clauses (§15.2.1.6).

Any historical connection between the locative postposition and *(-)ni* as a verb subordinator (§15.2.1.3-4, §15.2.2.1) is obscure synchronically. Likewise with *nè* in counterfactual *bènè* (§16.4).

### 8.2.3 ‘Inside X’ (*[X<sup>L</sup> kɔlɔ] rà:*)

From the noun *kɔlɔ* ‘interior’ or (for a person or animal) ‘gut, entrails’ is formed the complex postposition (*[X<sup>L</sup> kɔlɔ] rà:* ‘inside X’). Here X may be a container, construction, village, forest, or other entity with a more or less well-defined boundary. Examples are *[àndá<sup>L</sup> kɔlɔ] rà:* ‘inside the village/city’, *[gìné<sup>L</sup> kɔlɔ] rà:* ‘inside the house’, *[děŋ<sup>L</sup> kɔlɔ] rà:* ‘inside the waterjar’, and *[kúrbù<sup>L</sup> kɔlɔ] rà:* ‘inside the forest’. With a postposed pronominal possessor *kɔlɔ* has its lexical tones (138).

- (138) *[kɔlɔ bè-mɔ] rà:*  
 [interior 3Pl-Poss] Loc  
 ‘inside them’ or ‘in their gut(s)’

Without an overt landmark we have a simple adverbial *kɔlɔ rà:* ‘inside, in the interior’.

### 8.2.4 ‘On (the head of) X’ (*[X<sup>L</sup> kù:] rà:*)

‘In/at the head of X’ (cf. *kù:* ‘head’) is used loosely for ‘on X’ where X is a person, animal, or other entity with a head or top. In the case of a person or other erect entity, the phrasing is often at least semi-literal (139a). In the case of a quadruped like ‘donkey’ or a structure like ‘house’, the phrase can denote any spot on the “top” such as the donkey’s back or anywhere on the house’s roof (139b). The phrasing ‘in/at the head of X’ is not used with ‘mat’ or other entity lacking a vertical extension. Instead, a simple locative postposition is used (139c).

- (139) a. *tibó=ð [yú: m̩-mɔ] rà:] bàg-i-∅*  
 stone=Def [[head 1Sg-Poss] Loc] fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The rock fell (=landed) on me.’ (*tibú*)
- b. *tibó=ð [[jàngúrù / gìné Lkù:] rà:] bàg-i-∅*  
 stone=Def [[donkey / house Lhead] Loc] fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The rock fell (=landed) on (a/the) donkey/house.’
- c. *tibó=ð [yèŋjó=ð rà:] bàg-i-∅*  
 stone=Def [mat=Def Loc] fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The rock fell (=landed) on the mat.’ (*yèŋjé*)

Some complex postpositions described below often occur with the definite clitic on the noun. This does not seem to be usual with *[X<sup>L</sup> kù:] rà:*

For *[X<sup>L</sup> kù:] nè* in the apparent sense ‘(a tale) about X’, see comments in §8.3.2 below.

### 8.2.5 ‘Next to, beside X’ ( $[X^L bòmbùrù] dà:$ )

From noun *bòmbùrú* ‘side, flank’ (definite *bòmbùrɔ̃=ɔ̃*) we get complex postposition ( $[X^L bòmbùrù] dà:$ ) or (definite) ( $[X^L bòmbùrɔ̃-ɔ̃] rà:$ ) ‘next to X, beside X’. Because of the tap in *bòmbùrú*, my assistant pronounces the locative postposition as *dà:* rather than *rà:* when the definite clitic is absent. When it is present, it serves as a buffer between the two taps.

- (140) a.  $[[sé:dù \quad [^L bòmbùrɔ̃=ɔ̃] \quad rà:] \quad wɔ̃-j]$   
 $[[S \quad [^L \text{side}=Def] \quad \text{Loc}] \quad \text{be-1SgSbj}$   
‘I am next to Seydou.’
- b.  $sé:dù \quad [[bòmbùrú \quad ù-mɔ̃(=ɔ̃)] \quad rà:] \quad wɔ̃-\emptyset$   
 $S \quad [[\text{side} \quad 2\text{Sg-Pos}(=\text{Def})] \quad \text{Loc}] \quad \text{be-3SgSbj}$   
‘Seydou is next to you-Sg.’

The adverbial counterpart is *bòmbùrú dà:* ‘to the side, nearby’ used without an overt reference point (landmark) X.

### 8.2.6 ‘In front of’ ( $[X^L gírù] dà:$ )

From noun *gírù* ‘front’ (distinct from but possibly distantly related to *gírú* ‘eye’) we get complex postposition  $[X^L gírù] dà:$  or (definite)  $[X^L gírɔ̃=ɔ̃] rà:$  ‘in front of X’ or ‘ahead of X’. X is normally an oriented entity with a front and a back, especially a person or animal.  $[X^L bòmbùrù] dà:$  ‘next to X’ is preferred when X is e.g. a tree.

- (141) a.  $[[sé:dù \quad [^L gírɔ̃-ɔ̃] \quad rà:] \quad wɔ̃-j]$   
 $[[S \quad [^L \text{front}] \quad \text{Loc}] \quad \text{be-1SgSbj}$   
‘I am in front of Seydou.’
- b.  $sé:dù \quad [[gírù \quad m̄-mɔ̃] \quad rà:] \quad wɔ̃-\emptyset$   
 $S \quad [[\text{front} \quad 1\text{Sg-Poss}] \quad \text{Loc}] \quad \text{be-3SgSbj}$   
‘Seydou is in front of me.’

Adverbial ‘in front, ahead, forward’ is *gírù dà:*.

### 8.2.7 ‘Behind/ X’ ( $[X^L ùnnɔ̃-ɔ̃] rà:$ ), ‘after X’ ( $[X^L ùnnù] nè$ )

The noun *ùnnú* ‘back (of body)’ is the basis for the complex spatial postposition ‘behind’.

- (142) a.  $[[sé:dù \quad [^L ùnnɔ̃-ɔ̃] \quad rà:] \quad wɔ̃-j]$   
 $[[S \quad [^L \text{back}=Def] \quad \text{Loc}] \quad \text{be-1SgSbj}$   
‘I am behind Seydou.’
- b.  $sé:dù \quad [[ùnnú \quad m̄-mɔ̃(=ɔ̃)] \quad rà:] \quad wɔ̃-\emptyset$   
 $S \quad [[\text{back} \quad 1\text{Sg-Poss}(=\text{Def})] \quad \text{Loc}] \quad \text{be-3SgSbj}$   
‘Seydou is behind me.’

The temporal sense ‘after X’ can be expressed by a variant of this complex postposition with *nè* (after a nonpronominal NP) or *ni* (after a pronominal possessor) replacing locative *rà*. The definite clitic is absent. X can denote either a temporal reference point (‘holy day’) or an individual.

- (143) a. [sàŋá           <sup>L</sup>ùnnù]        *nè*]        *bō:-jè-ŋ*  
          [holy.day       <sup>L</sup>back]        Loc]        Augm.go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
          ‘I will travel after the holy day.’
- b. [[ùnnú           m̩-m̩]        *ni*]        *bō:-jè-*Ø  
       [[back           1Sg-Poss]        Loc]        Augm.go-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘He/She will travel after me (=after I do).’
- b. [sé:dù           <sup>L</sup>ùnnù]        *nè*]        *bō:-jè-ŋ*  
       [S           <sup>L</sup>back]        Loc]        Augm.go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I will travel after Seydou (=after he does).’

‘After X’ when X denotes a temporal reference point can also be expressed by a temporal adverbial relative clause with the verb *gàlá* (*gàl-ú*) ‘pass (by)’.

- (144) [sàŋá           <sup>L</sup>gàlì=yō:]        *bō:-jè-ŋ*  
          [holy.day       <sup>L</sup>pass=if]        Augm.go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
          ‘I will travel after the holy day.’

Adverbial ‘behind, in the rear’ is *ùnnú rà:*. Adverbial ‘afterwards’ is *pinná: ni*, cf. verb *pinnè* ‘stay put (not go away)’.

#### 8.2.8 ‘Over/above X’ (*[X<sup>L</sup>dà:] rà:*), ‘below/under X’ (*[X<sup>L</sup>jòè] rà:*)

The nouns *dâ:* ‘top, apex, summit’ and *jóè* ‘bottom, base’ are the bases for the complex postpositions ‘over/above X’ (145) and ‘below/under X’ (146).

- (145) a. [[tibó=ð       <sup>L</sup>dà:]        *rà:]*        *wð-ŋ*  
       [[stone=Def       <sup>L</sup>top]        Loc]        be-1SgSbj  
       ‘I am over/above the rock.’
- b. *tibó=ð*        [[dâ:        m̩-m̩]        *rà:]*        *wð-*Ø  
       stone=Def        [[top        1Sg-Poss]        Loc]        be-3SgSbj  
       ‘The rock is above me.’
- (146) a. [[tibó=ð       <sup>L</sup>jòè]        *rà:]*        *wð-ŋ*  
       [[stone=Def       <sup>L</sup>bottom]        Loc]        be-1SgSbj  
       ‘I am below/under the rock.’
- b. *tibó=ð*        [[jóè        m̩-m̩]        *rà:]*        *wð-*Ø  
       stone=Def        [[bottom        1Sg-Poss]        Loc]        be-3SgSbj  
       ‘The rock is below/under me.’

*dâ*: ‘above’ and *jóè* ‘below’ can be used as compound finals to denote the upper and lower sections of a village like Tognon (*tógnòñ*) that has one section (generally older) on a hill and another section on flat ground at the base of the hill: *tògnòñ-dâ*: ‘Upper Tognon’, *tògnòñ-jóè* ‘Lower Tognon’.

Unpossessed locative PPs *dâ*: *rà*: ‘at the top’ and *jóè rà*: ‘at the bottom’ can be used adverbially (‘above, overhead’ and ‘down below, underneath’) without explicit mention of the landmark.

For the senses ‘(be) on X’ and ‘(be) up on X’, expressed by stative verbs in combination with simple locative PPs (*rà*), see §11.2.3.2.

### 8.2.9 ‘Between’ ( $[[X\ Y]^L binnò = \delta] rà$ :

‘Between X and Y’ where X and Y are spatial points is expressed by conjoining X and Y in the usual way (chapter 7) and making this conjoined NP the complement of the complex postposition  $^L binnò = \delta rà$ . The relevant noun is *binné* ‘middle, center’.

- (147) *[ländá      m̩-mɔ]*  
 [village      1Sg-Poss]  
 $[[[bànjàgàrá      lè →]      [bàŋkás      lè]      ^L binnò = \delta]      rà:]$   
 [[[B      and]      [B      and]       $^L$ middle=Def]      Loc]  
*tò-∅*  
 be.in-3SgSbj  
 ‘My village is (located) between Bandiagara and Bankass (cities).’

A pronominal example of the same type is (148).

- (148) *[[ú      lè]      [mí      lè]]      ^L binnò = \delta]      rà:*  
 [[2Sg      and]      [1Sg      and]]       $^L$ middle=Def]      Loc  
 ‘between you-Sg and me’

An overt conjunction can be replaced by a single summarizing NP or pronoun denoting the group. If a pronoun, we get the usual construction with the possessor following the noun (149a).

- (149) a. *[binné      èm-mò = \delta]      rà*  
 [middle      1Pl-Poss=Def]      Loc  
 ‘between/among us’
- b. *[yà:-ý       $^L$ binnò = \delta]      rà:]*  
 [woman-Pl       $^L$ middle=Def]      Loc  
 ‘between/among (the) women’

The corresponding adverbial phrase is *binnò = δ rà* ‘in the middle’.

### 8.3 ‘For’ and ‘about’

#### 8.3.1 Purposive-causal ‘for’ (*[X lè] jă:*)

As noted in §8.1.1, postposition *lè* by itself functions as dative only in a construction with a verb of saying. The simple postposition is much more common in instrumental-comitative function (§8.1.2).

However, adding *jă:* to a simple PP with *lè*, the latter presumably in dative rather than instrumental function, creates a phrase denoting a purpose/goal (prospective) or a reason/cause (retrospective).

- (150) a. *émmè [àná lè] jă: yò-è-ñ*  
1Pl [rain(n) Dat] Purp go.in-Pfv-1PlSbj  
‘We went in(side) because of the rain.’
- b. *bé [kájèŋ lè] jă: yèl-i-yà*  
3Pl [gold Dat] Purp come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
‘They came for (the) gold.’
- c. *[ámbá lè] jă: mì=í bár-i-∅*  
[God Dat] Purp 1Sg=Acc help-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She helped me for God (i.e. without expecting recompense)’

*jă:* resembles a chaining form or past anterior subordinated form of the verb *jă:* ‘take (sb)’. However, Tommo So purposive *diye* suggests an alternative etymology.

For purposive clauses see §17.5.

#### 8.3.2 ‘About, concerning’ (*[X<sup>L</sup> tāŋà] nè*)

The topic of a discussion or meeting can be expressed with complex postposition <sup>L</sup>*tāŋà nè* or, with definite clitic, <sup>L</sup>*tāŋò=ò nì*, based on the noun *tāŋá* ‘side, area, zone’.

Another combination *[X<sup>L</sup> kù:] nè* based on *kù:* ‘head’ roughly translates ‘about X’ as the title of a tale. However, this should be construed semi-literally as ‘on (the head of) X’ (§8.2.4), since the verb *kúndò* ‘put’ is used with ‘tale’ as object.

### 8.4 Other adverbs (or equivalents)

#### 8.4.1 Similarity (*gìnè* ‘like’, suffix *-nji:*)

/L-toned *gìnè* ‘like’ (accidentally homophonous to the {L}-toned form of *gìné* ‘house’) can follow an NP or pronoun to express similarity (151a). It can be made predicative by adding *wò* ‘be (somewhere)’.

- (151) a. *[yà:-ná gìnè] wálù kán-jè-wò*  
[woman-Sg like] work(n) do-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
‘You-Sg work like a woman.’

- b. *sé:dù [mí gìnè] wɔ-∅*  
 S [1Sg like] be-3SgSbj  
 ‘Seydou is like me.’

*gìnè* resembles *gi-ỳ-∅* ‘he/she said’ plus locative postposition allomorph *nè*, which can function as a clause-final subordinator (§15.2.1.6), e.g. in ‘since’ clauses. However, it is equally likely that *gìnè* is an archaic bisyllabic form of ‘say’, cf. Dogul Dom *gínè* and cognates especially in western Dogon languages. See comments on (474) in §15.3.2.2.

Deictic ‘like this’ (e.g. with a simultaneous demonstration) is *ŋgó-njì: ~ ŋó-njì:*, while recent discourse-anaphoric or post-demonstration ‘like that’ is *kɔ-njì:* and more abstract ‘thus’ is *yěŋ*. Interrogative ‘how?’ is *yògó-njì:*, with the same ending. As adverbs, these elements can be made predicative by *bé:* ‘stay; become (adverb)’, as in *yěŋ bì-ỳ-∅* ‘it has become (=it is) thus’, i.e. ‘that’s how it is’. The two words are rather fused phonetically as [*jěmb...*], and an apparently unsegmented stative *yémbè* ‘be thus’ (negative *yémbè-lé*) is also attested.

#### 8.4.2 Extent (‘much, ‘a little’) (*èdú→, gă:w, dăy, gă:lĕy*)

Adverbial ‘much, greatly, to a great extent’ is *èdú→*. The final vowel is variably prolonged intonationally, sometimes quite conspicuously (in positive utterances). It can occur in negative clauses, with less noticeable prolongation (152b). Where the sense is ‘a lot’, i.e. a NP rather than an adverbial phrase, *èdú→* is replaced by the quantifier *gă:w* ‘a lot, many/much’, with or without an accompanying NP (152c).

- (152) a. *èdú→ jɔg-è-ñ*  
**greatly** run-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I ran a lot.’
- b. *èdú→ jɔgɔ-lì-ñ*  
**greatly** run-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I didn’t run much.’
- c. *mì=í (màngòró) gă:w òb-ì-∅*  
 1Sg=Acc (mango) **a.lot** give-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She gave me a lot (of mangoes).’
- d. *gă:w wɔ-ló-∅*  
**a.lot** be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘It isn’t much.’

‘A little’ is *dăy* or *gă:lĕy*. Both occur in adverbial and nominal functions, and they may co-occur with an NP (153b). See also adverbial *dégè-dègè* in text 04 at 00:44.

- (153) a. *dăy / gă:lĕy jɔg-è-ñ*  
**a.little** run-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I ran a little.’

- b. *mì=ń* (màngòró) *dăy / gă:lĕy* *òb-i-Ø*  
   1Sg=Acc (mango) a.little give-Pfv-3SgSbj  
   ‘He/She gave me a little/a few mangoes.’
- c. *dăy=lă:-Ø*  
   a.little=it.is.not-3SgSbj  
   ‘It isn’t (just) a little.’

#### 8.4.3 Specificity

##### 8.4.3.1 ‘Exactly, truly, specifically’ (*té<sup>n</sup>→*)

*té<sup>n</sup>→* may follow an NP to distinguish a primary or “real” kinsman from a classificatory one (154a). When the NP (or pronoun) already identifies the referent, *té<sup>n</sup>→* is emphatic ('X and not anyone else') (154b); see also text 03 at 00:54. (154c) can disabuse an interlocutor who has mistaken a cow for the speaker’s cow of very similar appearance.

- (154) a. *sé:dù* [mí <sup>L</sup>*bà:* *té<sup>n</sup>→*]=*lă:-Ø*  
   S [1SgPoss <sup>L</sup>father exactly]=it.is.not-3SgSbj  
   ‘Seydou isn’t my real (e.g. biological) father’
- b. [mí *té<sup>n</sup>→*] [é-*mò* *rà:*] *yĕ:-jè-ং*  
   [1Sg exactly] [2Pl-Poss Loc] Augm.come-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
   ‘I personally will come to your-Pl place.’
- c. [*nàŋá* *m-*mò** *té<sup>n</sup>→*]=*lă:-Ø*  
   [cow 1Sg-Poss exactly]=it.is.not-3SgSbj  
   ‘It (=that cow) actually isn’t my cow.’

*té<sup>n</sup>→* is pronounced like an expressive adverbial, with variable duration and level pitch. The phonemic tone is high, as heard clearly in (154a) where *té<sup>n</sup>→* has higher pitch than the preceding <sup>L</sup>*bà:* and the following =*lă:-Ø*. However, *té<sup>n</sup>→* is downstepped and its pitch is lower than that of the H-tone on the preceding NP or pronoun, so *mí té<sup>n</sup>→* in (154b) is heard as [*mítē→*].

Though pronounced as an EA, *té<sup>n</sup>→* seemingly forms part of a syntactic NP (DP), which is not usually possible for a true EA. However, it is not clear that the bracketed phrases with *té<sup>n</sup>→* in (154a-b) are true syntactic phrases. My assistant rejected *té<sup>n</sup>→* on an NP-internal possessor, as in #/[mí *té<sup>n</sup>→*] <sup>L</sup>*bà:* ‘my own father’ or #/*gìné* [[mí *té<sup>n</sup>→*] *mò*] ‘my own house’, instead requiring that *té<sup>n</sup>→* follow the entire higher NP. He likewise rejected *té<sup>n</sup>→* at the end of an NP functioning as complement of a PP. For example, locative PP *bàmàkó rà:* *té<sup>n</sup>→* ‘in Bamako itself’ with *té<sup>n</sup>→* after the postposition is fine, but this cannot be rephrased as #/[*bàmàkó* *té<sup>n</sup>→*] *rà:* .

*té<sup>n</sup>→* may be iterated as *té:<sup>n</sup>-tè:<sup>n</sup>* with no discernible change in sense, but usually in a more clearly clause-level adverbial sense. As usual with iterations of *Cv→* EAs, the first iteration has the H-tone and the duration of the vowels is normalized to match long vowels.

- (155) [wàlù<sup>L</sup> ñgó] té:<sup>n</sup>-tè:<sup>n</sup> náŋ-gù wò-∅  
 [work(n) Prox] exactly difficult be-3SgSbj  
 ‘This job is really hard.’

#### 8.4.4 Evaluation

##### 8.4.4.1 ‘Well’ (*èdú→*) and ‘badly’

The adverb *èdú→*, with the final H-toned vowel prolonged (§3.8.2), means ‘well’. It does not form part of a NP or other clause-internal phrase. (For the sense ‘very’ modifying another adjective, see §6.3.3.2.)

- (156) a. yû: èdú→ wàlā-dè-w  
 millet well do.farming-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
 ‘You-Sg cultivate millet (=do farming) well.’
- b. wálù èdú→ kàn-jè-∅  
 work(n) well do-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She works well.’
- c. jóbù èdú→ jòbò-dè-∅  
 running(n) well run-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She runs well.’

Given the frequency of cognate nominal “objects,” often pro forma, one can also add an evaluative adjective such as *sé:<sup>n</sup>* ‘good’ or *pà:dé:* ‘bad’ to the object noun (‘he/she does bad work’, etc.).

The verb *dágá* ‘be good’, exemplified in (118b) and (531), can be used in various contextual senses like ‘be well-done’ or ‘turn out well’.

There is no adverb meaning ‘badly’. One can simply negate the verb and keep *èdú→* (‘he/she doesn’t run well’), or have recourse to some other construction, like that in (157).

- (157) [jóbù wò-mò] sé:<sup>n</sup>=nà:-∅  
 [running(n) 3Sg-Poss] good=it.is.not-3SgSbj  
 ‘His/her running is not good.’ (i.e. runs badly)

##### 8.4.4.2 ‘Being well’ (*jâŋ*, *sé:w*)

The abstract noun *jâŋ* ‘well-being’ occurs as part of greeting sequences, with the versatile postposition *lè* (158).

- (158) [jâŋ lè] wò-ñ  
 [well.being Inst] be-1SgSbj  
 ‘I am fine.’

A synonym is *sé:w*, used as an adverb without a postposition.

- (159) *sê:w*      *wɔ̃-j*  
**being.well**      be-1SgSbj  
‘I am fine.’

*jâŋ* is not attested in the sense ‘right, normal, socially appropriate’. This is expressed by positive or negative forms of the verb *dágá* ‘be good’, or by *há:nù kán(à)* with auxiliary *kán(à)* ‘do’.

#### 8.4.4.3 ‘Correctly’ (*sá<sup>n</sup>→*)

This expressive adverbial occurs in combinations like *sá<sup>n</sup>→ kánà* ‘do (e.g. work) right!’ and *sá<sup>n</sup>→ bólō* ‘go correctly (e.g. by the correct route)!’.

#### 8.4.5 Deadjectival and other manner adverbials

There is no productive counterpart to English *-ly* deriving adverbs from adjectives. The usual translation equivalent involves adjectival modification of an object noun, perhaps a pro forma cognate nominal: “he does [fast work]” meaning ‘he works fast’.

For the manner adverbial relative clauses type ‘the way (in which) you work’, see §15.3.2.1. Noun *sógnjì* ‘manner’ is the head, overt or not. For ‘like X’ phrases, see §8.4.1.

From modifying adjectives *wágú* ‘distant’ and *bérú* ‘near, close by’, adverbs *wágǔ:* ‘far away’ and *bérǔ:* ‘nearby, not far away’ are formed.

#### 8.4.6 Spatiotemporal adverbials

##### 8.4.6.1 Temporal adverbs

Some of the major temporal adverbs are in (160). The morphologically complex terms are irregular. Some in (160c) are based on *băy* ‘day’ in L-toned form, but *bă:y* in (160b) has a long vowel and seems to be *bă:y* ‘since’ (i.e. counting back from). The prospective day sequence beginning with ‘today’ (160a) and continuing as (160c) is consistent with the Dogon five-day week (*júgù*) as still practiced in scheduling the Sangha market (but not the Bandiagara market, which is now fixed as Mondays and Fridays). In some contexts, the notion of a ‘year’ is focused on the farming season (from planting to harvest). ‘Next year’ is a pseudo-conditional subordinated clause.

- |          |                         |   |
|----------|-------------------------|---|
| (160) a. | <i>íyè</i>              | ‘today; nowadays’                               |
|          | <i>yágá</i>             | ‘again (another time)’                          |
|          | <i>ígélè</i>            | ‘again’   |
|          | <i>námmà, íyè námmà</i> | ‘up to now, so far, (not) yet’                  |
|          | <i>kándɔw</i>           | ‘now’   |
|          | <i>kándò ñgós</i>       | ‘now’   |
| b.       | <i>yâ:</i>              | ‘yesterday’                                     |
|          | <i>íyè bâ:y tâ:ndú</i>  | ‘day before yesterday’ (< <i>tâ:ndú</i> ‘3’)    |
|          | <i>íyè bâ:y nâ:y</i>    | ‘two days before yesterday’ (< <i>nâ:y</i> ‘4’) |
|          | <i>ágàŋ</i>             | ‘long ago, in the old days’                     |

- c. *yògó* ‘tomorrow; in the future’  
*yògò-dénè*  
*bày<sup>L</sup> nǎ:y-gù*  
*bày<sup>L</sup> ñn᷑*  
*iyè jùgù* (cf. *júgù* ‘week’)
- d. *gà:lí* ‘last year’  
*bâ: gò-è-∅=yô:* ‘next year’, lit. “when the farming season has exited”  
*yúgà:* ‘this year’

Numerals occur in several of the day terms in (160b-c). The present day is counted as ‘1’. Therefore ‘day before yesterday’ in the retrospective series (160b) includes *tà:ndú* ‘3’. Similarly, in the prospective series (160c), the terms for the second and third days after tomorrow contain *nǎ:y* ‘4’ and *ñn᷑* ‘5’.

#### 8.4.6.2 ‘First(ly)’ (*kě:=gò*) and ‘later’ (*pinn-á:-ni*)

To emphasize a chronological sequencing, adverb *kě:=gò* ‘first(ly), to begin with’ can be added to a clause, and/or *pinn-á:-ni* ‘later, subsequently’ can be added to a following clause. Both occur in (161), whose first clause is a pseudo-conditional, so the chronological sequence is already (unemphatically) marked without the adverbs. *pǎ:* ‘meal’ refers to a regular meal with cooked grain, usually millet cakes.

- (161) *kě:=gò pǎ: jè-y-yà=yô:, fìrst=Def meal eat-Pfv-3PlSbj=if, pinn-á:-ni nám᷑=ò tèmè-d-i later meat=Def eat.meat-Ipfv-3PlSbj*  
‘First they’ll eat the (regular) meal, then afterwards they’ll eat the meat.’

*kě:=gò* is analysable as a definite form of ordinal *kě*: ‘first’.

*pinn-á:-ni* is a tonally irregular nonpast anterior subordinated form (§15.2.2.4) related to *pinnè* ‘return, go back’, synonym of *kígūl-è:-*. The same irregular rising tone pattern occurs in what appears to be a direct verb chain in *pinné sóyy-è:-* ‘say again, repeat’.

#### 8.4.6.3 Spatial adverbs

The following are the main nouns used in simple, nondemonstrative spatial adverbials. *rà:* ~ *dà:* is the locative postposition.

- (162) a. *dâ: (rà:)* ‘above, on top, (at) the summit’  
*jóè (rà:)* ‘below, (at) the bottom, down’
- b. *dû: (rà:)* ‘east’  
*kòlú (rà:)* ‘west’  
*wádùbà (rà:)* ‘south’  
*tɔmmɔ-gìné (rà:)* ‘north’

- c. *ùnnú (rà:)* ‘(in) the rear, behind’  
*gírù (dà:)* ‘forward, ahead, (in) front’

‘North’ is associated with the Tommo (speakers of Tommo So).

‘Right hand’ *nùmò<sup>L</sup>* *jă:* and ‘left hand’ *nùmò<sup>L</sup>* *nà:ndá* are N-Adj combinations with *nùmò* ‘hand’. *jă:* is also a noun ‘food, meal’, so in theory one could alternatively analyse the first of these as a compound *nùmò-jă:* ‘hand-food’. However, one would have expected the opposite ordering (‘food-hand’), and *jă:* is also found in *kùbò<sup>L</sup>* *jă:* ‘right foot’, which takes eating out of the picture. ‘Left’ and ‘right’ are not normally used in directional adverbials (‘turn left!’).

#### 8.4.7 Expressive adverbials (EAs)

EAs (cf. “ideophones”) are adverbs. In this syntactic function, they may be loosely integrated into clauses, but they are morphologically inert and do not form part of syntactic phrases such as NPs. They may, however, be made predicative by adding either stative quasi-verb *wò* ‘be’ or inchoative *bě:* ‘become’ (elsewhere this verb means ‘remain’, see §11.1.3.1).

EAs may differ in phonological form from other stems. One common pattern is “intonational” prolongation of the final segment (vowel or sonorant consonant), represented by →. This is distinct from vowel length since the duration is highly variable (allowing it to be calibrated for expressiveness or rhetorical force), and since an H-toned syllable may be prolonged without being forced into contoured <HL> or <LH>, as word-final Cv: and CvL syllables in normal words are.

Other EAs involve full-stem iteration. Some EAs have two forms, one simple and one iterated. A generous sample of EAs is in §8.4.7.1 just below. The grammar of EAs, in particular their range of predicative is exemplified by ‘straight’ in §8.4.7.2.

Unlike nouns, verbs, adjectives, and numerals, an EA need not have an H-tone. For example, *pìrùgù-pàrùgù* ‘disordered junk, bric-à-brac’ is entirely /L/-toned. This induces a following *wò* ‘be’ to raise its tone, so that at the level of the EA-plus-auxiliary combination there is one H-tone. There is no tonal change in negative *wò-ló*.

- (163) *pìrùgù-pàrùgù*      *wò-Ø / wò-ló-Ø*  
 bric-à-brac      be-3SgSbj / be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘It is / isn’t junk.’

Most EAs are lexical, but EAs can be derived from regular lexical stems in specific circumstances. Verbs denoting manner can be effectively converted to manner adverbials by iteration (§15.1.11). Some adjectives have a corresponding EA with (g)ù→ or by iteration (§8.4.7.6).

##### 8.4.7.1 List of representative EAs

Some EAs are in (164), organized by form.

- (164) a. *Cv<sup>n</sup>→*  
*pá<sup>n</sup>→*      ‘wide open (door)’  
*pó<sup>n</sup>→*      ‘wide open (door)’

<i>pé<sup>n</sup>→</i>	‘narrow hole; mouth slightly open’
<i>ká<sup>n</sup>→</i>	‘wide open (mouth)’
<i>sá<sup>n</sup>→</i>	‘correctly’ (§8.4.4.3)
b. <i>CvC(→)</i>	
<i>kém→</i>	‘totally silent, speechless’
<i>tɔy<sup>n</sup>→</i>	‘very salty’
<i>běy<sup>n</sup>→</i>	‘glowing light (of embers)’ (iterated <i>běy<sup>n</sup>-běy<sup>n</sup></i> ‘flickering off and on’)
<i>often iterated</i>	
<i>těŋ→, těŋ-těŋ</i>	‘straight’
<i>děŋ, děŋ-děŋ</i>	‘apart’
c. bi- or trisyllabic, prolonged	
<i>bòrí→</i>	‘wide open (eyes)’
<i>dùrí→</i>	‘sticking out slightly’
<i>jèbègé→</i>	‘ajar, slightly open (door)’
<i>jígé→</i>	‘(pole, tree) swaying back & forth’
d. no prolongation or iteration	
<i>òm᷑d᷑ŋ</i>	‘flat-nosed’
<i>káyày</i>	‘blazing sunlight’
e. trisyllabic, vocalic size symbolism (§3.4.8), no prolongation	
<i>sóròdò</i>	‘tall and straight (tree, giraffe)’
<i>sáràdà</i>	‘tall and straight (tree, giraffe)’
<i>sérèdè</i>	‘straight (nose)’
f. iterated	
<i>H-tone in second iteration only</i>	
<i>wìdì-wídì</i>	‘(arms) swinging’
<i>sùdù-súdù</i>	‘dragging oneself along’
<i>gù:gì:-gú:gì:</i>	‘dragging oneself along’ (synonymn)
<i>jígùmù-jígùmù</i>	‘(elephant, fat woman) with hips swiveling’
<i>H-tone in first iteration only</i>	
<i>ném-nèm</i>	‘light drizzle’
<i>pádà-pàdà</i>	‘illuminated, well-lit (area)’
<i>pírù-pírù</i>	‘(bird) flapping wings’
<i>júngù-jùngù</i>	‘bobbing up and down’
<i>kérèŋ-kérèŋ</i>	‘hot and spicy (taste)’
<i>sáràw-sáràw</i>	‘whipping, lashing’
<i>túgùŋ-túgùŋ</i>	‘lukewarm’
<i>jálàgá-jálàgá</i>	‘quivering (dog’s tongue)’
<i>kúmòjò-kùmòjò</i>	‘(eyes) slightly open’, cf. verb <i>kúmòlò</i> ‘open (eyes)’
<i>H-tone present in both iterations</i>	
<i>wòbògá-wòbògá</i>	‘poorly encased (shoe, door)’
<i>wíllèŋ-wíllèŋ</i>	‘(flag) flapping in wind’

- g. iterated with *a*-vowel(s) in second iteration
- |                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>jìbú-jàbú</i>       | ‘staggering along’   |
| <i>pìdé-pàdà</i>       | ‘lightning flashing’   |
| <i>pìrùgù-pàrùgù</i>   | ‘disordered junk, bric-à-brac’   |
| <i>lùgùdù-lágùdù</i>   | ‘disordered (pile of clothing); roiled (water)<br>cf. verb <i>lígùdè</i> : ‘be roiled’ |
| <i>dèngùdù-dáŋgùdù</i> | ‘(earth) trampled down (e.g. by cows)’   |

- h. *Cìlvìllì*, cf. similar shapes in §8.4.7.4
- |                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>yèlélle</i> | ‘blinding light (in one’s eyes)’    |
| <i>dòlóllò</i> | ‘bright point of light (e.g. star)’ |

- i. composite (non-iterative)
- |                  |                                       |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>pìlù-pádè</i> | ‘brightly-lit’ ( <i>pílù</i> ‘white’) |
|------------------|---------------------------------------|

See also the adjectival intensifiers in §8.4.7.4 below.

#### 8.4.7.2 ‘Straight’ (*těj→*, *těj-těj*)

This is an example of an EA that has a fundamental lexical sense, not an exotic “ideophone.” I use it here to illustrate the grammar of EAs. In adverbial function, it has two forms, one simple but with intonational prolongation, the other iterated without prolongation (165).

- (165) *těj→* ‘straight’  
*těj-těj* ‘straight’

In *těj→*, the nasal is prolonged. Its duration is highly variable, depending on rhetorical function and speaker styles. In the iterated form there is no prolongation.

In adverbial function, these forms generally co-occur with motion verbs. Either variant may be used in (166).

- (166) *yé-rà:* *těj→ / těj-těj* *bólò*  
 DiscDef-Loc straight go.Imprt  
 ‘Go-2Sg straight there!’

Like other EAs, *těj→* and *těj-těj* can be made predicative. The stative sense ‘be straight’ can be predicated of a road or a stick, for example. The auxiliary in this case is *wò* ‘be (somewhere)’ or its negation *wò-ló* (§11.2.2.2).

- (167) *ódò=ò / tánnò=ò* *těj→ / těj-těj* *wò-∅*  
 road=Def / stick=Def straight be-3SgSbj  
 ‘The road/stick is straight.’

A distinctive syntactic feature of EAs is that they also have an inchoative construction with auxiliary *bě:*, which can be used in any aspect or polarity. As an ordinary intransitive, this verb means ‘remain’ (§11.2.4.1).

- (168) *ódò = ò / tánnò = ò      tèŋ → / tèŋ-tèŋ      bì-ỳ-Ø*  
 road=Def / stick=Def      straight      remain-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The road/stick became straight.’

To make ‘straight’ into a postnominal modifier denoting a state, it must be made predicative and then converted into a relative clause. The participial forms used are *wò:*, the regular participle of *wò* ‘be’, or *kánn-ù*. The latter is a variant of the usual perfective participle *kánn-ú* from *kán(à)* ‘do’ or intransitive ‘be done’ (§10.1.3.12).

- (169) *[tánnà<sup>L</sup>      tèŋ → / tèŋ-tèŋ      kánn-ù]      bélè*  
 [stick<sup>L</sup>      straight      be.done-Pfv.Ppl]      get.Imprt  
 ‘Get-2Sg a straight stick!'

#### 8.4.7.3 ‘Apart’ (*déŋ*, *déŋ-déŋ*)

‘Apart, separate, distinct’ is expressed by *déŋ* or iterated *déŋ-déŋ*. The concept requires at least two referents (individuals or groups) that are contrasted in some way (prototypically spatial). In parallelistic constructions, *déŋ* must be used. In (170a), *déŋ* is final in the “clause,” but there is no overt predicate. The nasal in *déŋ* is not prolonged. The negative counterpart (170b) adds the conjugated stative negative *-lá-* after a tone-dropped form of *déŋ*.

- (170) a. *mó:dù      déŋ,      sèwá:rà      déŋ*  
 M      apart,      S      apart  
 ‘Mopti and Sevare (are) apart.’
- b. *mó:dù      déŋ-lá-Ø,      sèwá:rà      déŋ-lá-Ø*  
 M      apart-StatNeg-3SgSbj,      S      apart-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘Mopti and Sevare are not apart.’

When *déŋ* is not the final word in a clause, for example in true adverbial use (171a) or before *wò* ‘be’ (171b), it takes the form *déŋ-gù*.

- (171) a. *ànà-íj=gò=ìj      déŋ-gù      bòd-ù-ìj,*  
 man-Pl=Def=Acc      apart      deposit-Pfv-1SgSbj,  
*yà:-íj=gò=ìj      déŋ-gù      bòd-ù-ìj*  
 woman-Pl=Def=Acc      apart      deposit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I positioned the men and the women apart (separated).’
- b. *déŋ-gù      wò-yyà*  
 apart      be-3PISbj  
 ‘They are apart (or distinct).’

If the two referents are consolidated into a plural NP, *déŋ-déŋ* is normal. Under these conditions it is required if final in the “clause” (172a) or clause-internally in cases like (172b). It can also be used instead of *déŋ-gù* in (171b) above, see (172c). Uniterated *déŋ-gù* in (171b) above is allowed because plurality of the referents is marked in the ‘be’ auxiliary.

- (172) a. *[[ànà-ń lè] [yà:-ń lè]] dēŋ-dèŋ*  
       [[man-Pl and] [woman-Pl and]] apart  
       ‘Men and women (are) apart.’
- b. *[[ànà-ń lè] [yà:-ń lè]] dēŋ-dèŋ bòd-ù-ń,*  
       [[man-Pl and] [woman-Pl and]] apart deposit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I positioned men and women apart.’
- c. *dēŋ-dèŋ wò-yyà*  
       apart be-3PIsBj  
       ‘They are apart (or distinct).’

See also text 02 at 00:17. Either *déŋ-gù* or *dēŋ-dèŋ* can be used with *bě:* in the sense ‘become separated’ or ‘separate (themselves)’.

#### 8.4.7.4 Adjectival intensifiers

This is a class of EAs that are associated with adjectival categories. Those in (173) are suppletive (vis-à-vis the adjective), and may co-occur with the adjective in predicative function. In this case the adjective drops its tones: *bànù bóy<sup>n</sup>-bòy<sup>n</sup>* ‘deep red’. The intensifiers in (173b) are built from the adjective by an unusual final reduplication, ending in ...XXvXXv with *X* = *I* as default or a nasal if present in the base adjective. These forms replace the adjective rather than co-occurring with it.

- (173)      gloss              adjective              intensifier
- a. iterated, unrelated phonologically to adjective
- |          |               |  |
|----------|---------------|--|
| ‘red’    | <i>bánù</i>   | <i>bóy<sup>n</sup>-bòy<sup>n</sup></i> |
| ‘white’  | <i>pílù</i>   | <i>pádà-pàdà</i>                       |
| ‘black’  | <i>gēŋ</i>    | <i>kúdù-kùdù</i>                       |
| ‘green’  | <i>wérù</i>   | <i>jáy-jáy</i>                         |
| ‘yellow’ | <i>púrùgù</i> | <i>túy-túy</i>                         |
| ‘sour’   | <i>ámà</i>    | <i>ntólò-ntólòg</i>                    |
- b. ...XXvXXv
- ... *llvvv* with *I* in adjective
- |          |              |                   |
|----------|--------------|-------------------|
| ‘sweet’  | <i>èllú</i>  | <i>èléllèllè</i>  |
| ‘bitter’ | <i>gàllú</i> | <i>gálállàllà</i> |
| ‘cold’   | <i>kèllú</i> | <i>kéléléllè</i>  |
- ... *llvvv* with default *I* absent from the adjective
- |          |              |                    |
|----------|--------------|--------------------|
| ‘short’  | <i>dùmbú</i> | <i>dùmbúllùllù</i> |
| ‘narrow’ | <i>èmmú</i>  | <i>èmméllèllè</i>  |
- like above but irregular, cf. inchoative verb *wày-nd-é:-* ‘become wide’
- |        |             |                    |
|--------|-------------|--------------------|
| ‘wide’ | <i>wáyà</i> | <i>wàndállàllà</i> |
|--------|-------------|--------------------|
- ... *mmvmmu* with *I* absent from the adjective
- |          |            |                  |
|----------|------------|------------------|
| ‘rotten’ | <i>ómì</i> | <i>ómòmmòmmò</i> |
|----------|------------|------------------|

For other adjectives no form of type (173a) or (173b) was elicitable. However, many adjectives may be iterated for intensification, the first iteration being {L}-toned and the second showing lexical tones: *mày-mày* ‘soaking wet’, *tònnò-tónnò* ‘very hard’, *kùnjù-kùnjú* ‘very coarse’.

#### 8.4.7.5 Deadjectival *C᠁Cvŋ-C᠁Cvŋ* ‘-ish’

Another de-adjectival EA, this time with attenuating semantics (cf. English *-ish*), is expressed by an iterative template *C᠁Cvŋ-C᠁Cvŋ*. The initial *C* position may be vacant. If the adjective has a nongeminate medial *CC* cluster, it is preserved, but a geminate is reduced. The first vowel of the adjective spreads throughout the iteration, except that if *a* is the first vowel we get *a...e*.

(174)	gloss	adjective	attenuating EA
-------	-------	-----------	----------------

##### a. first vowel quality spreads

‘wet’	<i>ðlú</i>	<i>ðləŋ-ðləŋ</i>
‘sweet’	<i>ɛllú</i>	<i>ɛləŋ-ɛləŋ</i>
‘cold’	<i>kellú</i>	<i>kéləŋ-kéləŋ</i>
‘white’	<i>pílù</i>	<i>pílɪŋ-pílɪŋ</i>
‘black’	<i>gēŋ</i>	<i>gémèŋ-gémèŋ</i>
‘coarse’	<i>kùnjú</i>	<i>kúnjùŋ-kúnjùŋ</i>

##### b. first vowel *a*

‘bitter’	<i>gallú</i>	<i>gáləŋ-gáləŋ</i>
‘red’	<i>bánù</i>	<i>bánəŋ-bánəŋ</i>
‘sour’	<i>ámà</i>	<i>áməŋ-áməŋ</i>

#### 8.4.7.6 Deadjectival EA with suffix *-ŋ* or final *(-g)ù:*

From *pà:dé:* ‘bad’, as an alternative to the regular inchoative verb *pá:d-è:-* ‘become bad’, one can say *pà:dé:-ŋ bě:* ‘become bad’. The use of a conjugated form of *bě:* ‘remain’ to form an inchoative predicate shows that *pà:dé:-ŋ* is an EA. The tones of *pà:dé:-ŋ* suggest direct derivation from the adjective *pà:dé:* rather than a derivation from the inchoative verb.

Further examples are in (175).

(175)	gloss	adjective	EA inchoative predicate
-------	-------	-----------	-------------------------

##### with *-ŋ*

‘big’	<i>pô:</i>	<i>pó:-ŋ bě:</i> ‘become big’
‘small’	<i>ùdî:</i>	<i>ùdí:-ŋ bě:</i> ‘become small’
‘good’	<i>sê:n</i>	<i>sé:-ŋ bě:</i> ‘become good’
‘white’	<i>pílù</i>	<i>pílù-ŋ bě:</i> ‘become white’
‘sweet’	<i>ɛllú</i>	<i>ɛllù-ŋ bě:</i> ‘become sweet’

The formation in *-ŋ* appears to be productive with adjectives. The known exceptions are the handful of adjectives that either lengthen a final *u:* or in one case add *-gu:* to the stem in the

stative adjectival predicate with *wò* ‘be’ (§11.4.1.1). These stems also use the lengthened forms in the inchoative with *bě:*, showing that the lengthened forms are EAs similar to those in *-ŋ* above.

- (176)      gloss      adjective      EA inchoative predicate

with *-gù:* or lengthened final *ù:*

‘black’	<i>géŋ</i>	<i>géŋ-gù:</i> <i>bě:</i> ‘become black’
‘yellow’	<i>púrùgù</i>	<i>púrùgù:</i> <i>bě:</i> ‘become yellow’

#### 8.4.8 Iterated distributive adverbials

For iterated distributive forms of numerals, e.g. ‘three-three’ meaning ‘three each’ or ‘three at a time’, see §4.6.1.6. These are adverbs syntactically and are made into predicates in the same way as EAs. Agreement is normally singular.

- (177) a. *tà:ndú-tà:ndú*      *wò-*Ø  
three-three      be-3SgSbj  
‘They are (grouped) three by three’
- b. *tà:ndú-tà:ndú*      *bì-ŷ-*Ø  
three-three      remain-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘They have become (grouped) three by three’

## 9 Verbal derivation

The productive suffixal derivations (stem to stem) for verbs are the reversive ('un-...'), the causative, and the inchoative and factitive of adjectives. There are vestiges of a no longer productive alternation of mediopassive and transitive.

### 9.1 Reversive verbs (-Iv)

The reversive suffix is **-Iv** with variable vowel depending on stem vocalism. It is common in verb pairs like 'cover' versus 'uncover' that denote complementary actions, (at least) one of which reverses or undoes the other. It may be intransitive or transitive. 'Remember' is construed as 'un-forget'. 'Open (door)' is construed as 'un-shut'. *yô:* 'go in' and *gô:* 'go out' are not expressed as simple versus reversive.

The stem before **-Iv** is usually bisyllabic. There is only one naturally occurring example with a **Cv:** stem ('remember'), and this pattern seems to be an aberration. My assistant did not respond to my effort to elicit a reversive for *kô:* 'turn (garment) inside out', even though the semantics are favorable. From synonym *bilé* I did elicit *bili-lé* 'turn (inside-out garment) back to its normal shape', an action that happens on a daily basis since garments are regularly turned inside-out during washing and later returned to their normal shape for wearing.

Trisyllabic stems are not allowed before reversive **-Iv**. However, **CvCv-rv** verbs with a final transitive derivational suffix can drop the suffix before **-rv**. In this case, the alternation is transitive **CvCv-rv** versus reversive **CvCv-Iv**.

The tone melody and vocalism including ATR-harmonic category of the reversive are predictable from those of the input verb. Lexical /LH/ melody is reapplied to the whole derived stem (§3.7.3.1). Bisyllabic stems with initial high vowel, like *bigé* 'bury', show a second high vowel in the medial syllable of the reversive throughout, not only in the perfective. An exception is *pípè-lè ~ píñè-lè* 'open (door)' for which my assistant preferred medial *e*.

Examples of reversives are in (178).

(178)	input	gloss	reversive	gloss
a. bisyllabic with initial high vowel				
	<i>medial high vowel in reversive</i>			
	<i>bigé</i>	'bury'	<i>bìgù-lé</i>	'disinter'
	<i>bilé</i>	'put inside-out'	<i>bili-lé</i>	'put right again'
	<i>mùñjó</i>	'tie a knot'	<i>mùñjò-ló</i>	'untie (knot)'
	<i>mùndo</i>	'stop up (hole)'	<i>mùñjò-ló</i>	'reopen (hole)'
	<i>medial mid-height vowel in reversive</i>			
	<i>mùnnó-</i>	'bend, braid, fold'	<i>mùnnù-ló</i>	'unbend, unbraid, unfold'
b. bisyllabic, initial mid-height vowel				
	<i>sógò</i>	'attach (loop)'	<i>sógò-lò</i>	'detach (loop)'
	<i>dèñé</i>	'stuff up (well)'	<i>téñè-lè</i>	're-excavate (stuffed well)'

<i>dòŋjó</i>	‘prop up’	<i>dòŋjò-ló</i>	‘remove prop from’
<i>téŋjè</i>	‘hobble (animal)’	<i>téŋjè-lè</i>	‘unhobble’
<i>gònnó</i>	‘bend’	<i>gònnò-ló</i>	‘straighten’
<i>kómmò</i>	‘tie’	<i>kómmò-lò</i>	‘untie’
<i>kómbò</i>	‘roll up (pants)’	<i>kómbò-lò</i>	‘unroll (bottom of pants)’
<i>témmè</i>	‘put lid on’	<i>témmè-lè</i>	‘take lid off’

c. bisyllabic with initial *a*

<i>dàgá</i>	‘lock’	<i>dàgà-lá</i>	‘unlock’
<i>màná</i>	‘seal up’	<i>mànà-lá</i>	‘unseal’
<i>tárà</i>	‘affix, post’	<i>tárà-lá</i>	‘unpost (remove)’
<i>dàŋgá</i>	‘cover with hide’	<i>dàŋgà-lá</i>	‘remove hide covering from’
<i>námmà</i>	‘step on’	<i>námmà-lá</i>	‘remove foot from’

d. *-lv* replaces *-rv* in trisyllabic

<i>gòndò-ró</i>	‘hook, hang’	<i>gòndò-ló</i>	‘unhook’
<i>pégè-rè</i>	‘knock blade on’	<i>pégè-lé</i>	‘knock (hoe, ax) blade off handle’
<i>yèmbè-ré</i> <i>irregular</i>	‘cover (sb)’	<i>yèmbè-lé</i>	‘uncover (sb)’
<i>jù:-ró</i>	‘turn over’	<i>jùl-ló-</i>	‘put right-side-up (calabash, bowl)’

e. monosyllabic

<i>nă:</i>	‘forget’	<i>nà:-l-é:-</i>	‘remember’
<i>nă:</i>	‘weave (rope)’	<i>nà:-l-é:-</i>	‘(rope) unravel’

f. with *nd* in input, see §3.5.5.1

<i>pí:(-)ndè</i>	‘shut (door)’	<i>píjnè-lè ~ píjnè-lé</i>	‘open (door)’
<i>yá:-ndà</i>	‘put/lay up on’	<i>yáŋjà-là</i>	‘take (sth) down off’
<i>té:-ndè</i>	‘cover with lid’	<i>témmè-lè</i>	‘take lid off’

Bisyllabics like *bígé* ‘bury’ whose perfectives are based on the E-stem (*bíg-è* ‘he/she buried’) correspond to reversives whose perfectives (as with all trisyllabic verbs) are based on the I-stem (*bígù-l-i* ‘he disinterred’). ‘Remember’ (178e) has I-stem perfective *ná:-l-i* ‘he/she remembered’, but in this case it may be that this is simply carried over from the input ‘forget’, which also has an I-stem perfective: *ná-ŷ* ‘he/she forgot’.

Apparently underived stems with the shapes *Cv:Iv* or *CvCvIv* that do not function synchronically as reversives (i.e. that are not paired with semantically related *Cv:* or *CvCv* stems) may have originated as reversives.

The reversible suffix cannot follow a mediopassive or causative suffix, but it may be followed by either or both of them. The mediopassive is especially common in the context of removing one’s own garments. Before the reversible-mediopassive complex *-l-é:- ~ -l-é:-*, a medial-syllable raises its vowel to *i* or *u*.

(179) a. reversible followed by mediopassive

<i>nă:-l-é:-</i>	‘remember’	<i>nă:</i>	‘forget’
<i>jíbì-l-é:</i>	‘take off a wrap’	<i>jíb-é:</i>	‘put on a wrap’
<i>páŋjì-l-é:-</i>	‘undo choking’	<i>páŋ-è:-</i>	‘choke (on food)’

<i>dòmmù-l-é:-</i>	'take off hat'	<i>dòmm-é:-</i>	'put on hat'
<i>nómmù-l-è:-</i>	'spring back'	<i>nómmò</i>	'sag under a weight'
<i>kúmbù-l-è:-</i>	'unclench (fist)'	<i>kúmb-è:-</i>	'clench (fist)'
<i>kúmù-l-è:-</i>	'open (eyes)'	<i>kúm-è:-</i>	'shut (eyes)'

b. reversive followed by causative

<i>pípnè-łè-mò</i>	'cause to open'	<i>pípnì-łè</i>	'open (door)'
[both also may have <i>ŋ</i> instead of <i>ł</i> ]			

c. reversive followed by mediopassive and causative

<i>nà:-l-è:-mò</i>	'remind'	<i>nà:-l-é:-</i>	'remember'
--------------------	----------	------------------	------------

Another pair where *-lv* has somewhat different semantics is *gànjà* 'dig up (sth buried)', said for example of squirrels digging up peanuts or carrots, and *gànjà-lá*, which occurred in a text in the context 'dig around (unsuccessfully) for, poke around for'.

## 9.2 Causative

### 9.2.1 Productive causative *-mv*

The productive causative suffix is *-mv* with variable vowel. It can be added rather freely to already transitive as well as intransitive verbs. For the valency syntax, see §11.1.3.4.

Causative verbs adopt the tone melody, /HL/ or /LH/, of the input stem, with /LH/ reapplied to the whole stem. Unlike the reversive suffix, the causative suffix does not agree with the stem in ATR-harmonic class. Instead, the causative suffix is always -ATR in inflections that allow a mid-height vowel, even after a +ATR vowel, as in imperfective *pí:ndè-mè-dè* 'makes (sb) shut (door)'.

The imperative form is always *-mò* (H- or L-toned depending on the stem), and the 3Sg perfective always *-m-i*. If the preceding syllable has a front/back vowel, and if there is a suffixal syllable (with any vowel quality), *-mò* undergoes Back/Rounding Harmony (§3.4.5) to *-me-*. Note the alternation in imperative *pí:ndè-mò* 'make (sb) shut (door)!' versus imperfective *pí:ndè-mè-dè* 'makes (sb) shut (door)' and hortative *pí:ndè-mè-mò-ŋ*. If the vowel of the preceding syllable is *a*, we get variation between *-mò* and *-ma* before a suffix (such as imperfective *-dè*), but with *-mò* regular word-finally (i.e. in imperatives).

Also unlike the reversive, the causative suffix can be added to a trisyllabic stem without trimming off the third input syllable. In fact, the causative suffix can readily be added to a reversive derivative: *kómmò-lò-mò* 'cause to untie'.

Examples are in (180).

(180)	input	gloss	causative	gloss
a. monosyllabic input				
<i>nɔ:</i>	'drink'	<i>nɔ:-mò</i>	'give drink to'	
<i>yô:</i>	'enter'	<i>yó:-mò</i>	'take in'	
<i>jâ:</i>	'eat (meal)'	<i>já:-mò</i>	'feed'	
<i>bě:</i>	'stay'	<i>bè:-mò</i>	'cause' (perfective <i>bí:-m-i</i> )	

b. bisyllabic input

<i>pí:ndè</i>	‘shut (door)’	<i>pí:ndè-mò</i>	‘make (sb) shut (door)’
<i>sóyy-è:-</i>	‘speak’	<i>sóyy-è:-mò</i>	‘make speak’

c. trisyllabic input

<i>kómmò-lò</i>	‘untie’	<i>kómmò-lò-mò</i>	‘make (sb) untie’
<i>páy-nd-è:-</i>	‘become old’	<i>páy-nd-è:-mò</i>	‘make (sb) old’

d. irregular *ŋ* ~ *nd*, see §3.5.5.1

<i>níné</i>	‘be afraid’	<i>nìndù-mó</i>	‘frighten, scare’
-------------	-------------	-----------------	-------------------

All these causatives, even those of bisyllabic shape *Cv:-mv*, are I-stems. Therefore the perfective is always *-m-i* and the chaining form always *-m-u*. Before *-m-i* or *-m-u*, any noninitial syllables have their vowels raised: *pí:nd-i-m-i* ‘caused to shut’, *kómmù-lì-m-i* ‘caused to untie’, *páy-nd-ì:-m-i* ‘made (sb) old’.

*Cv*: verbs that have *Ci-y* perfectives have causatives with *Cí:-m-i* perfectives (3Sg form). Thus *bè:-mó* ‘cause to remain’ shown in (180a) has 3Sg perfective *bí:-m-i-Ø*. Likewise *gè:-mó* ‘cause to say’, 3Sg perfective *gí:-m-i*.

For other causative-like transitivizing derivations, see §9.4.2-6. For “causative” look-alike *-mv* in passive function, see §9.3 below.

Also of at least diachronic interest is the fact that the hortative (‘let’s go!’, §10.6.2.1) has the same form as the imperative of a causative.

### 9.2.2 Suffix *-gvlv*

This derivation is found with a number of bisyllabic stems. The vowel quality of the suffixal vowels depends on those of the stem. For a sample paradigm see §10.1.3.14. The known examples are in (181). Some are causative (valency-changing), others are not.

(181) a. causative sense

<i>nùmbò-gòló</i>	‘knock down; defeat’	<i>nùmbó</i>	‘fall’
<i>màrà-gálá</i>	‘lose (sth)’	<i>màrá</i>	‘be lost’
<i>wòlò-gòló</i>	‘demolish (house)’	<i>wòló</i>	‘collapse’
<i>yòrò-gòló</i>	‘loosen, soften (sth)’	<i>yòrò</i>	‘become loose/soft’
<i>lólò-gòló</i>	‘slide (sth) through’	<i>lólò</i>	‘(sth) slip through’

b. partial valency change

<i>kábà-gálà</i>	‘separate (them)’	<i>kábà</i>	‘separate (them)’
<i>káb-è:-</i>	‘(they) separate’	<i>káb-è:-</i>	‘(they) separate’
<i>wòdò-gòló</i>	‘crush, squash (sth)’	<i>wòdó</i>	‘crush (sth)’ or ‘be crushed’
<i>pòdò-gòló</i>	‘crush, squash (sth)’	<i>pòdó</i>	‘crush (sth)’ or ‘be crushed’

c. reverative

<i>tárà-gálà</i>	‘remove (sth posted)’	<i>tárà</i>	‘post, stick (on wall)’
<i>tál-là</i>		<i>tál-là</i>	‘remove (sth posted)’

Perhaps the noun *pàlùgílù* ~ *pàlùgílì* ‘kneading stick’ is related, but I could elicit no related verb (‘knead’ is *wàgàdá*).

### 9.3 Passive suffix **-mv**

While derivational suffix **-mv** is causative (adding an external agent) for the vast majority of verbs, it also occurs with three verbs in the passive sense ‘be VERB-able’ or ‘be frequently VERB-ed’. The understood agent is a generalized nonspecific human. Verbs attested in this construction are ‘get’, ‘see’, and ‘hear’.

- (182) a. *nàmá* [íbè] *rà:* *bèlè-mè-dè-*Ø  
 meat [market Loc] get-Pass-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Meat is gettable (=available) at the market.’
- b. *kê:n* [ògùlú] *rà:* *wà:-mà-dè-*Ø  
 squirrel [outback Loc] see-Pass-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Squirrels are see-able (=can be seen) out in the bush.’
- c. *nănsà* [tìmmé] *rà:* *ègè-mè-dè-*Ø  
 cicada [tree Loc] hear-Pass-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Cicadas are hear-able (=can be heard) in the trees.’

The passive of ‘get’ is also attested in the sense ‘have been gotten, be in custody’, without a habitual element.

Most transitive verbs are never used in this construction. Instead, a generic 3Pl subject is used (183). This effectively avoids any confusion between causative and passive **-mv**.

- (183) *něy* [íbè] *rà:* *dònđ-d-ì*  
 salt [market Loc] sell-Ipfv-3PISbj  
 ‘They sell salt in the market.’ (=‘Salt is sold in the market.’)

### 9.4 Mediopassive and transitive derivational suffixes

Several other Dogon languages (e.g. Yorno So) have a mediopassive (middle) suffix of the form **-e:- ~ -i:-** and a transitive suffix in **-tv** or **-lv**. Some verbs require one suffix or the other and do not have an unsuffixed form. Others have an unsuffixed stem that alternates with either the mediopassive suffix, the transitive suffix, or both..

DS has a similar system with **-e:- ~ -e:-** alternating with **-i:-**, depending on the inflectional category. The DS mediopassive, however, is also the basic way to express reflexive (§18.1.1) and can be used in reciprocal sense (§18.4.1). DS differs from most Dogon languages, which have anaphoric pronouns or other devices to express reflexive and reciprocal.

The mid-height allomorph **-e:- ~ -e:-** is clearly a long vowel. Vowel length is less obvious for the high allomorph **-i:-**, but it is long in perfectives of a mediopassive-causative combination, as in *páy-nd-è:-mò* ‘cause (sb) to become old’, perfective *páy-nd-i:-m-i*. Except in this combination, the high allomorph occurs only in simple perfective **-i-y** [i:], the chaining form **-i-ý** [i:], and in the imperfective negative **-i-èlè-** or **-i-èlè-**. This requires a morphologically restricted shortening rule to convert /i:-y/ to **-i-y**, compare monosyllabic I-stem perfectives (*ká-ý* ‘shaved’) and related chaining forms (*ká-ý*).

If the mediopassive suffix is preceded by palatal **y** or **p**, the latter is always geminated. For example, *dàny-é:-* ‘sit down’, *inj-é:-* ‘stand; stop’, and *dùyy-é:-* ‘carry on head’ are heard with geminates. Likely proto-forms were \**dàñ-í: ~ -é:-*, \**inj-í: ~ -é:-*, and \**dùy-í: ~ -é:-*, cf.

statives (*yé*) *dàŋà*, (*yé*) *iŋè*, (*yé*) *dùyò* (§10.4.1). If so, the velar nasal in the first two palatalized before the front vowels, and the palatal consonants in all three then coalesced with the onset of the suffixed vowel, initially in the *-i:-* variant. This is a historical matter, but there is synchronic evidence for an additional coalescence in forms like imperfective negative, where *dàŋn-í-èlè* ‘does not sit down’ and *dùyy-í-èlè* ‘does not carry on head’ are often pronounced as *dàŋn-Ø-èlè* and *dùyy-Ø-èlè*, with no distinct *-í-* syllable and with rising tone on the first syllable (§3.5.3.4).

Also of this type are *kéŋŋ-è:-* ‘listen’, *màŋŋ-é:-* ‘dry out, harden’ from adjective *măy* ‘dry, hardened’, *sóyy-è:-* ‘speak’ related to *sɔ:* ‘words, talk’, and mediopassive verb stems such as *giyy-é:-* ‘say to oneself’ (*gě:* ‘say’), *jùyy-é:-* ‘(sth) flip over’ (reversive *jùl-ló* ‘unflip, put back right-side-up’), *jòyy-é:-* ‘hide’, *káyy-è:-* ‘be fractured’ (*kâ:* ‘shave’), and *tá"yy-è:-* ‘(plant) ramify, branch out’ (*tâ:"n* ‘stretch [sth]’). Especially *sóyy-è:-* and *tá"yy-è:-* may be on the verge of turning into unsegmentable verb stems with noncanonical vowel sequences (mix of back rounded and front unrounded) and with final short vowels: *sóyyè* and *tá"yyè*. However, they still have chaining forms with *-ì-ỳ* (*sóyy-ì-ỳ*, *tá"yy-ì-ỳ*).

#### 9.4.1 Mediopassive (reflexive) *-e:- ~ -e:- ~ -i:-* versus underived transitive

Depending on the semantics of the stem and the context, the derived form may be reflexive (i.e. the agent and patient are coindexed) or mediopassive (middle, i.e. the patient is non-agentive). The derivative from a verb like ‘spill’ would normally be interpreted as mediopassive (‘be spilled, get spilled’). Verbs like ‘cut’ and ‘treat, care for (medically)’ have derivatives that can be interpreted either way: ‘cut oneself’ or ‘get cut’, ‘care for oneself’ or ‘be cared for, have oneself cared for’. I will use mediopassive as the label (abbreviation MP).

The morphology is most transparent when the lexical stem vocalism has back rounded vowels. In (184) the regular transitive forms are compared with the corresponding reflexive forms. The inflectional categories where confusion might have been possible, due to the use of the E-stem in the regular paradigm (perfective) or due to vowel contraction (imperfective negative), avoid homophony by using allomorph *-i:-* rather than *-e:- ~ -e:-* in the reflexive.

(184) ‘treat, care for (medically)’

transitive	mediopassive	AN category
a. mediopassive forms based on <i>-e:-</i>		
<i>jòŋò-lí</i>	<i>jòŋ-è:-lí</i>	perfective negative
<i>jòŋ-đ-dè</i>	<i>jòŋ-é:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>jóŋò</i>	<i>jòŋ-è:</i>	imperative
<i>jòŋ-đ-w</i>	<i>jòŋ-è:-w</i>	prohibitive
b. mediopassive forms based on <i>-i:</i>		
<i>jòŋ-đ</i>	<i>jòŋ-í-ỳ</i>	chaining
<i>jóŋ-è</i>	<i>jóŋ-ì-ỳ</i>	perfective (3Sg)
<i>jòŋ-é-èlè</i>	<i>jòŋ-í-èlè</i>	imperfective negative

The vowel length in suffixal *-e:- ~ -e:-* and *-i:-* is not always clearly articulated. With verbs that end in *e* or *ø* lexically, the transitive/mediopassive opposition is therefore phonetically subtle or even indistinguishable in the inflectional categories with the *-e:- ~ -e:-* mediopassive

allomorph. (185) shows the verb *kédè* ‘cut’ and its mediopassive forms. The transitive and mediopassive forms in (185a) are difficult to distinguish, while those in (185b) are easily separated.

(185) ‘cut’

transitive	mediopassive	AN category
------------	--------------	-------------

a. mediopassive forms with *-e:-*

<i>kédè-lí</i>	<i>kéd-e:-lí</i>	perfective negative
<i>kédè-dè</i>	<i>kéd-e:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>kédè</i>	<i>kéd-e:</i>	imperative
<i>kédè-w</i>	<i>kéd-e:-w</i>	prohibitive

b. mediopassive forms with *-i:-*

<i>kédè</i>	<i>kéd-i-ŷ</i>	chaining
<i>kéd-e</i>	<i>kéd-i-ŷ</i>	perfective (3Sg)
<i>kéd-e-élè</i>	<i>kéd-i-élè</i>	imperfective negative

Examples of mediopassive verbs with +ATR *e*: instead of *é*: include *tó:g-è:-* ‘be spilled’ from *tó:gò* ‘spill (sth)’ and underived *kíl-è:* ‘fly away’.

With I-stem verbs like ‘touch’ (186), the situation is different. The transitive and mediopassive forms in (186a) are now easily distinguished by vowel quality. In (186b) the chaining form and imperfective negative forms have different vowel qualities, while the perfectives are distinguished only by (subtle) vowel length.

(186) ‘touch’ (*lárá*, synonym of *tábà*)

transitive	mediopassive	AN category
------------	--------------	-------------

a. mediopassive forms with *-e:-*

<i>lárà-lí</i>	<i>lár-e:-lí</i>	perfective negative
<i>lárá-dè</i>	<i>lár-é:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>lárà</i>	<i>lár-e:</i>	imperative
<i>lárà-w</i>	<i>lár-e:-w</i>	prohibitive

b. mediopassive forms based on *-i:-*

<i>lár-ú</i>	<i>lár-i-ŷ</i>	chaining
<i>lár-ì</i>	<i>lár-i-ŷ</i>	perfective (3Sg)
<i>lár-e-élè</i>	<i>lár-i-élè</i>	imperfective negative

#### 9.4.2 Mediopassive *-e:* ~ *-e:* ~ *-i:* versus transitive *-rv-*

The verbs in (187) require either mediopassive *-e:* ~ *-e:* ~ *-i:* or transitive *-rv-* with variable vowel determined by the stem. This alternation is associated with verbs denoting physical positions of the subject (‘sit’, etc.), or the interaction of the subject with clothing or with a carried object. ‘Bathe’ and ‘hide’ are also included. Semantically, the form with *-e:* ~ *-e:* ~ *-i:* is generally mediopassive (middle) rather than reflexive, though one can argue for a reflexive reading in some cases. The transitive form adds an external agent. The stems are bisyllabic

(187a) except for a handful of monosyllabics (187b). These latter appear to add epenthetic *-yy-* before the suffix; alternatively, *yy* is part of the stems and is deleted before the transitive suffix (for discussion see §3.5.4.6).

(187) Mediopassive *-ε:- ~ -e:- ~ -i:-* versus transitive *-rv*

Mediop	gloss	Tr	gloss
a. stem bisyllabic			
<i>ñd-é:-</i>	‘bathe (oneself)’	<i>ñdè-ré</i>	‘bathe (sb)’
<i>jib-é:-</i>	‘attach one’s wrap’	<i>jibè-ré</i>	‘attach (a wrap) on (a woman)’
<i>tág-é:-</i>	‘put one’s shoes on’	<i>tágà-rà</i>	‘put shoes on (sb)’
<i>ùnj-é:-</i>	‘lie down’	<i>ùnjù-ró</i>	‘lie (sb) down, put to sleep’
<i>bòmb-é:-</i>	‘carry on back’	<i>bòmbò-ró</i>	‘put on (sb’s) back’
<i>dòmm-é:-</i>	‘put one’s hat on’	<i>dòmmò-ró</i>	‘put hat on (sb)’
<i>jímm-é:-</i>	‘bend over, bow’	<i>jímmè-ré</i>	‘bend (sth) over’
<i>bà:g-é:-</i>	‘learn (a trade)’	<i>bà:gà-rá</i>	‘teach (a trade)’
<i>tú:ŋ-é:-</i>	‘kneel’	<i>tú:ŋò-rò</i>	‘cause to kneel’
b. stem arguably monosyllabic			
<i>dù(-)yy-é:-</i>	‘carry on head’	<i>dù:-rò</i>	‘put on (sb’s) head’
<i>jò(-)yy-é:-</i>	‘hide (oneself)’	<i>jò:-rò</i>	‘hide (sb, sth)’
<i>jù(-)yy-é:-</i>	‘(sth) flip over’	<i>jò:-rò</i>	‘flip (sth) over’
c. with Intervocalic <i>I</i> -Deletion (§3.5.4.1)			
<i>kól-é:-</i>	‘pour on self’	<i>kó:-rò</i>	‘pour (water) on (sb else)’

In the case of *gèŋg-é:-* ‘(sth) tilt’ and *gèŋgè-ré* ‘(sth) tilt’, there is no change in valency. The causative is *gèŋgè-rè-mó* ‘(sb) tilt (sth)’.

9.4.3 Mediopassive *-ε: ~ -e: ~ -i:* versus transitive *-ndv*

A few verbs have a mediopassive/transitive suffixed alternation similar to the one described in the preceding section, but with *-ndv* rather than *-rv* as the transitive suffix. The transitive form also shows various irregular phonological changes in the stem. In (188a), a medial nasal in the stem has disappeared, and the nasal in *-ndv* arguably preserves a trace of it.

(188) Mediopassive *-ε: ~ -e: ~ -i:* versus transitive *-ndv*

Mediop	gloss	Tr	gloss
a. transitive stem contracted			
<i>dàŋn-é:-</i>	‘sit down’	<i>dà:-ndá</i>	‘have sit, seat’
<i>iŋn-é:-</i>	‘stand up, stop’	<i>i:-ndé</i>	‘stop, erect (sth)’
<i>énn-é:-</i>	‘(sth) be soaking’	<i>é:-ndè</i>	‘soak (sth)’
b. <i>I/r</i> alternation			
<i>dàl-é:-</i>	‘get dressed’	<i>dàrà-ndá</i>	‘dress (sb)’

See also the following section.

#### 9.4.4 Transitive (causative) *-ndv* versus underived stem

*-ndv* also occurs, in opposition to an unsuffixed stem, with a number of motion verbs and ‘become (sth)’. The agent conveys the theme referent to or from some location or state. In *dàmà-ndá* ‘put/take up’ (189b), the consonantal change avoids two consecutive *NC* consonant clusters, but this does not seem to be a regular phonological process. In *mɔ:-ndɔ* ‘assemble (them)’ (189b), it appears than an original \*1 in \**mɔlɔ-ndɔ* was lost.

##### (189) Transitive (causative) *-ndv*

input	gloss	causative	gloss
a. regular			
<i>gɔ:</i>	‘go out’	<i>gò:-ndó</i>	‘take out, remove’
<i>dɔ:</i>	‘arrive’	<i>dɔ:-ndó</i>	‘deliver’
<i>dàgá</i>	‘be good’	<i>dàgà-ndá</i>	‘make (well), produce’
<i>sígò</i>	‘go down’	<i>sígù-ndò</i>	‘take/bring down’
<i>táŋà</i>	‘become (sth)’	(variant <i>síŋù-ndò</i> ) <i>táŋà-ndà</i>	‘transform, convert’
b. irregular			
<i>dàmbá</i>	‘go up’	<i>dàmà-ndá</i>	‘put/take up’
<i>yáŋ-è:-</i>	‘be put up on’	<i>yá:-ndà</i>	‘put/lay up on’
<i>mɔl-é:-</i>	‘meet, assemble’	<i>mɔ:-ndó</i>	‘assemble (a group)’
<i>pí:ŋè</i>	‘(door) be shut’	<i>pí:-ndè</i>	‘shut (door)’
[cf. reversive <i>píŋè-lè</i> ~ <i>píŋè-lè</i> ‘open (door)’]			

Other transitive verbs of *Cv:ndv* shape whose meaning is similar to some of those in (189) may belong to this type etymologically: *dù:ndó* ‘lay, set (on ground)’, *ní:ndè* ‘accompany (sb, to the door)’; *gà:ndá* ‘pester’.

#### 9.4.5 Transitive *-lv* versus unsuffixed stem

The transitive suffix (with vowel quality carried over from the stem) is found in a number of intransitive/transitive pairs where the intransitive is morphologically unmarked.

- (190) a. *yèmbè-lé* ‘awaken (sb)’  
*yèmé* ‘(sb) wake up’
- b. *yàmbà-lá* ‘ruin, damage (sth)’  
*yàmá* ‘(sth) be ruined, damaged’

#### 9.4.6 Possible frozen suffix *-dv*

The verb *gàgá* ‘rub’ is obscurely related to a morphologically mediopassive verb *gàgùd-é:-* ‘abrade (by rubbing hard)’. A fossilized suffix *-dv-* may also be present in *tágùd-è:-* ‘(skin) form a callus’, *púgòdò* ‘mix (pulp) by slapping’, and a few other cases.

## 9.5 Deadjectival inchoative and factitive verbs

A range of morphological relationships link modifying adjectives (A) to inchoative verbs ('become A'). In most cases the factitive ('turn X into A') is the morphological causative of the inchoative, with *-mv* suffix or less often with another suffix.

In (191) the inchoative is phonologically related to the modifying adjective but neither of them has a derivational suffix. Inchoative verbs, like all verbs, are subject to the rule that an initial voiceless obstruent requires lexical /HL/ melody, an initial voiced obstruent requires /LH/, and an initial sonorant or vowel forces a lexical choice between the two. Only in the latter case is there any chance for the melody of the adjective to influence that of the inchoative. Note the degemination of *m* in the factitive of 'lean'.

### (191) Unsuffixed inchoative

gloss	adjective	inchoative	factitive
a. factitive with causative suffix <i>-mv</i>			
'plump'	ámà	ámà	ámà-mò
'old (thing)'	pěy	pê:	pé:-mò
'blunt'	dùmbú	dùmbó	dùmbù-mó
'coarse'	kúnjú	kúnjò	kúnjù-mò
'thick (liquid)'	kúrò	kúrè	kúrò-mò ~ kúrù-mò
'lean (emaciated)'	kómmò	kómmò	kómò-mò
'hard'	tónnò	tónnò	tónnò-mò
'ugly'	mònjú	mònjò	mònjò-mó
<i>adjective possibly = perfective participle of "inchoative"</i>			
'watery, diluted'	sélé	sélè	séle-mò
'ripe; cooked'	ilé	ilè	ilè-mò
b. factitive with suffix <i>-gvlv</i>			
'slack, loose'	yòrú	yòrò	yòrò-gòlò
c. factitive with suffix <i>-ndv</i>			
'tight, narrow'	é: <sup>n</sup>	é: <sup>n</sup>	é:-ndè

In (192), the inchoative is suffixed. Therefore the factitive is doubly suffixed in most cases, but if the adjective is trimoraic the mediopassive suffix is most often omitted before the causative. *dùmbú* 'blunt' in (191a) has a different inchoative than its homonym *dùmbú* 'short' at the end of (192b).

### (192) Suffixal inchoative

gloss	adj	inchoative	factitive
a. mediopassive <i>-e:-</i> ~ <i>-ɛ:-</i> added directly to stem			
<i>mono- or bimoraic adjective, causative -e:-mò ~ -ɛ:-mò</i>			
'dry'	măy	măjn-é:-	măjn-è:-mò
'red'	bánù	bàn-é:-	bàn-è:-mò
'hot'	númò	núm-è:-	núm-è:-mò
'sweet'	éllú	éll-è:-	éll-è:-mò
'cold'	kéllú	kéll-è:-	kéll-è:-mò

trimoraic or longer adjective, causative <i>-mɔ</i> directly on stem			
'bad'	<i>pà:dē:</i>	<i>pá:d-è:-</i>	<i>pá:dù-mò</i> (also <i>pá:d-ì:-mò</i> )
'heavy'	<i>dógòdò</i>	<i>dògùd-é:-</i>	<i>dògòdò-mò</i>
'smooth'	<i>ónònò</i>	<i>ónòn-è:-</i>	<i>ónònò-mò</i>
causative <i>-ndv</i>			
'wet'	<i>òlú</i>	<i>òl-è:-</i>	<i>òlò-ndò</i>

b. inchoative *-nd-e:-* ~ *-nd-è:-*, causative *-nd-e:-mɔ* ~ *-nd-è:-mɔ*

*adjective monosyllabic*

'old (person)'	<i>păy</i>	<i>páy-nd-è:-</i>	<i>páy-nd-è:-mò</i>
'big'	<i>pô:</i>	<i>pó:-nd-è:-</i>	<i>pó:-nd-è:-mò</i>
'deep'	<i>tō:</i>	<i>tó:-nd-è:-</i>	<i>tó:-nd-è:-mò</i>
'small'	<i>dây</i>	<i>dây-nd-é:-</i>	<i>dây-nd-è:-mò</i>
'nasty'	<i>yòw</i>	<i>yòw-nd-é:-</i>	<i>yòw-nd-è:-mò</i>
'black'	<i>gêñ</i>	<i>gèmi-nd-é:-</i>	<i>gèmi-nd-è:-mò</i>

*adjective bisyllabic*

'wide'	<i>wáyà</i>	<i>wày-nd-é:-</i>	<i>wày-nd-è:-mò</i>
'distant'	<i>wágú</i>	<i>wágì-nd-é:-</i>	<i>wágì-nd-è:-mò</i>
'small; thin'	<i>ùdú, ùd-î:</i>	<i>ùdi-nd-é:-</i>	<i>ùdì-nd-è:-mò</i>
'long'	<i>pálá</i>	<i>pálì-nd-è:-</i>	<i>pálì-nd-è:-mò</i>
'white'	<i>pílù</i>	<i>pílì-nd-è:-</i>	<i>pílì-nd-è:-mò</i>

*slightly irregular consonantism*

'difficult'	<i>jâŋ</i>	<i>jáy-nd-è:-</i>	<i>jáy-nd-è:-mò</i>
'short'	<i>dùmbú</i>	<i>dùmù-nd-é:-</i>	<i>dùmù-nd-ì:-mò</i>
'lightweight'	<i>wéy</i>	<i>wè:-nd-é:-</i>	<i>wè:-nd-ì:-mò</i>

For trisyllabic 'smooth' in (192a), the second syllable of the verb has unmodified *ò* throughout, including perfectives *ónòn-ì-ỳ* 'became smooth' and *ónòn-ì:-m-ì* 'smoothed (sth)'.

For 'bad' in (192a), my assistant claimed a semantic distinction between causatives *pá:dù-mò* 'annul, cancel (e.g. a work order)' and *pá:d-è:-mò* 'make (sth) bad'.

For bisyllabic adjectives in (192b), the second vowel becomes *i* before the inchoative suffix. In *wày-nd-é:-* the /i/ has been absorbed by the *y*.

For *èmmú* 'cramped, confined (space)', two variant inchoatives were recorded, one suffixed and one unsuffixed. An alternation of *mm* with *m* is also present, compare 'lean' in (191). Further study may show other adjectives with a choice of two inchoatives.

- (193) a. *èmmú* 'cramped, confined (space)'
- b. *émm-è:* 'become cramped'  
*émm-è:-mò* 'make (sth) cramped'
- c. *émè-nd-è:* 'become cramped'  
*émè-nd-è:-mò* 'make (sth) cramped'

## 9.6 Denominal verbs

There is no productive pattern for denominal verbs. In a small number of cases a verb from the same word-family as a noun (or similar word) might be regarded as denominal.

(194)	noun	gloss	verb	gloss
	<i>tigé</i>	'family name'	<i>tígè-rè</i>	'(griot) chant the ancestry of (sb)'
	<i>pō:</i>	(greeting)	<i>pó:-ndò</i>	'greet'
	<i>sō:</i>	'words, talk'	<i>sóyy-è:</i>	'speak'
	<i>némè</i>	'filth'	<i>némè-g-è:-</i>	'become dirty'
	<i>wédè</i>	'insanity'	<i>wèdè-g-é:-</i>	'go nuts'

*wèdè-g-é:-* 'go nuts' might alternatively be derived from characteristic nominal *wèdè-gí-nè* 'crazy one' (with human singular *-nv*).

## 9.7 Obscure verb-verb relationships

Listed without comment.

(195)	verb	gloss	related verb	gloss
	<i>yâ:</i>	'spend night'	<i>yá:-ndà</i>	'greet in the morning'
	<i>gòŋó</i>	'surround (sth)'	<i>gòŋù-n-é:-</i>	'go in circles'

# 10 Verbal inflection

## 10.1 Inflection of regular indicative verbs

In indicative main clauses, active (non-stative) verbs have the typical structure stem-AN-Subj. The stem (which may include derivational suffixation, chapter 9) is followed by an **aspect-negation** (AN) marker. The major aspectual division is perfective versus imperfective, which intersects polarity (positive/negative), so there are four basic quadrants. Statives can be derived from some active verbs (e.g. ‘be sitting’ from active ‘sit down’) by stem-changes (§10.4). Statives are outside of the perfective/imperfective aspectual system. Both indicative (aspect-marked) and stative verbs end in a **pronominal-subject** suffix agreeing in person and number with the subject. In DS there are some syncretisms among the suffixes: 1Sg and 1Pl are always homophonous, and (depending on the final tone of the preceding morpheme) may also be homophonous with 2Pl. **Imperatives** and **hortatives** constitute a separate inflectional subsystem, with their own stem-forms (imperatives) or modal suffixes, and final suffixes for **addressee plurality**.

The unmarked temporal reference point for aspect is the present. All aspectual categories and statives can be shifted to accommodate a past-time reference point by adding a conjugated **past clitic** = *bè* to a verb form marked for the basic AN category (§10.5.1).

Relative clauses have verb-participles that mirror the AN and stativity values of corresponding main clauses, but replace the pronominal-subject suffixes by preverbal proclitic pronouns (chapter 14).

### 10.1.1 AN suffixes or chained auxiliary verbs?

Some DS auxiliary-verb constructions correspond to suffixal, or suffix-like, constructions in other Dogon languages. A good example is the recent perfect with conjugated auxiliary *dɔ:* ‘arrive’, which corresponds to a fixed suffix *-dè* in some other languages.

### 10.1.2 Overview of AN categories

The indicative aspect-negation categories are those in (196). The negative suffixes are portmanteaus also indicating aspect.

- (196) a. perfective positive system  
    perfective  
    experiential perfect (‘have ever VPed’, includes ‘be’ as auxiliary)  
    present perfect (includes ‘be’ as auxiliary)  
    recent perfect (includes ‘arrive’ as auxiliary)
- b. imperfective positive system  
            imperfective (unmarked present or habitual)  
            augmented imperfective (unmarked future)

progressive in two versions (includes ‘be’ as auxiliary)  
future (includes ‘have’ as auxiliary)  
immediate future (includes ‘be’ as auxiliary)

c. perfective negative system

perfective negative  
experiential perfective negative (contains perfective negative suffix)  
present perfect negative (includes ‘not be’ as auxiliary)

d. imperfective negative system

imperfective negative  
progressive negative in two versions (contains ‘not be’ as auxiliary)  
future negative (contains ‘not have’ as auxiliary)  
immediate future negative (contains ‘not be’ as auxiliary)

### 10.1.3 Verb stem shapes

All verb stems are vowel-final, though a few allow syncope of the final vowel. Monosyllabics are *Cv-* with long vowel, like ‘shoot’ (imperative *tâ:*, perfective negative *tâ:-lî-*). Typical shapes for nonmonosyllabics are *(C)vCv*, *(C)vCCv*, *(C)v:Cv*, *(C)v:CCv*, *(C)vCvCv-*, and *(C)vCCvCv-*. Lexical long vowels are allowed in the initial syllable of nonmonosyllabics.

Cutting across the stem-shape categories is a binary lexical distinction between the **E-class**, whose perfective (positive) is based on the **E-stem**, and the **I-class**, which base the perfective on the **I-stem**. All trisyllabic and longer stems are in the I-class, so the lexical choice between E-class and I-class is limited to mono- and bisyllabics. Another generalization is that bisyllabics with *a* in the first syllable are all in the I-class.

Each verb has an E-stem or an I-stem used in the perfective. Some verbs have a U/I-stem in the **chaining form** used in nonfinal position in verb chains. Most other AN categories are based on the **presuffixal stem**, which I use in this grammar as the **citation form**. For some verbs, the presuffixal stem is an abstraction, since inflected forms all show either a segmental or tonal modification. In the lexicon I use the combination of the presuffixal stem and the 3Sg perfective, since neither one can always be predicted from the other. An example in the lexicon is the mediopassive verb *ipn-é:-||ípn-i-ŷ* ‘stand’, where the presuffixal stem shows the lexical tone melody (here /LH/) and ATR value (here -ATR) while the 3Sg perfective shows the verb class (here, I-class).

The E-stem ends in *e* or *ɛ* depending on the ATR-harmonic class of the stem. The I-stem ends in *i* or, for monosyllabics, *y*. The two lexical classes can be labeled the E-class and the I-class, respectively.

(197)	stem	perfective	gloss
-------	------	------------	-------

a. monosyllabic

E-class

<i>tâ:</i>	<i>tó-ɛ</i>	‘sow (seeds)’
<i>gõ:</i>	<i>gó-ɛ</i>	‘go out’

I-class

<i>ná:</i>	<i>ná-ŷ</i>	‘forget’
------------	-------------	----------

b. bisyllabic

E-class

<i>dɔnɔ̄</i>	<i>dɔn-è̄</i>	‘sold’
<i>tógō</i>	<i>tóg-è̄</i>	‘poured’
<i>sémbè̄</i>	<i>sémb-è̄</i>	‘swept’
<i>jímbé̄</i>	<i>jímb-è̄</i>	‘pulled’
<i>sí:rè̄</i>	<i>sí:r-è̄</i>	‘pointed at’

I-class

<i>óbò</i>	<i>ób-ì̄</i>	‘gave’
<i>kámbà</i>	<i>kámb-ì̄</i>	‘threw’
<i>sí:rè̄</i>	<i>sí:r-ì̄</i>	‘cooked (meal)’

c. trisyllabic

E-class

(none)

I-class

<i>ábàrà</i>	<i>ábir-ì̄</i>	‘laid out (e.g. mat)’
<i>pégèrè̄</i>	<i>pégùr-ì̄</i>	‘clapped (hands)’
<i>gɔndɔrɔ̄</i>	<i>gɔndùr-ì̄</i>	‘hung (sth) up’

#### 10.1.3.1 *Cv:* verb stems

The vowel of *Cv:* stems is shortened in some inflections, notably the imperative. There appears to be no lexical distinction between *Cv* and *Cv:* based on vowel-length. I will take *Cv:* to be the basic lexical shape. Most *Ca:* stems belong to the I-class. However, ‘eat (meal)’, ‘see’, ‘weep’, and ‘take (sb)’ (§10.1.3.2) are *Ca:* stems that belong to the E-class. I know of no *V:* stem without an initial consonant, but this gap is probably accidental.

#### (198) *Cv:* verbs (all known examples)

stem	chain	Pfv	3Sg	gloss
------	-------	-----	-----	-------

a. E-class

*with nasal vowel, falling tone*

<i>sé̄:n̄</i>	<i>sé̄:n̄</i>	<i>sé̄n-è̄n̄</i>	‘douse (fire)’
<i>tɔ̄:n̄</i>	<i>tɔ̄:n̄</i>	<i>tɔ̄n-è̄n̄</i>	‘(milk) fill up’
<i>tɔ̄:n̄</i>	<i>tɔ̄:n̄</i>	<i>tɔ̄n-è̄n̄</i>	‘turn on (flashlight)’

*with nasal vowel, rising tone*

<i>gě̄:n̄</i>	<i>gě̄:n̄</i>	<i>gě̄n-è̄n̄</i>	‘steal’
---------------	---------------	------------------	---------

*with oral vowel, rising tone*

<i>bɔ̄:</i>	<i>dɔ̄b:</i>	<i>bó-è̄</i>	‘unsheathe’
<i>dɔ̄:</i>	<i>dɔ̄:</i>	<i>dó-è̄</i>	‘arrive (there)’
<i>dě̄:</i>	<i>dě̄:</i>	<i>dé-è̄</i>	‘insult’
<i>dě̄:</i>	<i>dě̄:</i>	<i>dé-è̄</i>	‘become tired’
<i>gɔ̄:</i>	<i>gɔ̄:</i>	<i>gó-è̄</i>	‘dance’
<i>gɔ̄:</i>	<i>gɔ̄:</i>	<i>gó-è̄</i>	‘exit, go out’
<i>jɔ̄:</i>	<i>jɔ̄:</i>	<i>jó-è̄</i>	‘become full’
<i>mě̄:</i>	<i>mě̄:</i>	<i>mé-è̄</i>	‘(rain) fall’
<i>nɔ̄:</i>	<i>nɔ̄:</i>	<i>nó-è̄</i>	‘drink’
<i>nɔ̄:</i>	<i>nɔ̄:</i>	<i>nó-è̄</i>	‘sew’

*with oral vowel, falling tone*

<i>k̄ē:</i>	<i>k̄ē:</i>	<i>ké-è</i>	‘raise (child)’
<i>k̄ō:</i>	<i>k̄ō:</i>	<i>kó-è</i>	‘pick (fruit)’
<i>kō:</i>	<i>kō:</i>	<i>kó-è</i>	‘turn (sth) inside out’
<i>p̄ē:</i>	<i>p̄ē:</i>	<i>pé-è</i>	‘grow old, age’
<i>p̄ō:</i>	<i>p̄ō:</i>	<i>pó-è</i>	‘slap (mud) on (wall)’
<i>s̄ō:</i>	<i>s̄ō:</i>	<i>só-è</i>	‘take a handful’
<i>t̄ē:</i>	<i>t̄ē:</i>	<i>té-è</i>	‘weave’
<i>t̄ō:</i>	<i>t̄ō:</i>	<i>tó-è</i>	‘sow, plant (seeds)’

*with a/e alternation (§10.1.3.2)*

<i>jā:</i>	<i>jā:</i>	<i>jé-è</i>	‘eat (meal)’
<i>jā:</i>	<i>jā:</i>	<i>jé-è</i>	‘take (sb)’
<i>wā:</i>	<i>wē:</i>	<i>wé-è</i>	‘see’
<i>yā:</i>	<i>yā:</i>	<i>yé-è</i>	‘weep’ (with nominal <i>yā:</i> )

b. I-class

*with nasal vowel, falling tone*

<i>sō:<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>sō<sup>n</sup>-ȳ</i>	<i>só<sup>n</sup>-ȳ</i>	‘dip’
<i>pā:<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>pá<sup>n</sup>-ȳ</i>	<i>pá<sup>n</sup>-ȳ</i>	‘(well, pond) dry up’
<i>tā:<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>tá<sup>n</sup>-ȳ</i>	<i>tá<sup>n</sup>-ȳ</i>	‘spread out (limbs, digits)’

*with oral vowel, rising tone*

<i>bă:</i>	<i>bă-ȳ</i>	<i>bá-ȳ</i>	‘beat (tomtom)’
<i>bă:</i>	<i>bă-ȳ</i>	<i>bá-ȳ</i>	‘be enough’
<i>dă:</i>	<i>dă-ȳ</i>	<i>dá-ȳ</i>	‘kill’
<i>gă:</i>	<i>gă-ȳ</i>	<i>gá-ȳ</i>	‘cut with sickle’
<i>mă:</i>	<i>mă-ȳ</i>	<i>má-ȳ</i>	‘shape (pottery)’
<i>nă:</i>	<i>nă-ȳ</i>	<i>ná-ȳ</i>	‘weave, make (rope)’
<i>nă:</i>	<i>nă-ȳ</i>	<i>ná-ȳ</i>	‘forget’
<i>yâ:</i>	<i>yâ:</i>	<i>yá-ȳ</i>	‘spend the night’

*with oral vowel, high tone*

<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká-ȳ</i>	<i>ká-ȳ</i>	‘shave’
<i>sâ:</i>	<i>sá-ȳ</i>	<i>sá-ȳ</i>	‘emit (sneeze, urine)’
<i>sâ:</i>	<i>sá-ȳ</i>	<i>sá-ȳ</i>	‘(corpse) be reduced to skeleton’
<i>tâ:</i>	<i>tá-ȳ</i>	<i>tá-ȳ</i>	‘shoot’
<i>yô:</i>	<i>yô:</i>	<i>yó-ȳ</i>	‘enter, go in’

*with e/i or ē/i alternation (§10.1.3.3)*

<i>bě:</i>	<i>bì-ȳ</i>	<i>bí-ȳ</i>	‘remain’
<i>gě:</i>	<i>gì-ȳ</i>	<i>gi-ȳ</i>	‘say’
<i>tē:</i>	<i>tē:</i>	<i>tí-ȳ</i>	‘send’

K&P (p. 60) also cite “ke” glossed ‘façonner’ (i.e. give shape to, fabricate), but my assistant did not recognize it.

Monosyllabic verbs differ behaviorally from longer stems in the augmented categories (augmented perfective, augmented imperfective). In these inflections, nonmonosyllabic stems usually lengthen the initial vowel, while monosyllabic stems must reduplicate.

### 10.1.3.2 Cv: verbs with a/e alternation

These slightly irregular verbs are basically *Ca:* but have *Cé-è* perfectives. The chaining forms are variable even in the speech of my assistant, ranging from *Ce:* to *Ca:* to *Ca-y.*

(199) Paradigms of ‘see’ and ‘eat (meal)’

‘see’	‘eat (meal)’	
a. forms always with <i>e</i>		
<i>wé-è</i>	<i>jé-è</i>	Pfv (3Sg)
b. forms with <i>e</i> or <i>a</i>		
<i>wě: ~ wà-ý</i>	<i>jě: ~ jâ:</i>	chaining
c. forms always with <i>a</i>		
<i>wà:-dú</i>	<i>jâ:</i>	VblN
<i>wà:-týà</i>	<i>já:-týà</i>	ExpPrf
<i>wá:-dè-</i>	<i>já:-dè-</i>	imperfective
<i>wǎ: wò</i>	<i>jâ: wò</i>	progressive
<i>wà:-lí</i>	<i>jâ:-lí-</i>	PfvNeg
<i>wà-álè-</i>	<i>já-álè-</i>	IpfvNeg
<i>wâ:</i>	<i>jâ:</i>	imperative
<i>wà-w</i>	<i>jâ-w</i>	prohibitive
<i>wà:-má-ñ</i>	<i>já:-má-ñ</i>	hortative (or <i>-mó-ñ</i> )

Historically, perfective *jé-è* probably evolved from \**já-è* with a diphthongal \**ae*. This diphthong does not survive in DS. No similar regular phonological shift can account for the vowel alternation in ‘see’, which is probably archaic, cf. Yanda Dom *wó-* ‘see’ with perfective negative *wà-H-*. Most Dogon languages have leveled out vocalic alternations for ‘see’ in one direction or another, e.g. Jamsay *é: ~ ē:*, Pergue *yé: ~ yé:*, Togo Kan *ɔ: ~ ɔ:*.

The verbs ‘weep’ and ‘take (sb)’ in (200) show similar vowel alternations. ‘Spend night’ is given for comparison with the partially homophonous paradigm of ‘weep’.

(200) Paradigms of ‘spend night’, ‘weep’, and ‘take (sb)’

‘spend night’	‘weep’	‘take (sb)’	category
a. forms with <i>e</i> for ‘weep’ and ‘take (sb)’			
<i>yá-ý</i>	<i>yé-è</i>	<i>jé-è</i>	Pfv (3Sg)
b. forms always with <i>a</i>			
<i>‘spend night’ and ‘weep’ homophonous</i>			
<i>yâ:-týà</i>	<i>yâ:-týà</i>	<i>jâ:-týà</i>	ExpPrf
<i>yâ:-lí</i>	<i>yâ:-lí</i>	<i>jâ:-lí</i>	PfvNeg
<i>yâ:</i>	<i>yâ:</i>	<i>jâ:</i>	imperative
<i>yâ:-w</i>	<i>yâ:-w</i>	<i>jâ:-w</i>	prohibitive
<i>‘spend night’ and ‘weep’ distinguished by tone</i>			
<i>yá-ý</i>	<i>yâ-ý</i>	<i>jâ: ~ jâ-ý</i>	chaining
<i>yá:-dù</i>	<i>yâ:</i>	<i>jâ:-dú</i>	VblN or nominal
<i>yá:-dè</i>	<i>yâ:-dè</i>	<i>jâ:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>yâ: wò</i>	<i>yâ: wò</i>	<i>jâ: wò</i>	progressive
<i>yá-álè</i>	<i>yâ-álè</i>	<i>jâ-álè</i>	IpfvNeg
<i>yá:-má-ñ</i>	<i>yâ:-má-ñ</i>	<i>jâ:-má-ñ</i>	hortative (or <i>-mó-ñ</i> )

In principle, *yâ:* ‘spend night’ and *yâ:* ‘weep’ are tonal minimal pairs lexically, but they are homophonous in several paradigmatic forms due to tone changes. There is little risk of

ambiguity between ‘spend night’ and ‘weep’ in actual discourse since ‘weep’ is paired with cognate nominal *yǎ:*, as in *yǎ: yé-ɛ* ‘he/she wept’.

*jǎ:* as transitive verb means ‘take (sb)’, as when one adult takes a baby into his/her arms from another adult, or ‘(man) marry (a woman).’

It may not be accidental that the irregular verbs in this section begin with (alveo-)palatals or with *w*, i.e. with consonants that could influence the onset of original diphthongs like \**aɛ* and \**ɔɛ*, resulting in their monophthongization to *e:*.

#### 10.1.3.3 *Cv*: verbs with irregular *e/i*, *e/i*, or *o/u* alternation

All verbs of the shapes *Ce:*, *Ce:*, *Cɔ:*, and *Co:* shorten and raise their vowel (to *Ci-* or *Cu-*) before vowel-initial suffixes such as imperfective negative *-ɛlè*, by a regular morphophonological rule, see Prevocalic V-Raising (§3.5.6.1).

Over and above this, *gě:* ‘say’, *bě:* ‘stay’, and *tě:* ‘send’ shorten and raise the stem-vowel to *i* before *-y*, only reliably in the perfective for ‘send’ but in both the perfective and chaining form for ‘say’ and ‘stay’.

##### (201) Paradigms of ‘say’, ‘stay’, and ‘send’

‘say’	‘stay’	‘send’	category
a. forms with <i>i</i> for at least one verb			
<i>gí-ỳ</i>	<i>bí-ỳ</i>	<i>tí-ỳ</i>	Pfv (3Sg)
<i>gì-ý</i>	<i>bì-ý</i>	<i>tē: ~ tí-ỳ</i>	chaining
<i>gi-élè-</i>	<i>bi-élè-</i>	<i>tí-élè-</i>	IpfvNeg
b. forms with <i>e</i> or <i>ɛ</i>			
<i>gè:-dú</i>	<i>bè:-dú</i>	<i>té:-dù</i>	VblN
<i>gè:-tíyà wò</i>	<i>bè:-tíyà wò</i>	<i>tè:-tíyà wò</i>	ExpPrf
<i>gě:-dè</i>	<i>bě:-dè</i>	<i>té:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>gě: wò</i>	<i>bě: wò</i>	<i>tē: wò</i>	progressive
<i>gè:-lí</i>	<i>bè:-lí</i>	<i>tè:-lí</i>	PfvNeg
<i>gē:</i>	<i>bē:</i>	<i>tē:</i>	imperative
<i>gè:-w</i>	<i>bè:-w</i>	<i>tē:-w</i>	prohibitive
<i>gè:-má-ŋ</i>	<i>bè:-má-ŋ</i>	<i>té:-mà-ŋ</i>	hortative (or <i>-mó-ŋ</i> )

A parallel alternation is seen with the verb *mò:* ‘immerse (sth)’, whose alternative form is *mu-*

##### (202) Paradigm of ‘immerse’

‘immerse’	category
a. forms with <i>u</i>	
<i>mú-ỳ</i>	Pfv (3Sg)
<i>mù-ý</i>	chaining
<i>mù-élè-</i>	IpfvNeg
b. forms with <i>o</i>	
<i>mò:-dú</i>	VblN
<i>mò:-tíyà wò</i>	ExpPrf

<i>mō:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>mō: wò</i>	progressive
<i>mō:-lí</i>	PfvNeg
<i>mō:</i>	imperative
<i>mō:-w̄</i>	prohibitive
<i>mō:-má-ŋ̄</i>	hortative (or <i>-mō-ŋ̄</i> )

#### 10.1.3.4 *CvC* verb stems

Consistently C-final verbs are unattested. However, a few verbs alternate between *CvCv-* and *CvC-* from one inflected form to another, arguably due to irregular Syncope. See *kán(à)* ‘do’ (§10.1.3.12) and irregular *CvLv* verbs like *bóló* ~ *ból-* (§10.1.3.9).

#### 10.1.3.5 *nCv(:)* verb (*ñd-é:-* ‘bathe’)

The only known *nCv(:)* verb is mediopassive *ñd-é:-* ‘bathe’. It is treated morphophonologically as bisyllabic, and the initial nasal can bear its own tone. The perfective *ñd-i-ŷ* shows that this belongs to the I-class. The lexical melody /LH/ is seen in the chaining form and the imperfective (positive and negative).

##### (203) Paradigm of ‘bathe’

<i>ñd-i-ŷ</i>	Pfv (3Sg)
<i>ñd-i-ŷ</i>	chaining
<i>ñd-é:-dú</i>	VblN
<i>ñd-é:-týà</i>	ExpPrf
<i>ñd-é:-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>ñd-é: wò</i>	progressive
<i>ñd-é:-lí</i>	PfvNeg
<i>ñd-í-élè-</i>	IpfvNeg
<i>ñd-é:</i>	imperative
<i>ñd-é:-w̄</i>	prohibitive
<i>ñd-é:-mō-ŋ̄</i>	hortative

This verb is regularly used with *dî:* ‘water’ as complement: *dî: ñd-i-ŷ* ‘he/she bathed’. It has a transitive derivative *ñdè-ré* ‘bathe (sb)’.

#### 10.1.3.6 Regular bisyllabic stems, E-class

The majority of underived verb stems are bisyllabic. *(C)vCv-*, *(C)vCCv-*, and *(C)v:Cv-* stems may belong to either the E-class or the I-class, except that those with *a* or *a:* in the first syllable are all in the I-class. The majority of *(C)v:Cv-* stems, and all known *(C)v:CCv-* stems, are I-class, so a bisyllabic E-class verb with a long vowel is a rarity (*sí:r-è* ‘pointed at’, cf. I-class *sí:r-i* ‘cooked’). Both classes are subject to the rule, applicable to the lexical form of verb stems only, that initial voiceless obstruents require /HL/ melody and initial voiced obstruents require /LH/, while stems beginning with a sonorant or with an empty *C* position

have a genuine lexical choice. The lexical melody is regularly overridden by overlays associated with particular inflectional categories.

(204) gives examples of the E-class type, the key diagnostics being the 3Sg perfective with *-e/-ε* and the absence of a suffix in the chaining form. Because of ATR and front-back harmony, acceptable lexical vowel-quality sequences in bisyllabic verb stems are *a...a*, *ε...ε*, *e...e*, *ɔ...ɔ*, *o...o*, *i...ε*, *i...e*, *u...o*, and *u...ɔ*. Of these, *a...a* does not occur with E-class stems. The chaining form expresses the full lexical vocalism of each verb, and contains at least one vowel marked [+ATR] or [-ATR]. Initial-syllable high vowels {*u i*} are compatible with either ATR value of the following vowel. The final vowel of E-class verbs becomes *-e* or *-ε* in the perfective, depending on the ATR category of the stem.

(204) E-class bisyllabics

stem	chaining	3Sg perfective	gloss
a. [-ATR]			
<i>/HL/-toned</i>			
<i>kédè</i>	<i>kédè</i>	<i>kéd-è</i>	'cut'
<i>ùdó</i>	<i>ùdó</i>	<i>úd-è</i>	'build'
<i>sémbè</i>	<i>sémbè</i>	<i>sémb-è</i>	'sweep'
<i>/LH/-toned</i>			
<i>dònó</i>	<i>dònó</i>	<i>dón-è</i>	'sell'
<i>dòŋgó</i>	<i>dòŋgó</i>	<i>dóŋg-è</i>	'push'
<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bénd-è</i>	'hit'
<i>jimbé</i>	<i>jimbé</i>	<i>jímb-è</i>	'pull'
b. [+ATR]			
<i>/HL/-toned</i>			
<i>súgò</i>	<i>súgò</i>	<i>súg-è</i>	'cut'
<i>tógò</i>	<i>tógò</i>	<i>tóg-è</i>	'pour'
<i>yímè</i>	<i>yímè</i>	<i>yím-è</i>	'die'
<i>sí:rè</i>	<i>sí:rè</i>	<i>sí:r-è</i>	'point at'
<i>/LH/-toned</i>			
<i>yéré</i>	<i>yéré</i>	<i>yér-è</i>	'dream'

#### 10.1.3.7 Regular bisyllabic stems, I-class

All bisyllabics with *a*-vowel in the first syllable, and some with a nonlow vowel, belong to the I-class. In addition to *-i* suffix in the perfective, these stems take *-u* in the chaining form (optionally *-i* when the preceding syllable has a front vowel). In other inflected forms (not shown), the regular vowel sequences allowed are *a...a*, *ε...ε*, *e...e*, *ɔ...ɔ*, *o...o*, *i...ε*, *i...e*, *u...o*, and *u...ɔ*. The vowel of the second syllable is predictable from that of the first syllable, except that a high vowel is compatible with a mid-height vowel of either ATR value.

(205) I-class bisyllabics

stem	chaining	3Sg Pfv	gloss
a. with <i>a</i> in initial syllable			
<i>/HL/-toned</i>			
<i>pádà</i>	<i>pád-ù</i>	<i>pád-ì</i>	‘abandon’
<i>támbà</i>	<i>támb-ù</i>	<i>támb-ì</i>	‘kick’
<i>pá:mà</i>	<i>pá:m-ù</i>	<i>pá:m-ì</i>	‘understand’
<i>sá:rà</i>	<i>sá:r-ù</i>	<i>sá:r-ì</i>	‘hold out, stretch out’
<i>/LH/-toned</i>			
<i>yàbá</i>	<i>yàb-ú</i>	<i>yáb-ì</i>	‘accept’
<i>jímbé</i>	<i>jímb-í/-ú</i>	<i>jímb-ì</i>	‘double up (garments)’
<i>wànjá</i>	<i>wànj-ú</i>	<i>wánj-ì</i>	‘dig’
b. with nonlow vowel in initial syllable			
<i>/HL/-toned</i>			
<i>óbò</i>	<i>ób-ù</i>	<i>ób-ì</i>	‘give’
<i>/LH/-toned</i>			
<i>bòló</i>	<i>bòl-ú</i>	<i>ból-ì</i>	‘go’
<i>gèndé</i>	<i>gènd-ú</i>	<i>génd-ì</i>	‘look’
<i>dòngó</i>	<i>dòng-ú</i>	<i>dóng-ì</i>	‘pound’
c. with high vowel in initial syllable			
<i>/HL/-toned</i>			
<i>pí:ndè</i>	<i>pí:nd-ù</i>	<i>pí:nd-ì</i>	‘shut (door)’
<i>kí:nè</i>	<i>kí:n-ù</i>	<i>kí:n-ì</i>	‘rip’
<i>/LH/-toned</i>			
[none?]			

10.1.3.8 *óbò* ‘give’

The only irregularity of this verb is that in addition to the regular imperative *óbò* there is another form *ób-ú* that means ‘give (it) to me!’ It is not necessary to add an explicit 1Sg pronominal.

(206) Paradigm of ‘give’

<i>ób-ì</i>	Pfv (3Sg)
<i>ób-ù</i>	chaining
<i>óbò-dù</i>	VblN
<i>óbò-tíyà</i>	ExpPrf
<i>óbò-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>óbò wò</i>	progressive
<i>óbò-lí</i>	PfvNeg
<i>óbè-èlè</i>	IpfvNeg
<i>óbò</i>	imperative 1
<i>ób-ú</i>	imperative 2 (‘give me!’)
<i>óbò-w</i>	prohibitive
<i>óbò-mà-ìj</i>	hortative (or <i>-mɔ́-ìj</i> )

### 10.1.3.9 Irregular *Cv lv* stems ('go', 'get', 'come', 'pass')

Most *Cv lv* verbs have uncontracted imperfectives of the form *Cv lV-dè-*, for example *jèlè-dè-* 'harvests', *làlá-dè-* 'gives birth', *kilé-dè-* 'flies away'. However, a few high-frequency verbs of this shape have imperfectives of the form *Cv-jè-* with *j* rather than *d* as suffixal consonant and with the medial *I* deleted, allowing the flanking vowels to contract. The known cases are in (207). The augmented imperfectives, not shown in (207), are of the type *bō:-jè* 'will go' with long rising-toned vowel.

(207)	stem	chaining	imperfective	3Sg Pfv	gloss
-------	------	----------	--------------	---------	-------

#### a. E-stems

<i>yèlē</i>	<i>yèlē</i>	<i>yé-jè</i>	<i>yél-è</i>	'come'
<i>bèlē</i>	<i>bèlē</i>	<i>bé-jè</i>	<i>bél-è</i>	'get'

#### b. I-stem

<i>bòló</i>	<i>bòl-ú</i>	<i>bó-jè</i>	<i>ból-ì</i>	'go'
<i>gàlá</i>	<i>gàl-ú</i>	<i>gá-jè</i>	<i>gál-ì</i>	'pass, go past'

These verbs also syncopate the stem-final vowel before perfective negative *-lí-*, hence *yèl-lí-* 'did not come', *bèl-lí-* 'did not get', and *bòl-lí-* 'did not go', *gàl-lí-* 'did not pass'. Contrast unsyncopated *jèlè-lí-* 'did not harvest', etc.

In the imperfective negative, these verbs have either a regular form of the type *bèl-é-èlè-* 'does not get' and *yèl-é-èlè-* 'does not come', or a special form with deletion of the stem */I/* and a mutation of the suffix to *-rí-*, as in *bè:-rí-* 'does not get' and *yè:-rí-* 'does not come'.

'Bring' and 'convey' (see just below) share these peculiarities since they include 'come' and 'go', respectively.

### 10.1.3.10 *já-yèlē ~ jè:lé* 'bring'

Several inflected forms of this stem are based on *já-yèlē* with a unique /HLH/ tone melody. The full segmental form is observable in inflections requiring initial H-tone (208a). The *I* of *já-yèlē* disappears in the imperfective *já-yè-jè-*, which also has suffix allomorph *-jè-* rather than the usual *-dè-*. A variant *jè:lé* with /LH/ melody occurs in the imperative and the chaining form. This variant is also the basis for the defocalized form of the perfective (208b).

(208)	Paradigm of 'bring'
-------	---------------------

#### a. based segmentally on *já-yèlē*

<i>já-yèl-è</i>	3Sg perfective
<i>já-yè-jè</i>	imperfective (truncated)
<i>já-yèl-lí</i>	perfective negative (syncopated)
<i>já-yèl-é-èlè</i>	imperfective negative
<i>já-yè:-rí</i>	(variant imperfective negative)
<i>já-yèlē wɔ</i>	progressive

b. based segmentally on *jè:lé*

<i>jè:l-è</i>	3Sg perfective
<i>jè:lé</i>	imperative
<i>jè:lé</i>	chaining
<i>jé:lè-w</i>	prohibitive

c. based segmentally on chain *já: yèlē*

<i>já: yè-jú</i>	verbal noun (see §15.1.1.2)
------------------	-----------------------------

This verb behaves like a frozen verb chain, except in the verbal noun where it mimics a true direct chain. *já-yèlē* consists of *yèlē* ‘come’ chained to a preceding verb *já*. The latteer can be understood as a reduced form of *já*: ‘take (sb)’, which as a main verb generally has a human object as in ‘take (a baby)’ or ‘take (=marry) a wife’. The paradigm of ‘bring’ displays the same morphophonological irregularities as ‘come’, along with some additional contractions. In careful pronunciation (artificial elicitation-ese), the underlying chain *já: yèlē* can be restored, as in augmented imperfective *já: yě:-jè*. The verbal noun is only attested in the full form (208c).

In a nonsubject relative clause with a regular verb chain, a pronominal subject proclitic intervenes between the two verbs, being proclitic to the final verb-participle. The two elements in ‘bring’ are not separable in this way, confirming that they no longer function as a true verb chain. See §14.5.2 for examples.

See also the parallel ‘take, convey’ (following section).

#### 10.1.3.11 *jé-bòló* ‘convey, take (away)’

This verb is the noncentripetal counterpart of ‘bring’. It means ‘take (sb, sth) away’ or ‘convey (sth, sb) (to a place)’. Similar to ‘bring’, it is a semi-frozen chain of *jé* plus the simple motion verb ‘go’ (*bòló*).

#### (209) Paradigm of ‘convey’

a. *jé-* H-toned

<i>jé-bòl-ú</i>	chaining
<i>jé-bòl-i</i>	3Sg perfective
<i>jé-bò-jè</i>	imperfective
<i>jé-bòl-lí</i>	perfective negative (syncopated)
<i>jé-bòl-èlè</i>	imperfective negative
<i>jé-bò:-rí</i>	(variant imperfective negative)
<i>jé-bòló wò</i>	progressive
<i>jé-bòlò-w</i>	prohibitive

b. *jè-* L-toned

<i>jè-bòlò</i>	imperative
----------------	------------

c. chain based on *jé: bòló*

<i>jé: bò-jú</i>	verbal noun (§15.1.1.2)
------------------	-------------------------

The two components of ‘convey’ remain fused together in relative clauses, rather than being separated by a subject pronoun as with true verb chains; see §14.5.2 for the data.

The etymological relationship between *jé-* in ‘convey’ and *já-* in ‘bring’ is obscure. *já-* is related to the verb *jà*: ‘take (sb)’, as in ‘take a baby (in one’s arms)’ or ‘take (=marry) a woman’, which has a perfective form *jé-è*. This raises the possibility that *jé-* and *já-* are offshoots of a single proto-form. However, there is no phonological reason for \**já-* to become *jé-* before *bòlò*, or for \**jé-* to become *já-* before *yèlè*, so it may be that two distinct etyma have secondarily become (partially) conflated. The issue is hereby tabled for further committee review. Among possible cognates are Jamsay verbs *jé*: ‘scoop up; take (handful) in one’s hand’ and *já*: ‘convey’, and *jíjè* ‘going with, taking along’ as nonfinal verb-like element in chains.

#### 10.1.3.12 *kán(à)* ‘do’

This verb has some inflected forms based on (or consistent with) bisyllabic *kánà*, but others based on *kán* or else produced by irregular syncope. The reduced forms are in the perfective negative and the imperfective, which are also the inflections that have special reduced forms for the irregular *CvIv* verbs like *bòlò* ‘go’ (§10.1.3.9).

##### (210) Paradigm of ‘do’

###### a. consistent with *kánà*

<i>kán-ù</i>	chaining
<i>kán-ì</i>	3Sg perfective
<i>kán-èlè</i>	imperfective negative
<i>kánà</i>	imperative
<i>kánà wò</i>	progressive

###### b. based on *kán* (or syncopated)

<i>kán-lí</i>	perfective negative (syncopated)
<i>kán-jè</i>	imperfective

The perfective participle *kánn-ú* shows irregular gemination of the *n*. For a tonal variant *kánn-ù* with expressive adverbials, see (169) in §8.4.7.2.

Grammatical functions of ‘do’ are described in §11.1.2.2 (collocations) and §15.2.1.5 (switch reference).

#### 10.1.3.13 Trisyllabic stems

The regular trisyllabic shapes are *(C)vCvCv-*, *(C)vCCvCv-*, and infrequently *(C)v:CvCv-*. The medial syllable is metrically weak. Some stems have an invariant medial high vowel (211). Others have a medial nonhigh vowel copied from the vowel of the first syllable that surfaces in imperfectives, but is raised to *i* or *u* only in the perfective and the chaining form (212). The lexically distinctive vowels are therefore those of the first and third syllables.

All trisyllabics are I-class verbs with perfective *-ì ~ -y* and chaining form with *-u* (for mediopassives, *-i-y*). Many trisyllabics are mediopassive in form; diagnostic forms include the chaining form and the imperfective negative (*-i-èlè*) (211b). Because final vowel-length is

not always audible, mediopassives mimic regular trisyllabics in the perfective and sometimes in other forms such as the imperfective. This has probably allowed some originally underived stems to become reinterpreted as mediopassive in form, regardless of meaning.

(211) Trisyllabics with fixed medial {*i u*}

3Sg Pfv	chaining	imperfective	IpfvNeg	gloss
a. causative				
<i>jigù-m-ì-</i> Ø	<i>jigù-m-ú</i>	<i>jigù-mé-dè</i>	<i>jigù-mé-élè</i>	'shake'
b. mediopassive				
<i>kígùl-ì-y-</i> Ø	<i>kígùl-ì-ỳ</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-dè</i>	<i>kígùl-ì-élè</i>	'return'
<i>má:ndig-ì-y-</i> Ø	<i>má:ndig-í-ỳ</i>	<i>má:ndig-é:-dè</i>	<i>má:ndig-í-élè</i>	'think'
<i>yábìl-ì-y-</i> Ø	<i>yábìl-í-ỳ</i>	<i>yábìl-é:-dè</i>	<i>yábìl-í-élè</i>	'reply'
<i>yágìl-ì-y-</i> Ø	<i>yágìl-í-ỳ</i>	<i>yágìl-é:-dè</i>	<i>yágìl-í-élè</i>	'crawl'

(212) Trisyllabics with copied nonhigh medial vowels in imperfective

3Sg Pfv	chaining	imperfective	IpfvNeg	gloss
a. with <i>a...a...a</i> in imperfective				
<i>ábìr-ì-</i> Ø	<i>ábùr-ù</i>	<i>ábàrà-dè-</i>	<i>ábàrè-élè</i>	'lay out'
b. with non-low vowels				
<i>pégùr-ì-</i> Ø	<i>pégùr-ù</i>	<i>pégèrè-dè-</i>	<i>pégèrè-élè</i>	'winnow by shaking'
<i>góndùr-ì-</i> Ø	<i>góndùr-ú</i>	<i>góndòró-dè-</i>	<i>góndòré-élè</i>	'hang (sth) up'

#### 10.1.3.14 Quadrисyllabic stems

Probably all quadrисyllabic verbs are segmentable into a stem and one or more derivational suffixes, or are at least treated as though composite. (213) illustrates the paradigm of one of the derivatives with suffix *-gvlv* (§9.2.2).

(213) 'Separate (them)'

<i>kábù-gìl-ì</i>	perfective
<i>kábà-gálà-dè</i>	imperfective
<i>kábà-gálè-élè</i>	imperfective negative
<i>kábù-gùl-ù</i>	chaining

Causative suffix *-mv* can be added freely to almost any verb stem including trisyllabics (to produce quadrисyllabic derivatives), if the combination is semantically reasonable. See §9.2.1 for examples and discussion.

## 10.2 Positive indicative AN categories

### 10.2.1 Perfective positive system (including perfect)

This subsystem includes the perfective, the augmented perfective, the experiential perfect ('have ever VPed'), and the present perfect.

#### 10.2.1.1 Perfective (E-stem or I-stem)

The simple perfective is used to report a bounded event that has been completed in the past, before the present (or other reference time).

The perfective form is based on the E-stem for E-class verbs and on the I-stem for I-class verbs, by definition. Since the tones differ depending on the pronominal subject category, I use the 3Sg as the citation form for the perfective.

The E-stem replaces the stem-final vowel by *e* or *ɛ* depending on the ATR class of the stem. In transcriptions I segment it as a suffix but it could also be considered a mutation (ablaut). One could add *-Ø* in the 3Sg subject form but I often omit it except in formated examples with interlinear glosses.

The third person and the 1st/2nd person forms are tonally distinct, especially in isolation (when other constituents precede, all perfectives tend to drop H-tones). The tables below give isolation forms. In the 1st/2nd person part of the paradigm, the tone overlay is {LH}, realized as one or more L-tones leading up to a final-mora H-tone. In careful pronunciation the H-tone is heard on the pronominal-subject suffix in the cases of 1Sg *-ŋ*, 1Pl *-ŋ ~ -yŋ*, and 2Sg *-w*. The 3Sg and 3Pl forms, on the other hand, have an initial H-tone followed by L-tones.

The 2Sg suffix is L-toned in several inflections. In the perfective, its L-tone is overridden by the {LH} overlay when the verb occurs in isolation. In polar interrogatives, however, an additional L-tone is added at the end of the verb (§13.2.1.1), and it pushes the final H-tone of {LH} one mora to the left (§3.7.4.5). Therefore 'you-Sg hit' is *bènd-è-w* in statements, but with the extra L-tone it becomes interrogative *bènd-é-à* 'did you-Sg hit?'. The 1Sg and 1Pl forms behave the same way in the perfective, e.g. *bènd-è-í* 'I/we hit' with {LH}, but interrogative *bènd-é-ì* 'did I/we hit?' with the extra L. By contrast, 2Pl *-ŋ ~ -yŋ* is L-toned in the perfective as elsewhere, so the H-tone of the {LH} overlay is shifted to the stem-final vowel even in statements: *bènd-é-ñ* 'you-Pl hit'. Addition of the interrogative L-tone has no audible effect on this form.

In clauses with preceding constituents, the tones of perfective verbs for any pronominal-subject category are frequently dropped to {L}. This can be thought of as verb defocalization, but it can happen after almost any preceding constituent. In particular, the {HL} on the 3Sg form often flattens to {L} in the 3Sg perfective after other constituents, but the "same" {HL} contour on singular-addressee imperatives (which are sometimes homophonous to the 3Sg perfective) can be maintained in similar clausal contexts; see (273a-b) in §10.6.1.1 below. A more systematic shift of third-person perfective forms to {L} also occurs before 'if' clitic *=yò* and interrogative *mà* even without a preceding constituent, but in these combinations the H-tone surfaces on the particle; see the last paragraph of this section.

Representative perfective paradigms are in (214). The tones shown are applicable when the verb is pronounced in isolation. For 'jump' and 'fall', the variants given for 1st/2nd persons have the suffixal *e* shifting to *o* by Back/Rounding Harmony (§3.4.5), assimilating to the vowel of the preceding syllable. The shift to *o* allows the palatal onset of the 1Pl and 2Pl suffixes to be (faintly) audible in the speech of my assistant. I did not hear the palatal onset

after front vowels. Unassimilated variants like *tòmb-è-íj* ‘I jumped’ and *nùmb-è-íj* ‘I fell’ not shown in (214) are also possible. The Back/Rounding Harmony never applies to the 3Sg form, which is always *tómb-è*, *númb-è*, etc., unless it is followed by a clitic with back rounded vowel as in *tòmb-è-Ø=yô: ~ tòmb-ò-Ø=yô:* ‘if he/she jumps’.

(214) Perfectives of E-class verbs (nonmonosyllabic)

	<i>sémbè</i> ‘sweep’	<i>tómbò</i> ‘jump’	<i>nùmbó</i> ‘fall’	<i>bèndé</i> ‘hit’	<i>yímè</i> ‘die’
1Sg	<i>sèmb-è-íj</i>	<i>tòmb-ò-íj</i>	<i>nùmb-ò-íj</i>	<i>bènd-è-íj</i>	<i>yìm-è-íj</i>
1Pl	<i>sèmb-è-íj</i>	<i>tòmb-ò-yj</i>	<i>nùmb-ò-yj</i>	<i>bènd-è-íj</i>	<i>yìm-è-íj</i>
2Sg	<i>sèmb-è-w</i>	<i>tòmb-ò-w</i>	<i>nùmb-ò-w</i>	<i>bènd-è-w</i>	<i>yìm-è-w</i>
2Pl	<i>sèmb-é-ñ</i>	<i>tòmb-ò-yj</i>	<i>nùmb-ó-yj</i>	<i>bènd-é-ñ</i>	<i>yìm-é-ñ</i>
3Sg	<i>sémb-è-Ø</i>	<i>tómb-è-Ø</i>	<i>númb-è-Ø</i>	<i>bénd-è-Ø</i>	<i>yím-è-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>sémb-ì-yà</i>	<i>tómb-ì-yà</i>	<i>númb-ì-yà</i>	<i>bénd-ì-yà</i>	<i>yím-ì-yà</i>

The *-i-* in the 3Pl forms is often elided: *sémb-Ø-yà*, etc. It is arguably epenthetic, in which case *sémb-Ø-yà* is the structurally correct transcription.

Monosyllabic E-class verbs combine their vowel with suffixal *-e* or *-ε* to form diphthongs (215).

(215) Perfectives of E-class verbs (monosyllabic)

	<i>tɔ:</i> ‘sow’	<i>dɛ:</i> ‘insult’	<i>gɔ:</i> ‘go out’	<i>gɛ:n</i> ‘steal’	<i>jnâ:</i> ‘eat’
1Sg	<i>tɔ-è-íj</i>	<i>dè-è-íj</i>	<i>gò-è-íj</i>	<i>gè^n-è-íj</i>	<i>jnè-è-íj</i>
1Pl	<i>tɔ-è-íj</i>	<i>dè-è-íj</i>	<i>gò-è-íj</i>	<i>gè^n-è-íj</i>	<i>jnè-è-íj</i>
2Sg	<i>tɔ-è-w</i>	<i>dè-è-w</i>	<i>gò-è-w</i>	<i>gè^n-è-w</i>	<i>jnè-è-w</i>
2Pl	<i>tɔ-é-ñ</i>	<i>dè-é-ñ</i>	<i>gò-é-ñ</i>	<i>gè^n-é-ñ</i>	<i>jnè-é-ñ</i>
3Sg	<i>tɔ-è-Ø</i>	<i>dé-è-Ø</i>	<i>gó-è-Ø</i>	<i>gé^n-è^n-Ø</i>	<i>jnè-è-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>tɔ-ì-yà</i>	<i>dé-ì-yà</i>	<i>gó-ì-yà</i>	<i>gé^n-ì-yà</i>	<i>jnè-ì-yà</i>

There are no cases of *ae* or *æ* diphthongs, here or elsewhere in DS. We might have expected #*ná-è* for ‘he/she ate (meal)’ by analogy to *tó-è* ‘he/she sowed’ and *gó-è* ‘he/she went out’, but the actual form is *jné-è*. For *wá:* ‘see’ the perfective is *wé-è* ‘saw’ and the chaining form is *wé:*.

As transcribed, forms like *dé-è* and *dè-è-íj* are represented as having long vowels, since *e-e* is just an orthographic variant of *e:* designed to clarify the morphological structure. In these monosyllabic perfective forms, the vowel is often shortened, e.g. to [dē] and [dēñ], though my assistant restores the long vowel in careful articulation. Even the diphthongs in *tó-è* and *gó-è* have a total duration not much longer than an ordinary short vowel.

For I-class verbs, the I-stem replaces the stem-final vowel by *i* to form the perfective if the stem is nonmonosyllabic. The /i/ is often backed and rounded to *u* by Back/Rounding Harmony, triggered by a following 2Sg *-w* and/or by a back rounded vowel in the preceding

syllable, except that it is always *i* in the 3Sg and 3Pl forms. Suffix *-y* occasionally triggers this change. When this happens, the palatal onset before the 1Pl and 2Pl suffixes is (faintly) audible. My assistant's pronunciation of some of these forms was variable. The forms given in (216) seem to be most typical of his speech.

(216) Perfectives of I-class verbs (nonmonosyllabic)

	<i>óbò</i> ‘give’	<i>pádà</i> ‘leave’	<i>yéyy-è:</i> ‘sleep’	<i>yàbá</i> ‘accept’
1Sg	<i>òb-ì-ý</i> ~ <i>òb-ù-ý</i>	<i>pàd-ì-ý</i> ~ <i>pàd-ù-ý</i>	<i>yèyy-ì-ý-ý</i>	<i>yàb-ì-ý</i> ~ <i>yàb-ù-ý</i>
1Pl	<i>òb-ì-ý</i> ~ <i>òb-ù-yý</i>	<i>pàd-ì-ý</i> ~ <i>pàd-ù-yý</i>	<i>yèyy-ì-ý-ý</i>	<i>yàb-ì-ý</i> ~ <i>yàb-ù-yý</i>
2Sg	<i>òb-ì-w</i> ~ <i>òb-ù-w</i>	<i>pàd-ì-w</i> ~ <i>pàd-ù-w</i>	<i>yèyy-ì-ý-w</i>	<i>yàb-ì-w</i> ~ <i>yàb-ù-w</i>
2Pl	<i>òb-í-yj</i> ~ <i>òb-ú-yj</i>	<i>pàd-í-yj</i> ~ <i>pàd-ú-yj</i>	<i>yèyy-í-ý-yj</i>	<i>yàb-í-yj</i> ~ <i>yàb-ú-yj</i>
3Sg	<i>ób-ì-Ø</i>	<i>pád-ì-Ø</i>	<i>yéyy-ì-ý</i>	<i>yáb-ì-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>ób-ì-yà</i>	<i>pád-ì-yà</i>	<i>yéyy-ì-Ø-yà</i>	<i>yáb-ì-yà</i>

Monosyllabic I-class verbs add *-y* to a short-vowel form of the stem. Expected *Cé-y* and *Cé-ý* appear as *Cí-y*, pronounced [Cí:], as in ‘send’ and ‘remain’.

(217) Perfectives of I-class verbs (monosyllabic)

stem	<i>bă:</i> ‘beat’	<i>kâ:</i> ‘shave’	<i>yô:</i> ‘go in’	<i>tê:</i> ‘send’	<i>bě:</i> ‘remain’
1Sg	<i>bà-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>kà-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>yò-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>tì-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>bì-ŷ-ý</i>
1Pl	<i>bà-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>kà-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>yò-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>tì-ŷ-ý</i>	<i>bì-ŷ-ý</i>
2Sg	<i>bà-ŷ-w</i>	<i>kà-ŷ-w</i>	<i>yò-ŷ-w</i>	<i>tì-ŷ-w</i>	<i>bì-ŷ-w</i>
2Pl	<i>bà-ŷ-yj</i>	<i>kà-ŷ-yj</i>	<i>yò-ŷ-yj</i>	<i>tì-ŷ-yj</i>	<i>bì-ŷ-yj</i>
3Sg	<i>bá-ŷ-Ø</i>	<i>ká-ŷ-Ø</i>	<i>yó-ŷ-Ø</i>	<i>tí-ŷ-Ø</i>	<i>bí-ŷ-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>bá-ŷ-yà</i>	<i>ká-ŷ-yà</i>	<i>yó-ŷ-yà</i>	<i>tí-ŷ-yà</i>	<i>bí-ŷ-yà</i>

The verb ‘say’ has a chaining form *gí-ý* and perfective *gí-ý*, similar to ‘send’, but the regular presuffixal stem is *gě:*.

Trisyllabic verbs, all of which belong to the I-class, require a high vowel in the medial syllable of the perfective (and the chaining form). Thus *pégir-ì* ‘winnowed (by shaking)’, compare imperative *pégèrè*.

When followed by *=yo* ‘if’ (or variant, §16.1), the 3Sg and 3Pl perfectives are {L}-toned, followed by <HL>-toned *=yô:*. In other words, the H-tone that usually appears at the beginning of the third-person perfective shifts onto the ‘if’ enclitic. The 1st/2nd person forms before (L-toned) *=yò* show the forms indicated in the paradigms above, without tone-

dropping. The tonal distinction between 1Sg/1Pl and 2Pl (e.g. 1Sg/1Pl *sèmb-è-ñ* versus 2Pl *sèmb-é-ñ* for ‘sweep’) is difficult to maintain in the ‘if’ form since the 2Pl spreads its H-tone onto the nasal before the L-toned clitic: 2Pl *sèmb-é-ñ=jè* ‘if you-Pl sweep’, not reliably distinguishable from *sèmb-è-ñ=jè* ‘if I/we sweep’. Similar tonal processes occur before interrogative *ma*→ (§13.2.1). For the phonology see §3.7.3.3.

#### 10.2.1.2 Augmented perfective

The perfective (E-stem or I-stem) as described above can be augmented by adding an initial *CV-* reduplication (monosyllabic stems) or by lengthening the first vowel of the stem with an initial L-tone. Lengthening evidently evolved out of reduplication by loss of the initial consonant of the base, followed by VV-Contraction. Nonmonosyllabic verbs now have a choice between lengthening and reduplication, while only reduplication is possible for monosyllabics.

An extensive set of forms with monosyllabic verbs is in (218). There is no tonal difference in this inflectional category between lexically /HL/- and /LH/-toned stems. In (218b), ‘steal’ shows that the *CV-* reduplicant is denasalized.

(218)	stem	perfective (3Sg) regular	gloss
		augmented	
a. /HL/-toned			
<i>E-class</i>			
<i>nâ:</i>	<i>né-è</i>	<i>nè-né-è</i>	‘eat (meal)’
<i>pê:</i>	<i>pé-è</i>	<i>pè-pé-è</i>	‘grow old’
<i>tô:</i>	<i>tó-è</i>	<i>tò-tó-è</i>	‘sow, plant’
<i>I-class</i>			
<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká-ỳ</i>	<i>kà-ká-ỳ</i>	‘shave’
<i>tâ:</i>	<i>tá-ỳ</i>	<i>tà-tá-ỳ</i>	‘shoot’
<i>tê:</i>	<i>tí-ỳ</i>	<i>tì-tí-ỳ</i>	‘send’
<i>yô:</i>	<i>yó-ỳ</i>	<i>yò-yó-ỳ</i>	‘go in’
<i>yâ:</i>	<i>yá-ỳ</i>	<i>yà-yá-ỳ</i>	‘spend night’
b. /LH/-toned			
<i>E-class</i>			
<i>dô:</i>	<i>dó-è</i>	<i>dò-dó-è</i>	‘arrive (there)’
<i>dě:</i>	<i>dé-è</i>	<i>dè-dé-è</i>	‘insult’
<i>gó:</i>	<i>gó-è</i>	<i>gò-gó-è</i>	‘go out’
<i>gő:</i>	<i>gó-è</i>	<i>gò-gó-è</i>	‘dance’
<i>jă:</i>	<i>jé-è</i>	<i>jè-jé-è</i>	‘take (sb)’
<i>nő:</i>	<i>nó-è</i>	<i>nò-nó-è</i>	‘drink’
<i>wă:</i>	<i>wé-è</i>	<i>wè-wé-è</i>	‘see’
<i>yă:</i>	<i>yé-è</i>	<i>yè-yé-è</i>	‘weep’
<i>E-class, nasalized vowel (reduplicant is non-nasal)</i>			
<i>gě:n</i>	<i>gé-n-èn</i>	<i>gè-gé-n-èn</i>	‘steal’
<i>I-class</i>			
<i>bă:</i>	<i>bá-ỳ</i>	<i>bà-bá-ỳ</i>	‘beat (tomtom)’
<i>dă:</i>	<i>dá-ỳ</i>	<i>dà-dá-ỳ</i>	‘kill’

<i>gě:</i>	<i>gí-ŷ</i>	<i>gi-gí-ŷ</i>	‘say’
<i>nă:</i>	<i>ná-ŷ</i>	<i>nà-ná-ŷ</i>	‘forget’

Nonmonosyllabic stems have two augmented forms, lengthened (the first vowel is lengthened) and reduplicated. Representative examples are in (219). The vowel-initial stems at the end of (219a) and (219b) add an initial glottal stop to maintain the reduplicated pattern.

(219)	stem	perfective (3Sg) regular	perfective (3Sg) lengthened	gloss reduplicated
-------	------	-----------------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------

a. /HL/-toned

*E-class, consonant-initial*

<i>témé</i>	<i>tém-è-Ø</i>	<i>tě:m-è-Ø</i>	<i>tè-témè-Ø</i>	‘eat (meat)’
<i>tómbò</i>	<i>tómb-è-Ø</i>	<i>tō:mb-è-Ø</i>	<i>tò-tómb-è-Ø</i>	‘jump’
<i>yímè</i>	<i>yím-è-Ø</i>	<i>yǐ:m-è-Ø</i>	<i>yì-yím-è-Ø</i>	‘die’

*I-class, consonant-initial*

<i>kámbà</i>	<i>kámb-ì-Ø</i>	<i>kǎ:mb-ì-Ø</i>	<i>kà-kámb-ì-Ø</i>	‘throw’
<i>pégèrè</i>	<i>pégir-ì-Ø</i>	<i>pě:gir-ì-Ø</i>	<i>pè-pégir-ì-Ø</i>	‘winnow by shaking’
<i>tárá</i>	<i>tár-ì-Ø</i>	<i>tā:r-ì-Ø</i>	<i>tà-tár-ì-Ø</i>	‘post, affix’
<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy-ì-ŷ</i>	<i>yě:yy-ì-ŷ</i>	<i>yè-yéyy-ì-ŷ</i>	‘sleep’

*E-class, vowel-initial*

<i>ébè</i>	<i>éb-è-Ø</i>	<i>ě:b-è-Ø</i>	<i>è-?éb-è-Ø</i>	‘buy’
------------	---------------	----------------	------------------	-------

*I-class, vowel-initial*

<i>ágà</i>	<i>ág-ì-Ø</i>	<i>ă:g-ì-Ø</i>	<i>à-?ág-ì-Ø</i>	‘catch’
<i>óbò</i>	<i>ób-ì-Ø</i>	<i>ǒ:b-ì-Ø</i>	<i>ò-?ób-ì-Ø</i>	‘give’

b. /LH/-toned

*E-class, consonant-initial*

<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bénd-è-Ø</i>	<i>bě:nd-è-Ø</i>	<i>bè-bénd-è-Ø</i>	‘hit’
<i>dònó</i>	<i>dón-è-Ø</i>	<i>dő:n-è-Ø</i>	<i>dò-dón-è-Ø</i>	‘sell’
<i>nùñó</i>	<i>núñ-è-Ø</i>	<i>nǔ:ñ-è-Ø</i>	<i>nù-núñ-è-Ø</i>	‘sing’

*I-class, consonant-initial*

<i>bòló</i>	<i>ból-ì-Ø</i>	<i>bō:l-ì-Ø</i>	<i>bò-ból-ì-Ø</i>	‘go’
<i>gèndé</i>	<i>génd-ì-Ø</i>	<i>gě:nd-ì-Ø</i>	<i>gè-génd-ì-Ø</i>	‘look’
<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yábìl-ì-ŷ</i>	<i>yǎ:bìl-ì-ŷ</i>	<i>yà-yábìl-ì-ŷ</i>	‘reply’

*E-class, vowel-initial*

<i>ùrò</i>	<i>úr-è-Ø</i>	<i>ú:r-è-Ø</i>	<i>ù-?úrè-Ø</i>	‘butcher’
------------	---------------	----------------	-----------------	-----------

c. with initial lexical Cv: syllable, E- and I-classes

<i>pá:mà</i>	<i>pá:m-ì-Ø</i>	<i>pă:m-ì-Ø</i>	<i>pà-pá:m-ì-Ø</i>	‘understand’
<i>sí:rè</i>	<i>sí:r-è-Ø</i>	<i>sǐ:r-è-Ø</i>	<i>sì-sí:r-è-Ø</i>	‘point at’
<i>sí:rè</i>	<i>sí:r-ì-Ø</i>	<i>sǐ:r-ì-Ø</i>	<i>sì-sí:r-ì-Ø</i>	‘cook (meal)’

A sample paradigm is (220). The tonal distinction between the 3rd person forms and the 1st/2nd person forms in the regular perfective is neutralized in the two augmented perfective paradigms.

(220) Paradigm of perfective of ‘jump’

	regular	lengthened	reduplicated
1Sg	<i>tòmb-è-ń</i>	<i>tō:mb-è-ń</i>	<i>tò-tómb-è-ń</i>
1Pl	<i>tòmb-è-ń</i>	<i>tō:mb-è-ń</i>	<i>tò-tómb-è-ń</i>
2Sg	<i>tòmb-è-́w</i>	<i>tō:mb-è-́w</i>	<i>tò-tómb-è-́w</i>
2Pl	<i>tòmb-è-ń</i>	<i>tō:mb-è-ń</i>	<i>tò-tómb-è-ń</i>
3Sg	<i>tómb-è-Ø</i>	<i>tō:mb-è-Ø</i>	<i>tò-tómb-è-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>tómb-ì-yà</i>	<i>tō:mb-ì-yà</i>	<i>tò-tómb-ì-yà</i>

For ‘jump’, with its *o*-vowel in the first syllable, Back/Rounding Harmony optionally applies to the suffix in the 1st/2nd person forms in all three columns of (220). When this happens, the 1Pl/2Pl forms can be distinguished from the 1Sg by the palatal onset, e.g. *tō:mb-ò-ń* ‘I fell’ versus *tō:mb-ò-ŋ* ‘we/you-Pl fell’.

For the nonmonosyllabics, the reduplicated form indicates a surprising repetition. My assistant gave contexts like this: X is told by his/her parent not to repeat an action, but then repeats it anyway. For these nonmonosyllabics, the lengthened form functions as a simple verb/VP focalizer. My assistant gave contexts such as replies to ‘what did he do?’ or ‘how did he do that?’ which place the eventuality type in focus. My interpretation is that the overtly reduplicated variant is a slightly more emphatic verb focalizer than the lengthened variant, for verbs that have both.

For the monosyllabics, the reduplicated form has both functions. In one instance, my assistant suggested that the *tò-tó-è* ‘he/she sowed’ could be used in answering a ‘what did he do?’ question, suggesting VP focalization. In another instance, he indicated that *tò-tó-è* ‘could be used in a context where the individual had been told not to sow (again), but went ahead and sowed anyway (surprising repetition).

K&P (p. 79) refer to the augmented perfective (reduplicated for monosyllabics, with lengthened vowel for other verbs) as the “passé narratif à redoublement” and gloss it as expressing “une idée d’accomplissement, d’une action envisagée comme définitive.”

#### 10.2.1.3 Experiential perfect ‘have ever’ (-tíyà wò-)

The experiential perfect is used in the sense ‘have (ever) VPed’. It is used in questions like ‘have you ever seen an elephant?’ or ‘have you ever gone to Bamako?’, and in statements that could answer such questions. The event is usually a momentous one that leaves a strong memory or other continuing effect.

The construction is *-tíyà wò*, compare the negative counterpart *-tà-lí-* ‘have never VPed’ (§10.2.3.2). The relative clause version is *-tíyà wò*: with the regular participle of *wò* (§14.4.1.2). I know of no construction where *-tíyà* can be separated from the preceding verb by an intervening element. *wò* is an existential-locational quasi-verb ‘be (somewhere), be present’ (§11.2.2.2), here probably encliticized. The main verb preceding *-tíyà wò* takes the form of the presuffixal stem before *-tíyà wò-* and is tone-dropped. The suffix combines with ‘bring’ as *já-yèlè-tíyà wò-*.

(221) Experiential perfect

stem	<i>wǎ:/wɛ:</i> ‘see’	<i>égé</i> ‘hear’	<i>bòló</i> ‘go’
1Sg	<i>wà:-tíyà wò-ìj</i>	<i>ègè-tíyà wò-ìj</i>	<i>bòlò-tíyà wò-ìj</i>
1Pl	<i>wà:-tíyà wò-yìj</i>	<i>ègè-tíyà wò-yìj</i>	<i>bòlò-tíyà wò-yìj</i>
2Sg	<i>wà:-tíyà wò-w̄</i>	<i>ègè-tíyà wò-w̄</i>	<i>bòlò-tíyà wò-w̄</i>
2Pl	<i>wà:-tíyà wò-ȳj</i>	<i>ègè-tíyà wò-ȳj</i>	<i>bòlò-tíyà wò-ȳj</i>
3Sg	<i>wà:-tíyà wò-Ø</i>	<i>ègè-tíyà wò-Ø</i>	<i>bòlò-tíyà wò-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>wà:-tíyà wò-yà</i>	<i>ègè-tíyà wò-yà</i>	<i>bòlò-tíyà wò-yà</i>

Etymologically, the comparison of *-tíyà* with negative *-tà-lí-* suggests that the *yà* syllable may go back to the *-a:* subordinator (§15.2.2.1). A form like *\*tí-à:* would result from addition of *\*-a:* to a proto-form *\*té(:)*, which could perhaps also account for the a-vowel in *-tà-lí-* if we reconstruct stem-ablaut alternations (productive in some Dogon languages) to the relevant proto-language. However, my assistant corrected me when I suggested a pronunciation #*-tíyà: wò* with long *a:*.

10.2.1.4 Present perfect (*-a: wò* or *-a: sè*)

This construction has invariant subordinator *-a:* (§15.2.2.1) on the main verb, followed by a conjugated quasi-verb *wò* ‘be’ or *sè* ‘have’ as auxiliary. It functions as a present perfect.

- (222) a. *wò=íj ób-à:* *wò-ìj / sè-ìj*  
           3Sg=Acc give-PastAnt be-1SgSbj / have-1SgSbj  
           ‘I have given (it) to him/her.’
- b. *[girî: m̄-mò] bâ:-l-í-à:* *wò-Ø*  
       [sleep(n) 1Sg-Poss] suffice-Rev-MP-PastAnt be-3SgSbj  
       ‘I have gotten (=am) sleepy.’
- c. *[sɔy m̄-mò] némìg-ì-à:* *wò-Ø*  
       [garment 1Sg-Poss] become.dirty-MP-PastAnt be-3SgSbj  
       ‘My clothes have gotten (=are) dirty.’

Sample forms are in (223), using *wò*. Monosyllabics shorten the stem vowel, and if the vowel is mid-height it is raised to *i* or *u*. The *-a:* suffix is L-toned except when it carries the H-tone of an /LH/-toned verb (223b), which it can with monosyllabic and simple bisyllabic stems but not trisyllabics or with bisyllabic mediopassives.

(223)	stem	perfect	gloss
a. /HL/-toned			
	<i>tɔ:</i>	<i>tú-à: wò</i>	‘sow’
	<i>ágà</i>	<i>ág-à: wò</i>	‘catch’

<i>pádà</i>	<i>pád-à: wò</i>	‘leave’
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-ì-à: wò</i>	‘go back’
<i>initial sonorant</i>		
<i>jâ:</i>	<i>já-à wò</i>	‘eat’
<i>yô:</i>	<i>yú-à: wò</i>	‘go in’
<i>mediopassive</i>		
<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy(-i)-à: wò</i>	‘sleep’
b. /LH/-toned		
<i>gõ:</i>	<i>gù-â: wò</i>	‘go out’
<i>wă:</i>	<i>wà-â: wò</i>	‘see’
<i>já-yèlē</i>	<i>já-yèl-â: wò</i>	‘bring’
<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bènd-â: wò</i>	‘hit’
<i>mediopassives</i>		
<i>dàjñ-é:-</i>	<i>dàjñ-í-à: wò</i>	‘reply’
<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yàbìl-í-à: wò</i>	‘reply’

The “perfect” nuance is difficult to detect in this present perfect, since there is little practical difference between perfective and present perfect. The perfect sense is clearer in the past perfect with *wò* replaced by *bè* (§10.5.1.6).

#### 10.2.1.5 Recent perfect (-a: dɔ:)

A conjugated form of the verb *dɔ:* ‘arrive (at), reach’ following a past anterior form with anterior subordinator *-a:* (past) or *-a:-ni* (nonpast) means ‘have (recently) finished VPing’.

- (224) a. *émmè bøy yègèr-â: dɔ-è-ñ*  
          1PLSbj   tomtom   fix-PastAnt   arrive-Pfv-1PLSbj  
          ‘We have finished fixing the tomtom.’
- b. *émmè bøy yègèr-á:-nì dɔ-dɔ:-dè-ñ*  
          1PLSbj   tomtom   fix-Ant-Nonpast   Augm-arrive-Ipfv-1PLSbj  
          ‘We will have finished fixing the tomtom.’

Relative clauses based on this construction occur in text 01 at 01:01 and in text 03 at 00:44.

#### 10.2.2 Imperfective positive system

This subsystem includes the imperfective, the augmented imperfective, and periphrastic constructions with auxiliaries, including the progressive, the future, and the immediate future.

##### 10.2.2.1 Imperfective (-dè or -jè)

The imperfective (positive) is a high-frequency, unmarked form that is used in statements of current eventualities, either ongoing (competing with the progressive construction) or recurring/habitual. For its augmented form, see the following section. Statives like ‘be sitting’

are generally expressed with specifically stative derivatives and are therefore outside of the perfective/imperfective aspectual system (§10.4).

The regular imperfective (positive) suffix is the presuffixal stem plus **-dè**, followed (in main clauses) by the usual pronominal-subject marker. A few irregular *Cvlv* verbs have **-jè**, in combination with stem-truncation: *bó-jè* ‘goes’ (*bòló*), *yé-jè* ‘comes’ (*yèlé*), *bé-jè* ‘gets’ (*bèlé*), and *gá-jè* ‘goes past’ (*galá*), see §10.1.3.9. The other verb with **-jè** instead of **-dè** is *kán-jè* ‘does’, apparently syncopated from stem *kán(à)* (§10.1.3.12).

Lexical tones /HL/ and /LH/ are distinguished. /HL/-toned verbs have an H-toned first syllable followed by L-toned syllables and suffix. In careful pronunciation, /LH/-toned verbs have the H-tone on the final syllable of the stem as with ‘accept’ in (225), or on the final mora if the stem is monosyllabic. However, the H-tone in the /LH/ verbs is often dropped by downdrift effects in actual discourse, when the verb is preceded by other constituents. Because **-dè-** is L-toned and has a front vowel, there is no audible distinction between 1Sg, 1Pl, and 2Pl. The suffixal L-tone also masks the L-tone of 2Sg **-w̄**.

(225) Imperfective (nonmonosyllabic)

stem	<i>óbò</i> ‘give’	<i>yéyy-è:</i> ‘sleep’	<i>yàbá</i> ‘accept’
1Sg	<i>óbò-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>yàbá-dè-ñ̄</i>
1Pl	<i>óbò-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>yàbá-dè-ñ̄</i>
2Sg	<i>óbò-dè-w̄</i> ( ~ <i>-dò-w̄</i> )	<i>yéyy-è:-dè-w̄</i> ( ~ <i>-dò-w̄</i> )	<i>yàbá-dè-w̄</i> ( ~ <i>-dò-w̄</i> )
2Pl	<i>óbò-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>yàbá-dè-ñ̄</i>
3Sg	<i>óbò-dè</i>	<i>yéyye-è:-dè</i>	<i>yàbá-dè</i>
3Pl	<i>óbò-d-i</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-d-i</i>	<i>yàbá-d-i</i>

Trisyllabics follow the same patterns: /HL/-toned *kígùl-è:-dè-ñ̄* ‘I will return’, /LH/-toned *yàbil-é:-dè-ñ̄* ‘I will reply’.

Monosyllabic stems are illustrated in (226). ‘Sow’ has /HL/ melody while ‘drink’ and ‘beat (tomtom)’ have /LH/ melody.

(226) Imperfective (monosyllabic)

stem	<i>nɔ:</i> ‘drink’	<i>tɔ:</i> ‘sow’	<i>bă:</i> ‘beat (tomtom)’
1Sg	<i>nɔ:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tɔ:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bă:-dè-ñ̄</i>
1Pl	<i>nɔ:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tɔ:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bă:-dè-ñ̄</i>
2Sg	<i>nɔ:-dò-w̄</i> ( ~ <i>-dò-w̄</i> )	<i>tɔ:-dò-w̄</i> ( ~ <i>-dò-w̄</i> )	<i>bă:-dò-w̄</i> ( ~ <i>-dò-w̄</i> )
2Pl	<i>nɔ:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tɔ:-dè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bă:-dè-ñ̄</i>
3Sg	<i>nɔ:-dè-∅</i>	<i>tɔ:-dè-∅</i>	<i>bă:-dè-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>nɔ:-d-i</i>	<i>tɔ:-d-i</i>	<i>bă:-d-i</i>

A variant **-dò-** is very common before **-w̄** (2Sg suffix) regardless of stem vocalism, as shown in the paradigms. The velar nasal of the 1Sg, 1Pl, and 2Pl suffixes can combine with an *o* or *a*

in the preceding syllable to induce forward assimilation: *n᷑:-d᷑-ŋ* ~ *n᷑:-d᷑-ŋ* ‘I drink’, *pádà-dà-ŋ* ~ *pádà-d᷑-ŋ* ‘I leave (behind)’.

#### 10.2.2.2 Augmented imperfective

Like the perfective, the basic imperfective form (preceding section) has an augmented variant formed by *C᷑-* reduplication (monosyllabics) or by lengthening of the first vowel with initial L-tone (nonmonosyllabics). For nonmonosyllabics, reduplication is not attested.

Monosyllabic examples with overt reduplication are in (227). There is no tonal difference between /HL/ melody and /LH/ melody in this formation. Only oral vowels occur in reduplicants.

(227)	stem	imperfective		gloss
		regular	augmented	
a. /HL/-toned				
<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká:-d᷑</i>	<i>kà-ká:-d᷑</i>		‘shave’
<i>nâ:</i>	<i>ná:-d᷑</i>	<i>nà-ná:-d᷑</i>		‘eat (meal)’
<i>pē:</i>	<i>pé:-d᷑</i>	<i>pè-pé:-d᷑</i>		‘grow old’
<i>t᷑:</i>	<i>t᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>tò-t᷑:-d᷑</i>		‘sow’
<i>tâ:</i>	<i>tá:-d᷑</i>	<i>tà-tá:-d᷑</i>		‘shoot’
<i>t᷑:</i>	<i>té:-d᷑</i>	<i>tè-té:-d᷑</i>		‘send’
<i>yâ:</i>	<i>yá:-d᷑</i>	<i>yà-yá:-d᷑</i>		‘spend night’
<i>y᷑:</i>	<i>yó:-d᷑</i>	<i>yò-yó:-d᷑</i>		‘go in’
b. /LH/-toned				
<i>bă:</i>	<i>bă:-d᷑</i>	<i>bà-bá:-d᷑</i>		‘beat (tomtom)’
<i>dă:</i>	<i>dă:-d᷑</i>	<i>dà-dá:-d᷑</i>		‘kill’
<i>d᷑:</i>	<i>d᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>d᷑-d᷑:-d᷑</i>		‘arrive (there)’
<i>d᷑:</i>	<i>d᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>d᷑-d᷑:-d᷑</i>		‘insult’
<i>gě:</i>	<i>gě:-d᷑</i>	<i>gè-gé:-d᷑</i>		‘say’
<i>g᷑:</i>	<i>g᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>g᷑-g᷑:-d᷑</i>		‘go out’
<i>g᷑:</i>	<i>g᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>g᷑-g᷑:-d᷑</i>		‘dance’
<i>j᷑:</i>	<i>j᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>jà-já:-d᷑</i>		‘take (sb)’
<i>nă:</i>	<i>nă:-d᷑</i>	<i>nà-ná:-d᷑</i>		‘forget’
<i>n᷑:</i>	<i>n᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>n᷑-n᷑:-d᷑</i>		‘drink’
<i>wă:</i>	<i>wă:-d᷑</i>	<i>wà-wá:-d᷑</i>		‘see’
<i>y᷑:</i>	<i>y᷑:-d᷑</i>	<i>yà-yá:-d᷑</i>		‘weep’
<i>reduplicant denasalized</i>				
<i>gě:<sup>n</sup></i>	<i>gě:<sup>n</sup>-d᷑</i>	<i>gè-gé:<sup>n</sup>-d᷑</i>		‘steal’

Nonmonosyllabic examples showing vowel lengthening are in (228). Lexically /HL/-toned stems again merge with lexically /LH/-toned stems. The H-tone that was likely once on the post-reduplicant base (e.g. \**C᷑-C᷑C᷑*) has gravitated to the final syllable/mora of the stem preceding the imperfective suffix.

(228)	stem	imperfective regular	imperfective augmented	gloss
a. /HL/-toned				
ágà	ágà-dè	à:gá-dè		‘catch’
kámbà	kámbà-dè	kà:mbá-dè		‘throw’
óbò	óbò-dè	ò:bó-dè		‘give’
tárá	tárà-dè	tà:rá-dè		‘post, affix’
témé	témè-dè	tè:mé-dè		‘eat (meat)’
tómbò	tómbò-dè	tò:mbó-dè		‘jump’
úró	úró-dè	ù:ró-dè		‘butcher’
yímè	yímé-dè	yì:mé-dè		‘die’
yéyy-è:	yéyy-è:-dè	yè:yy-é:-dè		‘sleep’
pégèrè	pégèrè-dè	pè:gérè-dè		‘winnow by shaking’

b. /LH/-toned				
dònó	dònó-dè	dò:nó-dè		‘sell’
nùŋó	nùŋó-dè	nù:ŋó-dè		‘sing’
bèndé	bèndé-dè	bè:ndé-dè		‘hit’
gèndé	gèndé-dè	gè:ndé-dè		‘look’
yàbil-é:-	yàbil-é:-dè	yà:bil-é:-dè		‘reply’
truncated				
bòló	bó-jè	bō:-jè		‘go’
gàlá	gá-jè	gă:-jè		‘pass’

c. with initial lexical Cv: syllable				
pá:mà	pá:mà-dè	pà:má-dè		‘understand’
sí:rè	sí:rè-dè	sì:ré-dè		‘point at’
sí:rè	sí:rè-dè	sì:ré-dè		‘cook (meal)’
bà:g-é:-	bà:g-é(:)-dè	bà:g-ě:-dè		‘learn (a trade)’
yò:ró	yò:ró-dè	yò:ró-dè		‘roast (on fire)’

My assistant was uncomfortable with the homophony of the two *yò:ró-dè* for the last item in (228c), ‘roast (on fire)’, though he did not deny it. The homophony is due to the initial *Cv:* syllable in the lexical representation. In the case of ‘learn (a trade)’, which also begins with such a syllable, he claimed an audible distinction between *bà:g-é(:)-dè* and *bà:g-ě:-dè*, involving some combination of tonal and/or duration distinction on the mediopassive suffix.

A sample paradigm is (229).

(229) Paradigm of imperfective of ‘jump’

	regular	augmented
1Sg	tómbò-dè-ñ	tò:mbó-dè-ñ
1Pl	tómbò-dè-ñ	tò:mbó-dè-ñ
2Sg	tómbò-dè-w ( ~ -dò-w)	tò:mbó-dè-w ( ~ -dò-w)
2Pl	tómbò-dè-ñ	tò:mbó-dè-ñ

3Sg	<i>tómbò-dè-</i> Ø	<i>tò:mbó-dè-</i> Ø
3Pl	<i>tómbò-d-ì</i>	<i>tò:mbó-d-ì</i>

Augmentation may well be triggered by verb focus. As interpreted by my assistant, the augmented imperfective is associated with future time. There are two other formations that appear to be specifically future. One is a periphrastic construction with *-d-à: sè* (§10.2.2.7). It is typically confined to nonimmediate future contexts (e.g. something planned for tomorrow) while the augmented imperfective has no restrictions on time gap vis-à-vis the present. The other is the augmented future, which has the same kind of augmentation (reduplication or vowel-lengthening), but lacks the imperfective suffix *-dè-* and has special 3Sg and 3Pl suffix allomorphs (§10.2.2.6).

K&P (pp. 76-77) distinguish three rather than two imperfective forms and functions, all of them including suffix “-ze” (corresponding to imperfective *-dè* in the Wendegele dialect) but with different tone patterns. The “progressif” is “une action en train de se faire ou dont la réalisation est prochaine.” The “habituel” is “une action fait habituellement.” The “itératif” is “une action que est faite de temps en temps.” The sample transcriptions, using *gèndé* ‘look’ (or ‘see’) and *nɔ:* ‘drink’, are reproduced here verbatim as (230).

(230) K&P imperfectives

	‘look/see’	‘drink’
progressif	“gendéze”	“nɔze”
habituel	“gendezè”	“nɔzè”
itératif	“geendéze”	“nɔnɔze”

The K&P “itératif” is clearly the same form as my augmented imperfective (with vocalic lengthening or reduplication), in spite of the different account they give of its semantics. However, their questionable distinction between “progressif” and “habituel” forms may reflect difficulties with the tonal system, and especially the distinction between /HL/ and /LH/ lexical melodies. The acute accent diacritics on medial syllables in some of the K&P forms in (230) are described as representing not H-tone but an “accent d’intensité,” while the grave accent on the final syllable of the “habituel” is a “ton bas.” In fact, since the verbs used are lexically /LH/, both have imperfectives with rising-toned stem and L-toned suffix: *gèndé-dè* and *nɔ:-dè*.

K&P also state that the same three stem shapes also occur in the imperfective negative. My data indicate that there is only a single imperfective negative form. My assistant rejected reduplication with monosyllabic stems, and lengthening with other stems, in the imperfective negative.

### 10.2.2.3 Progressive-1 (*wò* ‘be’ after verb with *-w* suffix)

There are two progressive constructions, both with *wò* ‘be’ (existential-locational) as conjugated auxiliary. In allegro speech it is difficult to distinguish the two constructions.

In the first such combination, *wò-* is added to a form of the main verb suffixed with *-w*. The suffix occurs elsewhere as an imperfective marker that cannot be directly conjugated for pronominal subject: past progressive-1 *-w=bè-* (§10.5.1.1) and imperfective subordinator *-w* before another clause (§15.2.1.3-4). *-w* is probably a lenited form of \*-gu (Tommo So *-gú*,

Yorno So *-w̄ ~ -gu*), less likely of \*-m̄. I will gloss it as “Ipfv” in interlinears. Paradigms are given below for bisyllabic (231) and monosyllabic (232) verbs. The lexical melody /HL/ versus /LH/ is respected; for this reason, the progressive can be a useful diagnostic for lexical tone as well as vocalism. /HL/-toned verbs appear with a falling tone pattern: <HL>, H.L, H.L.L. /LH/-toned verbs are L-toned with a final H-toned vowel before *-w̄*, except that monosyllabics put the H-tone on the suffix (*Cv̄-w̄*). Stem-final {e e} often assimilate as {o o} by Back/rounding Harmony before the suffixal *w̄*.

(231) Progressive-1 paradigms (bisyllabic)

	<i>sémbè</i> ‘sweep’	<i>yàbá</i> ‘accept’
1Sg	<i>sémbò-w̄ wò-ŷ</i>	<i>yàbá-w̄ wò-ŷ</i>
1Pl	<i>sémbò-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>	<i>yàbá-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>
2Sg	<i>sémbò-w̄ wò-w̄</i>	<i>yàbá-w̄ wò-w̄</i>
2Pl	<i>sémbò-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>	<i>yàbá-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>
3Sg	<i>sémbò-w̄ wò-∅</i>	<i>yàbá-w̄ wò-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>sémbò-w̄ wò-yyà</i>	<i>yàbá-w̄ wò-yyà</i>

(232) Progressive-1 paradigms (monosyllabic)

	<i>kâ:</i> ‘shave’	<i>n᷑:</i> ‘drink’
1Sg	<i>ká-w̄ wò-ŷ</i>	<i>n᷑-w̄ wò-ŷ</i>
1Pl	<i>ká-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>	<i>n᷑-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>
2Sg	<i>ká-w̄ wò-w̄</i>	<i>n᷑-w̄ wò-w̄</i>
2Pl	<i>ká-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>	<i>n᷑-w̄ wò-yŷ</i>
3Sg	<i>ká-w̄ wò-∅</i>	<i>n᷑-w̄ wò-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>ká-w̄ wò-yyà</i>	<i>n᷑-w̄ wò-yyà</i>

Mediopassive examples: *dàjjn-é-w̄ w̄* ‘is (in the process of) sitting’, *kígùl-è-w̄ w̄* ‘is going back’, *yàbil-é-w̄ w̄* ‘is replying’.

#### 10.2.2.4 Progressive-2 (*w̄* after unsuffixed verb)

In the second progressive construction, conjugated *w̄* ‘be’ follows the unsuffixed main verb in a progressive construction (‘be VPing’). Verbs that have a chaining form with *-i* or *-u* do not use it in this combination, so this is not a verb chain. /HL/-toned verbs appear with falling tone pattern (H.L.L for trisyllabics: *kígùl-è: w̄* ‘be going back’). /LH/-toned verbs appear with their usual rising pattern (L.L.H for trisyllabics: *gɔndɔrɔ w̄* ‘be hanging up’).

(233) Progressive-2 paradigm

	<i>sémbè</i> ‘sweep’	<i>yàbá</i> ‘accept’	<i>kâ:</i> ‘shave’	<i>nɔ:</i> ‘drink’
1Sg	<i>sémbè wɔ-ŋ̩</i>	<i>yàbá wɔ-ŋ̩</i>	<i>kâ: wɔ-ŋ̩</i>	<i>nɔ: wɔ-ŋ̩</i>
1Pl	<i>sémbè wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>	<i>yàbá wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>	<i>kâ: wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>	<i>nɔ: wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>
2Sg	<i>sémbè wɔ-ñ̩</i>	<i>yàbá wɔ-ñ̩</i>	<i>kâ: wɔ-ñ̩</i>	<i>nɔ: wɔ-ñ̩</i>
2Pl	<i>sémbè wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>	<i>yàbá wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>	<i>kâ: wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>	<i>nɔ: wɔ-ŋ̩y̩</i>
3Sg/Inan	<i>sémbè wɔ-Ø</i>	<i>yàbá wɔ-Ø</i>	<i>kâ: wɔ-Ø</i>	<i>nɔ: wɔ</i>
3Pl	<i>sémbè wɔ-yyà</i>	<i>yàbá wɔ-yyà</i>	<i>kâ: wɔ-yyà</i>	<i>nɔ: wɔ-yyà</i>

Mediopassive examples: *dàny-n-ê: wɔ* ‘is (in the process of) sitting’, *kígùl-è: wɔ* ‘is going back’, *yàbìl-ê: wɔ* ‘is replying’.

The progressive-2 appears to be less common than the progressive-1, which overtly marks imperfectivity on the main verb. It is possible that the progressive-2 is an innovation reflecting the difficulty of hearing the gemination of *w* in the progressive-1, e.g. *yàbá-ñ̩ wɔ* versus *yàbá wɔ*.

#### 10.2.2.5 Stative *gèlè* ‘be holding’ as an alternative progressive auxiliary

A stative form of the verb *gèlè* ‘hold (onto), keep’ can be used instead of *wɔ* in the progressive-1 construction with imperfective *-ñ̩* on the main verb. The auxiliary is an unaugmented stative rather than perfective. The negative counterpart has stative negative *-l̩v̩*.

- (234) *bɔy*      *bă:-ñ̩*      *gèlè-ŋ̩ / gèlè-l̩-ŋ̩*  
 tomtom    beat-Ipfv    hold.Stat-1SgSbj / hold-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I am / am not beating the tomtom.’

#### 10.2.2.6 Augmented future (3Sg *-à*, 3Pl *-mmɔ*)

This is only one of several forms that can be used in utterances denoting future events. In fact, the imperfective (often augmented) is the usual form obtained in elicitation.

The future form has some morphological resemblance to the derived stative (§10.4). However, unlike the stative (which can be derived from verbs of stance, holding and carrying, and a few other semantic classes), the future can be formed from any true verb. The mediopassive suffix is compatible with it.

Using *bòló* ‘go’, *tē:* weave, and mediopassive *dàny-n-é:-* ‘sit’ as exemplars, the paradigm is (235). Pronominal-subject suffixes are added to an augmented form of the bare verb stem. The 3Sg form always ends in *-a*, which is unique to this inflectional category. The 3Pl also has a unique suffix *-mmɔ*, which vaguely resembles a hortative suffix (§10.6.2.1). Augmentation, in the form of either initial *Cv-* reduplication (for monosyllabics) or lengthening to *Cv:...* of the initial syllable (nonmonosyllabics) is shared with augmented statives, augmented perfectives, and augmented imperfectives.

(235)	‘will go’ ( <i>bòló</i> )	‘will weave’ ( <i>tē:</i> )	‘will sit’ ( <i>dà:jn-é:</i> )	‘will eat meal’ ( <i>pâ:</i> )
1Sg	<i>bō:lò-ñ̄</i>	<i>tē-té:-ñ̄</i>	<i>dā:jn-è:-ñ̄</i>	<i>pà-pá:-ñ̄</i>
1Pl	<i>bō:lò-(')ñ̄</i>	<i>tē-té:-ñ̄</i>	<i>dā:jn-è:-ñ̄</i>	<i>pà-pá:-ñ̄</i>
2Sg	<i>bō:lò-ñ̄</i>	<i>tē-té:-ñ̄</i>	<i>dā:jn-è:-ñ̄</i>	<i>pà-pá:-ñ̄</i>
2Pl	<i>bō:lò-(')ñ̄</i>	<i>tē-té:-ñ̄</i>	<i>dā:jn-è:-ñ̄</i>	<i>pà-pá:-ñ̄</i>
3Sg	<i>bō:l-à</i>	<i>tē-tí-à</i>	<i>dā:jn-(ì)-à</i>	<i>pà-pá-à</i>
3Pl	<i>bō:lò-mmò</i>	<i>tē-té:-mmò</i>	<i>dā:jn-è:-mmò</i>	<i>pà-pá:-mmò</i>

Verbs with inanimate subjects allow this category: (*àná*) *mè-mí-à* ‘(rain) will fall’ (verb *mě:*). Note the shift of /e:/ to *i* before the suffixal vowel by Prevocalic V-Raising, as also in *dò-dú-à* ‘he/she will arrive’ (§3.5.6.1).

As usual, augmentation disappears under focalization:

(236)	<i>ă:</i>	<i>bòl-à</i>
	who?	go.Fut-3SgSbj
	‘Who will go?’	

#### 10.2.2.7 Periphrastic future (-d-à: *sè*, -j-à: *sè*)

A periphrastic future construction is derived from the augmented imperfective (suffix *-dè* for most verbs, *-jè* for a few). The usual pronominal-subject suffix is replaced by what is elsewhere the past anterior subordinator *-à:* (§15.2.2.1), and this is followed by a conjugated form of *sè* ‘have’ (§11.5.1.1). The 3Pl form *sè-yyà* (237d) differs slightly from the (probably contracted) form *sì-yà* used in regular ‘have X’ predictions.

- |  |  |                             |
|--|--|-----------------------------|
| (237)  | a. <i>bō:-j-à:</i><br>Augm.go-Ipfv-PastAnt<br>‘I will go.’ | <i>sè-ñ̄</i><br>have-1SgSbj |
| b. <i>yì:mé-d-à:</i><br>Augm.die-Ipfv-PastAnt<br>‘He/She will die.’                | <i>sè-∅</i><br>have-3SgSbj                                 |                             |
| c. <i>pà-pá:-d-à:</i><br>Augm-eat.meal-Ipfv-PastAnt<br>‘You-Sg will eat (a meal).’ | <i>sè-ñ̄</i><br>have-2SgSbj                                |                             |
| d. <i>tò:mbó-d-à:</i><br>Augm.jump-Ipfv-PastAnt<br>‘They will jump.’               | <i>sè-yyà</i><br>have-3PlSbj                               |                             |
| e. <i>gò-gó:-d-à:</i><br>Augm-go.out-Ipfv-PastAnt<br>‘I will go out (later).’      | <i>sè-ñ̄</i><br>have-1SgSbj                                |                             |

This construction can be used in connection with actions and events that are planned for the future, perhaps contingently. Other future events can be expressed with the imperfective, the future, or the immediate future.

#### 10.2.2.8 Immediate future ‘be about to VP’ (-njá: wò)

A construction meaning ‘be about to VP’, ‘be on the verge of VPing’ consists of a verb with invariant ending *-njá:* after tone-dropped stem, followed by a conjugated quasi-verb *wò* ‘be’. I will label *-njá:* as immediate future (“-ImmFut”) before *wò*.

(238)	stem	immediate future	gloss
a. /HL/-toned			
<i>tɔ:</i>	<i>tò:-njá: wò</i>	‘sow’	
<i>ágà</i>	<i>ágà-njá: wò</i>	‘catch’	
<i>pádà</i>	<i>pàdà-njá: wò</i>	‘leave’	
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-njá: wò</i>	‘go back’	
<i>initial sonorant</i>			
<i>jà:</i>	<i>jà:-njá: wò</i>	‘eat’	
<i>yô:</i>	<i>yò:-njá: wò</i>	‘go in’	
<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-njá: wò</i>	‘sleep’	
b. /L/-toned			
<i>gō:</i>	<i>gò:-njá: wò</i>	‘go out’	
<i>wǎ:</i>	<i>wà:-njá: wò</i>	‘see’	
<i>já-yèlē</i>	<i>já-yèlē-njá: wò</i>	‘bring’	
<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bèndè-njá: wò</i>	‘hit’	
<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yàbìl-é:-njá: wò</i>	‘reply’	

One might speculate on a historical connection between *-njá:* and the verb *já:* ‘take (sb)’, see §15.1.9. For L-toned simultaneous subordinator *-njà:* see §15.2.1.2.

#### 10.2.3 Negation of indicative verbs

Corresponding to positive active verbs in indicative clauses, the binary opposition is between perfective negative and imperfective negative. Both are portmanteaus that have no phonological connection to the corresponding positives. The perfective negative morpheme may combine with (an allomorph of) the experiential perfect morpheme.

Other negative morphemes occur with stative and nonverbal predicates (‘it is X’). The imperative also has its own special negation (prohibitive).

##### 10.2.3.1 Perfective negative *-lí* (3Pl -ñ-ní)

The perfective negative is constructed by adding suffix *-lí-* to the presuffixal stem. Back/Rounding Harmony in 2Sg *-lú-w* is frequent, but the pronunciation *-lí-w* is also

possible. Also notice the L-toned *-w* in the 2Sg combination, which is masked in other paradigms involving L-toned inflectional suffix. The verb is dropped to {L}-tone.

- (239) Perfective negative, ‘did not ...’

	‘... sweep’ (sémbè)	‘... accept’ (yàbá)	‘... shave’ (kâ:)	‘... drink’ (nɔ:)
1Sg	sèmbè-lì-ý	yàbà-lì-ý	kà:-lì-ý	nò:-lì-ý
1Pl	sèmbè-lì-ý	yàbà-lì-ý	kà:-lì-ý	nò:-lì-ý
2Sg	sèmbè-lú-w	yàbà-lú-w	kà:-lú-w	nò:-lú-w
2Pl	sèmbè-lí-ñ	yàbà-lí-ñ	kà:-lí-ñ	nò:-lí-ñ
3Sg	sèmbè-lí	yàbà-lí	kà:-lí	nò:-lí
3Pl	sèmbè-ñ-ní	yàbà-ñ-ní	kà:-ñ-ní	nò:-ñ-ní

A few verbs syncopate a stem-final vowel (following *l*) before the suffix, creating a geminate *ll* cluster at the boundary. The relevant verbs are *yèlé* ‘come’ (*yèl-lí*), *bòló* ‘go’ (*bòl-lí*), *bèlé* ‘get’ (*bèl-lí*), *gàlá* ‘pass, go past’ (*gàl-lí*), and the composite *já-yèlé* ‘bring’ (*já-yèl-lí*) and *jé-bòló* ‘convey’ (*jé-bòl-lí*).

/l/ is nasalized to *n* after a nasalized vowel, but not after a nasal consonant (§3.5.4.7): *gè:-ní-* ‘did not steal’ (<*gč:n*>), but *kàn-lí-* ‘did not do’.

The mediopassive derivational suffix is *-è:- ~ -è:-* before *-lí* or 3Pl *-ñ-ní*. An example is *yàbìl-è:-lí-* ‘did not answer’, 3Pl *yàbìl-è:-ñ-ní*.

### 10.2.3.2 Experiential perfect negative *-tà-lí*

The sense ‘have never VPed’ is expressed by the experiential perfect negative. No adverb or other element is needed.

The form is *-tà-lí* following the presuffixal stem. *-lí* is of course the perfective negative suffix, so the L-tone of the 2Sg and 2Pl endings stands out. *-tà-* is obscurely related to experiential perfect (positive) *-tíyà*. The stem is tone-dropped as in the positive: *sèmbè-tíyà wò* ‘has (ever) swept’, negative *sèmbè-tà-lí* ‘has never swept’.

- (240) Experiential perfect negative, ‘has never ...’

	‘... seen’ (wà:/wě:)	‘... heard’ (ége)	‘... gone’ (bòló)
1Sg	wà:-tà-lì-ý	ègè-tà-lì-ý	bòlò-tà-lì-ý
1Pl	wà:-tà-lì-ý	ègè-tà-lì-ý	bòlò-tà-lì-ý
2Sg	wà:-tà-lú-w	ègè-tà-lú-w	bòlò-tà-lú-w
2Pl	wà:-tà-lí-ñ	ègè-tà-lí-ñ	bòlò-tà-lí-ñ
3Sg	wà:-tà-lí	ègè-tà-lí	bòlò-tà-lí
3Pl	wà:-tà-ñ-ní	ègè-tà-ñ-ní	bòlò-tà-ñ-ní

### 10.2.3.3 Present perfect negative (-a: wò-ló) is marginal

Predictably, the present perfect (positive) in -a: wò is negated by converting wò ‘be’ into its negation wò-ló ‘not be’ (§11.2.2.2). (241) is therefore possible, but my assistant accepted it only with reluctance, favoring the more general perfective negative with -lí.

- (241) ? wò = ñ ób-à: wò-lò-ñ  
 ? 3Sg=Acc give-PastAnt be-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I haven’t given (it) to him/her.’

When the temporal anchor point is shifted from the time of speaking into the past, a past perfect negative is more natural and is more easily elicited, but its morphology is not based on the pattern in (241), see §10.5.1.6.

### 10.2.3.4 Imperfective negative -èlè (3Pl -ñ-nì ~ -ní-nì)

The imperfective is negated by adding a suffix that is normally heard as -èlè, except for irregular 3Pl subject -ñ-nì. The final syllable of the suffix may shift to H-tone if the preceding syllable (with a contracted vowel) is L-toned, resulting in -èlé (1Sg -èlè-ñ, 3Pl -ñ-ní). This is systematic before L-toned conditional enclitic =yò (§16.1.1). In isolation, the final H-tone is most likely to be audible in longer stems, even those of /HL/ melody: kígùl-i-èlè-Ø ‘he/she doesn’t go back’.

The first suffixed vowel contracts with the stem-final short vowel of a nonmonosyllabic stem, see VV-Contraction §3.5.6.2. This contraction does not occur to mediopassive verbs, see below. The output of the contraction is long [e:], transcribed as e-e to clarify the morpheme boundary. Phonetically it is often reduced to short [e], especially when entirely L-toned. The 3Pl form with suffix -n-nì is structurally different, with an L-toned counterpart of H-toned perfective negative -ñ-ní added to the uncontracted presuffixal stem.

- (242) Imperfective negative (nonmonosyllabic), ‘does not ...’

	‘... give’ (óbò)	‘... sleep’ (yéyy-è:-)	‘... accept’ (yàbá )
1Sg	óbè-èlè-ñ	yéyy(-i)-èlè-ñ	yàbé-èlè-ñ
1Pl	óbè-èlè-ñ	yéyy(-i)-èlè-ñ	yàbé-èlè-ñ
2Sg	óbè-èlè-w	yéyy(-i)-èlè-w	yàbé-èlè-w
2Pl	óbè-èlè-ñ	yéyy(-i)-èlè-ñ	yàbé-èlè-ñ
3Sg	óbè-èlè	yéyy(-i)-èlè	yàbé-èlè
3Pl	óbò-ñ-nì	yéyy-è:-ñ-nì	yàbá-ñ-nì

Monosyllabic Cv: verbs and mediopassives with suffix -e: ~ -e: are the two classes of verbs that end in a long vowel, and this vowel does not disappear before -èlè. Ca: combines with -elè as Ca:-lè (one could also write Ca-alè to make the morphology more transparent, but there is no hiatus). Mid-height long stem-final vowels are shortened and raised to

corresponding high vowels, i.e. {*e* ε} become *i* and {*o* ɔ} become *u*, before *-ele*, forming diphthongs *ie* and *ue*. See Prevocalic V-Raising §3.5.6.1 for the phonology.

(243) Imperfective (monosyllabic), ‘does not ...’

	‘... drink’ (nɔ̄:)	‘... sow’ (tɔ̄: )	‘... insult’ (dɛ̄: )	‘... beat (tomtom)’ (bā̄: )
1Sg	<i>nù-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tú-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>dì-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bà-áłè-ñ̄</i>
1Pl	<i>nù-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tú-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>dì-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bà-áłè-ñ̄</i>
2Sg	<i>nù-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tú-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>dì-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bà-áłè-ñ̄</i>
2Pl	<i>nù-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>tú-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>dì-éłè-ñ̄</i>	<i>bà-áłè-ñ̄</i>
3Sg	<i>nù-éłè</i>	<i>tú-éłè</i>	<i>dì-éłè</i>	<i>bà-áłè</i>
3Pl	<i>nò:-ń-nì</i>	<i>tó:-ń-nì</i>	<i>dè:-ń-nì</i>	<i>bà:-ń-nì</i>

Further examples are *gù-éłè* ‘does not exit’ (*gō:*), and *tí-éłè* ‘does not send’ (*tē:*).

Mediopassives are treated the same way, as seen most clearly with ‘go back’ and ‘reply’. Only the 3Sg and 3Pl forms are shown in (244), as the 1st/2nd person forms are predictable from the 3Sg form. This form is a useful diagnostic of mediopassive morphology, especially for trisyllabics; compare non-mediopassive *gònđòré-éłè* ‘does not hang up’ and *dàmbé-éłè* ‘does not go up’, where we hear a long [ɛ:] at the stem-suffix boundary.

(244) Imperfective (mediopassive), ‘does not ...’

	‘... go back’ (kígl̄-é:-)	‘... reply’ (yàbìl-é:-)
3Sg	<i>kígl̄-í-éłè</i>	<i>yàbìl-í-éłè</i>
3Pl	<i>kígl̄-é:-ń-nì</i>	<i>yàbìl-é:-ń-nì</i>

In other mediopassives (‘sit’, ‘winnow in wind’, ‘carry on head’) the *-i-* is optionally absorbed by a preceding geminated palatal (§3.5.3.4). If the stem is /LH/, a stranded H-tone from this suffix can re-link leftward to form the second mora of a rising tone (§3.7.4.4).

(245) Imperfective (mediopassive with *jŋ* or *yy*), ‘does not ...’

	‘... sit’ (dàjŋ-é:-)	‘... winnow in wind’ (wèyy-é:-)	‘... carry on head’ (dùyy-é:-)
3Sg	<i>dàjŋ-í-éłè</i> ~ <i>dàjŋ-Ø-éłè</i>	<i>wèyy-í-éłè</i> ~ <i>wèyy-Ø-éłè</i>	<i>dùyy-í-éłè</i> ~ <i>dùyy-Ø-éłè</i>
3Pl	<i>dàjŋ-é:-ń-nì</i>	<i>wèyy-é:-ń-nì</i>	<i>dùyy-é:-ń-nì</i>

### 10.2.3.5 Progressive-1 and -2 negative (*wò-ló*)

Both progressive constructions contain conjugated *wò* ‘be’ in the positive. As one would expect, they are negated by *wò-ló* ‘not be’ (§11.2.2.2). There are no additional tone changes in the negation. Examples are *sémbò-wò-lò-íj* or *sémbè wò-lò-íj* ‘I am not sweeping’ and *yàbá-wò-lò-íj* or *yàbá wò-lò-íj* ‘I am not accepting’.

### 10.2.3.6 Future negative (-ri ~ -di)

The positive future form (§10.2.2.6) has a negative counterpart with suffix *-ri*. It is L-toned with lexically /HL/-toned stems: *pádà-rì* ‘will not leave (abandon)’. With /LH/-toned stems, the only H-tone appears on the suffix: *bèndè-rí* ‘will not hit’. As usual with negative categories, the augmentation (reduplication, vowel-lengthening) of the positive is absent. *bòló* ‘go’ and the other irregular *CvLv* stems that allow contraction to *Cv*:- take the contracted form (*bò:-rí* ‘will not go’, *yè:-rí* ‘will not come’, *bè:-rí* ‘will not get’). *kán(à)-* ‘do’ has future negative *kán-dì* ‘will not do’, reflecting the constraint against tap *r* after a nasal, cf. §3.5.4.3.

The imperfective negative (-èlè) competes with this form in future negative contexts. In (246), the two co-occur in parallel clauses.

- (246) *yòw-yòw=ìj*      *gì-ý*      *bè:-rì-íj*,  
       bad-bad=it.is      say-Chain      get-FutNeg-1SgSbj,  
*yòw-yòw=lá:-*      *gì-ý*      *bèlé-èlè-ìj*      *lá:yè*  
       bad-bad=it.is.not      say-Chain      get-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj      otherwise  
       ‘I won’t say that it is (out of) nastiness, and I won’t/don’t say that it is not (out of)  
       nastiness either.’

The paradigm is (247). 2Sg and 2Pl suffixes reveal their L-tones.

	future negative	‘won’t go’ (verb <i>bòló</i> )
1Sg	<i>-rì-íj</i>	<i>bò:-rì-íj</i>
1Pl	<i>-rì-íj</i>	<i>bò:-rì-íj</i>
2Sg	<i>-rú-wò</i>	<i>bò:-rú-wò</i>
2Pl	<i>-rí-ìj</i>	<i>bò:-rí-ìj</i>
3Sg	<i>-rí-Ø</i>	<i>bò:-rí-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>-rí-yà</i>	<i>bò:-rí-yà</i>

### 10.2.3.7 Periphrastic future negative (*sè-lé*)

The future in *-d-à: sè* is negated by using the regular negative form of *sè* ‘have’, namely *sè-lé*. A notable aspect of the negative construction is that the main verb with *-d-à:* is tone-dropped to {L}. In effect, the stative negative suffix on ‘have’ controls tone-dropping on a target domain including the main verb. No augment (reduplication or vowel-lengthening) is allowed on the stem.

- (248) a. *yàlú*      *sèmbè-d-à:*<sup>L</sup>      *sè-lé-*Ø  
     place      sweep-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup>      have-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
     ‘He/She will not sweep (the place).’ (positive *sèmbè-d-à:* *sè*)
- b. *yàbà-d-à:*<sup>L</sup>      *sè-lé-*Ø  
     accept-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup>      have-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
     ‘He/She will not accept (consent).’ (positive *yàbá-d-à:* *sè*)
- c. *jà:-d-à:*<sup>L</sup>      *sè-lè-ñí*  
     eat-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup>      have-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
     ‘I will not eat (a meal).’
- d. *bò-j-à:*<sup>L</sup>      *sè-ñ-ní*  
     go-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup>      have-StatNeg-3PlSbj  
     ‘They will not go.’

#### 10.2.3.8 Immediate future negative

For the positive forms ('be about to', 'be on the verge of') see §10.2.2.8. Replacing *wò* 'be (somewhere)' by its regular negation *wò-ló* 'not be', we get 'not be about to'.

- (249) *tò:-njá:*      *wò-lò-ñí*  
     sow-ImmFut      be-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
     ‘I am not about to sow (plant).’

### 10.3 Pronominal paradigms for indicative verbs

#### 10.3.1 Subject pronominal suffixes

This section summarizes the forms of pronominal-subject suffixes on regular verbs and other conjugated predicates (excluding imperatives).

- (250) category      suffix
- |     |  |
|-----|--|
| 1Sg | - <i>ŋ</i> (atonal), K&P “-m”                                |
| 1Pl | - <i>yŋ</i> (atonal), K&P “-ñ”                               |
| 2Sg | - <i>w</i> (L-toned, most inflections)                       |
|     | - <i>ώ</i> (due to {LH} overlay in perfective positive)      |
| 2Pl | - <i>yŋ</i> (L-toned, even in perfective positive), K&P “-ñ” |
| 3Sg | zero, except - <i>à</i> in augmented future (§10.2.2.6)      |
| 3Pl | (variable, see below)  |

The 1st/2nd person suffixes undergo phonological interactions with the conditional antecedent ('if') clitic =*yò*. The 2Sg combination assimilates to -*y*=*yò*. The nasal suffixes (1Sg, 1Pl, 2Pl) combine *as -n=jò ~ -n=jè*.

Although 1Sg, 1Pl, and 2Pl are underlyingly distinct, there is extensive surface neutralization among them. They are tonally distinct: 2Pl L-toned, versus 1Sg and 1Pl atonal, acquiring a surface tone by spreading. However, the tonal distinction is only audible when the suffix is added to a stem (with or without AN suffix) that otherwise ends in an H-tone, as in the perfective negative. 1Pl *-yŋ* and 2Pl *-yŋ̩* have an underlying palatal onset that is absent from 1Sg *-yŋ*. However, this onset is deleted after a front vowel {*i e ε*}, and it happens that many inflectable AN forms (perfective, perfective negative, imperfective, imperfective negative) end in such a front vowel. The onset is only audible after a few predicates ending in low or back vowels, like *wɔ-* ‘be’, or when Back/Rounding Harmony converts a suffixal front vowel to a back rounded vowel as in *tomb-ò-yŋ̩* ‘we jumped’.

K&P describe a dialect that preserves 1Sg \*-m, which has cognates in several Dogon languages.

The 3Pl form is a wild card. In various positive inflections it appears as -i (imperfective *-d-i*), as -i-yà (perfective), as -yà (*wɔ-yyà* ‘they are [there]’), and as -mmɔ in the augmented future. An unusual portmanteau-like 3Pl form *-n-ni* occurs, with different tones, in the two main negative inflections.

## 10.4 Stative form of verbs

This section covers stative forms derived from regular (active) verbs. For defective stative quasi-verbs that do not have active forms, notably ‘be (somewhere)’, ‘have’, ‘want’, ‘like’, and ‘know’, see Chapter 11.

### 10.4.1 Derived stative positive (augmented and unaugmented)

A number of regular active verbs, i.e. that distinguish perfective from imperfective aspects, also have a stative paradigm that denotes a resulting or continuing state. The stative does not distinguish perfective from imperfective aspect. In unfocalized positive main clauses, it co-occurs either augmentation or the existential particle *yé* (§11.2.2.1).

In the absence of *yé*, a more or less focal preceding constituent, or a preceding chained verb, the stative is augmented by lengthening the first vowel. The vowel-lengthening originated as an initial \*Cv- reduplication that later contracted with the first syllable of the base, as in the augmented perfective and the augmented imperfective. The reduplication is preserved in some other Dogon languages. It is likely that a monosyllabic stative in DS would be augmented by reduplication, since monosyllabic augmented perfectives and imperfectives are reduplicative, but no stative this brief is attested. Nearly all known stative stems are bisyllabic, but trisyllabics are possible (*ă:bàrà* ‘be laid out’, see below).

A sample paradigm is (251), using the stative derived from active *dàŋŋ-é:-* ‘sit down’. For this stem, and others ending in {*o o a*}, the palatal onglide for 1Pl and 2Pl are audible, but because of the stem tones 1Pl and 2Pl are homophonous.

- (251) ‘be sitting (seated)’ with existential particle

1Sg	<i>dă:ŋà-ŋ̩</i>	<i>yé dăŋà-ŋ̩</i>
1Pl	<i>dă:ŋà-yŋ̩</i>	<i>yé dăŋà-yŋ̩</i>

2Sg	<i>dă:ŋà-ŵ</i>	<i>yé dàŋà-ŵ</i>
2Pl	<i>dă:ŋà-ŋ̩</i>	<i>yé dàŋà-ŋ̩</i>
3Sg	<i>dă:ŋà</i>	<i>yé dàŋà</i>
3Pl	<i>dă:ŋ-ì-yà</i>	<i>yé dàŋ-ì-yà</i>

Derived statives are readily formed from verbs of stance (position) and carrying/holding. Examples of active/stative pairs are in (252). For the stance verbs, both active and stative have the positioned individual as subject. For the verbs of carrying and holding, both active and stative have the carrier (not the object or person carried) as subject. For the verbs in (252c), the stative is intransitive, and corresponds most obviously to a corresponding transitive with a distinct agent. However, some statives in (252c) could also be connected to intransitive verbs from the same word-family.

(252)	active	gloss	stative	gloss
-------	--------	-------	---------	-------

a. stance

*ŋŋ* versus stative *y* (§3.5.3.4)

<i>dàŋŋ-é:-</i>	'sit down'	<i>dă:ŋà</i>	'be sitting (seated)'
<i>ŋŋ-é:-</i>	'stand, stop'	<i>ř:ŋè</i>	'be standing, be upright, be stopped'
<i>other</i>			
<i>ùnj-é:-</i>	'lie down'	<i>ň:njò</i>	'be lying down, prone'
<i>tšd-é:-</i>	'squat'	<i>tš:dò</i>	'be squatting'
<i>tú:ŋ-é:-</i>	'kneel'	<i>tú:ŋò</i>	'be kneeling'
<i>gòmb-é:-</i>	'spread out'	<i>gő:mbò</i>	'(limbs) be spread'
<i>gèŋg-é:-</i>	'(sth) tilt'	<i>gě:ŋgè</i>	'be tilted'
<i>dàb-é:-</i>	'lie on belly'	<i>dă:bà</i>	'(sb) be lying on belly'
<i>ùb-é:-</i>	'(an.) lie down'	<i>ň:bò</i>	'(bird, animal) lie down'
<i>mùnn-é:-</i>	'curl body up'	<i>mů:nnò</i>	'have body curled up'

b. carrying/holding

<i>bòmb-é:-</i>	'carry on back'	<i>bő:mbò</i>	'have (child) on back'
<i>gèl-é:-</i>	'hold (sth)'	<i>gě:lè</i>	'be holding'

c. intransitive stative associated with transitive active verb

<i>gòndò-ró</i>	'hang (sth) up'	<i>gő:ndò</i>	'(sth) be hanging'
<i>pí:ndè</i>	'shut (door)'	<i>př:ŋè</i>	'(door) be shut'
<i>téŋè</i>	'hobble (animal)'	<i>tě:ŋè</i>	'be hobbled'
	[cf. intransitive active <i>pí:ndè</i> 'become shut']		
<i>ábàrà</i>	'lay out (mat)'	<i>ă:bàrà</i>	'(mat) be laid out'
<i>dîmb-é:</i>	'follow (sb)'	<i>dř:mbè</i>	'be following, in pursuit'

d. other

<i>yéyy-é:-</i>	'sleep'	<i>yě:yyè</i>	'be asleep'
-----------------	---------	---------------	-------------

There is a set of verbs that have medial *yy* in the mediopassive, *y* in the stative, and zero before transitive *-rv* (253).

(253)	mediopassive	stative	transitive	transitive gloss
-------	--------------	---------	------------	------------------

- a. ‘carry (load) on head’  
*dùyy-é:-*      *dù:yò*      *dù:-ró*      ‘put (sth) on (sb’s) head’
- b. ‘flip over, become upside-down’  
*jùyy-é:-*      *jù:yò*      *jù:-ró*      ‘flip (sth) over’
- c. ‘hide (oneself)’  
*jòyy-é:-*      *jò:yò*      *jò:-ró*      ‘conceal (sth)’

The phonology of these forms is difficult; see §3.5.4.6 for discussion.

Other than *ǎ:bàrà* ‘(mat) be laid out’ (252c), the only known stative stem that is seemingly trisyllabic is *pìŋè-lé* ‘(door) be open’. It is related semantically to *píŋè-lè* ~ *píŋè-lè* ‘open (door)’, the suffixed reversive of *pí:-ndè* ‘shut (door)’. Note the *ŋ/p* alternation. Stative *pìŋè-lé* ‘(door) be open’ could therefore be taken as the reversive of the irregular stative of ‘shut (door)’, which is *pí:ŋè* ‘(door) be shut’. Analysed as such, *pìŋè-lé* is aberrant in that it fails to lengthen its first vowel. This suggests another possibility, namely that *pìŋè-lé* ‘be open’ is simply the stative negative, rather than the reversive, of ‘be shut’.

#### 10.4.2 Stative negative (-*Ív*, 3Pl -*ñ-ní*)

Derived stative verbs (preceding section) are negated by adding a conjugated stative negative suffix *-Ív* to a form of the stative stem (cf. the 3Sg subject form of the positive stative). In the negative, the stative stem is tone-dropped and the vowel-lengthening seen in the positive form is erased. The vowel of the stative negative suffix (or enclitic) is copied from the quality of the stem-final vowel. The variant *-lá* usually shifts to *-ló* before 2Sg suffix *-w*. The 3Pl form is *-ñ-ní*, as in the perfective negative. Also as in the perfective negative, the suffixal tone allows the underlying L-tone of 2Sg and 2Pl suffixes to be heard. Sample paradigms are in (254).

(254)	‘be sitting (seated)’	‘have (child) on back’
1Sg	<i>dàŋjà-là-íj</i>	<i>bòmbò-lò-íj</i>
1Pl	<i>dàŋjà-là-yíj</i>	<i>bòmbò-lò-yíj</i>
2Sg	<i>dàŋjà-ló-w</i>	<i>bòmbò-ló-w</i>
2Pl	<i>dàŋjà-lá-yíj</i>	<i>bòmbò-ló-yíj</i>
3Sg	<i>dàŋjà-lá-Ø</i>	<i>bòmbò-ló-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>dàŋjà-ñ-ní</i>	<i>bòmbò-ñ-ní</i>

Further examples are *iŋè-lé* ‘he/she is not standing’, *tɔdɔ-ló* ‘he/she is not squatting’, *pìŋè-lé* ‘it (door) is not shut’ (see discussion at the end of the preceding section), and *àbàrà-lá* ‘it (mat) is not laid out’.

## 10.5 Temporal clitics and particles

### 10.5.1 Past clitic (=bè)

The various AN categories can be shifted into the past, i.e. the temporal anchor can shift from the moment of speaking to a temporal reference point in the past. This is expressed by adding conjugated past clitic =bè or its negation =bè-lé (often heard as =bè-lè) to a form of the verb specifying AN category. The pronominal subject is marked only on the clitic. The morphological structure is therefore STEM-AN=Past-PronSubj. The paradigms of the positive and negative forms of the clitic are in (255).

(255) Past clitic and its negation

1Sg	=bè-ŋ	=bè-lè-ŋ
1Pl	=bè-ŋ	=bè-lè-ŋ
2Sg	=bè-ʷ	=bè-lè-ʷ
2Pl	=bè-ŋ	=bè-lè-ŋ
3Sg	=bè-∅	=bè-lè-∅
3Pl	=bè-�à	=bè-ṇ-ní

bè is also the past-tense form of (stative) existential-locational quasi-verb wò ‘be (somewhere), be present, exist’. Compare yó=ɔ ‘he/she/it is present’, contracted from /yó wò/, to its past counterpart yé bè ‘he/she/it was present’. All of the conjugated past forms of AN categories are therefore formally part of the stative system.

In some Dogon languages the past clitic is homophonous with, and is arguably identical to, the verb ‘stay’. In DS, bě: ‘stay’ has no obvious affinity to past =bè or to past-tense quasi-verb bè ‘was’.

#### 10.5.1.1 Past progressive-1 (positive and negative)

Both (nonpast) progressive constructions have counterparts with the past clitic =bè. Because the regular imperfective -dè cannot combine with =bè, the “past progressive” constructions have somewhat broader aspectual ranges than nonpast progressives, extending to habitual and perhaps even future-in-past contexts.

In the past progressive-1, conjugated past clitic =bè- is added to a form of the main verb stem with suffix -ʷ. The tones are parallel to those of the (nonpast) progressive-1 (§10.2.2.3).

(256) Past progressive-1 (nonmonosyllabic)

	óbò ‘give’	sémbè ‘sweep’	yàbá ‘accept’
1Sg	óbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ	sémbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ	yàbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ
1Pl	óbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ	sémbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ	yàbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ
2Sg	óbò-ʷ=bè-ʷ	sémbò-ʷ=bè-ʷ	yàbò-ʷ=bè-ʷ
2Pl	óbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ	sémbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ	yàbò-ʷ=bè-ŋ

3Sg	<i>óbò-àw=bè-</i> Ø	<i>sémbò-àw=bè-</i> Ø	<i>yàbò-àw=bè-</i> Ø
3Pl	<i>óbò-àw=bè-yà</i>	<i>sémbò-àw=bè-yà</i>	<i>yàbò-àw=bè-yà</i>

Further bisyllabic examples: *jìmbó-àw=bè-*Ø ‘he/she used to pull’ (<*jìmbé*>), *dòngó-àw=bè-*Ø ‘... push’ (<*dòngó*>), *jé:rò-àw=bè-*Ø ‘... bring’. Trisyllabics: /HL/-toned *kígùl-è:-àw=bè-ŋ* ‘I used to return’, /LH/-toned *yàbil-é:-àw=bè-ŋ* ‘... reply’.

Monosyllabic verbs have no initial reduplication. For /LH/-toned monosyllabics like ‘drink’ and ‘beat (tomtom)’, the *-àw* surfaces with the H-tone element to avoid a tritolal <LHL> syllable.

#### (257) Past progressive-1 (monosyllabic)

	‘drink’ <i>nɔ:</i>	‘sow’ <i>tɔ:</i>	‘beat (tomtom)’ <i>bá:</i>
1Sg	<i>nò-àw=bè-ŋ</i>	<i>tò-àw=bè-ŋ</i>	<i>bà-àw=bè-ŋ</i>
1Pl	<i>nò-àw=bè-ŋ</i>	<i>tò-àw=bè-ŋ</i>	<i>bà-àw=bè-ŋ</i>
2Sg	<i>nò-àw=bè-àw</i>	<i>tò-àw=bè-àw</i>	<i>bà-àw=bè-àw</i>
2Pl	<i>nò-àw=bè-ŋ</i>	<i>tò-àw=bè-ŋ</i>	<i>bà-àw=bè-ŋ</i>
3Sg	<i>nò-àw=bè-</i> Ø	<i>tò-àw=bè-</i> Ø	<i>bà-àw=bè-</i> Ø
3Pl	<i>nò-àw=bè-yà</i>	<i>tò-àw=bè-yà</i>	<i>bà-àw=bè-yà</i>

Further examples are *gò-àw=bè-*Ø ‘he/she used to go out’, *dè-àw=bè-*Ø ‘... insult’, *wà-àw=bè-*Ø ‘... see’, and *gè-àw=bè-*Ø ‘... say’, all /LH/-toned, and /HL/-toned *já-àw=bè-*Ø ‘... eat (meal)’.

The past progressive negative is expressed by simply changing *=bè-* to its negation *=bè-lé-*. The stem has the same form as in the positive counterparts, including its tones. Examples are *óbò-àw=bè-lè-ŋ* ‘I didn’t use to give’, *bà-àw=bè-lé-Ø* ‘he/she was not beating (tomtoms)’, and *yàbò-àw=bè-lè-ŋ* ‘I didn’t use to accept’. The 3Pl form is *=bè-ñ-ní*.

#### 10.5.1.2 Past progressive-2 (positive and negative)

The past progressive-2 is morphologically the past equivalent of the (nonpast) progressive-2 (§10.2.2.4), with *wò* ‘be’ replaced by its regular past counterpart *bè* ‘was’. I write a space between the main verb and *bè* to be consistent with transcription of the regular progressive construction. However, there would be no objection to transcribing both *wò* and *bè* as clitics in this construction.

#### (258) Past progressive-2 (nonmonosyllabic), ‘was ...

	‘... giving’ <i>óbò</i>	‘... sweeping’ <i>sémbè</i>	‘... accepting’ <i>yàbá</i>
1Sg	<i>óbò bè-ŋ</i>	<i>sémbè bè-ŋ</i>	<i>yàbá bè-ŋ</i>
1Pl	<i>óbò bè-ŋ</i>	<i>sémbè bè-ŋ</i>	<i>yàbá bè-ŋ</i>

2Sg	<i>óbò bè-̀w̄</i>	<i>sémbè bè-̀w̄</i>	<i>yàbá bè-̀w̄</i>
2Pl	<i>óbò bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>sémbè bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>yàbá bè-̀j̄</i>
3Sg	<i>óbò bè-∅</i>	<i>sémbè bè-∅</i>	<i>yàbá bè-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>óbò bè-yà</i>	<i>sémbè bè-yà</i>	<i>yàbá bè-yà</i>

(259) Past progressive-2 (monosyllabic), ‘was ...’

	‘... drinking’	‘... sowing’	‘... beating (tomtom)’
	<i>n᷑:</i>	<i>t᷑:</i>	<i>b᷑:</i>
1Sg	<i>n᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>t᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>b᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>
1Pl	<i>n᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>t᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>b᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>
2Sg	<i>n᷑: bè-̀w̄</i>	<i>t᷑: bè-̀w̄</i>	<i>b᷑: bè-̀w̄</i>
2Pl	<i>n᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>t᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>	<i>b᷑: bè-̀j̄</i>
3Sg	<i>n᷑: bè-∅</i>	<i>t᷑: bè-∅</i>	<i>b᷑: bè-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>n᷑: bè-yà</i>	<i>t᷑: bè-yà</i>	<i>b᷑: bè-yà</i>

The negative is *bè-lé-*, as in *sémbè bè-lé-∅* ‘he/she was not sweeping’, *yàbá bè-lé-∅* ‘he/she was not accepting’. Only the clitic is overtly negated. The stem maintains its lexical tone melody.

#### 10.5.1.3 Past future (future-in-past, positive and negative)

The simple future form (§10.2.2.6) adds conjugated *=bè-* to the unconjugated future stem, as in *b᷑:lò =bè-̀j̄* ‘I was going to go’, *b᷑:lò =bè-∅* ‘he/she was going to go’.

Future negative *-rí* likewise adds conjugated *=bè-*, as in *b᷑:-rí =bè-̀j̄* ‘I was not going to go’.

#### 10.5.1.4 Past periphrastic future (positive and negative)

The periphrastic future construction with *-d-à: sè* (§10.2.2.7) can be shifted to a past time frame, denoting an event that was planned to happen after the reference time. Conjugated past clitic *=bè-* is added directly to the auxiliary *sè* ‘have’ (260a). The negative (cf. §10.2.3.7) has *bè-lé-*, and the main verb is tone-dropped.

- (260) a. *gò-gó:-d-à: sè=bè-̀j̄*  
Augm-go.out-Ipfv-PastAnt have=Past-1SgSbj  
‘I was going to go out.’
- b. *gò:-d-à:<sup>L</sup> sè=bè-lé-́j̄*  
go.out-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup> have=Past-Neg-1SgSbj  
‘I was not going to go out.’

### 10.5.1.5 Past immediate future (positive and negative)

For the (nonpast) immediate future, see §10.2.2.8. Replacing *wò* ‘be’ by its past counterpart *bè* we get the sense ‘was about to, was on the verge of’ (261). Because imperfective *-dè* is not compatible with the past clitic, the form in *-njá: bè-* is rather common.

- (261) *jǎ:*      *jà:-njá:*      *bè-ŋ̩*  
 meal      eat-ImmFut      was-1SgSbj  
 ‘I was about to eat.’

Paradigms are in (262). Only the pronominal-subject suffix after *bè-* distinguishes one form from another.

- (262) Past immediate future paradigms (‘was about to’)

	<i>óbò</i> ‘give’	<i>sémbè</i> ‘sweep’	<i>yàbá</i> ‘accept’
1Sg	<i>òbò-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>	<i>sèmbè-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>	<i>yàbà-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>
1Pl	<i>òbò-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>	<i>sèmbè-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>	<i>yàbà-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>
2Sg	<i>òbò-njá: bè-ñ̩</i>	<i>sèmbè-njá: bè-ñ̩</i>	<i>yàbà-njá: bè-ñ̩</i>
2Pl	<i>òbò-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>	<i>sèmbè-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>	<i>yàbà-njá: bè-ŋ̩</i>
3Sg	<i>òbò-njá: bè-Ø</i>	<i>sèmbè-njá: bè-Ø</i>	<i>yàbà-njá: bè-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>òbò-njá: bè-yà</i>	<i>sèmbè-njá: bè-yà</i>	<i>yàbà-njá: bè-yà</i>

For the regular (nonpast) immediate future negative with *wò-lí* ‘not be’, see §10.2.3.8. The past equivalents have *bè-lé*, the usual ‘was not’ form (§11.2.2.2).

- (263) *jǎ:*      *jà:-njá:*      *bè-lè-ŋ̩*  
 meal      eat-ImmFut      was-Neg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I was not about to eat.’

### 10.5.1.6 Past perfect (positive and negative)

The (present) perfect with *-a: wò* (§10.2.1.4) can be made into a past perfect by replacing *wò-* ‘be (somewhere)’ with its regular past counterpart *bè-*.

- (264) *mì=í*      *kè:lé*      *ób-à:*      *bè-Ø*  
 1Sg=Acc      money      give-PastAnt      was-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She had (by then) given me the money.’

In the past perfect negative, conjugated *bè* without negation is added to the invariant perfective negative form *-lú* (*yèl-l-ú bè* ‘had not come’, etc.). This is arguably segmentable as *-l-ú* with participial *-u* (cf. §14.4.3.1, §14.4.1.1), but it could also be taken as a variant of *-lí* favored by the following labial *b*.

- (265) *wò=jé*      *kè:lé*      *òbò-l-ú*      *bè-ìj*  
       2Sg=Acc      money      give-PfvNeg      was-1SgSbj  
       ‘I had not (yet) given him/her the money.’

The present perfect variants with ‘have’ instead of ‘be’ also have past forms.

- (266) *mì=jé*      *kè:lé*      *òb-à:*  
       1Sg=Acc      money      give-PastAnt  
       *sé:=bè-Ø / sé:=bè-lé-Ø*  
       have=Past-3SgSbj / =Past-Neg-3SgSbj  
       ‘He/She had / had not (by then) given me the money.’

#### 10.5.1.7 Augmented past counterfactual (positive and negative)

In several Dogon languages, a past perfect is regular in counterfactual conditionals ('if Seydou had come, I'd have given him the money'), in one or both clauses. In DS, a different form with the past clitic occurs in the consequent clause of a counterfactual with past-time reference; for examples see §16.4.

The positive form has the augment (reduplication for monosyllabics, vowel-lengthening for other stems). It is otherwise segmentally identical to the past progressive-2 as described in §10.5.1.2 just above. Bisyllabic /LH/-toned stems have a rising tone on the lengthened first syllable, followed by L-tone on the second. The negative counterpart lacks the augment and has an {L}-toned stem.

(267)	stem	past counterfactual		gloss		
		positive	negative			
a. /HL/-toned stems						
<i>monosyllabic</i>						
	<i>tò:</i>	<i>tò-tò:=bè-</i>	<i>tò:=bè-lé-</i>	‘sow’		
<i>nonmonosyllabic</i>						
	<i>óbò</i>	<i>ó:bò=bè-</i>	<i>òbò=bè-lé-</i>	‘give’		
	<i>pádà</i>	<i>pá:dà=bè-</i>	<i>pàdà=bè-lé-</i>	‘leave’		
	<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kí:gùl-è:=bè-</i>	<i>kìgùl-è:=bè-lé-</i>	‘go back’		
b. /LH/-toned stems						
<i>monosyllabic</i>						
	<i>dá:</i>	<i>dá-dá:=bè-</i>	<i>dá:=bè-lé-</i>	‘kill’		
<i>nonmonosyllabic</i>						
	<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bé:ndé=bè-</i>	<i>bèndé=bè-lé-</i>	‘hit’		
	<i>yàbil-é:-</i>	<i>yá:bil-è:=bè-</i>	<i>yàbil-è:=bè-lé-</i>	‘reply’		

#### 10.5.1.8 Past experiential perfect (positive and negative)

Like the progressive, the experiential perfect construction with *-tíyà wò* contains *wò-* ‘be (somewhere)’, so it is easily shifted to a reference time in the past by replacing *wò-* ‘be’ by its

past counterpart *bè-* ‘was’. Thus *wà:-tíyà wò-ị* ‘I have (ever/once) seen’, *wà:-tíyà bè-ị* ‘I had (ever/once) seen’.

The negative is *wà:-tà-lí=bè-ị* ‘I had never seen’. Here the only negative morpheme is *-lí*. The stem is {L}-toned as in the regular (nonpast) experiential perfect negative.

#### 10.5.1.9 Past stative (positive and negative)

Examples of regular and past forms of statives derived from active verbs are in (268). The past stative positive preserves the vowel qualities of the regular stative, but the stem has an {HL} overlay and the first vowel is not lengthened. The past stative negative simply adds conjugated *=bè-* to the regular stative negative.

(268)	gloss	stative	past stative
a. positive			
‘be sitting’	<i>dǎ:yà</i>	<i>dáyà=bè-</i>	
‘be carrying on head’	<i>dǔ:yò</i>	<i>dúyò=bè-</i>	
‘be squatting’	<i>tó:dò</i>	<i>tódò=bè-</i>	
b. negative			
‘not be sitting’	<i>dàyà-lá</i>	<i>dàyà-lá=bè-</i>	
‘not be carrying on head’	<i>dùyò-ló</i>	<i>dùyò-ló=bè-</i>	
‘not be squatting’	<i>tódò-ló</i>	<i>tódò-ló=bè-</i>	

Underived stative quasi-verbs are exemplified in (269).

(269)	gloss	regular	Past	3Pl Past
positive				
‘be (somewhere)’	<i>wò</i>	<i>bè-</i>	<i>bè-yà</i>	
with existential	<i>yó=ò</i>	<i>yé bè-</i>	<i>yé bè-yà</i>	
‘be in’	<i>tò:</i>	<i>tò:=bè-</i>	<i>tò:=bè-yà</i>	
with existential	<i>yó tò</i>	<i>yó tò=bè-</i>	<i>yó tò=bè-yà</i>	
‘have’	<i>yí sè</i>	<i>yí sè=bè-</i>	<i>yí sè=bè-yà</i>	
‘want’	<i>nàmà</i>	<i>nàmà=bè-</i>	<i>nàmà=bè-yà</i>	
‘like, love’	<i>ibé</i>	<i>ibò-w=bè-</i>	<i>ibò-w=bè-yà</i>	
‘know’	<i>ìgù wó</i>	<i>ìgù bé-</i>	<i>ìgù bé-yà</i>	
negative				
‘not be’	<i>wò-ló</i>	<i>bè-lé-</i>	<i>bè-n-ní</i>	
‘not be in’	<i>tò-ló</i>	<i>tò:=bè-lé-</i>	<i>tò:=bè-n-ní</i>	
‘not have’	<i>sè-lé</i>	<i>sé:=bè-lé-</i>	<i>sé:=bè-n-ní</i>	
‘not want’	<i>nàmà-lá</i>	<i>nàmà=bè-lé-</i>	<i>nàmà=bè-n-ní</i>	
‘not like, love’	<i>ibè-lé</i>	<i>ibè-lé=bè-</i>	<i>ibè-lé=bè-yà</i>	
‘not know’	<i>ìnné</i>	<i>ìnné=bè-</i>	<i>ìnné=bè-yà</i>	

For long-voweled *sé:=bè-* in the past perfect construction, without existential *yí*, see §10.5.1.6.

## 10.6 Imperatives and hortatives

### 10.6.1 Imperatives and prohibitives

#### 10.6.1.1 Imperative (unsuffixed singular, plural *-ɔj*)

The imperative singular consists of the presuffixal stem (§10.1.3), without a suffix. It therefore always ends in a non-high vowel. An {HL} overlay is found with bimoraic stems (*Cv:*, *CvCv*), comparable to {H} in several other Dogon languages. Heavier stems keep their lexical tone melody, /HL/ or /LH/. /LH/-toned mediopassives confine the {HL} overlay to the long-vowel suffix, as in *dàŋŋ-è:* ‘sit!’. Depending on the stem-final vowel, the vocalic class for perfectives (E-class or I-class), the lexical tone, and the heaviness of the stem, the imperative may be homophonous to the 3Sg perfective and/or to the chaining form. For example, in (270a) ‘eat (meat)’ has all three forms homophonous, ‘catch’ has three distinct forms, ‘squeeze’ has homophonous imperative and chaining forms, and ‘fly away’ has homophonous 3Sg perfective and chaining form. In (270b), ‘harvest’ has homophonous imperative and 3Sg perfective.

(270) Imperative singular (nonmonosyllabic verbs)

imperative	3Sg Pfv	chaining	gloss
a. lexically /HL/-toned with vacuous {HL} overlay on imperative			
<i>E-class, stem ends in {e ε}</i>			
<i>témè</i>	<i>tém-è</i>	<i>témè</i>	‘eat (meat)’
<i>E-class, stem ends in {o ɔ}</i>			
<i>pórɔ̄</i>	<i>pór-è</i>	<i>pórɔ̄</i>	‘squeeze’
<i>súgò</i>	<i>súg-è</i>	<i>súgò</i>	‘go down’
<i>tómbò</i>	<i>tómb-è</i>	<i>tómbò</i>	‘jump’
<i>mediopassive</i>			
<i>kíl-è:</i>	<i>kíl-ì-ỳ</i>	<i>kíl-ì-ỳ</i>	‘fly away’
<i>kígùl-è:</i>	<i>kígùl-ì-ỳ</i>	<i>kígùl-ì-ỳ</i>	‘go back’
<i>I-class</i>			
<i>ágà</i>	<i>ág-ì</i>	<i>ág-ù</i>	‘catch’
<i>ábàrà</i>	<i>ábìr-ì</i>	<i>ábùr-ù</i>	‘lay out (mat)’
b. lexically /LH/-toned with {HL} overlay on imperative			
<i>bisyllabic, I-class</i>			
<i>bólò</i>	<i>ból-ì</i>	<i>ból-ú</i>	‘go’
<i>yábà</i>	<i>yáb-ì</i>	<i>yáb-ú</i>	‘accept’
<i>bisyllabic, E-class</i>			
<i>dónò</i>	<i>dón-è</i>	<i>dònó</i>	‘sell’
<i>jélè</i>	<i>jél-è</i>	<i>jélé</i>	‘harvest’
<i>yélè</i>	<i>yél-è</i>	<i>yélé</i>	‘come’
<i>dónjò</i>	<i>dónj-è</i>	<i>dònjó</i>	‘butt with head’
<i>trisyllabic</i>			
[none]			

c. bisyllabic /LH/-toned with initial L retained in imperative

*bisyllabic (mediopassives)*

<i>dàjn-ê:</i>	<i>dájn-i-ỳ</i>	<i>dàjn-i-ỳ</i>	'sit down'
<i>dùyy-ê:</i>	<i>dúyy-i-ỳ</i>	<i>dùyy-i-ỳ</i>	'carry on head'
<i>ìjn-ê:</i>	<i>íjn-i-ỳ</i>	<i>ìjn-i-ỳ</i>	'stand; stop'
<i>ùnj-ê:</i>	<i>únj-i-ỳ</i>	<i>ùnj-i-ỳ</i>	'lie down'
<i>wèyy-ê:</i>	<i>wéyy-i-ỳ</i>	<i>wèyy-i-ỳ</i>	'winnow in wind'

*bisyllabic (first syllable heavy)*

<i>gò:-ndó</i>	<i>gó:-nd-ì</i>	<i>gò:-nd-ú</i>	'take out'
----------------	-----------------	-----------------	------------

d. trisyllabic /LH/-toned, melody retained in imperative

*trisyllabic*

<i>gòndà-ró</i>	<i>góndù-r-ì</i>	<i>gòndù-r-ú</i>	'hang (sth) up'
<i>trisyllabic (mediopassives)</i>			
<i>mà:ndìg-ê:</i>	<i>má:ndìg-i-ỳ</i>	<i>mà:ndìg-i-ỳ</i>	'think'
<i>yàbìl-ê:</i>	<i>yábìl-i-ỳ</i>	<i>yàbìl-i-ỳ</i>	'reply'

For plural addressee, imperative plural suffix *-yŋ* is added to the singular imperative stem. This is the same suffix used in 2Pl-subject indicative verbs. (By contrast, several Dogon languages have a special plural-addressee suffix used only with imperatives and other deontics.) As usual, the palatal onset is easily audible only after a back rounded vowel.

(271)	gloss	Sg Imprt	Pl Imprt
a.	'go down'	<i>súgò</i>	<i>súgò-yŋ</i>
b.	'go'	<i>bólò</i>	<i>bólò-yŋ</i>
c.	'sit' 'stand; stop' 'reply'	<i>dàjn-ê:</i> <i>ìjn-ê:</i> <i>yàbìl-ê:</i>	<i>dàjn-é:-ŋ</i> <i>ìjn-é:-ŋ</i> <i>yàbìl-é:-ŋ</i>

Imperatives of monosyllabic verbs are in (272).

(272)	gloss	Sg Imprt	Pl Imprt	stem
a. /HL/-toned verbs				
'send'	<i>tê:</i>	<i>té:-ŋ</i>	<i>tê:</i>	
'shave'	<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká:-ŋ</i>	<i>kâ:</i>	
b. /LH/-toned verbs				
'go out'	<i>gó:</i>	<i>gó:-yŋ</i>	<i>gó:</i>	
'kill'	<i>dâ:</i>	<i>dá:-ŋ</i>	<i>dâ:</i>	

Transitive verbs take accusative objects under the same conditions in indicative clauses (273a) and imperatives (273b).

- (273) a. *mì=ŷ bènd-è-* $\emptyset$   
           1Sg=Acc      hit-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She hit me.’
- b. *mì=ŷ bénđè*  
       1Sg=Acc      hit.Imprt  
       ‘Hit-2Sg me!’

In (273), incidentally, we see that the {HL} tone overlay on the imperative is stable, while the {HL} that occurs on 3Sg perfectives in isolation is usually dropped in the presence of preceding constituents.

Imperative verb forms cannot be conjoined ('come and get it!') or disjoined ('sink or swim!'). A final imperative follows a pseudo-conditional clause (§15.2.2.5) to express an action sequence.

- (274) *n-è-ý=yò bólò*  
       eat-Pfv-2SgSbj;if      go.Imprt  
       ‘Eat and (then) go!’

For embedded imperatives (jussive clauses), see §17.1.4.

#### 10.6.1.2 *hó<sup>n</sup>→ ~ hó<sup>n</sup>→* ‘here, take this! ’

This is an irregular imperative-only form that can be used instead of *yábà* ‘receive!’ or ‘accept!’ when handing something to someone. It is not a normal *Cv:* verb stem, as can be seen by the prolongation of the level high-toned vowel (a true *Cv:* verb has a falling-toned imperative *Cv̄:*). It has no prohibitive or hortative forms. However, *hó<sup>n</sup>→* is an imperative, and can take 2Pl (i.e plural-addressee) *-ŷ*. This form is pronounced *hó<sup>n</sup>→-ŷ*.

A variant *hó<sup>n</sup>→* with a heavily nasalized mid-height front rounded vowel, definitely not part of the regular phonemic system, is also in use. The lips are almost closed during the syllabic nucleus, so most of the air emerges through the nose. The plural-addressee form is *hó:<sup>n</sup>-ŷ* with a final nasal consonant that can barely be distinguished from the heavily nasalized vowel.

#### 10.6.1.3 Prohibitive (-w̄ or -nǎw̄, plural -gí-ŷ or -nàw-gí-ŷ)

The simple form of the prohibitive (negative imperative) has an {L} tone overlay on the stem, followed by H-toned suffix *-w̄* for singular addressee and suffix complex *-gí-ŷ* for plural addressee. One could also posit a {LH} overlay that includes the prohibitive suffix. Although *-w̄* looks like the 2Sg subject suffix *-w̄* which occurs on indicative verbs, the H-tone and the morphological context suggest that *-w̄* is derived from the \**g* in *-gí-*.

- | (275)         | gloss          | Sg Prohib        | Pl Prohib |
|---------------|----------------|------------------|-----------|
| a. /HL/-toned |                |                  |           |
| ‘shave’       | <i>kà-w̄</i>   | <i>kà:-gí-ŷ</i>  |           |
| ‘go down’     | <i>sùgò-w̄</i> | <i>sùgò-gí-ŷ</i> |           |

b. /LH/-toned		
‘go out’	<i>gò-w</i>	<i>gò:-gí-ŋ</i>
‘go’	<i>bòlò-w</i>	<i>bòlò-gí-ŋ</i>
‘come’	<i>yèlè-w</i>	<i>yèlè-gí-ŋ</i>
c. mediopassive, /HL/-toned		
‘stand; stop’	<i>ịṇṇ-è:-w</i>	<i>ịṇṇ-è:-gí-ŋ</i>
d. mediopassive, /LH/-toned		
‘sit’	<i>dàṇṇ-è:-w</i>	<i>dàṇṇ-è:-gí-ŋ</i>
‘reply’	<i>yàbìl-è:-w</i>	<i>yàbìl-è:-gí-ŋ</i>
e. ‘bring’ and ‘convey’		
‘bring’	<i>jé:lè-w</i>	<i>jé:lè-gí-ŋ</i>
‘convey’	<i>jé-bòlò-w</i>	<i>jé-bòlò-gí-ŋ</i>

There is an alternative prohibitive form with singular *-nǎw* and plural *-nàw-gì-ŋ*. These suffixes are added to the chaining form of the verb, suggesting that the construction may have originally had a chained auxiliary verb \**nǎ:*, possibly identifiable with *nǎ:* ‘forget’.

(276)	gloss	Sg Prohib	Pl Prohib
a. /HL/-toned			
‘shave’	<i>ká-ý-nǎw</i>	<i>ká-ý-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
‘eat meal’	<i>ṇé:-nǎw</i>	<i>ṇé:-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
‘go down’	<i>súgò-nǎw</i>	<i>súgò-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
b. /LH/-toned			
‘go out’	<i>gò-ý-nǎw</i>	<i>gò-ý-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
‘go’	<i>bòl-ú-nǎw</i>	<i>bòl-ú-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
‘come’	<i>yèlé-nǎw</i>	<i>yèlé-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
c. mediopassive, /HL/-toned			
‘go back’	<i>kígùl-í:-nǎw</i>	<i>kígùl-í:-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
d. mediopassive, /LH/-toned			
‘sit’	<i>dàṇṇ-í:-nǎw</i>	<i>dàṇṇ-í:-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
‘stand; stop’	<i>ịṇṇ-í:-nǎw</i>	<i>ịṇṇ-í:-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	
‘reply’	<i>yàbìl-í:-nǎw</i>	<i>yàbìl-í:-nàw-gì-ŋ</i>	

*Cv:* verbs can show their presuffixal vocalism as an alternative to the chaining form, thus *gō:-nǎw* alongside *gò-ý-nǎw*.

The final H-tone on *-nǎw* and *-gì-ŋ* is most easily heard before quotative particle *wà* (§17.1.3.1).

## 10.6.2 Hortatives

### 10.6.2.1 Hortative (-*mɔ*, plural -*mv-ŋ̩*)

The hortative ('let's go!') is structurally an imperative aimed at the addressee(s), even though the speaker intends to participate in the action. A distinction is therefore made between a single-addressee hortative ('let's you-Sg and me go!') and a multiple-addressee hortative ('let's you-Pl and me go!'). However, the multiple-addressee form is the default, and it can be used even in the context of a single addressee.

The single-addressee form has a suffix *-mɔ* with optional assimilated variants *-mɛ* and *-ma* agreeing in height and frontness (but not ATR) with the adjacent stem vowel. /HL/-toned verbs have a falling tone pattern (H.L.L for trisyllabics). /LH/-toned verbs have the H-tone on the suffix. For multiple addressee, the L-toned 2Pl suffix *-ŋ̩* is added (as in imperatives and prohibitives).

(277)	stem	hortative	hortative Pl	gloss 'let's ...'
-------	------	-----------	--------------	-------------------

#### a. /HL/-toned stem

<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-mɔ</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-mɔ-ŋ̩</i>	'... go back'
<i>ábàrà</i>	<i>ábàrà-mɔ</i>	<i>ábàrà-mɔ-ŋ̩</i>	'... lay out (mat)'

#### b. /LH/-toned stem

<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yàbìl-è:-mó</i>	<i>yàbìl-è:-mó-ŋ̩</i>	'... reply'
<i>bòlò</i>	<i>bòlò-mó</i>	<i>bòlò-mó-ŋ̩</i>	'... go'
<i>jìmbé</i>	<i>jìmbé-mó</i>	<i>jìmbé-mó-ŋ̩</i>	'... pull'

#### c. monosyllabics

##### /HL/-toned

<i>nâ:</i>	<i>ná:-mɔ</i>	<i>ná:-mɔ-ŋ̩</i>	'... eat (meal)'
------------	---------------	------------------	------------------

##### /LH/-toned

<i>gō:</i>	<i>gò:-mó</i>	<i>gò:-mó-ŋ̩</i>	'... go out'
------------	---------------	------------------	--------------

Interestingly, the hortative has the same form as the imperative of a causative with *-mv* suffix (§9.2.1).

## 10.6.2.2 Hortative negative (-*ñní*)

A form functioning as hortative negative ('let's not eat!' or perhaps 'we must not eat!') is formed with suffix *-ñní*. No addressee-number distinction could be elicited. For /HL/-toned verbs the tones are like those of the hortative (positive). For /LH/-toned verbs the H-tone appears on the stem-final syllable (including any derivational suffixes).

(278) Hortative negative

stem	hortative negative	gloss ‘let’s not...’
a. /HL/-toned stem		
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-ñnì</i>	‘...go back’
<i>ábàrà</i>	<i>ábàrà-ñnì</i>	‘...lay out (mat)’
b. /LH/-toned stem		
<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yàbìl-é:-ñnì</i>	‘...reply’
<i>bòló</i>	<i>bòló-ñnì</i>	‘...go’
<i>jímbé</i>	<i>jímbé-ñnì</i>	‘...pull’
c. monosyllabics		
<i>/HL-toned</i>		
<i>nâ:</i>	<i>ná:-ñnì</i>	‘...eat (meal)’
<i>/LH-toned</i>		
<i>gõ:</i>	<i>gõ:-ñnì</i>	‘...go out’

### 10.6.3 Non-second person imperatives and prohibitives

#### 10.6.3.1 Positive with third-person agent

Wishes and imprecations, for example with ‘God’ as agent, are expressed with the imperative verb form. *àmbá* ‘God’ appears in L-toned form in such imprecations. (279a) is a standard blessing for someone who is about to go away on a trip (‘cause to arrive’ version) or who is about to come back (‘bring’ version). More earthly wishes and indirect commands take other third-party subjects (279b).

- (279) a. *àmbà ù=ń jâŋ dò:-ndó / jè:lé*  
           God 2Sg=Acc in.peace arrive-Caus.Imprt / bring.Imprt  
           ‘May God take you-Sg there/bring you-Sg (back) without trouble!’
- b. *sé:dù bólò*  
       Seydou      go.Imprt  
       ‘May Seydou go!’, or ‘(Tell) Seydou to go!'

#### 10.6.3.2 Prohibitive with third-person agent

The prohibitive in *-wí* or plural-addressee *-gí-ñj* (§10.6.1.3) can be used in third-party subject clauses, expressing a wish or indirect command that an action not be performed.

- (280) *úlù-ñj bólò-gí-ñj*  
       child-Pl      go-Prohib-PlAddr  
       ‘Let/May the children not go (away)!’ or ‘(Tell) the children not to go!’

### 10.6.3.3 First person agent

The agent (indirect addressee) of a command may also be first person, but this requires a different construction. A first-person agent occurs when the speaker seeks clarification or confirmation of a wish or command from someone else. The first person pronoun occurs in a quotative subject phrase (§17.1.3.2), showing that the whole construction is syntactically a quotative complement. The verb bears the polar interrogative final L-tone. In (281), this combines with a final H-tone to create a final-syllable <HL> that induces lengthening of the vowel by Contour-Tone Mora-Addition (§3.7.4.1).

- (281) *má-à / émmà-à tê: jè:lê:*  
1Sg-QuotSbj/1Pl-QuotSbj tea bring.Imprt.Q  
'(Did you say/Do you want) for me/us to bring tea?' (<*jè:lê*>)

The negative counterpart uses the prohibitive verb form, again with polar interrogative tone (final L-tone). For the tones of *jê:lé-w̄* from noninterrogative *jé:lè-w̄*, see Leftward Tone-Pushing (§3.7.4.5).

- (282) *má-à tê: jê:lé-w̄*  
1Sg-QuotSbj tea bring-Prohib.Q  
'(Did you say/Do you want) for me not to bring tea?' (<*jé:lè-w̄*>)

# 11 Clause, VP, and predicate structure

## 11.1 Clausal constituents

The basic clausal order is S-Adv-O-V-X, where X is limited to clause-final emphatics and various subordinators. The unmarked position for setting adverbials is post-subject, but they also lend themselves to topicalization and can then be clause-initial (or preclausal). Other constituents, not shown, appear near the object and in any case before the verb. See §2.5 for examples.

### 11.1.1 Subjects

#### 11.1.1.1 Subjects in indicative main clauses

In the great majority of clauses there is exactly one subject NP (DP). Tests for subjecthood in main clauses are summarized in (283).

- (283) a. clause-initial position, excluding topicalized constituents;  
b. no case-marker or postposition;  
c. subject agreement on predicate in main clauses.

#### 11.1.1.2 Subjects in relative and complement clauses

In subordinated clauses, subjects are distinguished from other grammatical relations by a different set of features (284).

- (284) a. preverbal proclitic subject pronoun in relative clauses;  
b. relevant to “same-subject” subordinators;  
c. relevant to reflexive and reciprocal use of mediopassive derivative;  
d. quotative-subject phrase in quoted clauses.

#### 11.1.1.3 Subjects of imperative and hortative verbs

Since there is no reflexive object form, we cannot determine whether imperative and hortative objects are capable of binding reflexives (the usual Dogon pattern, clear in Tomo Kan, Togo Kan, and Toro Tegu, is that they cannot).

The morphology of imperatives and hortatives is compatible with the view that both of these categories recognize “addressee” (as opposed to “subject”), and mark addressee number. Thus imperative *bólò* ‘go!-2Sg’, *bólò-ŷ* ‘go!-2Pl’, and hortative *bólò-mó* ‘let’s-2Sg go!’, *bólò-mó-ŷ* ‘let’s-2Pl go!’. However, in DS the same suffix is used for plural addressee in imperatives/hortatives as for 2Pl subject in indicatives.

A same-subject subordinated clause with *-a:-nì* can precede an imperative (285a) or a hortative (285b), indicating that these deontic clauses have covert subjects. In the hortative case, the subject is first plural.

- (285) a. *bòl-á:-nì* *yélè*  
go-Ant-Nonpast come.Imprt  
'Go and come-2Sg back!'
- b. *bòl-á:-nì* *yélè-mó*  
go-Ant-Nonpast come-Hort  
'Let's go and come-2Sg back!'

For quoted imperatives and hortatives, see §17.1.4.1-2.

#### 11.1.1.4 Pseudo-subjects of lexicalized subject-verb combinations

A number of more or less idiomatic subject-verb combinations denote transitions among times of day or seasons, or denote metereology (rain, lightning). Transitions between day and night have can be phrased with *năj* 'sun' as subject plus either 'rise' or 'set' (286a). Alternatively, a noun *bâ:* as subject, attested only in day/night and seasonal transition-denoting expressions, is combined with the perfective of 'spend the day' or 'spend the night' in retrospective sense (286b). For the major seasons such as *gìnè-gă:* 'rainy season', the verb *dă:* in its strict sense 'arrive at the gate, approach (destination)' is used in the sense 'show signs of being about to begin' (local French *s'annoncer*). The verb *gàlá* 'pass (by)' means 'come to an end, be over' with season terms. Excluding semantically unrelated homonyms, the verb *mě:* is used only with *àná* 'rain' as subject; likewise the verb *dě:* is limited to 'night fall' (286d).

- (286) a. *năj númb-è-Ø* 'sun has set' (i.e., night has fallen)  
*năj yím-è-Ø* 'sun has died' (twilight)  
*năj túmb-è-Ø* 'sun has risen' (i.e. day has broken)
- b. *bâ: dèn-è-Ø* 'day is finished' (at twilight), lit. "has spent the day"  
*bâ: yé-è-Ø* 'day has broken' (at dawn or first light), lit. "has spent the night" (citation form of verb is *yâ:*)  
*bâ: gò-è-Ø* 'harvest season is done', lit. "rainy weather has exited"
- c. *gìnè-gă: dă-è-Ø* 'rainy season has approached' (before rains)  
*gìnè-gă: súg-è-Ø* 'rainy season has come down (=begun)'  
*gìnè-gă: gál-ì-Ø* 'rainy season has passed'
- d. *àná mě-è-Ø* 'rain fell; it rained'  
*dígé dě-è-Ø* 'night fell'
- e. *[àná<sup>L</sup> gírù] génd-ì-Ø* 'lightning flashed' (with *géndé* 'look at')

Several of the phrases in (286a-b) have corresponding compound nominalizations with nominalizing suffix *-lv* (variable vowel quality) or *-ruŋ*, see §5.1.3.2.

The nouns preceding the verbs in (286a-d) are what I call **pseudo-subjects**, i.e. low-referentiality subjects that lack full subject properties. The pseudo-subject is the logical subject of the verb (e.g. ‘sun’ in ‘sun fall’), but it remains close to the verb, unlike true subjects. A setting adverb like ‘yesterday’ or ‘now’ frequently follows a true subject like ‘Seydou’ in (287a), but my assistant did not allow the adverb to intervene between a pseudo-subject and its verb (287b-c).

- (287) a. *sé:dù yâ: wálù kán-à: bél-è-* $\emptyset$   
           S       yesterday   work(n)   do-PastAnt   get-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘Seydou finished the work yesterday.’
- b. *yâ: àná mè-è-* $\emptyset$   
       yesterday   rain(n)   rain.fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘It rained yesterday.’
- c. *kàndɔw năŋ númb-è-* $\emptyset$   
       now       sun      fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘The sun has set now.’

There are also some lexicalized expressions for emotional or somatic state that include a pseudo-subject alongside a true subject (X).

- (288) *X kíndè párà-mò*   ‘X get angry’, cf. *párà-mò* ‘upset (sth)’  
       *X kíndè dè:lè-mò*   ‘X cool off, calm down’, cf. *dè:lè-mò* ‘calm (sth)’

The ‘X get angry’ construction has a true subject X that is independent of the (unpossessed) pseudo-subject *kíndè* ‘liver/heart’. Specifically, ‘liver/heart’ is not morphosyntactically possessed by X, and the two may be separated by an adverb (289a). Verb agreement is with the true subject (289b).

- (289) a. *sé:dù yâ: kíndè párà-m-i-* $\emptyset$   
           S       yesterday   liver/heart   be.upset-Caus-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘Seydou got angry yesterday.’
- b. *kíndè párà-m-ù-íj*  
       liver/heart   be.upset-Caus-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I got angry.’

‘X get angry’ is structured differently from superficially similar constructions describing certain other emotional states. Here X is the possessor of the tone-dropped noun ‘liver/heart’ (290a) or ‘body’ (290b), or a postposed pronominal possessor (290c). Verb agreement is with the body-part term, which is always singular. Adverbs may not intervene between X and the possessed body part.

- (290) a. *yâ: [sé:dù <sup>L</sup>kíndè] éllù-lè=bè-* $\emptyset$   
       yesterday [S       <sup>L</sup>liver/heart] sweet-Inch=Past-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou was happy yesterday.’

- b. *kàndɔw* [sé:dù] <sup>L</sup>*gòdò=ðɔ:* *yím-è-*Ø  
now [S <sup>L</sup>body=Def] die-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'Seydou is sad (heart-broken) now.'
- c. *[gòdú m̩-mɔ]* *yím-è-*Ø  
[body 1Sg-Poss] die-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'I am sad (heart-broken).'
- d. *[[sé:dù lè] [ámàdù lè]]* <sup>L</sup>*gòdò=ðɔ:* *yím-è-*Ø  
[[S and] [A and]] <sup>L</sup>body=Def die-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'Seydou and Amadou are sad (heart-broken).'

Even 'X get angry' can optionally be phrased in this way, in which case the verb is *párà* 'be upset' rather than its causative *párà-mɔ* 'cause to be upset' (291).

- (291) *yâ:* [sé:dù] <sup>L</sup>*kìndè* *pár-ì-*Ø  
yesterday [S <sup>L</sup>liver/heart] be.upset-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'Seydou got angry yesterday.'

'X have a bloody nose' also requires the possessive construction, with 'nose' as the subject. Here, however, there is also a second noun, *nî:* 'blood', functioning as pseudo-subject. It is the logical subject of 'go out' but it remains close to the verb. Invariant 3Sg agreement on the verb could theoretically be indexed to either 'nose' or 'blood' ('nose' is more likely).

- (292) a. *[sé:dù* <sup>L</sup>*kìnð=ðɔ:* *nî:* *gò:-w* *wð-*Ø  
[S <sup>L</sup>nose=Def] blood go.out-Ipfv be-3SgSbj  
'Seydou has a bloody nose.'
- b. *yâ:* [sé:dù] <sup>L</sup>*kìnð=ðɔ:* *nî:* *gò-è-*Ø  
yesterday [S <sup>L</sup>nose=Def] blood go.out-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'Seydou had a bloody nose yesterday.'
- c. *[kínù m̩-mɔ]* *nî:* *gò-è-*Ø  
[nose 1Sg-Poss] blood go.out-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'I had a bloody nose.'

'X sweat (perspire)' has a true NP subject and a pseudo-subject *sònòndî:* 'sweat (n)'. The latter selects the verb *gó:* 'go/come out', reasonably enough, but the true subject X determines agreement.

- (293) a. *úlù-ŋ* *sònòndî:* *gó-ý-yà*  
child-Pl sweat(n) go.out-Pfv-3PlSbj  
'The children sweated.'
- b. *sònòndî:* *gó-è-ý*  
sweat(n) go.out-Pfv-1SgSbj  
'I sweated.'

Constructions like this with *gò*: ‘exit, go/come out’ and both a true subject and a pseudo-subject also denote certain other emissions or secretions as in ‘(e.g. tea) foam, become frothy, emit froth’ (294a), or surface disturbances as in ‘become punctured’ (294b). In each case, the two NPs are tonally independent (i.e. not compounded or linked as possessor-possessed).

- (294) a. *té:* *yúbòlò* *gò-è-* $\emptyset$   
 tea      froth(n)      go.out-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘(The) tea is foaming (frothy).’
- b. *[àrgé:* *m-mò]* *bòndó* *gò-è-* $\emptyset$   
 [boubou    1Sg-Poss]      hole      go.out-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘My boubou (garment) has got a hole in (lit. “coming out of”) it.’

See also the variant ‘be hungry’ construction (318a-b) in §11.2.1.3 below.

### 11.1.2 Simple transitives

#### 11.1.2.1 Direct objects of simple transitives

Direct object NPs normally follow the subject and setting adverbials, as with ‘rooster’ in (295).

- (295) *sé:dù* *yâ:* *[ènjè<sup>L</sup>* *àná]* *èb-è-* $\emptyset$   
 S            yesterday      [chicken<sup>L</sup>]      male]      buy-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Seydou bought a rooster yesterday.’

There is a postposition-like NP-final accusative clitic =*y* (§6.7). It is obligatory in object function with human personal pronouns, e.g. *mì=y* ‘me’. It is common on definite nonpronominal NPs denoting humans and to some extent higher animals such as sheep. It does not normally occur with inanimates like ‘stone’.

- (296) *í:=gò=ì / pédù=gò=ì / tibú=gò* *bènd-è-y*  
 child=Def=Acc / sheep=Def=Acc / stone=Def      hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I hit the child/sheep/stone.’

The frequency of the accusative declines when the nonpronominal NP is indefinite (and nonspecific), though it is still possible to use it.

- (297) *í:/ í:=ì* *bènd-è-y*  
 child / child=Acc      hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I hit a child.’

Perception verbs are treated like ordinary transitives and may take accusative objects, though my impression is that the frequency of the accusative is less than that with impact transitives.

- (298) *í:=gò(=ì)* *wè-è-y*  
 child=Def(=Acc)      see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I saw the child.’

Many morphologically mediopassive verbs (§9.4) are transitive and can take accusative objects. All verbs of carrying/holding are of this type (299).

- (299) *i:=gɔ=ŋ̄*      *bòmb-ì-ỳ-ń*  
 child=Def=Acc      carry.on.back-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I carried the child on my back.’

Many verbs are associated with low-referentiality nouns, including cognate nominals, that might be described as pro forma objects. See §11.1.2.5-6 below. The existence of such objects makes the intransitive/transitive distinction somewhat blurry.

#### 11.1.2.2 *kán(à)* ‘do’ in collocations

*kán(à)* ‘do’ combines with a number of nouns to form inflectable VPs. A few examples are in (300).

(300) collocation	gloss
<i>bàrú kán(à)</i>	‘hold a meeting’
<i>wálù kán(à)</i>	‘work, perform work’
<i>dànná kán(à)</i>	‘hunt, go hunting’
<i>dúwà:w kán(à)</i>	‘give a blessing’
<i>wáyrè kán(à)</i>	‘(be/do) for a fairly long time’

This construction is common with new loanwords, as an alternative to directly borrowing an inflectable verb from another language, which would often be difficult given the tight constraints on the vocalism of DS verb stems. In (300), for example, *dúwà:w* is ultimately from Arabic and *wáyrè* is from Fulfulde.

*kán(à)* is also the normal way to convert those expressive adverbials (§8.4.7) that denote more or less volitional actions, as opposed to states or involuntary events, into predicates. An example is the EA *pírù-pírù* ‘flapping wings’, which is verbalized as *pírù-pírù kán(à)* ‘(bird) flap wings’.

#### 11.1.2.3 *gě:* ‘say’ in collocations

*gě:* ‘say’ can combine with (semi-)onomatopoeic forms to form an inflectable VP.

(301) nominal + verb	gloss	comment
<i>wôw-wôw gě:</i>	‘(dog) bark’	
<i>gêw gě:</i>	‘belch’	
<i>[kàŋ-kàŋ]-[bélè-bélè] gě:</i>	‘hiccup’	
<i>sû:ŋ gě:</i>	‘snort’	with snuff tobacco

#### 11.1.2.4 Lexicalized low-referentiality objects

Some common noncognate verb-object collocations where the object has only limited independent referentiality are in (302). *sâ:* (302a) is unattested outside of these collocations, and *lálá* (302b) corresponds only to a semantically unrelated homonym.

(302)	collocation	gloss	includes:
-------	-------------	-------	-----------

##### a. with *sâ:*

<i>ìdùgê: sâ:</i>	‘(emit a) sneeze’
<i>ñjàrî: sâ:</i>	‘urinate’

##### b. with *lálá* (as simple verb: ‘give birth to’)

<i>sínjè lálá</i>	‘converse’
<i>kàlù-kàlú lálá</i>	‘tell a lie’

##### c. other

<i>á:dù jâ:</i>	‘make a promise’	<i>jâ:</i> ‘take (sb)’
<i>dî: ñd-é:-</i>	‘bathe (oneself)’	<i>dî:</i> ‘water’
<i>kòmbó tâ:</i>	‘wage war’	<i>tâ:</i> ‘shoot’
<i>jí:<sup>n</sup> pídè</i>	‘(let out a) fart’	<i>pídè</i> ‘spray (liquid)’
<i>gìr-î: yéyy-è:</i>	‘sleep’	cf. <i>gírú</i> ‘eye’
<i>tínú dènné</i>	‘go get firewood’	<i>dènné</i> ‘look for’
<i>júŋ kómð</i>	‘groan’	<i>kómð</i> ‘(animal) cry’
<i>dònji: tú:lò</i>	‘spit’	<i>dònji:</i> ‘saliva’
<i>tálù dù:ndó</i>	‘lay egg’	<i>dù:ndó</i> ‘put down, set’
<i>tínè bélé</i>	‘make a profit’	<i>bélé</i> ‘get’
<i>tùbó kúndò</i>	‘ask a question’	<i>kúndò</i> ‘put (in)’
<i>góṛð dònjó</i>	‘snore’	cf. <i>dònjó</i> ‘butt (with head)’
<i>yà:lè:nú bóló</i>	‘go for a walk’	<i>bóló</i> ‘go’
<i>tégúrù bă:</i>	‘applaud, clap’	<i>bă:</i> ‘beat (tomtom)’

#### 11.1.2.5 Forms of cognate nominals associated with verbs

Array (303) gives a generous sample of collocations involving cognate nominals and verbs. The array is organized around the form of the nominal. The nominal is essentially obligatory in some cases but not in others. For example, ‘eat (a meal)’ and ‘forge (tools)’ can take more specific objects as alternatives to the default cognate nominal, while ‘weep’ and ‘defecate’ are invariant collocations.

(303)	Cognate nominals
-------	------------------

nominal + verb	gloss
a. nominal and verb segmentally identical	
<i>gð: gð:</i>	‘dance (a dance)’
<i>jâ: jâ:</i>	‘eat a meal’
<i>yâ: yâ:</i>	‘weep’

<i>dě: dě:</i>	‘make an insult’
<i>dùbó dùbó</i>	‘forge (tools)’
<i>núŋò nùŋó</i>	‘sing (a song)’
<i>bédè bèdé</i>	‘defecate’
<i>sé:rè sé:rè</i>	‘ululate (women’s cry of joy)’
<i>ségèlè ségèlè</i>	‘tell a story’

- b. nominal with final *-u*, including zero (< \*-u) after nasal  
*falling tone pattern*

<i>mómù mómó</i>	‘do second round of weeding’
<i>dúgù dùgó</i>	‘practice sorcery’
<i>jádù jàdá</i>	‘do a calculation’
<i>sárù sárà</i>	‘make a payment; ante up’
<i>sénù sénè</i>	‘pray, perform a prayer’
<i>gúndù gündó</i>	‘chew cud’
<i>jáŋgù jáŋgá</i>	‘go to school, study’
<i>nínnù nínné</i>	‘breathe’
<i>tómbù tómbò</i>	‘take a jump, leap’
<i>tó:rù tó:rò</i>	‘give out an order or authorization’
<i>pó:-ndù pó:-ndò</i>	‘greet, say hello’
<i>yàŋà-yérù yéré</i>	‘dream, have a dream’

*falling tone pattern, plus ATR change versus verb*

<i>dóbù dóbó</i>	‘tell a joke’
<i>dónù dònó</i>	‘make a sale’
<i>ébù ébè</i>	‘make a purchase’
<i>gēŋ gēŋé</i>	‘beg, go around begging’
<i>jébù jébé</i>	‘issue a curse (malediction)’
<i>jóbù jóbó</i>	‘run a race’
<i>jōŋ jōŋjó</i>	‘provide medical care’

*falling tone pattern, plus vowel shift to a in verb*

<i>pónjù pánjá</i>	‘strip bark off (tree)’
--------------------	-------------------------

*rising tone pattern, product-of-action nominal, see §4.2.2.3*

<i>tóŋ-ú tóŋjò</i>	‘write, do some writing’
<i>mà:ndùg-ú mà:ndùg-é:-</i>	‘think (a thought)’

- d. partial phonological/morphological identity

*verb has extra derivational suffix*

<i>mōy mó:-ndó</i>	‘laugh’
<i>jáw jágùl-é:-</i>	‘squabble, quarrel’ (with <i>w ~ g</i> )

*nominal is iterated*

<i>kèdè-kédè kédè</i>	‘have fun’
-----------------------	------------

- c. nominal with final *-ê: , -é: , -î: , -ý* (cf. §4.2.3, §5.1.6)

*final -ê:*

<i>bènd-ê: bènd-é:-</i>	‘get into a fistfight’
<i>dè:l-ê: dè:lé</i>	‘have a rest’
<i>kòm-ê: kómò</i>	‘shout, give out a shout’
<i>wèd-ê: wèdé</i>	‘vomit’
<i>yùg-ê: yùgó</i>	‘count (recite numbers)’

<i>kàdìg-ê:</i> <i>kádig-è:-</i>	‘clear one’s throat’
<i>kòdùg-ê:</i> <i>kódùg-è:-</i>	‘cough, emit a cough’
<i>final -ɛ̄:</i>	
<i>àŋìn-ê:</i> <i>áŋìn-ɛ̄:-</i>	‘yawn’
<i>final -î̄:</i>	
<i>kì:g-î̄:</i> <i>kí:g-ɛ̄:-</i>	‘stutter, stammer’
<i>sì:d-î̄:</i> <i>sí:d-ɛ̄:-</i>	‘draw a line’
<i>final -ý̄:</i>	
<i>tɔ́y tɔ̄:</i>	‘plant (crops), do the sowing’
<i>sùdè-ý̄ súd-ɛ̄:-</i>	‘whistle’

e. other

<i>yy</i> before mediopassive after monosyllabic stem (§3.5.3.4, §3.5.4.6)
<i>sɔ̄:</i> <i>sɔyy-ɛ̄:-</i> ‘speak, say some words’

### 11.1.2.6 Grammatical status of cognate nominal

In some cases, like *jōŋ jōŋó* ‘provide medical care’, the cognate nominal is rather pro forma. In others, like *núŋò núnjó* ‘sing (a song)’ ‘sing (a song)’, the nominal can either be pro forma (generic) or it can denote an individual instance. In the latter case, it can be definite, possessed, quantified over, etc.

### 11.1.3 Clauses with additional arguments and adjuncts

#### 11.1.3.1 Syntax of expressive adverbials (EAs)

The forms of EAs are described in §8.4.7. Syntactically they are single-word adverbs that do not generally combine with other elements to form multi-word phrases such as NP or PP. However, they can be made predicative by adding a conjugated auxiliary ‘be’ or ‘become’. For stative ‘be EA’, the auxiliary is *wò* ‘be’ (negative *wò-lɔ̄*). For inchoative ‘become EA’, the auxiliary is *bě̄:*, which elsewhere means ‘remain’. The use of *bě̄:* as inchoative auxiliary distinguishes EAs from adjectives, and that of *wò* as stative auxiliary distinguishes EAs from NPs. For examples of the full set of predicative forms, using *těŋ→* ‘straight’, see §8.4.7.2.

For EAs denoting more or less voluntary actions, *kán(à)* ‘do’ is the auxiliary (§11.1.2.2). For sounds such as onomatopoeias, it is *gě̄:* ‘say’ (§11.1.2.3).

#### 11.1.3.2 Spatial adverbial phrases with position and motion verbs

Because directionality (ablative ‘from’, allative ‘to’) is expressed by verbs (‘come’, ‘go’, ‘bring’, ‘take’, ‘exit/leave’, ‘arrive’), verbs of motion and of putting combine with the same locational expressions (such as locative PPs) as verbs of location: ‘be (somewhere)’, ‘be in (sth)’ (304a). With place names like ‘Bamako’, the locative postposition is optionally omitted (304b).

- (304) a. *úlù-ŋ=gɔ*      *[[àndá*      *m-mɔ=ɔ]*      *rà:]*  
 child-Pl=Def      [[village      1Sg-Poss=Def]      Loc]  
*bòl-ì-yà / wɔ-yyà*  
**go**-Pfv-3PlSbj / **be**-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children went to/are at (=in) my village.’
- b. *bàmàkó*      *(rà:)*      *bòl-ì-yà / wɔ-yyà*  
 B      (Loc)      **go**-Pfv-3PlSbj / be-3PlSbj  
 ‘They went to/are at (=in) Bamako (city).’
- c. *[[ɔ:*      *rà:]*      *gù-â:]*      *yèl-ì-yà*  
 [[well      Loc]      exit(v)-PastAnt]      come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘They came (here) from the well.’
- d. *[děŋ*      *dà:]*      *dî:*      *tóg-à:*      *künd-ù-íj*  
 [waterjar      Loc]      water      pour-PastAnt      put.in-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I poured (the) water into (a/the) waterjar.’

#### 11.1.3.3 Ditransitives

‘Give’ (*óbò*, I-class) takes two objects. The recipient is marked accusative if animate (305a-c). The theme NP is not marked accusative even if human (305b).

- (305) a. *[mí*      <sup>L</sup>*dèlè=ŋ]*      *pédù*      *òb-ù-íj*  
 [1SgPoss      <sup>L</sup>elder.sib=Acc]      sheep      give-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I gave (a/the) sheep to my older same-sex sibling.’
- b. *[î:*      *m-mɔ]*      *kû:-nɔ=ŋ*      *òb-ù-íj*  
 [child      1Sg-Poss]      head-Sg=Acc      give-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I gave my child to the chief.’
- c. *pédù=ŋ*      *bèlé*      *òb-ù-íj*  
 sheep=Acc      fodder      give-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I gave fodder to (the) sheep-Sg.

*tágà* ‘show’ has the same syntax as ‘give’.

Either the theme or the recipient may become subject by intransitivizing the verb. The verb then gets a mediopassive suffix, which can range over reflexive, reciprocal, and other senses. In the case of the theme, the reading is passive-like (306a). In that of the recipient, the normal reading is reciprocal (306b).

- (306) a. *kè:lé*      *òb-ì-èlè-*Ø  
 money      give-MP-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘The money will not be given.’
- b. *émmè*      *kè:lé*      *òb-ì-èlè-ŋ*  
 1PlSbj      money      give-MP-IpfvNeg-1PlSbj  
 ‘We will not give each other money.’

The collocation *kàlbú kán(à)* ‘entrust (sth, to sb)’ also has two open-reference object NPs. It has a total of three objects if the invariant noun *kàlbú* is also considered to be a third object (307).

- (307) [kè:lé      m̩-m᷑]      [mí      dèlè=᷑]  
       [money      1Sg-Poss]      [1SgPoss      elder.sib=Acc]  
       kàlbú      kàn-i-᷑  
       entrusting(n)      do-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I entrusted my money to my elder same-sex sibling.’

Verbs of carrying and holding like *bòmb-é:-* ‘carry (child, backpack) on one’s back’ are mediopassive morphologically but transitive syntactically. The corresponding forms with transitive suffix *-rv* or variant are ditransitive with the same syntax as ‘give’.

- (308) mí      [i:<sup>L</sup>      ḡg᷑]      yà:-nà=᷑      bòmbù-r-ù-᷑  
       1Sg      [child<sup>L</sup>      Prox]      woman-Sg=Acc      carry.on.back-Tr-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I had (the) woman carry this child on her back.’  
       (i.e. ‘I loaded this child on the woman’s back.’)

#### 11.1.3.4 Valency of causatives

In the overt expression corresponding to the logical schema [X cause [Y (Z) Verb]], the lower subject Y is a direct object, marked as accusative, in the flattened causative clause [X Y-Accusative (Z) Verb-Causative].

- (309) a. í=᷑      nă:      jà:-m-i-᷑  
       child=Acc      meal      eat-Caus-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I had the child eat (a meal).’ (‘I fed the child.’)
- b. [mí      <sup>L</sup>dèlò=᷑]      tòmbò-m-i-᷑  
       [1SgPoss      <sup>L</sup>elder.sib=Def=Acc]      jump-Caus-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I made my older same-sex sibling jump.’

If a main clause has a direct object (310a), the corresponding causative has two direct objects, both of which can be marked accusative (310b).

- (310) a. [i:      m̩-m᷑]      írù-nè=᷑      dà-᷑-∅  
       [child      1Sg-Poss]      blacksmith-Sg=Acc      kill-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘My child killed a blacksmith (member of blacksmith caste).’
- b. [i:      m̩-m᷑=᷑]      írù-nè=᷑  
       [child      1Sg-Poss=Acc]      blacksmith-Sg=Acc  
       dà:-m-i-᷑  
       kill-Caus-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I made/had my child kill a blacksmith.’

#### 11.1.4 Verb phrase (VP)

VP is a valid syntactic category in DS. Essentially it is the clause minus the subject, and in some cases minus clause-level inflections (aspect, negation).

A verbal noun can readily take nonsubject complements including direct objects, though occasionally a subject co-occurs; see §17.3.1.

Quotative complements divide the quoted clause into the subject and everything else. The subject is set off as part of a quotative-subject phrase with particle *wà*, and this is followed by the rest of the clause which can have its own *wà* (§17.1.3.1-2). This does not apply to pseudo-subjects.

Same-subject clause chains are essentially combinations of two VPs associated with the same subject NP (§15.1-2).

## 11.2 ‘Be’, ‘become’, ‘have’, and other statives and inchoatives

In addition to the defective stative quasi-verbs discussed in the sections below, see *sigé* ‘be more, be better’ and *èré* ‘be better’ in comparatives (§12.1.2.1-2).

### 11.2.1 ‘It is’ clitics

#### 11.2.1.1 Positive ‘it is’ (=ŋ)

The ‘it is’ clitic =ŋ is added to a NP, usually just a common noun or an independent pronoun. The theme (subject) may be overtly expressed, but this referent is usually contextually clear and is often omitted or expressed as an (arguably topical) pronoun or demonstrative.

- (311) a. *mf dɔgɔ-nɔ=ŋ*  
1Sg Dogon-Sg=it.is.1SgSbj  
'I am a Dogon.' (< *dɔgɔ-nɔ*)
- b. *ŋgɔ́ pédù=ŋ*  
Prox sheep=it.is.3SgSbj  
'This is a sheep.'

In theory the ‘it is’ clitic is conjugated for pronominal subject. However, the original pronominal-subject suffix has coalesced with the nasal of the clitic itself. The only trace of the usual conjugational paradigm is that the 2Pl form has L-toned =ŋ even after an H-tone, matching L-toned 2Pl suffix -ŋ on ordinary inflected verbs. For other pronominal-subject categories, the clitic is atonal and acquires its H- or L-tone by spreading from the stem-final tone. After an L-tone, there is no audible distinction between 2Pl -ŋ and the other categories. Because the suffixal marking makes few distinctions, independent pronouns in subject function usually occur clause-initially.

(312) category ‘it is’

1Sg	=ŋ (atonal)
1Pl	=ŋ (atonal)
2Sg	=ŋ (atonal)
2Pl	=ŋ̡ (L-toned)
3Sg	=ŋ (atonal)
3Pl	=ŋ (atonal)

The tonal contrast of 2Pl versus other subjects is audible in (313), since *nàŋá* ‘cow’ ends in an H-tone, which is realized on the enclitic in (313a); for the phonology see §3.7.4.2.

- (313) a. *mí / wó / ú*      *nàŋá=ŋ̡*  
           1Sg / 3Sg               cow=it.is.1/3/2SgSbj  
           ‘I am / he-or-she is / you-Sg are a cow.’
- b. *é*                          *nàŋá=ŋ̡*  
           2Pl                       cow=it.is.2Pl  
           ‘You-Pl are cows.’

When the pronoun is the predicate we get forms like *mì=ŋ̡* ‘it’s me’ and *émmè=ŋ̡* ‘it’s us’. *Cv* pronouns combine as *Cv=ŋ̡* by Final High-to-Rising Tone (§3.7.4.2).

*injú* ‘what?’ combines with the clitic as *injé:=ŋ̡* ‘what is it?’, with a vocalic change suggesting a variant *injé:/*. The unexpected final L-tone here is mirrored in *àŋá=ŋ̡* ‘it is how much/many?’

The ‘it is’ clitic is easily confused with the NP-final accusative clitic =ŋ, which is also atonal (§6.7). However, accusative NPs are always non-clause-final, while the ‘it is’ clitic is regularly clause-final.

### 11.2.1.2 ‘It is not’ (=lă:-)

The negative counterpart of =ŋ ‘it is’ is =lă: ‘it is not’, with an NP (often a simple common noun or pronoun) as complement. The final pitch rise is not always heard. The complement is not tone-dropped.

(314). category form

1Sg	=lă:-ŋ̡
1Pl	=lă:-ŋ̡
2Sg	=lă:-w̡
2Pl	=lă:-ŋ̡
3Sg	=lă:-∅
3Pl	=lă:-yà

(a rare <LHL>-toned syllable!)

(often heard as L-toned =lă:-∅)

The 3Sg subject form is the default, i.e. when the “subject” is contextually understood. It can take a pronoun as complement: *mí=lă:-Ø* ‘it isn’t me’, phonetically often reduced to [mílă]. In such combinations, *CV* pronouns keep their tones. Elsewhere I often omit the 3Sg -Ø in transcriptions.

- (315) a. *mí dògò-nó=lă:-j*  
           1Sg       Dogon-Sg=it.is.not-1SgSbj  
           ‘I am not a Dogon.’
- b. *ŋgó pédù=lă:-Ø*  
     Prox       sheep=it.is.not-3SgSbj  
     ‘This is not a sheep.’
- c. *[mí kă:ŋ]=lă:-j*  
     [1Sg       only]=it.is.not-1SgSbj  
     ‘I am (=It is) not just me (alone).’

After a nasalized vowel /l/ → *n*, as in *sé:<sup>n</sup>* ‘good’, *sé:<sup>n</sup>=nă:-Ø* ‘it isn’t good’, pronounced as though *sé:=nă:-Ø*. See §3.5.4.7.

#### 11.2.1.3 ‘It is’ clitic in predicates of experienced physical states

The ‘it is’ clitic is used in some idiomatic nominal predicates that take direct objects, including accusative-marked human nouns and pronouns. These constructions denote experienced physical states.

- (316) a. *sé:dù=j / mì=j gè:=j*  
       S=Acc / 1Sg=Acc       hunger=it.is  
       ‘Seydou is/I am hungry.’
- b. *sé:dù=j / mì=j dì:-nɔ:-lù=j*  
       S=Acc / 1Sg=Acc       thirst=it.is  
       ‘Seydou is/I am thirsty.’
- c. *sé:dù=j / mì=j ùgò=j*  
       S=Acc / 1Sg=Acc       heat=it.is  
       ‘Seydou is/I am hot.’

Negative equivalents are in (317).

- (317) a. *sé:dù=j / mì=j gě:=lă:*  
       S=Acc / 1Sg=Acc       hunger=it.is.not  
       ‘Seydou is/I am not hungry.’
- b. *sé:dù=j / mì=j dì:-nɔ:-lú=lă:*  
       S=Acc       thirst=it.is.not  
       ‘Seydou is/I am thirsty.’

- c. *sé:dù = j / mì = j*      *ùgó = là:*  
 S=Acc    heat=it.is.not  
 ‘Seydou is/I am hot.’

There is an alternative construction where ‘hunger’ etc. is the (pseudo-)subject of the verb *ágà* ‘catch’. As with other pseudo-subjects (§11.1.1.4), ‘hunger’ occurs just before the verb, rather than in the usual clause-initial subject position. Otherwise this is a regular transitive clause type with accusative object.

- (318) a. *mì = j*      *gɛ:*      *ág-i-Ø*  
 1Sg=Acc      hunger      catch-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘I am hungry.’ (lit., ‘Hunger has caught me.’)  
 or: ‘I became hungry (at some point in the past).’
- b. *mì = j*      *gɛ:*      *ágà-lì-Ø*  
 1Sg=Acc      hunger      catch-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘I am not hungry.’  
 or: ‘I did not become hungry.’

I hypothesize that the ‘it is’ construction of ‘X is hungry/thirsty/hot’ as in (316a-c) evolved as a mutation of the construction with ‘catch’ illustrated in (318).

## 11.2.2 Existential and locative quasi-verbs and particles

### 11.2.2.1 Existential particle (*yé*, *yí*, *yó*, *yó*)

This particle (etymologically a ‘there’ locative adverb) procliticizes to a stative that denotes location/existence or possession (for imperfectives see below). The stative may be derived from an active verb, in which case the particle takes the form *yé* and the stative verb is {L}-toned. The verb occurs without its augment, i.e. without first-vowel lengthening (319a). Or the stative may be a defective quasi-verb, in which case the particle assimilates the vowel quality of the quasi-verb or (before *sè* ‘have’) shifts to *yí* (319b).

- (319)      stative (augmented)      with Existential
- a. *dǎ:jà* ‘be sitting’      *yé dàjà*  
*ú:njò* ‘be lying down’      *yé ùnjò*  
*dǔ:jò* ‘be on (surface)’      *yé dùnjò*
- b. *wò* ‘be (somewhere)’      *yó = ð* (contracted)  
*tò*: ‘be in’      *yó tò*  
*sè* ‘have’      *yí sè*

The existential particle occurs only in unfocalized positive main clauses. In this syntactic context, it is obligatory before the relevant locational-existential quasi-verb in (319b) when no other locational expression is overtly present. In other words, these quasi-verbs require a locational, and *yó* is the default (320a-b). When another locational is present, the particle is generally absent, but my assistant accepts examples including it (320d).

- (320) a. *[àndá      rà:]      wò-ñ*  
           [village     Loc]     be-1SgSbj  
           ‘I am in the village.’
- b. *yó=ò-ñ*  
     Exist=be-1SgSbj  
     ‘I am present.’ (in most contexts: ‘I am here.’)
- c. *#wò-ñ*  
     #be-1SgSbj  
     ‘I am present.’ [ungrammatical version of (b)]
- d. *[àndá      rà:]      yó=ò-ñ*  
           [village     Loc]     Exist=be-1SgSbj  
           ‘I am (present) in the village.’ (accepted but not common)

In unfocalized positive main clauses, derived statives must either have the existential particle or they must be augmented (by reduplication or vowel lengthening).

With the possessive quasi-verb *sè*, whose complement is the possessum rather than a locational, the existential particle is obligatory in unfocalized positive main clauses, since it does not belong to the same category as the complement. It is obligatory even the presence of an overt locational (321c). In other words, in the ‘have’ construction, the particle is a pure existential (not a locational).

- (321) a. *ìdú      yí      sè-ñ*  
       dog     Exist     have-1SgSbj  
       ‘I have a dog.’
- b. *#ìdú      Ø      sè-ñ*  
       #dog    Ø     have-1SgSbj  
       ‘I have a dog.’ [ungrammatical version of (a)]
- c. *[àndá      rà:]      ìdú      yí / (# Ø)      sè-ñ*  
           [village     Loc]     dog     Exist / (#Ø)     have-1SgSbj  
           ‘I have a dog in the village.’ (*yí* still obligatory)

The existential particle is not allowed in negative clauses (322a-b), relative clauses (322c-d), or focalized clauses (322e-f).

- (322) a. *[àndá      rà:]      (# yó)      wò-lò-ñ*  
           [village     Loc]     (# Exist)     be-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
           ‘I am not in the village.’
- b. *ìdú      (# yí)      sè-lè-ñ*  
       dog     (#Exist)     have-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
       ‘I don’t have a dog.’

- c. [àndá      rà:]      ndè      (# yó)      wó:=j  
 [village      Loc]      person<sup>L</sup>      (# Exist)      be.Ppl=Acc  
*dènè-dè-j*  
 look.for-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I’m looking for a person who is in the village.’
- d. ndè      idú      (# yí)      sè:      *dènè-dè-j*  
 person<sup>L</sup>      dog      (# Exist)      have.Ppl      look.for-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I’m looking for a person who has a dog.’
- e. à:      [àndá      rà:]      (# yó)      wò-Ø  
 who?      [village      Loc]      (# Exist)      be-3SgSbj  
 ‘Who is in the village?’
- f. à:      idú      (# yí)      sè-Ø  
 who?      dog      (# Exist)      have-3SgSbj  
 ‘Who has a dog?’

The existential particle is always immediately preverbal. It follows a pronominal object (323). We cannot determine whether the existential particle would precede or follow a pronominal-subject proclitic, since the latter occurs only in relative clauses, where the existential particle is not allowed.

- (323) mì=j      yé      bòmbò-Ø  
 1Sg=Acc Exist      carry.on.back.Stat-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She is carrying me on his/her back.’

Existential *yé* is attested but uncommon before imperfective active verbs in texts. It did not occur in spontaneous elicitation but my assistant accepted it before a range of verbs. In the presence of *yé*, the verb is {L}-toned and cannot take the augment (reduplication or vowel-lengthening). (324a) with augmented imperfective seems to be interchangeable with the much less common (324b) with existential particle.

- (324) a. yá:      yá:-dè-Ø  
 weeping(n)      Augm-weep-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He /She weeps.’
- b. yá:      yé      yá:-dè-Ø  
 weeping      Exist      weep-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 [=a)]

Since the existential particle is incompatible with the verbal augment, which is associated with verb/VP focus, it may be that the existential particle is syntactically a focused adverbial, in spite of its frequent lack (especially with ‘have’) of semantic content.

### 11.2.2.2 Locational-existential ‘be’ (*wò*, *wò-ló*, *bè*, *bè-lé*)

This conjugated stative quasi-verb is used in locational-existential functions. In the absence of an overt locational phrase, it requires the existential particle *yó* in syntactic contexts which allow this particle (unfocalized positive main clauses). The construction with *yó=ò* (contraction of *yó wò*) can be translated ‘be present’ (often implicitly ‘be here’) or ‘exist’. If there is an overt locational, *yó* is usually omitted, but my assistant accepts versions where it is present. There is no distinction between human, animal, and inanimate forms in my assistant’s dialect (see below on dialectal inanimate *kò*).

The negative form is *wò-ló* ‘not be (somewhere), be absent, not exist’. The existential particle is absent in negative contexts, so the optional presence of an overt locational does not affect the rest of the clause.

(325) Paradigm of locational-existential ‘be’ (“LOC” = locational phrase)

category	‘is present’	‘is in LOC’	‘is absent; is not in LOC’
1Sg	<i>yó=ò-ñ</i>	LOC <i>wò-ñ</i>	(LOC) <i>wò-ló-ñ</i>
1Pl	<i>yó=ò-yñ</i>	LOC <i>wò-yñ</i>	(LOC) <i>wò-ló-yñ</i>
2Sg	<i>yó=ò-w</i>	LOC <i>wò-w</i>	(LOC) <i>wò-ló-w</i>
2Pl	<i>yó=ò-yñ</i>	LOC <i>wò-yñ</i>	(LOC) <i>wò-ló-yñ</i>
3Sg	<i>yó=ò</i>	LOC <i>wò</i>	(LOC) <i>wò-ló</i>
3Pl	<i>yó=ò-yà</i>	LOC <i>wò-yà</i>	(LOC) <i>wò-nò-ní</i>

K&P (p. 57) give examples of the type “X *kò*” ‘there is X’ and negative “X *kòlò*” ‘there is no X’ for inanimate X. Even in the dialect focused on here (Wendegèle village), *kò* and *kò-ló* for inanimate X occurred in recordings among middle-aged and older speakers. They have been entirely replaced by *wò* and *wò-ló* in the speech of my (younger) assistant, except in the greeting formula *yów kò-ló* ‘there is nothing wrong’, (572b) in §19.7.

Examples of the ‘be’ quasi-verb are in (326). (326b) illustrates existential as opposed to locational function; it can be used to indicate that there is some milk left. The existential particle is usually absent from (326a) which has an overt locational. For more details on syntactic environments, see §11.2.2.2 above.

- (326) a. *[gín dà] wò-ñ*  
           [house Loc]   be-1SgSbj  
           ‘I am in the house.’
- b. *íru yó=ò-Ø*  
       milk      Exist=be-3SgSbj  
       ‘There is (some) milk.’
- c. *íru wò-ló-Ø*  
       milk      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
       ‘There is no milk.’ (i.e., ‘We’re out of milk.’)

*wò* is replaced by *bè* for past tense ‘was (somewhere), was present, existed, there was/were’. *bè* combines with the existential particle as *yé bè*. The negative form is *bè-lé* ‘was not’. The paradigms are in (327).

(327) Past locational-existential ‘was’ (“LOC” = locational phrase)

category	‘was present’	‘was in LOC’	‘was absent, not at LOC’
1Sg, 1Pl	<i>yé bè-ñ̄</i> <i>yé bè-ñ̄</i>	LOC <i>bè-ñ̄</i> LOC <i>bè-ñ̄</i>	(LOC) <i>bè-lé-ñ̄</i> (LOC) <i>bè-lé-ñ̄</i>
2Sg 2Pl	<i>yé bè-ñ̄</i> <i>yé bè-ñ̄</i>	LOC <i>bè-ñ̄</i> LOC <i>bè-ñ̄</i>	(LOC) <i>bè-lé-ñ̄</i> (LOC) <i>bè-lé-ñ̄</i>
3Sg 3Pl	<i>yé bè-Ø</i> <i>yé bè-yà</i>	LOC <i>bè-Ø</i> LOC <i>bè-yà</i>	(LOC) <i>bè-lé-Ø</i> (LOC) <i>bè-ñ̄-ní</i>

=*bè* and =*bè-lé* can also combine with AN-inflected forms of verbs to shift the temporal reference point into the past, as in the past progressive and similar categories. In this construction I refer to them as past clitics (§10.5).

### 11.2.3 Other stative locational and positional quasi-verbs

11.2.3.1 *tò* ~ *tò*: ‘be in’ and *túyy-è:-* ‘stay inside’

The stative quasi-verb *tò* ~ *tò*: places the reference object (trajector) inside a container or other bounded space such as a house (but not a village). The reference object may be a thing or person, or a mass such as ‘water’ or ‘sugar’. The combination with the existential particle is *yó tò* with short vowel, versus long-voweled *tò*: after a specific locational expression. The distinction is clear in the 3Sg and 3Pl forms. The negation is *tò:-ló*.

(328) *tò* ‘be in’ (“LOC” = locational phrase)

category	‘is in’	‘is in LOC’	‘is not in LOC’
1Sg 1Pl	<i>yó tò-ñ̄</i> <i>yó tò-ñ̄</i>	LOC <i>tò:-ñ̄</i> LOC <i>tò:-ñ̄</i>	LOC <i>tò:-ló-ñ̄</i> LOC <i>tò:-ló-ñ̄</i>
2Sg 2Pl	<i>yó tò-ñ̄</i> <i>yó tò-ñ̄</i>	LOC <i>tò:-ñ̄</i> LOC <i>tò:-ñ̄</i>	LOC <i>tò:-ló-ñ̄</i> LOC <i>tò:-ló-ñ̄</i>
3Sg 3Pl	<i>yó tò-Ø</i> <i>yó tò-yà</i>	LOC <i>tò:-Ø</i> LOC <i>tò-yà</i>	LOC <i>tò:-ló-Ø</i> LOC <i>tò:-ñ̄-ní</i>

There is a related regularly inflected (active) verb *túyy-è:-* ‘stay inside (e.g. a house)’.

### 11.2.3.2 Other statives derived from active verbs ('be on')

'Be on (a horizontal surface, e.g. a mat or table)' is expressed by stative *dùŋò* (augmented *dú:ŋò*) which is derived from mediopassive *dùŋ-é:-* 'be put down or land (on a surface)' or 'put oneself down (on a surface)'. The combination with the existential particle is *yé dùŋò*. For humans, *dùŋò* is also possible (e.g. in connection with position on a mat) but is often pre-empted by 'sit' (*dàŋŋ-é:-*).

'(Tea-kettle, cooking pot) be (put) up on (burner, oven)' is stative *yàŋà* (augmented *yǎ:ŋà*), cf. active intransitive *yáŋ-è:-* 'be put (or put oneself) up on'. The combination with the existential particle is *yé yàŋà*.

### 11.2.4 'Become (noun)', 'happen', and 'remain' predicates

These are regular active verbs, inflectable for aspect (perfective/imperfective).

#### 11.2.4.1 'Remain' (*wàdá*, *bě:*, *pínnè*)

The common verb meaning 'remain, stay (somewhere)' in my assistant's dialect is the regular I-class active verb *wàdá*, 3Sg perfective *wád-i*.

- (329) *[l]àndá      rà:]      wàdà-dè-ŋ*  
[village      Loc]      remain-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
'I am staying in the village.'

A synonym is *bě:*, perfective *bí-ŷ*, perfective negative *bě:-lí-*, imperfective *bé-dè-*, imperfective negative *bìyé-èlè-*, chaining form *bì-ŷ* (§10.1.3.3). This verb is important grammatically since it is used to make predicates out of expressive adverbials (§11.1.3.1).

There is also a verb *pínnè* meaning 'stay put (not go anywhere)'.

#### 11.2.4.2 'Become, turn into' (*táŋà*)

The regular active verb *táŋà* means 'become X, turn into X' where X is an NP (including certain manner adverbs), not an adjective or an expressive adverbial. X takes the 'it is' clitic, except when X is a manner adverbial as in (330c).

- (330) a. *túbà:gu=ŋ*      *táŋ-i-Ø / táŋà-lí-Ø*  
white.person=it.is      become-Pfv/PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
'He became/did not become a white person.'
- b. *injé=ŋ*      *táŋ-ù-w*  
what?=it.is      become-Pfv-2SgSbj  
'What have you-Sg become?'
- c. *ŋó-njì:*      *táŋ-i-ŋ*  
like.that      become-Pfv-1SgSbj  
'I have become like that.'

The transitive (semantically causative) form is *táŋà-ndà* ‘transform, convert, turn (Y) into (X)’, 3Sg perfective *táŋì-nd-ì*, cf. §9.4.4. X still has the ‘it is’ clitic (331a). The object Y is accusative if human. *táŋà-ndà* can also mean ‘translate X into Y’, where Y is expressed as a PP with instrumental postposition *lè*. (331b) is therefore literally “I converted Bambara [by means of Dogon].”

- (331) a. *sé:dù=ì*      *yàrà=ì*      *táŋù-nd-ù-ì*  
           S=Acc                lion=it.is            become-Tr-Pfv-1SgSbj  
           ‘I transformed Seydou into a lion.’
- b. *[bàmbàrà-sɔ:=gò]*      *[dògò-sɔ:]*      *lè*  
           [Bambara-speech=Def]      [Dogon-speech]      Inst]  
*táŋù-nd-ù-ì*  
**become-Tr-Pfv-1SgSbj**  
           ‘I translated from Bambara to Dogon.’

*táŋà* also means ‘cross, go across (road, river)’.

#### 11.2.4.3 ‘Become, turn into’ (*bilé*)

*bilé* (also found in Tommo So, but not elsewhere in eastern Dogon) has similar meaning and the same syntax as *táŋà* ‘become, turn into’, but puts more emphasis on transformation from one thing into another. The idiomatic phrase *ndè=ì bilé* ‘become a person’ has about the same pragmatic sense as English *become somebody*, i.e. ‘become a person who matters’.

*bilé* is distinct from *bilé* ‘roll over, flip’ (and other senses). However, *bilé* does have apparent cognates with similar meaning ‘become X’ but ending in *e* (or *o*) in western Dogon: *bilé* (Penange), *bilè* (Bunoge), *bilí-yè* (Najamba), *biló* (Tiranige).

#### 11.2.5 Mental and emotional statives

##### 11.2.5.1 ‘Know’ (*igù wó*), ‘not know’ (*inné*)

‘Know (a fact)’, French *savoir*, is expressed by *igù* plus an H-toned form of the ‘be (somewhere)’ quasi-verb *wò*. The stem is sometimes heard as *igì*, so the *u* in *igù* may have originally been influenced by the following *w* of the quasi-verb. The negation is suppletive *inné*. Paradigms are in (332). The existential particle is not used.

(332)	category	‘know’	‘not know’
	1Sg	<i>igù wò-ì</i>	<i>innè-ì</i>
	1Pl	<i>igù wò-yì</i>	<i>innè-ì</i>
	2Sg	<i>igù wò-w</i>	<i>inné-w</i>
	2Pl	<i>igù wò-yò</i>	<i>inné-yò</i>
	3Sg	<i>igù wò-Ø</i>	<i>inné-Ø</i>
	3Pl	<i>igù wò-yà</i>	<i>inní-yà</i>

The H-tone on *wó* ‘be’ in this combination is carried over into the past-time counterpart *igù bé-* ‘knew, used to know’. The past negative is *inné=bé-*.

Cognates within eastern Dogon are Tommo So *íg-go=wɔ*, Togo Kan *í:n wɔ*, Yorno So *íg-đ:*, and possibly Toro Tegu *ukú*.

#### 11.2.5.2 ‘Want’ (*nàmà*), ‘not want’ (*nàmà-lá*)

This stative quasi-verb is *nàmà* in the positive and *nàmà-lá* in the negative. The 2Sg form is pronounced with *o*. The existential particle is sometimes added in positive main clauses (*yé nàmà*).

(333)	category	‘want’	‘not want’
	1Sg,	<i>nàmà-ìj</i>	<i>nàmà-là-íj</i>
	1Pl	<i>nàmà-ìj</i>	<i>nàmà-là-íj</i>
	2Sg	<i>nàmò-w</i>	<i>nàmà-lò-w</i>
	2Pl	<i>nàmà-ìj</i>	<i>nàmà-là-ìj</i>
	3Sg	<i>nàmà-Ø</i>	<i>nàmà-là-Ø</i>
	3Pl	<i>nàmì-yà</i>	<i>nàmà-n-ní</i>

Past forms are *nàmà=bè-ìj* ‘I wanted’ and *nàmà=bè-lè-íj* ‘I didn’t want’.

#### 11.2.5.3 ‘Like, love’ (*ibé*), ‘not like’ (*ibè-lé*)

‘Like X, love X’ is expressed by *ibé*. It has stative-like and progressive forms. The stative paradigm is (334).

(334)	category	‘like’	‘not like’
	1Sg	<i>ibè-íj</i>	<i>ibè-lè-íj</i>
	1Pl	<i>ibè-ìj</i>	<i>ibè-lè-ìj</i>
	2Sg	<i>ibò-w</i>	<i>ibè-lò-w</i>
	2Pl	<i>ibé-ìj</i>	<i>ibè-lé-ìj</i>
	3Sg	<i>ibé-Ø</i>	<i>ibè-lé-Ø</i>
	3Pl	<i>ibí-yà</i>	<i>ibè-n-ní</i>

Past forms: *ibé=bè-ìj* ‘I liked’, negative *ibé=bè-lè-íj* ‘I didn’t like’.

This verb can also be used in the progressive, like an active verb. The attested forms are of the progressive-1 type *ibò-w wò-ìj* ‘I like’ and *ibò-w wò-lò-íj* ‘I don’t like’. Past forms are *ibò-w=bè-ìj* ‘I liked’ and negative *ibò-w=bè-lè-íj* ‘I didn’t like’.

My assistant rejected a combination of ‘like’ with existential *yé*.

### 11.3 Quotative verb

#### 11.3.1 ‘Say’ (*gɛ̄*)

The inflectable ‘say’ verb is *gɛ̄*. The vowel is raised before suffix *-y* in the chaining form *gì-y* and the perfective *gí-y*, as well as (regularly) by Prevocalic Vowel-Raising (§3.5.6.1) before V-initial suffix in imperfective negative *gì-éle* and past anterior subordinator *gì-â*.

Many quoted clauses are framed by the unconjugated particle *wà* rather than by this verb.

For detailed discussion of quotatives, see §17.1.

### 11.4 Adjectival predicates

#### 11.4.1 Positive adjectival predicates

##### 11.4.1.1 With *wò* ‘be’

Adjectives can be made into predicates with stative sense ('be red') without having recourse to a related adjectival verb, which generally indicates transitions ('redden'). One construction adds quasi-verb *wò* ‘be’ (§11.2.2.2) to the adjective, which has the same form as in modifying function (335). As a predicate, it does not allow plural *-mbè* on the adjective (335c).

- (335) a. *dógòdò / bánu / dùmbú*      *wò-ŋ*  
heavy / red / short      be-1SgSbj  
'I am heavy/red (brown)/short.'
- b. *[súŋ mìn-mò] pàlá / pílù*      *wò-Ø*  
[rope 1Sg-Poss] long / white      be-3SgSbj  
'My rope is long / white.'
- c. *[úlù mìn-mò] dógòdò*      *wò-yyà*  
[children 1Sg-Poss] heavy      be-3PlSbj  
'My children are heavy.'

Some adjectives whose modifying form ends in *u* change this to a mid-height vowel before *wò* (336a). This is common with bisyllabic adjectives that already have a mid-height vowel in the first syllable, but it also applies to *gàllú* ‘bitter’ (336a), perhaps by analogy to ‘sweet’, and it does not affect *wérù* ‘green’, perhaps by analogy to primary color adjectives (336b).

(336)      modifying      predicate      gloss

- a. vowel change
- |              |                 |                                   |
|--------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>kellú</i> | <i>kellé wò</i> | ‘cold’ (also <i>kelló-wà wò</i> ) |
| <i>ellú</i>  | <i>ellé wò</i>  | ‘sweet’                           |
| <i>gàllú</i> | <i>galló wò</i> | ‘bitter’                          |
| <i>ómmù</i>  | <i>ómmò wò</i>  | ‘rotten’                          |

b. no vowel change

<i>bánù</i>	<i>bánù wò</i>	'red'
<i>pílù</i>	<i>pílù wò</i>	'white'
<i>wérù</i>	<i>wérù wò</i>	'green'

A handful of adjectives lengthen a final *u* before *wò* (337a). 'Black' has an irregular form with an extra syllable, also ending in long *u:* (337b). These extended forms are morphosyntactically expressive adverbials rather than simple adjectives.

(337) a. final *u* lengthened

<i>síndú</i>	<i>síndú: wò</i>	'sharp'
<i>dúmbú</i>	<i>dúmbú: wò</i>	'short'
<i>púrígù</i>	<i>púrígù: wò</i>	'yellow'

b. irregular

<i>géŋ</i>	<i>géŋ-gù: wò</i>	'black'
<i>nâŋ</i>	<i>nâŋ-gù wò</i>	'difficult'

Other adjectives form an EA by adding *-ŋ* (§8.4.7.6). The EA forms can occur both in stative predicates with *wò* 'be' and in inchoative predicates with *bě:* 'become (adverbial)'.

#### 11.4.1.2 With 'it is' clitic =ŋ

An alternative is to add the 'it is' clitic *=ŋ* (§11.2.1.1) to the adjective (338a). The clitic is atonal and adopts the preceding tone. Adjectives that are really expressive adverbials (EA) with *i→*, either lexical or derived, have L-toned clitic (338b). A few adjectives that do not have a true EA form nonetheless shift the final vowel to *i* before *=ŋ*, a possible vestige of an original EA with \**i→*.

(338) modifying EA predicate gloss

a. predicate not based on EA

<i>àdá</i>	<i>àdà=ŋ</i>	'half-ripe'
<i>ámà</i>	<i>ámà=ŋ</i>	'sour' or 'plump'
<i>dăy</i>	<i>dăy=ŋ</i>	'small'
<i>dógòdò</i>	<i>dógòdò=ŋ</i>	'heavy'
<i>dúmbú</i>	<i>dúmbú=ŋ</i>	'short'
<i>gállú</i>	<i>gállú=ŋ</i>	'bitter'
<i>géŋ</i>	<i>géŋ=ŋ</i> [géŋ]	'black (dark)'
<i>ilé</i>	<i>ilé=ŋ</i>	'ripe, cooked'
<i>kándá</i>	<i>kándá=ŋ</i>	'new'
<i>kò:ló</i>	<i>kò:lò=ŋ</i>	'unripe, raw'
<i>kómmò</i>	<i>kómmò=ŋ</i>	'lean (animal)'
<i>kúnjú</i>	<i>kúnjú=ŋ</i>	'coarse (texture)'
<i>măy</i>	<i>măy=ŋ</i>	'dry (clothing)'
<i>nàná</i>	<i>nàná=ŋ</i>	'easy'
<i>nâŋ</i>	<i>nâŋ=ŋ</i> [nâŋ]	'difficult'
<i>óm̩mù</i>	<i>óm̩mù=ŋ</i>	'rotten'

ónònò	ónònò = ñ	'smooth'
pà:dé:	pà:dé: = ñ	'bad'
pàlá	pàlá = ý	'long'
pěy	pěy = ý	'old'
pô:	pô: = ñ	'big'
púrùgù	púrùgù = ñ	'yellow'
sálà	sálà = ñ	'empty'
sé: <sup>n</sup>	sé: <sup>n</sup> = ñ	'good'
sèlé	sèlé = ý	'diluted, watery'
síndú	síndú = ý	'sharp (blade)'
sògòló	sògòló = ý	'multicolored'
tò:	tò: = ñ	'deep'
tòló	tòló = ý	'tall'
tónnò	tónnò = ñ	'hard'
wé:	wé: = ñ	'fresh (milk)'
wéy	wéy = ñ	'lightweight'
yòrú	yòrú = ý	'soft'
yòw	yòw = ñ	'nasty'
òlú	òlú = ý	'wet'

b. predicate based on EA that is also attested separately

ùdú	ùd-î:	ùd-í→ = ñ	'small'
—	tòpí:	tòpí: = ñ	'spotted'
—	sì:dî:	sì:dí: = ñ	'striped'
—	òrí:	òrí: = ñ	'very young'

c. predicate based on apparent EA that is not attested elsewhere

bánù	bán-ì = ñ	'red'
èllú	èllù = ý	'sweet'
~ èll-ì = ý		
kèllú	kèll-ì = ý	'cold'
pílù	píl-ì = ñ	'white'
wérù	wér-ì = ñ	'green'

#### 11.4.2 Negative adjectival and stative predicates

The positive form with *wò* is negated with *wò-ló* 'not be', e.g. *bánù wò-ló* 'not be red'. The tones of the adjective are not dropped.

The positive form with 'it is' clitic *=ñ* is negated by *=lă:*. Examples are *ùd-í→ =lă:* 'not be small', *yòrú =lă:* 'not be smooth', *dógòdò =lă:* 'not be heavy'.

Both *wò-ló* and *=lă:* are conjugated in their usual way.

## 11.5 Possessive predicates

### 11.5.1 ‘Have’ predicates

#### 11.5.1.1 Positive ‘X have Y’ (*sè*)

‘X have Y’ is expressed with X as subject (as in English). The predicate is *sè* ‘have’, which belongs to the set of stative quasi-verbs that have no active counterpart and that do not mark aspect (perfectivity). In positive main clauses without a focalized constituent, the existential particle in the form *yí* is required, alongside the NP denoting the possessum (339a). As usual, the existential particle is not allowed in clauses with a focalized constituent (339b).

- (339) a. *ídú yí sè-ñ̄*  
dog Exist have-1SgSbj  
‘I have a dog.’
- b. *ã: gìné (# yí) sè*  
who? house (# Exist) have  
‘Who has a house?’

The paradigm is (340).

- (340) category ‘have’

1Sg	<i>yí sè-ñ̄</i>
1Pl	<i>yí sè-ñ̄</i>
2Sg	<i>yí sè-w̄</i>
2Pl	<i>yí sè-ñ̄</i>
3Sg	<i>yí sè-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>yí sì-yà</i>

In relative clauses, the participial form used is *sè*: (§14.4.5.1), without the existential particle. The past forms are based on *sè=bè* (§10.5.1.9).

In addition to its function as the ‘have’ quasi-verb, *sè* also occurs as an auxiliary in the periphrastic future construction with *-d-à: sè*, or for a few verbs *-j-à: sè* (§10.2.2.7). The paradigm there is the same, except that the 3Pl form is *-d-à: sè-yyà*. Historically, it may be that *sì-yà* in *yí sì-yà* ‘they have’ is contracted from \**sè-yyà* under the influence of the preceding existential particle. Compare 3Sg *yí tò* ‘he/she/it is in’ with the particle versus *tò:* without it, and 3Pl counterparts *yí tì-yà* versus *tò-yyà* (§11.2.3.1).

#### 11.5.1.2 Negative ‘X not have Y’ (*sè-lé*)

The negative form of ‘have’ is *sè-lé*. The morphology is parallel to that of *wò-ló* ‘not be (somewhere)’ and *tò-ló* ‘not be in’, with other stative quasi-verbs.

- (341) category ‘not have’

1Sg	<i>sè-lè-ŋ̊</i>
1Pl	<i>sè-lè-ŋ̊</i>
2Sg	<i>sè-lé-ʷ</i>
2Pl	<i>sè-lé-ŋ̊</i>
3Sg	<i>sè-lé-∅</i>
3Pl	<i>sè-ñ-ní</i>

The existential participle is not allowed in negative clauses. A NP denoting the possesum is the only required element.

- (342) *gìné* *sè-lè-ŋ̊*  
 house have-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I don’t have a house.’

#### 11.5.2 ‘Y belong to X’ predicates

A predicate of (long-standing) possession consists of a possessor form with *mò* and the ‘it is’ clitic =*ŋ̊*, or by its negation =*lā:*. Pronominal possessors begin with an H-tone as they do elsewhere when used absolutely (without a noun). The 1Sg possessor form is reduced from expected #*m̊-mò* to *mò* (343b).

- (343) a. *gìnó=ð* [ə:] *mò]=ŋ̊*  
 house=Def [who?] Poss]=it.is  
 ‘The house belongs to who(m)?’
- b. *[pédò=ð* *wôy]* *ú-mò=ŋ̊ / mò=ŋ̊*  
 [sheep=Def all] 2Sg-Poss=it.is / 1Sg.Poss=it.is  
 ‘All the sheep are yours-Sg / mine.’
- c. *mò=lä: / ú-mò=lä:*  
 1Sg.Poss=it.is.not / 2Sg-Poss=it.is.not  
 ‘It isn’t mine/yours-Sg.’
- d. *[gìnè<sup>L</sup>* *kɔ:]* *[sé:dù* *mò]=ŋ̊*  
 [house<sup>L</sup> NearDist] [S Poss]=it.is  
 ‘That house (over there) is Seydou’s.’

## 12 Comparatives

### 12.1 Asymmetrical comparatives

A recurrent morpheme in asymmetrical comparatives is *sígé*, used as an invariant adverb ('more, to a greater extent') or conjugated as predicate ('be more' or in some contexts 'be better'). *sígé* is omitted in adjectival comparatives ('be longer').

Asymmetrical comparatives contrast one entity, usually the subject of the clause but occasionally another argument, with another entity (the **comparandum**) with respect to some scalar **domain of comparison**. The comparandum is usually expressed as a PP with the versatile postposition *lè* (instrumental, dative, temporal), here glossed 'than' (344a-b).

- (344) a. *mí* [ú *lè*] *sémbò=ò* *sígè-íj*  
1Sg [2Sg than] power=Def be.more-1SgSbj  
'I am stronger than you-Sg.'
- b. *mí* [ú *lè*] *sémbò=ò* *sígè-lè-íj*  
1Sg [2Sg than] power=Def be.more-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
'I am not stronger than you-Sg.'

With predication of possession ('have'), the comparandum may either take the form *X lè* plus adverb *sígé* 'more', or else *X bă:* without *sígé*.

- (345) a. ú [mí *lè*] *sígé* *kè:lé*  
2Sg [1Sg than] more money  
*sè-lé-w / sè-w*  
have-StatNeg-2SgSbj / have-2SgSbj  
'You-Sg don't have/(do) have more money than I (do).'
- b. ú [*mí bă:*] *kè:lé* *sè-lé-w / sè-w*  
2Sg [1Sg more.than] money have-StatNeg-2SgSbj / have-2SgSbj  
[=(a)]

*bă:* is also possible in symmetrical comparatives in the sense 'as much as' (346).

- (346) *mí* [ú *bă:*] *tê:* *ibè-íj / ibè-lè-íj*  
1Sg [2Sg as.much.as] tea like-1Sg / like-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
'I like / do not like tea as much as you-Sg.'

For *bă:* in the sense 'all the way from/to', see §15.3.3.

The two entities compared, normally the subject along with the comparandum with *lè*, are normally not overtly focalized, as we can see by the fact that verbs and other predicates are not forced to drop their pronominal-subject suffixes as in true subject focalization. However, the comparison does intrinsically highlight the compared entities by contrasting them, and this makes it difficult and perhaps impossible to overtly focalize a verb (by augmentation, i.e.

reduplication or vowel-lengthening) or a stative quasi-verb (by omitting an otherwise obligatory existential preverbal proclitic). On the latter point, note the absence of existential *yí* preceding *sè-wà* ‘you-Sg have’ in the positive version of (345a) above.

Regarding verbs, augmentation (in this case reduplication) is common in ordinary clauses like (347a), but it did not occur in spontaneously produced comparatives like (347b). My assistant, however stopped short of outright rejection of *jà-já:-dè-ñ* as ungrammatical in (347b), so I mark it with a question mark.

- (347) a. *já:* *gá:w* *já-já:-dè-ñ*  
meal a.lot Augm-eat-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
'I will eat (a meal).'
- b. *já:* *[ú* *lè]* *sígé*  
meal [2Sg than] more  
*já:-dè-ñ / (? já-já:-dè-ñ)*  
eat-Ipfv-1SgSbj / (? Augm-eat-Ipfv-1SgSbj)  
'I will eat more than you-Sg.'

### 12.1.1 Comparative adjectival predicate

#### 12.1.1.1 Productive type ('be redder', 'be longer')

The same segmental and tonal form of an adjective that is used in modifying function within a NP can be the predicate of a comparative. There is no *wò* ‘be’ or ‘it is’ clitic =*ŋ* as in ordinary adjectival predicates (§11.4.1.2). Negation is by stative negative *-lá*, with fixed vowel quality, after {L}-toned stem. (348a-d) each show positive and negative counterparts. The predicative adjective may be conjugated suffixally for 1st/2nd person subject (348d) or with *-yà* for 3Pl (348e).

- (348) a. *[tibù* *ŋgɔ̄]* *[kɔ̄:* *lè]* *bánù / báñù-lá*  
[stone Prox] [NearDist than] red / red-StatNeg  
'This stone is/is not redder than that one.'
- b. *[súŋ* *m̄-m̄ð]* *[[súŋ* *ù-m̄ð]* *lè]* *pàlá / pálá-lá*  
[rope 1Sg-Poss] [[rope 2Sg-Poss] than] long / long-StatNeg  
'My rope is/is not longer than your rope.'
- c. *[di:* *ŋgɔ̄]* *[[di:* *kɔ̄:]* *lè]* *númð / nùmð-lá*  
[water Prox] [water NearDist] than] hot / hot-StatNeg  
'This water is/is not hotter than that water.'
- d. *[ú* *lè]* *tòlò-ñ / tòlò-lò-ñ*  
[2Sg than] tall-1SgSbj / tall-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
'I am/am not taller than you-Sg.'
- e. *[ú* *lè]* *tòlò-yà / tòlò-lò-yà*  
[2Sg than] tall-3PlSbj / tall-StatNeg-3PlSbj  
'They are/are not taller than you-Sg.'

Conjugatable past = *bè* can be added: *pàlá=bè-* ‘was longer’, negative *pàlá=bè-lé-* ‘was not longer’.

The adjective may also function like a participle in a relative clause, positive (349a) or negative (349b).

- (349) a. [sùŋ<sup>L</sup> [kɔ̄: lè] pàlá] dènnè-dè-ṇj  
          [rope<sup>L</sup> [NearDist than] long] look.for-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
          ‘I’m looking for a rope (that is) longer than that (one).’
- b. [sùŋ<sup>L</sup> [kɔ̄: lè] pàlā-lá] dènnè-dè-ṇj  
          [rope<sup>L</sup> [NearDist than] long-StatNeg] look.for-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
          ‘I’m looking for a rope (that is) not longer than that (one).’

#### 12.1.1.2 ‘Be more (in quantity)’ (*gă:*)

For ‘be more numerous’ and more generally ‘be in greater quantity, outweigh’, *gă:* and its negation *gà:-lá* are used (350a). This is evidently the same construction as the productive one (see just above), but *gă:* is not attested as a modifying adjective. Instead, it is the predicative equivalent of adverbial quantifier *gă:w* ‘a lot’, which behaves like numerals rather than adjectives tonosyntactically (§6.4.3). *gă:w* itself may occur nonpredicatively in comparatives with *sigé* ‘more’ (350b).

- (350) a. [ògùlú rà:] jómó [ké:<sup>n</sup> lè] gă:/gà:-lá  
          [the.bush Loc] hare [squirrel than] much / much-StatNeg  
          ‘Hares are (not) more numerous out in the bush than squirrels.’
- b. mí [[ú lè] sigé] tê: gă:w sè-ṇj  
          1SgSbj [[2Sg than] more] tea a.lot have-1SgSbj  
          ‘I have more tea than you-Sg (do).’

In (350b), existential *yí* is omitted before ‘have’ to mark the predicate as non-focalized.

#### 12.1.1.3 ‘Be more/better’ as predicate (conjugated *sigé*)

*sigé* ‘more’ can be conjugated as a predicate in the sense ‘be more’. If as in (351a-b) a domain of comparison is not specified and the subject does not denote an obviously measurable commodity, the default interpretation is ‘be better’, competing with *èré* (on which see the following section).

- (351) a. sé:dù [mí lè] sigé-∅  
          S [1Sg than] be.better-3SgSbj  
          ‘Seydou is better than me.’
- b. ú [mí lè] sigé-w  
          2Sg [1Sg than] be.better-2SgSbj  
          ‘You-Sg are better than me.’

Paradigms are in (352). The positive version has affinities to the perfective positive paradigm of regular verbs, notably including 3Pl suffix *-yà*. The {LH} overlay is also shared with that paradigm, but here it is more systematic, extending to 2Pl (not just 2Sg) and the two third-person forms. The negative version, however, is a straightforward stative negative paradigm.

	'be more/better'	'not be more'
1Sg	<i>sigè-ñ</i>	<i>sigè-lè-ñ</i>
1Pl	<i>sigè-ñ</i>	<i>sigè-lè-ñ</i>
2Sg	<i>sigò-w</i>	<i>sigè-lè-w</i>
2Pl	<i>sigè-ñ</i>	<i>sigè-lè-ñ</i>
3Sg	<i>sigé-Ø</i>	<i>sigè-lé-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>sigú-yà</i>	<i>sigè-ñ-ní</i>

The domain of comparison may be expressed by a preposed, topic-like NP or PP.

(353)	[ <i>nàmà</i> <sup>L-HL</sup> <i>tâ:</i> <i>rà:]</i> ú      [ <i>mí</i> <i>lè]</i> <i>sigò-w</i>
	[meat <sup>L-HL</sup> shoot Loc] 2SgSbj [1Sg than] be.better-2SgSbj

'You-Sg are better (or: more active) than me at hunting.'

Participles (in definite form) are *sigé=gò* ~ *sigó=ò* '(the one who) is more'. Conjugatable past forms are *sigé=bè-* 'was more' and negative *sigé=bè-lé-*.

#### 12.1.1.4 'Be better' (conjugated *èré*)

The quasi-verb *èré* can be conjugated for subject. The positive and negative paradigms (354) are of the same type as we just saw with *sigé* (preceding section).

	'be better'	'not be better'
1Sg	<i>èrè-ñ</i>	<i>èrè-lè-ñ</i>
1Pl	<i>èrè-ñ</i>	<i>èrè-lè-ñ</i>
2Sg	<i>èrò-w</i>	<i>èrè-lè-w</i>
2Pl	<i>èrè-ñ</i>	<i>èrè-lè-ñ</i>
3Sg	<i>èré-Ø</i>	<i>èrè-lá-Ø</i>
3Pl	<i>èré-yà</i>	<i>èrè-ñ-ní</i>

The past forms are *èré=bè-* 'was better' and *èré=bè-lé-* 'was not better'. *èré* may function without change as a participle, with definite clitic *èré=gò* ~ *èrò=ò* '(the one who) is better'.

For adverbial uses of invariant *èré*, see §12.1.2.2, below.

*èré* has no other sense than '(be) better'. *sigé* 'more' can extend into the sense 'better' when no other basis for comparison is specified.

### 12.1.2 Asymmetrical comparatives with adverb and comparandum

In these constructions, a regular VP is expanded by adding an adverb (arguably a chained verb) meaning ‘more’ or ‘better’ and a comparandum with postposition *lè*.

#### 12.1.2.1 VP plus adverbial *sigé* ‘more’

When combined with a following conjugated verb denoting an activity that serves as domain of comparison, *sigé* is invariant, like an adverb or chained verb.

- (355) *ú [mí lè] sigé gɔ:-dɔ-w*  
2Sg [1Sg than] more dance-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
‘You-Sg dance more than me.’

#### 12.1.2.2 VP plus adverbial *èré* ‘better’

This is similar to the preceding, but replaces *sigé* with *èré* ‘better’.

- (356) *ú [mí lè] èré gɔ:-dɔ-w*  
2SgSbj [1Sg than] better dance-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
‘You-Sg dance better than me.’

### 12.1.3 ‘Surpass’ (*gàlá*)

The verb ‘pass (by)’ is *gàlá*. It can be used in the sense ‘(come to) surpass (X)’ with respect to some scalar quality. The latter is expressed as a loosely chained verb, in anterior subordinated form. An adjectival quality is therefore expressed with a deadjectival inchoative verb.

- (357) a. *wò=í gàb-â: gàl-i-í*  
3Sg=Acc become.tall-PastAnt pass-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I have surpassed him/her in height.’
- b. *wò=í gàb-á:-nì gă:-jè-í*  
3Sg=Acc become.tall-Ant-Nonpast Augm.pass-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
‘I will surpass him/her in height.’
- c. *wò=í [kè:lé dènn-â:] gàl-i-í*  
3Sg=Acc [money look.for-PastAnt] pass-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I have surpassed him in wealth.’

### 12.1.4 Superlative ‘most’, ‘best’

‘Be the most/best of the X’s’ is expressed as ‘be more/better than all X’s’.

- (358) *sé:dù [dànná:-nà wôy lè] sìgé-*Ø  
 S [hunter-Sg all than] be.more-3SgSbj  
 ‘Seydou is the best hunter.’

Two superlative constructions involving the adjective *sǎw* ‘clever’ occurred in a text in the context ‘hare is the cleverest of all animals’. One version was the regular adjectival comparative, with ‘all’ specifically included in the comparandum NP (359a). The other was an iterated adjective (359b).

- (359) a. *[[ògùlù-nàmá wôy] lè] nê: wó sàw*  
 [[outback-meat all] than] now 3SgSbj clever  
 ‘Now he is the cleverest of all the wild animals.’
- b. *[íyè námmà] sàw-sǎw=gò [bé gì-â:]*  
 [today until.now] clever-clever=Def [3PlSbj say-PastAnt]  
 ‘To this day, they say (=recognize) that he is the clever(est) one.’

## 12.2 Symmetrical comparatives

### 12.2.1 ‘Equal’ (*kéy-kèy*, *kêw*, *bă:*, *dጀ:*)

*kéy-kèy* is an adverbial that is made predicative by adding the conjugatable quasi-verb *wò* ‘be’. A symmetrical comparative with this as predicate can be structured with a subject and a PP with either *bă:* ‘as much as’ or *lè* ‘than’ (here: ‘as much as’) (360a). Or the comparanda can be rolled up into a plural subject (360b). The subject can be of any pronominal category. The basis of comparison (e.g. ‘height) is expressed by a bare NP.

- (360) a. *wó [mí lè / bă:] gòbě: kéy-kèy wò-*Ø  
 3Sg [1Sg as.much.as] height equal be-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She is the same height as me.’
- b. *[ém lè wôy] tòlò-tòlɔ́=s kéy-kèy wò-yà*  
 [1Pl two all] Iter-tall=Def equal be-1PlSbj  
 ‘The two of us are equal in height.’

Predictably, *kéy-kèy wò* ‘be equal’ is negated as *kéy-kèy wò-ló* ‘not be equal’.

*kêw* is used without an auxiliary as a predicate ‘be equal, be the same’. My assistant is most comfortable with this construction when the comparanda are rolled into a plural subject (361a-b).

- (361) a. *wó lè [mí lè] gòbě: kêw*  
 [3Sg and] [1Sg and] height equal  
 ‘He/She and I are of the same height.’
- b. *[ém lè wôy] tòlò-tòlɔ́=s kêw*  
 [1Pl two all] Iter-tall=Def equal  
 ‘the two of us are equal in height.’

*kēw* is negated as *kēw-lá*, 3Pl *kēw-lá-yà*.

*dጀ:* ‘arrive (at)’ can be used in the sense ‘attain the level of, come to equal (X, in some way)’. Its negation ‘(still) has not attained the level of X’ can of course be used in asymmetrical comparatives.

- (362) *wò=íj dጀ:-n-ní*  
3Sg=Acc arrive.at-PfvNeg-3PISbj  
‘They have not (yet/ever) equalled him.’

# 13 Focalization and interrogation

## 13.1 Focalization

### 13.1.1 Basic syntax of focalization

Focalization is not well-developed in DS, at least in the speech of my assistant. Overt focalization of a preverbal constituent is most easily detected when a non-3Sg subject pronoun is focalized, so that the expected pronominal-subject suffix on the verb is missing. Focalization is sometimes detectable by observing the fronting of a non-subject focalized constituent to the left of an overt subject in otherwise clause-initial position, but this fronting is not systematic. In positive main clauses involving certain quasi-verbs ('be', 'have', 'be in'), the absence of otherwise obligatory existential particle *yv* also indicates that the predicate is not focal. Likewise for positive perfective, imperfective, and derived stative forms of regular verbs, the absence of either *yv* or augmentation (reduplication, vowel-lengthening) indicates that the verb is not focal.

When the verb follows one or more other constituents (NPs, adverbs, etc.), the verb often reduced to an {L}-toned, unaugmented form. A verb reduced in this way can be considered to be defocalized. However, since the reduction is usual in clauses of reasonable length, the presence of a reduced verb does not entail that any specific preverbal constituent is focalized.

#### 13.1.1.1 Which constituents can and cannot be focalized?

NP subjects and objects (including pronouns), and adverbial phrases (including PPs and simple adverbs), can be focalized. The NP complement of a postposition cannot be focalized as such, rather the whole PP is focalized.

Verb (and VP) focalization can be expressed in positive perfective, imperfective, and derived stative clauses by adding the augment (reduplication or first-vowel lengthening).

#### 13.1.1.2 Linear position and form of focalized constituent

There is no focus particle or other morphological marking of the focalized constituent, other than the requirement that this constituent must be overt.

Under some conditions, the focalized constituent may be fronted, but this is not consistent. See §13.1.4 for discussion of object fronting over a subject NP.

### 13.1.2 Verbs in focalized clauses

#### 13.1.2.1 Propositional truth-value focalization

Truth value focalization ('I did go!') is the same as clause-level "emphasis" as expressed by emphatic particles (§19.5).

### 13.1.2.2 VP focalization with {HL} verb plus *jă:*

*jă:* occurs elsewhere as a purposive element after PPs with postposition *lè* (§8.3.1). My assistant also used *jă:* in what appear to be VP clefts with the VP in nominalized form with {HL} overlay on the verb, and with ‘do’ as predicate.

- (363) a. [yă: <sup>HL</sup>yâ:] *jă:* *kàn-ù-w*  
           [weeping(n) <sup>HL</sup>weep] Purp do-Pfv-2SgSbj  
           ‘Weeping is what you-Sg did.’
- b. [*péðò=ð=j* <sup>HL</sup>sémè / <sup>HL</sup>dónò] *jă:* *kàn-ù-w*  
           [sheep=Def=Acc <sup>HL</sup>slaughter / <sup>HL</sup>sell] Purp do-Pfv-2SgSbj  
           ‘Slaughter/Selling the sheep is what you-Sg did.’

There appears to be no purposive element in the semantics. *jă:* in this construction likely goes back to the original sense ‘take’.

### 13.1.2.3 Augmented verb forms as verb or VP focalizers

Augmented verb forms can focalize the verb, and by extension the VP. Augmentation takes the form of initial *Cv-* reduplication for monosyllabics, or first-vowel lengthening for nonmonosyllabics, in both cases along with tone overlays. Augmentation is possible in the perfective positive (§10.2.1.2), the imperfective positive (§10.2.2.2), and the stative positive if derived from an active verb (§10.4.1). There is no augmented form for underived stative quasi-verbs like *wò* ‘be’. Augmentation is possible only in unfocalized positive main clauses.

“Focalization” of a verb or VP is not quite as simple semantically as focalization of other constituents. An augmented form is not required in answers to ‘what are you doing?’ questions, for example. In the imperfective positive, an augmented verb tends to have future, rather than general present, time reference. For statives, see the sections mentioned in chapter 10 for discussion.

The connection of augmentation to verb focus is suggested indirectly by the fact that augmentation is not allowed when some other constituent is clearly focalized, as in WH questions. Consider the augmented perfective (364a), the augmented imperfective (364b), and the augmented stative (364c), all of which can occur in main clauses with no other focalized constituent.

- (364) a. *ídú*      *bě:nd-è-j*  
       dog      Augm-hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I hit (the) dog.’ (< *běndé*)
- b. *ídú*      *bě:ndé-dè-j*  
       dog      Augm-hit-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I will hit (the) dog.’
- c. *dă:yà-j*  
     Augm.sit.Stat-1SgSbj  
     ‘I am sitting (=in a seated position).’

If the subject is clearly focalized, as in ‘who?’-subject questions, the augmentation is not allowed (365a-c).

- (365) a. *ă: idú bènd-è / (# bě:nd-è )*  
           who?      dog      hit-Pfv / (#Augm.hit-Pfv)  
           ‘Who hit (the) dog?’
- b. *ă: idú bèndè-dè / (# bě:ndé-dè )*  
           who      dog      hit-Ipfv / (#Augm.hit-Ipfv)  
           ‘Who will hit (the) dog?’
- c. *ă: dàŋà / (# dǎ:ŋà )*  
           who?      sit.Stat / (# Augm.sit.Stat)  
           ‘Who is sitting (=in seated position).’

The augmented form is also disallowed if a nonsubject constituent other than the verb is focalized. (366) illustrates this with intrinsically focal ‘where?’

- (366) *idó=ò=ò [yɔgɔ] rà:]*  
       dog           [which?           Loc]  
*bèndè-dò-w / (# bě:ndé-dò-w )*  
       hit-Ipfv-2SgSbj / (#Augm.hit-Ipfv-2SgSbj)  
       ‘Where will you-Sg hit the dog?’

#### 13.1.2.4 Form of verb following a focalized constituent

There are no “participial” forms of verbs in focalized clauses, of the sort seen in relative clauses. Regular AN-inflected forms of verbs occur, except for the absence of pronominal-subject marking in subject focalized clauses (see below). The preceding section has showed that augmented verb stems are not allowed in the presence of a focal constituent.

In a sentence with preverbal constituents, the H-tones of the verb are often dropped, whether or not any of the preverbal constituents is singled out as the focus. This could be attributed to downdrift. As a result, there is no reliable phonological or morphological marking of the verb to indicate that it co-occurs with a focalized constituent.

However, focalized subjects including 1st/2nd person pronouns conspicuously lack the usual suffixal pronominal-subject agreement on the verb (next section, below).

#### 13.1.3 Subject focalization

The subject (NP or pronoun) must be overt. The verb takes unmarked form with AN inflection (aspect/negation), but without an overt pronominal-subject suffix. It is homophonous to the zero 3Sg subject form of the relevant inflectional category, but there is no reason to mark it up as morphologically a 3Sg-subject form. Focalized (367a) corresponds to unfocalized (367b) with pronominal-subject suffix.

- (367) a. *mí / émmè*      *bò-jè*  
           1Sg / 1Pl      go-Ipfv  
           'It's I/we [focus] who will go.'
- b. *bō:-jè-ñ*  
     Augm.go-Ipfv-1SgSbj/1PlSbj  
     'I/We will go.' (< *bòló*)

Subjects follow scene-setting temporal adverbs in focalized clauses. Unfocalized (368a) adds a focalized subject in (368b), between the setting adverb and the object.

- (368) a. *gà:lí*      *nǔŋ*      *wàl-i-ñ*  
           last year      cowpea      do.farming-Pfv-1SgSbj/1PlSbj  
           'I/We cultivated cowpeas last year.'
- b. *gà:lí*      *mí / émmè*      *nǔŋ*      *wàl-i*  
           last year      1Sg/1Pl      cowpea      do.farming-Pfv  
           'It's I/we [focus] who cultivated cowpeas last year.'

#### 13.1.4 Object focalization

A focalized object must be overt, but it takes the same (for example, accusative) form as in unfocalized clauses. The only difference between focalized and unfocalized clauses is that the object is optionally fronted to the left of the subject in the focalized clause. I was most successful in eliciting clauses with object fronting in cases like (369c) of the type ‘That’s what ...’ with a demonstrative as focus.

- (369) a. *mì=ñ*      *bènd-è-w*  
           1Sg=Acc      hit-Pfv-2SgSbj  
           'It's me [focus] that you-Sg hit.'  
           or: 'You-Sg hit me.'
- b. *sé:dù*      *mì=ñ*      *bènd-è-Ø*  
           S      1Sg=Acc      hit-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'It's me [focus] that Seydou hit.'  
           or: 'Seydou hit me.'
- c. *kɔ:*      *sé:dù*      *dènnè-dè-Ø*  
           NearDist      S      look.for-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           'That [focus] is what Seydou is looking for.'

#### 13.1.5 Focalization of PP or other adverbial phrase

An adverb or adverbial phrase, such as a locational PP, shows no consistent overt sign of focalization in morphology or linear position. (370a) can be interpreted as focalizing or not focalizing the PP. However, especially with a demonstrative, a focalized PP can be fronted as in (370b).

- (370) a. (*mí* [ògùlú] *rà:*] *kōj=gɔ* *pàd-i-ñ*  
          (1Sg) [outback Loc] daba=Def leave-Pfv-1SgSbj  
          ‘It was in the fields [focus] that I left the daba (hoe).’  
          or: ‘I left the daba in the fields.’
- b. [*ŋgɔ* *lè*] *sé:dù* *wálù* *kàn-jè-*Ø  
          [Prox Inst] S work(n) do-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
          ‘It’s with this [focus] that Seydou works.’

## 13.2 Interrogatives

### 13.2.1 Polar (yes/no) interrogatives

#### 13.2.1.1 Final L-tone

In my assistant’s speech, a polar question has the same form as a declarative, except that the question has a final floating L-tone. There is no audible difference if the declarative already ends in an L-tone (371a). If it ends in an H-tone, the interrogative changes it to falling tone. In (371b), the floating L pushes the H-tone back from the suffixal sonorant to the vowel of the final syllable (§3.7.4.5). In (371c), the final H-toned vowel is lengthened to accomodate the contour falling tone (§3.7.4.1). In each of these examples the form of the verb in the declarative version follows the free translation in parentheses.

- (371) a. (*ú* *ibè* *bɔ:-jè-w*  
          (2Sg) market Augm.go-Ipfv-2SgSbj.Q  
          ‘You-Sg are going to the market?’, ‘Are you-Sg going to the market?’  
          (< *bɔ:-jè-w*)
- b. *yèl-é-ñ*  
     come-Pfv-1SgSbj.Q  
     ‘I came?’, ‘Did I come?’ (< *yèl-è-ñ*)
- c. *sé:dù* *yèl-lí:-Ø*  
     S come-PfvNeg-3SgSbj.Q  
     ‘Seydou hasn’t come?’, ‘Hasn’t Seydou come?’ (< *yèl-lí-Ø*)

In interlinears, a final “.Q” indicates this question intonation.

#### 13.2.1.2 Clause-final *mà→*

When the implied alternative proposition is overt, as in (372), my assistant adds *mà→*. He prefers not to use it in ordinary polar interrogatives and does not use it after content interrogatives like ‘who?’ and ‘what?’. Some other speakers make more extensive use of the particle.

As with its counterparts in other Dogon languages, there is an issue whether *mà→* is at heart a polar interrogative particle or an ‘or’ disjunction. The two are closely related logically.

*mâ→* usually follows the first proposition only. Prosodically, the two propositions can be phrased seamlessly, or there can be a prosodic break after *mâ→*.

(372)	<i>ibè</i>	<i>bō:-jè-̀w</i>	<i>mâ→</i>	<i>bòlé-èlò-̀w</i>
	market	Augm.go-Ipfv-2SgSbj	Q	go-IpfvNeg-2SgSbj
	'Are you going to the market, or not going?'			

*mâ→* is realized as L-toned in most contexts, though subject to intonational effects. However, when it follows a 3Sg or 3Pl perfective positive, the verb drops to L-tone, and a falling tone appears on *mâ→*. The tonology here is similar to that of the same perfectives before =*yò* 'if'; see §3.7.3.3 for analysis. The perfective paradigm of 'come' illustrates the difference between third person and 1st/2nd person interrogatives.

(373)	gloss	statement	question
-------	-------	-----------	----------

a. initial H-tone shifts to interrogative particle, creating HL-tone

'he came'	<i>yél-è-</i> Ø	<i>yél-è-</i> Ø <i>mâ→</i>
'they came'	<i>yél-i-yà</i>	<i>yél-i-yà</i> <i>mâ→</i>

b. interrogative particle remains L-toned

'I came'	<i>yél-è-́j</i>	<i>yél-è-́j</i> <i>mâ→</i>
'we came'	<i>yél-è-́j</i>	<i>yél-è-́j</i> <i>mâ→</i>
'you-Sg came'	<i>yél-è-́w</i>	<i>yél-è-́w</i> <i>mâ→</i>
'you-Pl came'	<i>yél-é-́j</i>	<i>yél-é-́j</i> <i>mâ→</i>

In the 2Pl form in (373b), the H-tone optionally spreads (phonetically) to the nasal suffix before the L-toned particle: [jèlé́j̃mâ→].

With I-class verbs, the 3Sg perfective -*i*-Ø is rounded to -*ù*-Ø before the labial in *mâ→* if there is another rounded vowel in the preceding syllable, optionally otherwise: *pàd-i-*Ø *mâ→* ~ *pàd-ù-*Ø *mâ→* 'did he/she leave (it)?', nearly always *bòl-ù-*Ø *mâ→* 'did he/she go?'.

*mâ→* occurs more systematically in quoted questions, and in complements of 'not know (that/whether...)' and 'forget', see §17.2.1.2-3.

Short answers to polar interrogatives are *đn'ħđn'* 'uh-huh' (i.e. 'yes') and *ăy* or *đn'?* 'no!'

### 13.2.1.3 Clitic =*lò* or =*là* (rhetorical tag question)

This clitic is added to the verb as a rhetorical question marker. The utterance functions pragmatically as a statement rather than as a question. The tonal treatment after third-person perfective verbs is the same as for =*yò* 'if' (§16.1), resulting in =*lò:* or =*lâ:* after an L-toned verb. I gloss the particle as 'right?' in interlinears, but it can usually be disregarded in idiomatic translations.

(374)	<i>iyè</i>	<i>jòmò=ý</i>	<i>ág-à:</i>	<i>bèli-m-i-</i> Ø = <i>lò:</i> ,
	today	hare=Acc	catch-PastAnt	get-Pass-Pfv-3SgSbj=right?,
	<i>yògđ-njì:</i>	<i>kán-j-i</i>	<i>mâ→</i>	
	how?	do-Ipfv-3PlSbj	Q	

'(They said:) hare has been caught and is in custody, right? So (now) what will we do?'

### 13.2.2 Content (WH) interrogatives

The interrogative word is presumably focalized but this is usually covert. Even as subjects, ‘who?’ and ‘what?’ have 3Sg agreement, which is indistinguishable from the absence of pronominal-subject marking on the verb under subject focalization. ‘Who?’ and ‘what?’ have predicative forms including the ‘it is’ clitic. Adverbial interrogatives occur without the clitic in predicative form, which is identical to the isolation form (e.g. ‘when?’).

#### 13.2.2.1 ‘Who?’ (*ă:*)

The human WH interrogative noun is *ă:*. It occurs in the normal range of syntactic environments for NPs. When it is clear that multiple individuals will be involved, plural *-mbè* is optionally added (375a), but it is infrequent. /LHL/-toned *ă:* reduces to /LH/-toned *ă:* when its final L-tone is realized on the tautosyllabic ‘it is’ or accusative enclitic.

- (375) a. *ă:(-mbè)*      *bò-jè*  
**who?**(-Pl)      go-Ipfv  
‘Who will go?’
- b. *[fɪbè*      *rà:]*      *ă:=jè*      *wè-è-wè*  
[market      Loc]      **who?**=Acc      see-Pfv-2SgSbj  
‘Who(m) did you-Sg see in the market?’
- c. *ă:=jè*  
**who?**=it.is  
‘Who is it?’ (e.g. to someone knocking at the door)
- d. *ă:=jè*      *bè*  
**who?**=it.is      be.Past  
‘Who was it?’
- e. *[[ă:*      *mò=đ]*      *rà:]*      *ùnj-è:-dè-jè*  
[[**who?**      Poss=Def] Loc]      lie.down-MP-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
‘At whose place will we sleep?’
- f. *[gìnè<sup>L</sup>*      *ŋgɔ̄]*      *[ă:*      *mò]=jè*  
[house<sup>L</sup>      Prox]      [**who?**      Poss]=it.is  
‘Whose house is this?’ (lit. “This house is whose?”)

#### 13.2.2.2 ‘What?’ (*injú* ~ *ñjí* ~ *injé:*), ‘with what?’, ‘why?’

The nonhuman interrogative noun is *injú* ‘what?’ It may be reduced to *ñjí* with no clearly articulated initial vowel. Another variant is *ñjí*. Before the ‘it is’ clitic it becomes *injé:* (376c).

- (376) a. *injú*      *kàn-ì*  
**what?**      happen-Pfv  
‘What (has) happened?’

- b. *ú        injú        jè-è-w*  
2Sg    what?    eat-Pfv-2SgSbj  
'What did you-Sg eat?'
- c. *kó        injé:=j*  
NearDist    what?=it.is  
'What is that?'
- d. *injú        kánà        wò-w*  
what?    do    be-2SgSbj  
'What are you doing?'

With instrumental postposition *lè* we get ‘with what?’ (377a). With *jă:*, with or without an instrumental postposition, cf. §8.3.1, we get ‘why?’ (377b).

- (377) a. *[injú        lè]        tò:-dò-w*  
[what?    Inst]    sow-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
'With what will you plant (the seeds)?'
- b. *[injú        (lè)]        jă:        yèl-è-w*  
[what?    (Dat)]    Purp    come-Pfv-2SgSbj  
'Why have you-Sg come?'
- c. *sé:dù        injú        jă:        yèl-è-Ø*  
S        what?    Purp    come-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'Why did Seydou come?'

### 13.2.2.3 ‘Where?’ (*yògó rà:*, *yògó-nì*)

The location interrogative has two forms. One is *yògó rà:*, literally ‘at which (one)?’ with locative postposition *rà*. This could also be written as one word, *yògó-rà:*. The less common alternative is *yògó nì*, with an alternative locative postposition (§8.2.2). As predicate, as when asking the location of an event such as a concert that one has been talking about, no ‘it is’ particle is present (378b).

- (378) a. *[yògó        rà:]        bò-jò-w*  
[which?    Loc]    go-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
'Where are you-Sg going?'
- b. *yògó        rà:*  
which?    Loc  
'Where (is it)?'
- c. *ú        [yògó        rà:]        wò-w*  
2Sg    [which?    Loc]    be-2SgSbj  
'Where are you-Sg?'

### 13.2.2.4 ‘When?’ (*wàgùrù<sup>L</sup> yògós] lè*, etc.)

Combining noun *wágùrù* ‘time, point in time’ with *yògós* ‘which?’ and postposition *lè* in its temporal function, we get a phrase meaning ‘when?’ (379a). Another noun like *úgós* ‘month’ can also be used instead of ‘time’ (379b). For ‘which day?’ a special form *yògúnà* is available (379c). The ‘it is’ clitic is absent from the predicative form (379d).

- (379) a. *[wàgùrù<sup>L</sup> yògós] lè] yè-jò-w*  
          [[time<sup>L</sup>      **which?**] Temp] come-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
        ‘When will you-Sg come?’
- b. *[ùgós<sup>L</sup> yògós] lè] yè-jò-w*  
          [[month<sup>L</sup>      **which?**] Temp] come-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
        ‘In which month will you-Sg come?’
- c. *yògúnà      yè-jò-w*  
     **which.day?**      come-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
        ‘On which day will you-Sg come?’
- d. *[wàgùrù<sup>L</sup> yògós] lè*  
          [time<sup>L</sup>      **which?**] Temp  
        ‘When (is it)?’

### 13.2.2.5 ‘How?’ (*yògós-njì:*)

The manner interrogative is *yògós-njì*. It can be used as an alternative to *injú* ‘what?’ with the simple verb ‘do’ (380b).

- (380) a. *yògós-njì: wálù kàn-jò-w*  
     **how?**      work(n) do-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
        ‘How do you-Sg work?’
- b. *yògós-njì: kàn-jè-ñ*  
     **how?**      do-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
        ‘How (=what) will we do?’
- c. *yògós-njì [pègéléy dà] yû: wàlà-dè-ñ*  
     **how?**      [hill      Loc] millet do.farming-Ipfv-2PlSbj  
        ‘How do you-Pl farm millet on the (rocky) hill?’
- d. *yògós-njì:  
     how?*  
        ‘How (is it)?’
- e. *yògós-njì: bè-Ø*  
     **how?**      be.Past-3SgSbj  
        ‘How was it?’

### 13.2.2.6 ‘How much/many?’ (*àŋá*)

The interrogative of quantity is *àŋá*. It can be used with masses ('how much sugar?') or count nouns ('how many sheep?'). As predicate, the 'it is' particle is absent especially in one-word questions (381a), but is used when a separate topic (subject) is present (381b). Alternatively, if the entities are physically present, *wò* 'be' can occur (381c), in which case *àŋá* is grouped syntactically with the the subject (381c). When combined with a noun or NP, it is generally phrased separately, as though in apposition. Nouns that have plurals take plural form. However, postpositions are added only once, to *àŋá*. The accusative clitic is not used with *àŋá* even in human contexts (381g).

- (381) a. *àŋá*  
how.much?  
'How much (is it)?'
- b. *bé      àŋá=ŋ̩*  
3Pl      how.many?=it.is  
'How many are they?' (with final L-tone)
- c. *[bé      àŋá]      wò-yyà*  
[3Pl      how.many?]      be-3PlSbj  
'How many of them are there (=are present)?'
- d. *[pédù / nàŋá      àŋá]      èb-ð-w*  
[sheep / cow      how.many?]      buy-Pfv-2SgSbj  
'How many sheep/cows did you-Sg buy?'
- e. *[yà:-ŋ̩      àŋá]      yèl-ì-yà*  
[woman-Pl      how.many?]      come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
'How many women came?'
- f. *[kõŋ      àŋá      lè]      yû:      wàlà-dð-w*  
[daba      how.many?      Inst]      millet      do.farming-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
'With how many dabas (=hoes) do you-Sg do farming?'
- g. *[úlù-ŋ      àŋá]      bènd-è-w*  
[child-Pl      how.many?]      hit-Pfv-2SgSbj  
'How many children did you-Sg hit?'
- h. *bármð=ð      àŋá-àŋà*  
pot=Def      how.much?-how.much?  
'How much (each) are the pots?' (distributive, §4.6.1.6)

*àŋá* is optionally extended by incorporating the possessive marker *mð*, the combination being pronounced *àŋá-mð* or (irregularly assimilated) *àŋá-mà*. This quantifies the commodity by its price rather than, say, weight.

- (382) *súgɔrò*      *àŋá-mò*      *nàmò-w*  
 sugar      how.many/much?-Poss      want-2SgSbj  
 ‘You want sugar for how much (price)?’

Because of the more or less appositional construction, combinations like (383) can be expressed directly, without an explicit partitive as in English *how many of...*

- (383) *[nàŋá      ù-mò]*      *àŋá*      *yìm-è*  
 [cow      2Sg-Poss]      how.many?      die-Pfv  
 ‘How many of your cows have died?’

Ordinal adjective ‘how-manieth?’ (Fr *quantième*) is *àŋà-ènné*. This is the regular ordinal formation (§4.6.2.2).

### 13.2.2.7 ‘Which?’ (*yògó*)

The interrogative identificational adjective is *yògó*. As with other modifying adjectives, a preceding noun is tone-dropped. If the modified NP is possessed or determined, *yògó* is treated as appositional and has no tonal effect on the NP (384c). The accusative clitic is present for a specific human direct object (384e).

- (384) a. *[[àndà<sup>L</sup>      yògó]]      rà:]      gò:-dò-w*  
 [[village<sup>L</sup>      which?]]      Loc      go.out-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
 ‘What (=which) village are you-Sg from?’
- b. *[nàŋá<sup>L</sup>      yògó]      dònò-dò-w*  
 [cow<sup>L</sup>      which?]      sell-Ipfv-2SgSbj  
 ‘Which cow are you selling?’
- c. *[nàŋá      ù-mò]      yògó      dònò-d-à:      sè-w*  
 [cow      2Sg-Poss]      which?]      sell-Ipfv-PastAnt      have-2SgSbj  
 ‘Which of your cows will you-Sg sell?’
- d. *[yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>      yògó]      ù=í      bònd-i*  
 [woman-Sg<sup>L</sup>      which?]      2Sg=Acc      call-Pfv  
 ‘Which woman called you-Sg?’
- e. *[yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>      yògó=í]      bònd-ù-w*  
 [woman-Sg<sup>L</sup>      which?=Acc]      call-Pfv-2SgSbj  
 ‘Which woman did you-Sg call?’

### 13.2.3 Embedded interrogatives

Questions embedded under a verb like ‘(not) know’ have their regular form, except that question particle *mà→* is obligatory.

- (385) a. [â:            yè-je            mà→]    innè-í  
       [who?        come-Ipfv      Q]        not.know-1SgSbj  
       'I don't know who is coming.'
- b. [sé:dù            yé-jè            mà→]    innè-í  
       [S            come-Ipfv      Q]        not.know-1SgSbj  
       'I don't know whether Seydou is coming.'

For the structure of quoted clauses in general, see §17.1. Quoted interrogatives are illustrated in (386). The subject of the quoted question is in a quotative-subject phrase (§17.1.3.2). Question particle *mà→* is obligatory.

- (386) a. [sé:dù / úlù-ì    wà]        [[yògò    rà:]    bò-jò    mà→]  
       [S    / child-Pl QuotSbj]    [[which? Loc]    go-Ipfv Q]  
       tòb-è-Ø  
       ask-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       'He/She asked Seydou/the children where he was/they were going.'
- b. [má-à            yé-jè            mà→]    tòb-è-Ø  
       [1Sg-QuotSbj    come-Ipfv      Q]        ask-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       'He/She asked me whether I was coming.'

# 14 Relativization

Relative clauses are restrictive (not parenthetical). They are often marked as definite.

## 14.1 Basics of relative clauses

The (internal) head NP, maximally Poss-N-Adj-Num, appears within the relative clause, and is tone-dropped. Late-NP elements such as determiners, ‘all’, plural *-mbè*, and discourse-functional (DF) elements follow the verb. The “verb” is a noun-like participle in form, marked for the usual aspect-negation (AN) categories and agreeing in (human) number categories with the head NP, not with the subject as such. If the subject of a nonsubject relative is pronominal, it is expressed as a proclitic preceding the final verb-participle, and takes the same form as the corresponding independent pronoun.

The basic structure is broadly shared with other central and eastern Dogon languages (Jamsay, Tommo So, Toro So, etc.), allowing for some language-specific variation. Relative constructions are best modeled as complex NPs (DPs) of the basic form Poss-N-Adj-Num-RelCl-Det-‘all’-DF. The relative clause, like an adjective or a demonstrative, is a reference restrictor and therefore a tonosyntactic controller that imposes {L} overlay on the elements to its left beginning with the noun, i.e. maximally N-Adj-Num. Later, the entire segment to its left, Poss-N-Adj-Num, moves into the relativization site, creating the appearance of an internally-headed relative clause.

## 14.2 Internal head NP

### 14.2.1 Tone-dropping on final word(s) of head NP in relative clause

The maximum form of the internal head is Poss-N-Adj-Num or, with a postnominal possessor, N-Adj-Num-Poss. If a prenominal possessor or an adjective is present, the noun has already been subject to a tonosyntactic overlay. The relative clause, as a “higher” (more external) controller, effectively erases all prior tonosyntactic activity and imposes {L} on the N(-Adj)(-Num) sequence. This is clear when no preposed possessor is present (387a,c). When a preposed possessor is present, in theory either the possessor or the relative clause could account for the {L} overlay on the remaining words, hence the double superscripts in (387b). The preposed possessor itself escapes tone-dropping. A postnominal possessor is already L-toned, so it undergoes no overt tone change in relative heads, but because it is to the right of the tone-dropped noun in (387c) I assume it is included in the tone-dropping domain.

(387) independent as relative head

a. unpossessed

N	$N^L$
$N^L$ Adj	$[N \text{ Adj}]^L$
N Num	$[N \text{ Num}]^L$
$N^L$ Adj Num	$[N \text{ Adj Num}]^L$

b. prenominal possessor

Poss $N^L$	$\text{Poss } N^L$
Poss $N^L [N \text{ Adj}]$	$\text{Poss } N^L [N \text{ Adj}]^L$
Poss $N^L [N \text{ Num}]$	$\text{Poss } N^L [N \text{ Num}]^L$
Poss $N^L [N \text{ Adj Num}]$	$\text{Poss } N^L [N \text{ Adj Num}]^L$

c. postnominal possessor

N Poss	$[N \text{ Poss}]^L$
$N^L$ Adj Poss	$[N \text{ Adj Poss}]^L$
N Num Poss	$[N \text{ Num Poss}]^L$
$N^L$ Adj Num Poss	$[N \text{ Adj Num Poss}]^L$

Examples are in (388), in the same order. Stems within the NP are *ènè* ‘goat’, *pílù* ‘white’, and *kúlè:* ‘6’. Postnominal possessors like 2Sg *ù-mò* are already L-toned so they are vacuously affected by tone-dropping (388c).

(388) independent as relative head

a. unpossessed

<i>ènè</i>	<i>ènè</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>ènè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pílù</i>	<i>[ènè pílù]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>ènè</i> <i>kúlè:</i>	<i>[ènè kúlè:]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>ènè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pílù</i> <i>kúlè:</i>	<i>[ènè pílù kúlè:]</i> <sup>L</sup>

b. prenominal possessor

<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>ènè</i>	<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>ènè</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>[ènè pílù]</i>	<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>[ènè pílù]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>[ènè kúlè:]</i>	<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>[ènè kúlè:]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>[ènè pílù kúlè:]</i>	<i>sé:dù</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>[ènè pílù kúlè:]</i> <sup>L</sup>

c. postnominal possessor

<i>ènè</i> <i>ù-mò</i>	<i>[ènè ù-mò]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>ènè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pílù</i> <i>ù-mò</i>	<i>[ènè pílù ù-mò]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>ènè</i> <i>kúlè:</i> <i>ù-mò</i>	<i>[ènè kúlè: ù-mò]</i> <sup>L</sup>
<i>ènè</i> <sup>L</sup> <i>pílù</i> <i>kúlè:</i> <i>ù-mò</i>	<i>[ènè pílù kúlè: ù-mò]</i> <sup>L</sup>

(388c) shows that postnominal possessors are tolerated in relative heads in DS. In some other Dogon languages they must be converted to prenominal possessors.

#### 14.2.2 Restrictions on the head of a relative clause

The head NP may be in any grammatical relation within the relative clause: subject, object, possessor, complement of postposition. See §14.7.1-4 for examples organized by grammatical relation.

A pronoun may not be the internal head. A pronoun may, however, be in apposition to a headless relative clause (389). The pronoun is outside the relative and has its lexical tones.

- (389) a. émmè [[àndó=ò rà:] wó:-íj=gò] 1PI [[village=Def Loc] be.Ppl-Pl=Def]  
           ‘we who are in the village’
- b. émmè [sé:dù wè-è-Ø-íj=gò] 1PI [S see-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Pl=Def]  
           ‘we who(m) Seydou saw’

#### 14.2.3 Conjoined NP as head

Example (390a) is a main clause with a conjoined NP as subject. (Since both NPs are singular, agreement on the verb is often singular as here (§7.1.1.). (390b) converts this into a subject relative.

- (390) a. [yù:-wálù-nè lè] [bèlù-gírù-nè lè] [millet-do.farming.Agent-Sg and] [goat-herd(v).Agent-Sg] and]  
           jágùl-í-ý-Ø  
           fight-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘A farmer and a goatherd fought.’
- b. [yù:-wálù-nò=ò lè] [bèlù-gírù-nò=ò lè]<sup>L</sup> [millet-do.farming.Agent-Sg and] [goat-herd(v).Agent-Sg] and]<sup>L</sup>  
           jágùl-í-ý-íj=gò yògò-rà: wò-yyà  
           fight-MP-Pfv.Ppl-Pl=Def which?-Loc be-3PlSbj  
           ‘Where are the farmer and the goatherd who fought?’

In elicitation, the first occurrence of (390b) was pronounced with the same tones as in (390a), i.e. with no tone-dropping on either conjunct. When (390b) was repeated, sounding more fluent than the first attempt, the H-tone on the second conjunct ('goatherd') was dropped, but the first conjunct maintained its H-tone. The conclusion is that only the final conjunct is accessible as a tonosyntactic target by an external controller.

#### 14.2.4 Headless relative clause

Headless relative clauses usually presuppose a covert head with a sense like ‘time’, ‘place’, or ‘manner’. The absence of an overt head is usually compensated for by a final postposition (temporal, locative, or ‘like’). An example is (472a) in §15.3.2.1 (‘the way Seydou does work’), where the postposition *gìnè* ‘like’ defines the relative clause as a manner adverbial clause.

Headless relatives can also presuppose a covert head meaning ‘fact’. Such clauses occur as propositional complements for main-clause verbs like ‘be afraid (that)’, see (510b) in §17.3.2, and for ‘want’ with different-subject complement, see (529a-b) in §17.4.8.

See §15.2.1.1 for headless progressive relatives.

#### 14.2.5 Head noun not usually doubled after relative clause

Constructions of the type [[the day that you came] day], where a simple noun agreeing lexically with the internal head NP is added after the verb-participle, are not usual in DS though they do occur in some Dogon languages. There is perhaps less justification for this head-doubling in DS than in other Dogon languages, since DS regularly marks even headless temporal, spatial, and manner relative clauses with a category-defining final postposition, e.g. temporal *lè*.

However, a possible textual example of doubling is text 01 at 00:45, if ‘country’ is appositional to the internal head NP *yàlù*<sup>L</sup> ‘place’.

### 14.3 Preparticipial subject pronoun in non-subject relative

In a non-subject relative such as an object relative, if the subject is pronominal it is expressed by a preverbal proclitic identical in form to the independent pronoun (391a). If the subject is expressed by a nonpronominal NP, there is not also a resumptive 3Sg or 3Pl proclitic pronoun (391b). Further examples occur in later sections in this chapter.

- (391) a. *pèdù*<sup>L</sup>      *mí* / *ú* / *émmè* / *é* / *wó* / *bé*      *éb-ò=ò*  
sheep<sup>L</sup>      1Sg / 2Sg / 1Pl / 2Pl / 3Sg / 3Pl      buy-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
‘the sheep-Sg that I/you-Sg/we/you-Pl/he-or-she/they bought’
- b. *sé:dù*      *pèdù*<sup>L</sup>      *éb-ò=ò*  
S      sheep<sup>L</sup>      buy-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
‘the sheep-Sg that Seydou bought.’

In a direct verb chain or in a construction involving an auxiliary-like (quasi-)verb, the proclitic subject pronoun occurs directly before the final inflected verb. For example, in (392) the 1Sg subject pronoun precedes the final auxiliary ‘have’ which is part of the periphrastic future construction.

- (392) *[[bày]*<sup>L</sup>      *ŋgó]*      *lè]*  
[day<sup>L</sup>      Prox]      Temp]  
*[[ná: jé: bè-j-à: mí sé:=gò] (lè)]*  
[[meal eat get-Ipfv-PastAnt 1SgSbj have.Ppl=Def] (Temp)]  
‘on that day, (when) I will be able to eat (meals) here.’

### 14.4 Verbal participle in relative clause

The verb in a relative clause is morphosyntactically a noun-like participle that agrees with the head NP. Like nouns, it can take a (human) singular form with suffix *-nv* or a (human) plural

form with suffix *-y*, and it is regularly followed by a definite clitic. However, if these suffixes and clitics are pared away, the participle is usually identical to the main-clause form of the verb in the corresponding AN inflection, minus the final pronominal-subject suffix that occurs in main-clause verbs. The main exception is the perfective positive, which has a special participial suffix, though for nonmonosyllabic verbs the regular main-clause 3Sg and 3Pl subject forms can also be used as participles (after adopting the tone pattern of the participle).

Each of the AN categories has its corresponding participle, except that augmentation is not allowed.

#### 14.4.1 Participles of positive perfective-system verbs

##### 14.4.1.1 Perfective participle (*-ú*, *-y*) and pseudo-participle (*-é/-é/-í*)

The verb in the relative clause may take a participial form, *-ú* for nonmonosyllabics and usually *-y* for monosyllabics, with {LH} overlay. Alternatively, it can be based on the form of the main-clause 3Sg or 3Pl subject perfective, but adjusted to the tone pattern of participles and behaving morphosyntactically exactly like the participle. I will call this second type **pseudo-participle**, and gloss it like a third-person perfective but with “.Ppl” added, e.g. ‘go.down-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl’.

The difference between a perfective participle and a 3Sg perfective main-clause verb (E-stem or I-stem) is obscured by assimilations and contractions. For example, the pseudo-participle just mentioned, ‘go.down-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl’, can appear as *sùg-é-Ø=gò* or as assimilated *sùg-ó-Ø=gò*, the latter being homophonous to the true participle since *súgó* ‘go down’ is the stem. Furthermore, the difference between a pseudo-participle and a true participle is frequently masked by the contraction of the final vowel with definite variant *=ò*. For example, *èb-ò=ò* ‘who/that bought’ could be the definite form of either the true participle *èb-ú* or of the pseudo-participle *èb-é-Ø* that is based on the main-clause perfective (3Sg *èb-è-Ø*).

For nonmonosyllabics, the (true) participle has *-u* replacing the stem-final vowel, regardless of whether the main-clause perfective is based on the E-stem or the I-stem (393a). For monosyllabics, most verbs have *-y* in the participle (393b), which for some verbs (I-class) is segmentally identical to the main-clause perfective (and therefore also to the singular pseudo-participle). However, my assistant rejected *-y* participles for verbs whose perfective is of the type *Ce-e* or *Ce-e* (including nasalized *Ce<sup>n</sup>-e<sup>n</sup>*) (393c).

##### (393) Perfective

main clause (3Sg)	participle	gloss
a. bisyllabic		
<i>lexically /LH/</i>		
<i>bénd-è</i>	<i>bènd-ú</i>	‘hit’
<i>ból-ì</i>	<i>bòl-ú</i>	‘go’
<i>dòŋg-è</i>	<i>dòŋg-ú</i>	‘pound (in mortar)’
<i>lexically /HL/</i>		
<i>èb-è</i>	<i>èb-ú</i>	‘buy’
<i>pàd-ì</i>	<i>pàd-ú</i>	‘leave’

b. monosyllabic, participle with *-y*

*main-clause perfective also has -y (I-stem)*

<i>ká-y</i>	<i>kà-y</i>	'shave'
<i>yó-y</i>	<i>yò-y</i>	'go in'

*main-clause perfective is E-stem*

<i>gó-è</i>	<i>gò-y</i>	'go out'
<i>gó-è</i>	<i>gò-y</i>	'dance'
<i>nó-è</i>	<i>nò-y</i>	'drink'

c. monosyllabic, participle segmentally = E-stem perfective

<i>pé-è</i>	<i>pè-é</i>	'eat (meal)'
<i>wé-è</i>	<i>wè-é</i>	'see'
<i>gén-è</i>	<i>gèn-é</i>	'steal'

Especially for human head NPs, singular *-nv* and plural *-ŋ* can be added. When either suffix is added, it acquires the H-tone of the LH-toned participles. Definite clitic =*gò* is always L-toned and does not interact tonally with the participle.

(394)	gloss	Ppl	definite	Sg	Sg	definite	Pl	Pl	Pl definite
	'hit'	<i>bènd-ú</i>	<i>bènd-ú=gò</i>	<i>bènd-ù-nó</i>	<i>bènd-ù-nó=gò</i>	<i>bènd-ù-í</i>	<i>bènd-ù-í=gò</i>	<i>bènd-ù-í</i>	<i>bènd-ù-í=gò</i>
	'go out'	<i>gò-ý</i>	<i>gò-ý=gò</i>	<i>gò-ý-nó</i>	<i>gò-ý-nó=gò</i>	<i>gò-ý-í</i>	<i>gò-ý-í=gò</i>	<i>gò-ý-í</i>	<i>gò-ý-í=gò</i>
	'leave'	<i>pàd-ú</i>	<i>pàd-ú=gò</i>	<i>pàd-ù-nó</i>	<i>pàd-ù-nó=gò</i>	<i>pàd-ù-í</i>	<i>pàd-ù-í=gò</i>	<i>pàd-ù-í</i>	<i>pàd-ù-í=gò</i>

A few pseudo-participial forms for the same verbs are in (395).

(395)	Pseudo-participles (based on 3Sg or 3Pl perfective)
-------	---

gloss	Sg	Sg definite	Pl	Pl definite
'hit'	<i>bènd-é</i>	<i>bènd-é=gò</i>	<i>bènd-ì-yá</i>	<i>bènd-ì-yá=gò</i>
'go out'	<i>gò-é</i>	<i>gò-é=gò</i>	<i>gò-ý-yá</i>	<i>gò-ý-yá=gò</i>
'leave'	<i>pàd-í</i>	<i>pàd-í=gò</i>	<i>pàd-ì-yá</i>	<i>pàd-ì-yá=gò</i>

My assistant rejected augmented perfective participles and pseudo-participles. So augmented (reduplicated) *gò-gó-è* 'went out' cannot be participialized (as #*gò-gò-ý=gò*, #*gò-gò-é=gò*, or other variant).

#### 14.4.1.2 Experiential perfect participle

The experiential perfect, which ends in *wò* 'be', uses the regular participle of *wò*, namely *wò:*.

(396)	<i>àn-nà<sup>L</sup></i>	<i>gònyéy</i>	<i>wà:-tíyá</i>	<i>wó:(-nò)=gò</i>
	man-Sg <sup>L</sup>	elephant	see-ExpPrf	be.Ppl(-Sg)=Def
'the man who had (once) seen an elephant'				

## 14.4.2 Participles of positive imperfective-system verbs

### 14.4.2.1 Imperfective participle

The imperfective with suffix *-dè* or for a few verbs *-jè* is the basis for the participle. In careful pronunciation there is no tonal change, but in allegro speech all H-tones can be dropped. The human singular suffix can be added: *-dè-nè* ~ *-jè-nè*. The regular addition of the definite clitic has tended to spread *ɔ*-vowels to these suffixes: *-dò=gò* and *-jò=gò*, even *-dò-nò=gò* and *-jò-nò=gò*. Leaving these *ɔ*-variants aside, representative forms are in (397).

(397)	main-clause	participle	gloss
	definite	Sg definite	'(who) ...'
	<i>bó-jè</i>	<i>bó-jè=gò</i>	'... goes'
	<i>pá:-dè</i>	<i>pá:-dè=gò</i>	'... eats (meal)'
	<i>bèndé-dè</i>	<i>bèndé-dè=gò</i>	'... hits'
	<i>pádà-dè</i>	<i>pádà-dè=gò</i>	'... leaves (sth)'

The usual optional contraction of *=gò* to *=ò* is common, producing variants like *bó-jò=gò*.

This participle corresponds semantically to both the simple and augmented imperfectives in main clauses.

### 14.4.2.2 Augmented imperfective participle (absent)

My assistant rejected augmented imperfective participles, for example #*gò-gó:-dè=gò* 'who will go out' and #*pà-pá:-dò=ò* 'who will eat'.

### 14.4.2.3 Progressive participle

The progressive-1 and progressive-2 constructions end in *wò* 'be'. The participle of *wò*, namely *wò:*, is used in relative clauses. The verb retains its lexical tone melody.

(398)	a.	<i>yà:-nà<sup>L</sup></i>	<i>yàlú</i>	<i>sémbò-w</i>	<i>wò:(-nò)=gò</i>
		woman-Sg <sup>L</sup>	place	sweep-Ipfv	be.Ppl(-Sg)=Def
					'the woman who is sweeping (the place)'
	b.	<i>ndè<sup>L</sup></i>	<i>yàbá-w</i>	<i>wò: (-nò)=gò</i>	
		person <sup>L</sup>	accept-Ipfv	be.Ppl(-Sg)=Def	'the person who is accepting/consenting'

### 14.4.2.4 Future participle

It was not possible to elicit a participle of the simple future form (§10.2.2.6). Since the future has no suffix, and since its augmentation would disappear in a participle, a regularly formed future participle would often be indistinguishable from a perfective participle especially with *=ò* definite, except possibly by tones.

Instead, the imperfective participle or one of the periphrastic futures is used.

#### 14.4.2.5 Periphrastic future participle

The periphrastic future in *-d-à: sè* ends in *sè* ‘have’. The participle of *sè*, namely *sé:*, is used in relative clauses. The verb with *-d-à* is tone-dropped to {L}.

- (399) a. *yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>* *yàlú* *sèmbè-d-à:<sup>L</sup>* *sé:(-nò)=gò*  
woman-Sg<sup>L</sup> place sweep-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup> have.Ppl(-Sg)=Def  
'the woman who will sweep (the place)' (< *sèmbè-d-à: sè*)
- b. *ndè<sup>L</sup>* *yàbà-d-à:<sup>L</sup>* *sé:(-nò)=gò*  
person<sup>L</sup> accept-Ipfv-PastAnt<sup>L</sup> have.Ppl(-Sg)=Def  
'the person who will accept/consent' (< *yàbá-d-à: sè*)

#### 14.4.2.6 Immediate future participle

The immediate future is *-njá: wò* after {L}-toned verb in main clauses. In relatives, *wò* ‘be’ takes its participial form *wò:*. The negative version has *wò-lí* ‘not be’ in both main and relative clauses.

- (400) a. *yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>* *já:* *já:-njá:* *wò:(-nò)=gò*  
woman-Sg<sup>L</sup> meal eat-ImmFut be.Ppl(-Sg)=Def  
'the woman who is about to eat'
- b. *yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>* *já:* *já:-njá:* *wò-lí(-nò)=gò*  
woman-Sg<sup>L</sup> meal eat-ImmFut be-StatNeg.Ppl(-Sg)=Def  
'the woman who is not about to eat'

#### 14.4.3 Participles of negative perfective-system verbs

##### 14.4.3.1 Perfective negative participle

For the regular perfective negative, the basic suffix in main clauses is *-lí*, combining with 2Sg *-w* as *-lú-w*. In relative clauses, the participial form is *-l-ú*. This could be analysed as the combination of *-lí* with the same *-u* participial morpheme that occurs in the perfective positive. However, the frequent addition of definite *=gò* might also have favored the rounded vowel.

main-clause	participle		gloss
definite	Sg definite		'(who) ...
<i>bòl-lí</i>	<i>bòl-l-ú=gò</i>	<i>bòl-lú-nò=gò</i>	'... didn't go'
<i>já:-lí</i>	<i>já:-l-ú=gò</i>	<i>já:-lú-nò=gò</i>	'... didn't eat'
<i>bèndè-lí</i>	<i>bèndè-l-ú=gò</i>	<i>bèndè-lú-nò=gò</i>	'... didn't hit'
<i>pàdà-lí</i>	<i>pàdà-l-ú=gò</i>	<i>pàdà-lú-nò=gò</i>	'... didn't leave'

#### 14.4.3.2 Experiential perfect negative participle

In main clauses, the experiential negative is expressed by *-tà-lí*. The participle *-tà-l-ú* is based directly on this, with *-l-ú* taken from the perfective negative participle (preceding section).

(402)	<i>àn-nà</i> <sup>L</sup>	<i>gòñéy</i>	<i>wà:-tà-l-ú(-nò)=gò</i>
	man-Sg <sup>L</sup>	elephant	see-ExpPrf-PfvNeg-Pfv.Ppl(-Sg)=Def
‘the man who has never seen an elephant’			

Alternatively, the corresponding positive participle may be negated by using the participle of *wò-ló* ‘not be’.

(403)	<i>àn-nà</i> <sup>L</sup>	<i>gòñéy</i>	<i>wà:-tíyà</i>	<i>wò-ló(-nò)=gò</i>
	man-Sg <sup>L</sup>	elephant	see-ExpPrf	be-StatNeg.Ppl(-Sg)=Def
‘the man who had never seen an elephant’				

#### 14.4.4 Participles of negative imperfective-system verbs

##### 14.4.4.1 Imperfective negative participle

The regular main-clause imperfective negative stem with *-èlè* is used without change as a participle in relative clauses.

(404)	main-clause	participle	gloss
	definite	Sg definite	‘(who) ...’
	<i>bòlé-èlè</i>	<i>bòlé-èlè=gò</i>	<i>bòlé-èlè-nè=gò</i> ‘... doesn’t go’
	<i>ná-àlè</i>	<i>ná-àlè=gò</i>	<i>ná-àlè-nè=gò</i> ‘... doesn’t eat’
	<i>bèndé-èlè</i>	<i>bèndé-èlè=gò</i>	<i>bèndé-èlè-nè=gò</i> ‘... doesn’t hit’
	<i>pádé-èlè</i>	<i>pádé-èlè=gò</i>	<i>pádé-èlè-nè=gò</i> ‘... doesn’t leave’

##### 14.4.4.2 Progressive negative participle

The progressive negative ends in *wò-ló* ‘not be’ in main clauses. The participle is also *wò-ló*, with no further tone changes.

(405)	<i>yà:-nà</i> <sup>L</sup>	<i>yálú</i>	<i>sémbò-w / yábá-w</i>	<i>wò-ló(-nò)=gò</i>
	woman-Sg <sup>L</sup>	place	sweep-Ipfv/accept-Ipfv	be-StatNeg.Ppl(-Sg)=Def
‘the woman who is not sweeping (the place)/who is not accepting.’				

##### 14.4.4.3 Future negative participle

My assistant rejected a participle based on future negative *-ri*.

#### 14.4.4.4 Periphrastic future negative participle

The periphrastic future negative ends with *sè-lé* ‘not have’. In relative clauses, the participle of *sè-lé* is used. Since the main verb is already tone-dropped in the main-clause version, no further tone changes occur.

(406)	<i>yà:-nà<sup>L</sup></i>	<i>yàlú</i>	<i>sèmbè-d-à:<sup>L</sup></i>	<i>sè-lé(-nò)=gò</i>
	woman-Sg	place	sweep-Ipfv-PastAnt <sup>L</sup>	have-StatNeg.Ppl(-Sg)=Def
‘the woman who will not sweep (the place).’				

#### 14.4.4.5 Immediate future negative participle

The immediate future negative, of the type *tò:-njá: wò-lò-íj* ‘I am not about to sow’ (§10.2.3.8) has participial form *tò:-njá: wò-lò-nò* ‘(one) who is not about to sow’, with the regular participle of *wò-lò* ‘not be’.

### 14.4.5 Participles of statives

#### 14.4.5.1 Stative (positive) participle

Examples of participles from derived statives related to active verbs are in (407). The existential particle *yé* that may accompany main-clause statives is absent from relatives. The initial H-tone in the participle drops to L-tone after an H-toned subject pronominal (see end of this section).

(407)	main-clause	participle	gloss
	definite	Sg definite	‘(who) ...’
	<i>dǎ:ŋà / yé dàŋà</i>	<i>dáŋà=gò</i>	<i>dáŋà-nà=gò</i>
	<i>ú:njò / yé únjò</i>	<i>únjò=gò</i>	<i>únjò-nò=gò</i>

‘... is sitting’  
‘... is lying down’

Participles from underived statives (quasi-verbs) are in (408). Again, the existential particle is not present in relatives. The <HL> tone in *wò:* etc. is usually leveled to H before an L-toned suffix or clitic.

(408)	main-clause		participle	gloss
	basic	definite	Sg definite	‘(who) ...’
	<i>yó-ò (&lt;/yó wò/)</i>	<i>wò:</i>	<i>wò:=gò</i>	<i>wò:-nò=gò</i>
	<i>yí sè</i>	<i>sè:</i>	<i>sé:=gò</i>	<i>sé:-nò=gò</i>
	<i>yó tò</i>	<i>tò:</i>	<i>tó:=gò</i>	<i>tó:-nò=gò</i>
	<i>ìgù wó</i>		<i>ì-gù wó:=gò</i>	<i>ìgù wó:-nò=gò</i>
	<i>(yé) nàmà</i>		<i>námà=gò</i>	<i>námà-nò=gò</i>
	<i>(yé) ibé</i>		<i>ibé=gò</i>	<i>ibé-nò=gò</i>

‘... is’  
‘... has’  
‘... is in’  
‘... knows’  
‘... wants’  
‘... likes’

For both derived statives and stative quasi-verbs, the participle is L-toned after an H-toned subject pronominal proclitic (a common element in nonsubject relatives): *yàlù<sup>L</sup> mí dàjà* ‘place where I am sitting’, *kìdè<sup>L</sup> mí sè* ‘thing that I have’.

#### 14.4.5.2 Stative negative participle

The forms are in (409).

(409) main-clause	participle		gloss
	definite	Sg definite	‘(who) ...
<i>wò-ló</i>	<i>wò-ló=gò</i>	<i>wò-ló-nò=gò</i>	‘... is not’
<i>sè-lé</i>	<i>sè-lé=gò</i>	<i>sè-lé-nò=gò</i>	‘... doesn’t have’
<i>tò:-ló</i>	<i>tò:-ló=gò</i>	<i>tò:-ló-nò=gò</i>	‘... is not in’
<i>inné</i>	<i>inné=gò</i>	<i>inné-nò=gò</i>	‘... doesn’t know’
<i>nàmà-lá</i>	<i>nàmà-lá=gò</i>	<i>nàmà-lá-nò=gò</i>	‘... doesn’t want’
<i>ibè-lé</i>	<i>ibè-lé=gò</i>	<i>ibè-lé-nò=gò</i>	‘... doesn’t like’

#### 14.4.6 Participle of past clitic =bè

##### 14.4.6.1 Participle of positive past forms

The participles replace positive main-clause =bè with its participial form *bé:~bè:* (410).

##### (410) Participle of past clitic (positive)

Past ...	main-clause	participle (definite)
... progressive-1	<i>sémbò-w=bè</i>	<i>sémbò-w bé:=gò</i>
... progressive-2	<i>sémbè bè</i>	<i>sémbè bé:=gò</i>
... future	<i>sé:mbè=bè</i>	[none]
... periphrastic future	<i>sémbè-d-à: sè=bè</i>	<i>sémbè-d-à: sé=bè:=gò</i>
... immediate future	<i>sémbè-njá: bè</i>	<i>sémbè-njá: bè:=gò</i>
... perfect	<i>sémb-à: bè</i>	<i>sémb-à: bé:=gò</i>
... experiential perfect	<i>sémbè-tiyà bè</i>	<i>sémbè-tiyà bé:=gò</i>
... stative	<i>dáŋà=bè</i>	<i>dáŋà bé:=gò</i>

The human singular form is *bé:-nè=gò*. In nonsubject relatives, a proclitic subject pronoun directly precedes *bé:=gò*, as in (429b) in §14.7.4. I therefore do not consider participial *bé:=gò* (or its negative *bè-lé=gò*) to be cliticized to the preceding verb.

##### 14.4.6.2 Participle of negative past forms

Negative past forms have the main-clause and participial forms in (411). Those corresponding to main-clause *bè-lé* have a participle with the same *bè-lé*. Those whose main-clause counterparts have positive =bè after a negated AN form have *bé:*.

(411) Participle of past clitic (negative)

category	main-clause	participle
Past ...		
a. with =bè-lé		
... imperfective	sémbò-w=bè-lé	sémbò-w=bè-lé=gò
... progressive	sémbè bè-lé	sémbè bè-lé=gò
... periphrastic future	sèmbè-d-à: sè=bè-lé	sèmbè-d-à: sè=bè-lé=gò
... immediate future	sèmbè-njá: bè-lé	sèmbè-njá: bè-lé=gò
b. with =bè		
... future	sémbè-rì=bè	sémbè-rì=bé:=gò
... perfect	sèmbè-l-ú bè	sèmbè-l-ú bé:=gò
... experiential perfect	sèmbè-tà-lí=bè	sèmbè-tà-lí=bé:=gò
... stative	dàŋà-lá=bè	dàŋà-lá=bé:=gò

Human singular forms are *bè-lé-nè=gò* for (411a), *bé:-nè=gò* for (411b).

## 14.5 Relative clause involving verb- or VP-chain

### 14.5.1 True verb chains

In a relative clause involving a verb chain, the nonfinal verb has the same form as in the corresponding nonrelative clause. Only the final verb is modified, becoming a participle in the usual way. In a nonsubject relative, if the subject is expressed by a proclitic pronoun, the pronoun immediately precedes the final participle.

For past time contexts, past anterior subordinator *-a:* (§15.2.2.1-3) occurs on the nonfinal verb in both nonrelative (412a) and relative (412b) constructions.

- (412) a. *nùmb-â: sùg-è-ŋ̩*  
fall-PastAnt go.down-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I fell (all the way) down.’
- b. *[bày<sup>L</sup> nùmb-â: mí sùg-ó-∅=gò] lè*  
[day<sup>L</sup> fall-PastAnt 1SgSbj go.down-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl=Def] Temp  
‘on the day when I fell (all the way) down’  
(also *sùg-é-∅=gò*, see §14.4.1.1)

For nonpast time contexts, the chaining form of the nonfinal verb is used in both constructions (413a-b).

- (413) a. *nùmbó sù:gó-dè-ŋ̩*  
fall Augm.go.down-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
‘I will fall (all the way) down.’

- b. [bày<sup>L</sup> nùmbó mí súgò-dò=gò] lè  
 [day<sup>L</sup> fall 1SgSbj go.down-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] Temp  
 'on the day when I will fall (all the way) down'

The chain construction with *-a:-nì* is illustrated in (414).

- (414) a. nàŋá éb-à:-nì já-yè-jè-ñ  
 cow buy-Ant-Nonpast take-come-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 'I will buy and bring a cow.'
- b. nàŋà<sup>L</sup> éb-à:-nì mí já-yè-jè=gò  
 cow<sup>L</sup> buy-Ant-Nonpast 1SgSbj take-come-Ipfv.Ppl=Def  
 'the cow that I will buy and bring'

#### 14.5.2 Frozen verb chains ('bring' and 'convey')

As indicated just above, a proclitic subject pronoun intervenes between the two verbs in a relative clause based on a true verb chain. This can be used to test whether the two components of 'bring' and 'convey, take (away)' (§10.1.3.10-11) behave as chains or are frozen together.

The data show that they are frozen together, so the pronoun precedes the fused combinations. (415) illustrates this with perfective and imperfective relatives of 'bring', and (416) does the same for 'convey'.

- (415) a. nàŋà mí jé:l-ò=gò  
 cow 1SgSbj bring-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
 'the cow that I brought'
- b. nàŋà mí já-yè-jò=gò  
 cow 1SgSbj take-come-Ipfv.Ppl=Def  
 'the cow that I will bring'
- (416) a. nàŋà mí jé-bòl-ò=gò  
 cow 1SgSbj take-go-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
 'the cow that I conveyed (took away)'
- b. nàŋà mí jé-bò-j-ò=gò  
 cow 1SgSbj take-go-Ipfv.Ppl=Def  
 'the cow that I will convey (take away)'

## 14.6 Late-NP elements that follow the verb (or verbal participle)

### 14.6.1 Determiners (demonstrative and definite)

The preceding sections of this chapter are full of examples with definite *=gò* ~ *=ò* cliticized to the verb-participle of a relative clause. The definite clitic cannot occur on the clause-

internal head NP (417a). Demonstratives may also occur following the verb-participle, instead of the definite clitic (417b).

- (417) a. *àn-nà<sup>L</sup> ú wà:-dò=dò*  
          man-Sg<sup>L</sup>   2SgSbj   see-Ipfv.Ppl=Def  
          ‘the man who(m) you-Sg see’
- b. *àn-nà<sup>L</sup> ú wà:-dò<sup>L</sup> ngó*  
          man-Sg<sup>L</sup>   2SgSbj   see-Ipfv.Ppl<sup>L</sup>   Prox  
          ‘this man who(m) you-Sg see’

Demonstratives, unlike the definite clitic, are tone-dropping controllers. In a relative clause, the domain targeted by the {L} overlay is the verb-participle. In (417b) the tone-dropping is inaudible since the imperfective participle is already {L}-toned, but perfective participles contain an H-tone (418a), which disappears when a demonstrative is added (418b).

- (418) a. *àn-nà<sup>L</sup> ú bènd-ú=gò*  
          man-Sg<sup>L</sup>   2SgSbj   hit-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
          ‘the man who(m) you-Sg (have) hit’
- b. *àn-nà<sup>L</sup> ú bènd-ù<sup>L</sup> ngó*  
          man-Sg<sup>L</sup>   2SgSbj   hit-Pfv.Ppl<sup>L</sup>   Prox  
          ‘this man who(m) you-Sg (have) hit’

#### 14.6.2 Plural suffix (*-mbè*)

The optional plural suffix *-mbè* can be added to a participle. For human head NPs, this suffix is redundant when the clause-internal head NP is already marked for plural (e.g. *i<sup>L</sup>* ‘child’ versus *ìlù-ŋ<sup>L</sup>* ‘children’) and/or because the participle itself has plural suffix *-ŋ* (419a). For nonhuman head NPs, and for some human nouns such as kin terms, the suffix *-mbè* is the only way to mark (optional) plurality (419b).

- (419) a. *yà:-ŋ<sup>L</sup> yèl-è-ŋ=gò(-mbè)*  
          woman-PI<sup>L</sup>   come-Pfv.Ppl-PI=Def(-PI)  
          ‘the women who have come’  
          [also *yà:-ŋ<sup>L</sup> yèl-é=gò(-mbè)* without plural *-ŋ*]
- b. *òdògòlò<sup>L</sup> mì=ŋ kér-é=gò(-mbè)*  
          mosquito<sup>L</sup>   1Sg=Acc   bite-Pfv.Ppl=Def(-PI)  
          ‘the mosquito(es) that have bitten me’

If the definite clitic is absent, plural *-ŋ* (if present) can be adjacent to *-mbè*. In this case the velar nasal usually assimilates, so we cannot detect its presence. An example is *yà:-ŋ<sup>L</sup> yèl-è-mbè* ‘(some) women who have come’, where we cannot tell whether /-ŋ/ is present in the participle.

If a demonstrative is present, *-mbè* follows it, as usual (§4.4.2).

- (420) *ànà-ŋ<sup>L</sup>*    *ú*    *wà:-dɔ<sup>L</sup>*    *ŋgó-mbè*  
 man-Pl<sup>L</sup>    2SgSbj    see-Ipfv.Ppl<sup>L</sup>    **Prox-Pl**  
 ‘these men who(m) you-Sg see’

### 14.6.3 Universal quantifier (‘all’)

The universal quantifier *wôy* ‘all’ may occur at the end of the relative construction. As usual, here it has no tonal effect on preceding elements.

- (421) a. *[ñde<sup>L</sup>*    *nùmb-è-Ø-ý=gð-mbè*    *wôy]*    *jðŋ-ð-ý*  
 [person<sup>L</sup>    fall-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Pl=Def-Pl    all]    treat-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I have treated (medically) all the people who fell.’
- b. *ànà-ŋ<sup>L</sup>*    *ú*    *wà:-dɔ<sup>L</sup>*    *ŋgó-mbè*    *wôy*  
 man-Pl<sup>L</sup>    2SgSbj    see-Ipfv.Ppl<sup>L</sup>    Prox-Pl    all  
 ‘all these men who(m) you-Sg see’

## 14.7 Grammatical relation of relativized-on NP

### 14.7.1 Subject relative clause

From main clause (422a) we get the subject relatives in (422b-d). In (422b), the verb of the relative clause respects the form of the main-clause verb, but with a tone change. In (422c), the verb adopts a participial form with suffix *-ú* not found in the main clause. Since the head NP is human singular, nominal singular suffix *-nó*, which draws the H-tone, is optionally added to either the form based on the main clause (422d) or to the participial suffix (422e). Interestingly, the form of the singular suffix is *-nó* even in *nùmb-è-Ø-nó=gð* in (422d), rather than harmonizing with the preceding *e*. This suggests the possibility that the variant pseudo-participial relatives based on the main-clause 3Sg form, as in (422b,d), may be recent innovations.

- (422) a. *í:=gð*    *nùmb-è-Ø*  
 child=Def    fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The child fell.’
- b. *[í:<sup>L</sup>*    *nùmb-é-Ø=gð]*    *[yðgð*    *rà:]*=j̄  
 [child<sup>L</sup>    fall-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl=Def]    [which? Loc]=it.is  
 ‘Where is the child who fell?’  
 [pseudo-participle, optionally contracted to *nùmb-ð=gð* ]
- c. *[í:<sup>L</sup>*    *nùmb-ú=gð]*    *[yðgð*    *rà:]*=j̄  
 [child<sup>L</sup>    fall-Pfv.Ppl=Def]    [which? Loc]=it.is  
 [=b)]  
 [true participle, optionally contracted to *nùmb-ð=gð* ]

- d. [i:<sup>L</sup> nùmb-è-Ø-nó=gò] [yògó rà:] = ñ  
 [child<sup>L</sup> fall- Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Sg=Def] [which? Loc]=it.is  
 [=b)]  
 [pseudo-participle, optionally contracted to nùmb-è-Ø-nó=ò ]
- e. [i:<sup>L</sup> nùmb-ù-nó=gò] [yògó rà:] = ñ  
 [child<sup>L</sup> fall-Pfv.Ppl-Sg=Def] [which? Loc]=it.is  
 [=b)]  
 [true participle, optionally contracted to nùmb-ù-nó=ò ]

With a plural head NP we have (423b) or (423c) from main clause (423a), below. In (423b) the form of the main-clause verb with 3Pl subject -ì-yà is respected except for a tone change. In (423c), the participial form with -u seen in (423c) above is pluralized by suffixing -y. Variants of (423c) without -y were not accepted by my assistant. He did volunteer (423d) as acceptable; here plural -y is added to the variant singular form with 3Sg perfective ending -e-Ø instead of participial -u.

- (423) a. úlù-ñ                   númb-ì-yà  
 child-Pl                   fall-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 'The children fell.'
- b. [ùlù-ñ<sup>L</sup>       nùmb-ì-yá=gò(-mbè)]       ă:=ñ  
 [child-Pl<sup>L</sup>      fall-Pfv-3PlSbj.Ppl=Def(-Pl)]    who?=it.is  
 'Who are the children who fell?'
- c. [ùlù-ñ<sup>L</sup>       nùmb-ù-ñ=gò(-mbè)]       ă:=ñ  
 [child-Pl<sup>L</sup>      fall-Pfv.Ppl-Pl=Def(-Pl)]    who?=it.is  
 [=b)]
- d. [ùlù-ñ<sup>L</sup>       nùmb-è-Ø-ñ=gò(-mbè)]       ă:=ñ  
 [child-Pl<sup>L</sup>      fall-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Pl=Def(-Pl)]    who?=it.is  
 [=b)]

Further examples of subject relatives are in (424).

- (424) a. [yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>       yìm-é-Ø=gò]       [mí                   L sà:] = ñ  
 [woman-Sg<sup>L</sup>   die-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl=Def] [1SgPoss           L sister]=it.is  
 'The woman who died is/was my sister.' (pseudo-participle)
- b. [yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>       yìm-ú-Ø=gò]       [mí                   L sà:] = ñ  
 [woman-Sg<sup>L</sup>   die-Pfv.Ppl=Def] [1SgPoss           L sister]=it.is  
 [=a)] (true participle)
- c. [yà:-ñ<sup>L</sup>       yìm-è-ñ=gò(-mbè)]       [mí                   L sà:-mbè] = ñ  
 [woman-Pl<sup>L</sup>   die-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Pl=Def-Pl] [1SgPoss           L sister-Pl]=it.is  
 'The women who died are/were my sisters.' (pseudo-participle)

- d. [yà:-j<sup>L</sup> yìm-ù-í=j=gò(-mbè)] mí Lsà:-mbè=j  
 [woman-Pl<sup>L</sup> die-Pfv.Ppl-Pl=Def-Pl] [1SgPoss Lsister-Pl]=it.is  
 [=c] (true participle)
- e. [mì=j íbè rà:] àn-nà<sup>L</sup> bènd-è-Ø-nó=j  
 [1Sg=Acc [market Loc] man-Sg<sup>L</sup> hit-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Sg=Def]  
 ból-i-Ø  
 go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The man who hit me in the market has gone.’  
 [pseudo-participle, cf. true participle: bènd-ù-nó=j ]
- f. [ànà-j tà:ndù / kùlè:]<sup>L</sup> mì=j bènd-è-Ø-í=j=gò-mbè  
 [man-Pl 3 / 6]<sup>L</sup> 1Sg=Acc hit-Pfv-3SgSbj-Pl=Def-Pl]  
 ból-i-yà  
 go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The three/six men who hit me have gone.’ (pseudo-participle)
- g. [nànyà / pèdù tà:ndù / kùlè:]<sup>L</sup> nùmb-ú=gò ból-i-Ø  
 [cow / sheep 3 / 6]<sup>L</sup> fall-Pfv.Ppl=Def go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The three/six cows/sheep who fell have gone.’ (true participle)

#### 14.7.2 Object relative clause

The object NP internal to the relative clause is tone-dropped. The verb may have main-clause form (except for a tone change) or it may be a specifically participial form. A pronominal subject is expressed by a proclitic to the verb, as in all types of nonsubject relative.

- (425) a. [pèdù<sup>L</sup> / nànyà<sup>L</sup> mí èb-ú=gò sém-i-yà  
 [sheep<sup>L</sup> / cow<sup>L</sup> 1SgSbj buy-Pfv.Ppl=Def] slaughter-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘They slaughtered the sheep/cow that I bought.’  
 [also contracted èb-ò=j]
- b. [sé:dù i:<sup>L</sup> bènd-é-Ø=gò] ból-i-Ø  
 [S child<sup>L</sup> hit-Pfv-3Sg.Ppl=Def] go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The child who(m) Seydou hit has gone.’  
 [also participial bènd-ú=gò or contracted bènd-ò=j]
- c. [sé:dù i:<sup>L</sup> / ùlù-j<sup>L</sup> bènd-é-Ø=gò-mbè] ból-i-yà  
 [S child<sup>L</sup> / child-Pl<sup>L</sup> hit-Pfv-3Sg.Ppl=Def-Pl] go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children who(m) Seydou hit have gone.’
- d. bélù-dónù-nò=gò  
 goat-sell.Agent-Sg=Def  
 [pèdù<sup>L</sup> mí èbè-d-à: sé:gò] gó:-nd-i-Ø  
 [sheep<sup>L</sup> 1SgSbj buy-Ipfv-PastAnt have=Def] go.out-Caus-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The goat (=livestock) merchant has taken away the sheep-Sg that I will buy.’

### 14.7.3 Possessor relative clause

In a main clause, a nonpronominal possessor precedes, and controls tone-dropping on, the possessed noun (426a,c). In a corresponding relative in which the possessor is the head, the construction observed in elicited data has the possessor NP tone-dropped by the relative construction. It no longer functions morphosyntactically as possessor of the other noun, which is rephrased with a resumptive possessor pronoun (426b,d). For example, the relative in (4261b) is phrased like nonstandard English *the person<sub>x</sub> who his<sub>x</sub> house fell*.

In an alternative version, both possessor and possessum are tone-dropped. They are optionally separated by a genitive linker *mò* that does not appear in corresponding main clauses. (426e) and (46f) are from the same text, but uttered by different speakers.

- (426) a. *[ñdè<sup>L</sup> kɔ:<sup>L</sup> gìnò=ð]* *númb-è-* $\emptyset$   
      [[person<sup>L</sup> NearDist]      <sup>L</sup>house=Def]      fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
      ‘This person’s house fell (collapsed).’
- b. *[ñdè<sup>L</sup> [gìné wò-mò]* *nùmb-ð=ð]*  
      [person<sup>L</sup>      [house      3Sg-Poss]      fall-Pfv.Ppl=Def]  
      *yèl-â:*                  *wò-* $\emptyset$   
      come-PastAnt      be-3SgSbj  
      ‘The person whose house fell has come.’
- c. *[àn-nà<sup>L</sup> kɔ:<sup>L</sup> i:=gð]* *jímé-dè-* $\emptyset$   
      [[man-Sg      NearDist]      <sup>L</sup>child=Def]      get.sick-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
      ‘This man’s child is sick.’
- d. *[àn-nà<sup>L</sup> [i: wò-mò] jímé-dð=ð]*  
      [man-Sg<sup>L</sup>      [child      3Sg-Poss]      get.sick-Ipfv.Ppl=Def]  
      *yèl-â:*                  *wò-* $\emptyset$   
      come-PastAnt      be-3SgSbj  
      ‘The man whose child is sick has come.’
- e. *[ñdè mò nàŋà<sup>L</sup> bé gèlð=ð]*  
      person      Poss      cow]<sup>L</sup>      3PlSbj      hold.Stat.Ppl=Def  
      ‘the person whose cow they are in charge of (T05 at 01:32)’
- f. *[ñdè nàŋà<sup>L</sup> gírð-w bé d-ð=ð]*  
      person      cow]<sup>L</sup>      tend-Ipfv      3PlSbj      arrive-Pfv.Ppl=Def  
      ‘the person whose cow(s) they have been tending’ (T05 at 01:36; recent perfect)

### 14.7.4 Relativization on the complement of a postposition

Example (427a) is a simple main clause with a dative PP. When the complement NP (‘woman’) is relativized on, this NP is tone-dropped as head of the relative. The postposition remains in its regular position following the complement NP, rather than being rephrased with a resumptive third person pronoun (427b).

- (427) a. *kɔ:* [yà:-nó=ð] *lè* *gì-ŷ-ñ*  
     NearDist [woman-Sg=Def **Dat**] say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I said that to the woman.'
- b. *[kɔ:* [yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>] *lè* *mí* *gì-ŷ=gɔ]*  
     [NearDist [woman-Sg<sup>L</sup> **Dat**] 1SgSbj say-Pfv=Def]  
     [*wó ból-i-Ø*]  
     [3SgSbj go-Pfv-3SgSbj]  
     'The woman to whom I said that, she has gone.'

Since all postpositions are L-toned, there is some ambiguity in the tonosyntactic bracketing in examples like (427b). In one analysis, just the complement NP ('woman') is tone-dropped. In the other, the whole PP is tone-dropped, though this has no audible effect on the postposition itself.

Locative examples are in (428). The locative postposition is optionally omitted in the relative clause (428b).

- (428) a. *[[àndà<sup>L</sup> kɔ]* *rà:]* *gò-è-ñ*  
     [[village<sup>L</sup> NearDist] **Loc**] go.out-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I left (came from) that village.'
- b. *[[àndà<sup>L</sup> (rà:)]* *mí* *gò-è-Ø=gɔ]*  
     [[village<sup>L</sup> (**Loc**)] 1SgSbj go.out-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl=Def]  
     <sup>wàgú</sup> *wò-Ø*  
     distant be-3SgSbj  
     'The village that I left (came from) is far away.'

Instrumental examples are in (429). Again the postposition in (429a) is optionally omitted in the relative clause (429b).

- (429) a. *[[kòŋ<sup>L</sup> ñgɔ]* *lè* *yû:* *wàlá-w=bè-ñ*  
     [[daba<sup>L</sup> Prox] **Inst**] millet do.farming-Ipfv=Past-1SgSbj  
     'I used to farm (e.g. weed around) millet with this daba (hoe).'
- b. *[[kòŋ<sup>L</sup> (lè)]* *yû:* *wàlá-w* *mí* *bé:=gɔ]*  
     [[daba<sup>L</sup> (**Inst**)] millet do.farming-Ipfv 1SgSbj Past=Def]  
     <sup>már-i-Ø</sup>  
     get.lost-Pfv-3SgSbj  
     'The daba with which I used to farm millet has been lost.'

For structurally similar adverbial relatives of the type '(the time) when you came' and '(the place) where the cows died', with or without an overt head, see §15.2.1.1.

## 15 Verb (VP) chaining and adverbial clauses

### 15.1 Direct chains

In a **direct chain**, the final verb has full inflections as though the preceding verbs were absent. Nonfinal verbs can occur in the **chaining form** (which is morphologically unmarked for some verbs, marked by suffix *-u* or *-y* for others). In this case, there is no other overt subordinating morpheme. Chains satisfying these criteria are often limited to imperfective (or future) contexts, since those denoting completed events may require an overt subordinator on the nonfinal verb. Chains that do include an overt subordinator are referred to (loosely) as **loose chains**. For the reasons just given, the direct/loose distinction is not always helpful in connection with chains denoting completed events.

Direct chains denote what are construed as single events that can be decomposed analytically into co-events, generally simultaneous rather than consecutive. Many chains in Dogon languages are expressed by a single verb and an adverbial in English, as in *fall down*, which in Dogon languages might be a chain with ‘fall’ followed by an inflected form of ‘descend, go down’.

(430a-c) combines ‘fall’ and ‘go down’ in three ways. In (430a) we see a direct chain, with the nonfinal verb in its chaining form. This is the key diagnostic for direct chain status. (430b-c) show similar chains, but with overt subordinators on the verb. The past anterior subordinator in (430c) is required when the event has been completed.

- (430) a. *nùmbó                sùgò-dè-*Ø  
fall.Chain        go.down-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She falls (all the way) down.’
- b. *nùmb-á:-nì                sùgò-dè-*Ø  
fall-Ant-Nonpast        go.down-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She will fall (all the way) down.’
- c. *nùmb-â:                sùg-è-*Ø  
fall-PastAnt        go.down-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She fell (all the way) down.’

When phrased without a prosodic break, the final verb is often tone-dropped, as it usually is in a main clause with preceding constituents.

Other examples parallel to (430a), involving a chaining form plus a final imperfective verb, are *dù:nd-ú pàdà-dè* ‘put down and leave’, *jòbó yò:-dè* ‘run and go in’ (=‘run in’), and marginally *bòl-ú yè-jè* ‘go and come (back)’. The last combination seems to be possible, but a loose chain is preferred since the two events are sequenced, and it is a stretch to conceptualize them as a single event.

### 15.1.1 Verbal noun of directly chained verbs

#### 15.1.1.1 Simple verbs

The verbal noun suffix *-du* (§4.2.2.1) is added only to the final verb in a chain. In a direct chain, the nonfinal verb is in the chaining form (431a). The nonfinal verb is not tone-dropped, so the construction cannot be classified as a regular nominal compound. A loose chain with *-a:-ní* is also possible (431a), but the past anterior subordinated form with simple *-a:* was not accepted by my assistant.

- (431) a. *nùmbó*      *súgò-dù*  
fall                  go.down-VblN  
'falling (all the way) down'
- b. *nùmb-á:-ní*      *súgò-dù*  
fall-Ant-Nonpast      go.down-VblN  
'falling (all the way) down'
- c. #*nùmb-â:*      *súgò-dù*

#### 15.1.1.2 Verbal nouns of 'bring' and 'convey'

In verbal noun formation, unlike other constructions such as relative clauses, 'bring' and 'convey' (§10.1.3.10-11) are treated like true direct verb chains. The effect is that *já:* and *je:* appear in unreduced form with long, rising-toned vowels.

- (432) a. *já:*      *yè-jú*  
take                  come-VblN  
'bringing'
- b. *je:*      *bò-jú*  
take                  go-VblN  
'conveying, taking (away or to another place)'

By contrast, these verbs behave like fused units in relative clauses, where a pronominal subject proclitic precedes them rather than intervening between their two parts (§14.5.2).

### 15.1.2 Arguments of directly chained verbs

Direct objects may function as arguments of both verbs in a direct chain. In many such chains, both verbs are transitive.

- (433) a. *pédù=ì*      *bèndé*      *dà-dá:-dè-*Ø  
sheep=Acc      hit.Chain      Augm-kill-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
'He/She will hit and kill a sheep.'

- b. *tibú*      *kámb-ù*      *tè-té:-dè-* $\emptyset$   
 stone      throw-Chain      Augm-send-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He will throw a stone (away).’

However, a transitive nonfinal verb with an object may combine with a final motion verb. In this case the object is bracketed with the nonfinal verb.

- (434) *[pédù=ŋ*      *dà-â:]*      *ból-i-* $\emptyset$   
 [sheep=Acc      kill-PastAnt]      go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She killed a sheep and went.’

As final verb meaning ‘can’ (§15.1.4.1), *bèlē* is compatible with either intransitive or transitive nonfinal VPs. Since *bèlē* is elsewhere a transitive verb ‘get, obtain’, one can argue that the object NP in (435) is jointly bracketed with the two verbs.

- (435) *pédù=ŋ*      *sémè*      *bé-jè-* $\emptyset$   
 sheep=Acc      slaughter.Chain      get-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She can slaughter a sheep.’

### 15.1.3 Negation of direct verb chains

Only the final verb is negated. The negation has semantic scope over the chain, which is conceptualized as a single complex event.

- (436) a. *nùmbó*      *súge-èlè-* $\emptyset$   
 fall.Chain      go.down-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She will not fall (all the way) down.’
- b. *yâ:*      *nùmb-â:*      *sùgò-lì-* $\emptyset$   
 yesterday      fall-PastAnt      go.down-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘Yesterday he/she did not fall (all the way) down.’

### 15.1.4 Chains with final *bèlē* ‘get’

A chain ending in this verb can mean ‘be able to VP’ or ‘finish VPing’. The former sense is usual when the verb is imperfective, the latter when it is perfective.

#### 15.1.4.1 ‘Be able to VP’ in imperfective contexts

An imperfective (positive or negative) form of *bèlē* ‘get, obtain’ follows an open-ended VP ending with a verb in its chaining form. The subject NP belongs to the whole complex, but complements such as objects and directionals are semantically bracketed with the nonfinal verb. This is the regular way to express capability to do something (437a-b). I have found it to be the easiest way to elicit chaining forms of verbs. In contexts where telicity is not involved, a perfective form of *bèlē* can mean ‘was able to VP’. In this case, the subordinated verb is in

past anterior subordinated form (437c). However, perfective *bèlē* is usually associated with the sense ‘finish VP’ (next section).

- (437) a. *[mí Lbà:] [ù=í] bár-ú] bě:jè-∅*  
           [1SgPoss Lfather] [2Sg=Acc help-Chain] Augm.get-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘My father can help you-Sg.’
- b. *[[àndá rà:] bòl-ú] bél-èlè-ñ̄*  
       [[village Loc] go-Chain] get-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
       ‘I can’t go to the village.’
- c. *[[àndá rà:] bòl-â:] bél-è-ñ̄ / bél-lì-ñ̄*  
       [[village Loc] go-PastAnt] get-Pfv-1SgSbj/get-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
       ‘I was/wasn’t able to go to the village.’

#### 15.1.4.2 ‘Finish VPing’

With *bèlē* in perfective aspect (positive or negative), the nonfinal verb takes the *-a:* past anterior subordinating form. The usual sense is ‘finish VPing’, denoting the successful completion of a bounded (telic) event. The subject may be animate (438a) or inanimate (438b). The substantive verb takes past anterior form, indicating that it and ‘get’ = ‘finish’ are conceptualized as chronologically sequential. In the less common situation where ‘finish VPing’ is projected into the future, *bèlē* takes periphrastic future form, with the subordinated verb in its chaining form (438c).

- (438) a. *wálù kán-à: bél-è-∅*  
       work(n) do-PastAnt get-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘He/She finished working.’
- b. *àná mì-â: bél-è-∅*  
       rain(n) rain.fall-PastAnt get-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘It has finished (=stopped) raining.’
- c. *númò: jǎ: jé: bé-j-à: sè-ñ̄*  
       quickly meal eat.Chain get-Ipfv-PastAnt have-1SgSbj  
       ‘I will finish eating soon.’

#### 15.1.5 Direct chains with final *pádà* ‘leave (behind)’

*pádà* ‘leave (behind), abandon’ can follow another transitive VP in a direct chain, if the event involves placing the object somewhere (and going away) or otherwise relinquishing it. The ‘leaving’ component is normally implied rather than overtly stated in free English translations.

- (439) a. *dě:ŋ=gɔ dù:nd-ú pádà-dè-ñ̄*  
       waterjar=Def put.down-Chain leave-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I will put the waterjar down (and leave it).’

- b. [pédù      m̩-m̩ò]      [mí]      dèlè = ï]  
 [sheep      1Sg-Poss]      [1SgPoss      elder.sib=Acc]  
 sàgú      d̩ù:-r-ú      pàdà-d̩è-ñ  
 trust(n)      carry-Tr-Chain      leave-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 'I will entrust my sheep to my elder brother.' (lit. "load in trust and leave")

### 15.1.6 Direct chains with final óbò 'give'

K&P (p. 73) give examples of óbò 'give' chained to a preceding verb. Their French translations suggest that óbò adds a beneficiary to the case frame of the verb. My assistant spontaneously translated one of the K&P French glosses into DS with a final 'give'. Since 'give' has a special imperative form for 1Sg recipient (ób-ú 'give me!'), an overt 1Sg pronominal is not needed in (440a). The regular imperative óbò is used for other beneficiaries (440b). In both (440a) and (440b) the 'give' verb appears in L-toned form, as we would expect at the end of a long clause. Beneficiaries are preferentially phrased as possessors when this is semantically reasonable, as in (440c) which lacks 'give', so the frequency of benefactives with 'give' as in (440a-b) is not as high as one might expect.

- (440) a. d̩í:      númer-i:-m-ù      ób-ù  
 water      hot-MP-Caus-Chain      give.me.Imprt  
 '(Please) heat some water for me!'
- b. [ú      Lbà:]      d̩í:      númer-i:-m-ù      óbò  
 [2SgPoss      Lfather]      water      hot-MP-Caus-Chain      give.Imprt  
 '(Please) heat some water for your father!'
- c. [[ú      Lbà:]      Ld̩í:]      númer-è:-m̩ò  
 [[2SgPoss      Lfather]      Lwater]      hot-MP-Caus.Imprt  
 '(Please) heat some water for your father!' (lit. "Heat your father's water!")

The literal sense of 'give' is not absent from (440a-b), since the expectation is that the hot water will end up with the beneficiary. In the combination yàb-ú ób-ù with yàbá 'take, receive' and ób-ú 'give me!', the sense is 'take it (from someone else) and give it to me!', rather than 'take it (e.g. a heavy load) for me!'. I have not encountered examples with 'give' in an abstract benefactive sense as in 'work for/on behalf of (someone)'.

### 15.1.7 Chains with final tê: 'send'

K&P (p. 73) observe that tê: 'send' can be combined with a preceding transitive verb, their examples being with kámbà 'throw' and pàdà 'leave, abandon'.

With 'throw', my assistant indicated that addition of 'send' adds a directional element to the meaning, and the combination lends itself to directional questions ('where?', 'which way?') and to answers thereto. The substantive verb is past anterior in form, suggesting chronological sequencing. The sense can be roughly captured by English *throw away* if we filter out the association with trash disposal and focus on the directionality.

- (441) a. *tibú*      *kàmb-i-* $\emptyset$   
           stone      throw-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She threw a stone.'
- b. *tibú*      [*yògó*      *rà:*]      *kámb-à:*      *tì-ŷ-* $\emptyset$   
           stone      [which? Loc]      throw-PastAnt      send-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'Where (which way) did he/she threw (the) stone?'

With 'leave, abandon', again a locational element is introduced when 'send' is added. In (442), there is an implication that the subject had gone to the place where the object was left.

- (442) [*tànná*    *ù-mò*]      [*yògó*    *rà:*]      *pád-à:*      *tì-ŷ-w*  
       [stick    2Sg-Poss]    [which? Loc]    leave-PastAnt    send-Pfv-2SgSbj  
       'Where did you-Sg (go and) leave your (walking) stick?'

### 15.1.8 Loose chains with nonfinal *mòl-é:-* 'assemble, come together'

By itself, *mòl-é:-* means '(e.g. people) assemble, meet, come together', cf. transitive *mò:-ndó* '(sb) assemble (a group)' (§9.4.4). In the (approximate) sense 'VP together', *mòl-é:-* forms a loose chain with the following verb, suggesting that the act of meeting is conceptualized as a separate event preceding the other event. Therefore my assistant rejected the chaining form *mòl-é:-* in (443b), and complements of the final verb follow the subordinated form of *mòl-é:-* (443a-c). By contrast, English translations with *together* suggest simultaneity of being together and performing an action.

- (443) a. *mòl-í-à:*      *bàmàkó*      *ból-i-yà*  
       assemble-MP-PastAnt    B      go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
       'They went to Bamako together.'
- b. *émmè*      *mòl-í-à:-nì* / (#*mòl-í-ŷ*)  
       1Pl      assemble-MP-Ant-Nonpast / (#assemble-MP-Chain)  
*bàmàkó*      *bó-jè-ñ*  
       B      go-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
       'We will go to Bamako together.'
- c. *[[émmè*      *yà-wôy]*      *mòl-í-à:-nì*]  
       [1PlSbj    all]      assemble-MP-Ant-Nonpast]  
*[gìné*      *ùdò-mó-ñ]*  
       house      build-Hort-PlAddr]  
       'Let's build a house together!'

*mòl-í-à:* and *mòl-í-à:-nì* can be replaced by *mòn-â:* and *mòn-á:-nì*, respectively. However, these forms are related to the verb *mòn-é:-* 'line up, form a line'. The phonological similarity may have induced some merging of the subordinated forms.

### 15.1.9 Chaina with nonfinal *jǎ:* ‘take (sb)’

Beside the rather frozen ‘bring’ and ‘convey’ (§10.1.3.10-11), I was able to elicit *jǎ:* ‘take (sb)’ with other motion verbs. In (444), the image is of the adult holding the hand of the child as they jog along.

- (444) *mí sé:dù=ì [ibè rà:] jǎ: jòbò-dè-ñ*  
1SgSbj S=Acc [market Loc] take.Chain run-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
'I (an adult) run along with Seydou (a child) to the market.'

K&P (p. 73) state that *jǎ:* ‘take (sb)’ can also occur as a chain-final verb with another transitive preceding it. Their example is “yen già dya, boli” glossed as ‘having finished saying that, he left’, where “dyá” (i.e. *jǎ:*) seems to mean ‘finish, complete’. My assistant did not recognize this construction and understood *jà-á* literally as past anterior subordinator ‘having taken (sb) along’.

In some textual passages, *jǎ:* in a chain appears to add a distributive quantificational element (§17.5.2).

*jǎ:* in the original general sense ‘take (sb)’ may be etymologically present in simultaneous subordinator *-njà:* (§15.2.1.2) and/or in immediate future *-njá: wò* (§10.2.2.8).

### 15.1.10 Chains including a motion verb

#### 15.1.10.1 Direct chain of manner verb and directional verb

Directional motion verbs like ‘descend’ (go/come down), ‘ascend’ (go/come up), ‘enter’, and ‘exit’, can be directly chained to a preceding manner verb. Examples with ‘fall’ and ‘descend’ in the sense ‘fall (all the way) down’ were given in §14.5.1. Other examples are *tómb-ù dàmbá-dè* ‘jump up, go up by jumping’ *tómb-ù yó:-dè* ‘jump in, enter by jumping’, and *tómb-ù gó:-dè* ‘jump out, exit by jumping’.

#### 15.1.10.2 Disparaging use of additional motion verb in nonliteral sense

K&P (p. 73) report that ‘go’ may be chained to a preceding VP, not necessarily implying actual motion. The examples given (with ‘become lost’, ‘die’, and ‘forget’) resemble the English construction *X went and died (on me)*, with a similar hint of disparagement. My assistant confirms *màr-ú bö:-jè* ‘will go and get lost’, *yím-à: ból-i* ‘went and died’, and *nà-ý bö:-jè* ‘will go and forget’. A spontaneously elicited example is the self-disparaging ‘I (went and) forgot that you don’t eat fish’ in (504) in §17.2.1.3. (The French cue did not include a motion verb.)

#### 15.1.10.3 Motion event precedes or follows the other event

Chronological sequencing of a motion event and some other event, in either order, is expressed by the regular loose (not direct) chaining machinery for sequenced events. The event that occurred first is expressed with past anterior *-a:* if the whole sequence is completed (final verb is perfective), and with nonpast anterior *-a:-nì* if the whole sequence is not

completed (final verb is imperfective, future, imperative, or hortative). In (445a) the motion event occurs first (in a future context). In (445b) the motion event will follow the other event. (445c-d) are identical to (445a-b) except that they describe completed event sequences.

- (445) a. *bòl-á:-nì* [bòndó rà:] nùmbò-dè-∅  
go-Ant-Nonpast [hole Loc] fall-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
'He/She will go (there) and then fall into the pit.'
- b. *nùy-á:-nì* bò-jè-∅  
sing-Ant-Nonpast go-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
'He/She will sing and then go.'
- c. *bòl-â:* [bòndó rà:] nùmb-è-∅  
go-PastAnt [hole Loc] fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'He/She went (there) and then fell into the pit.'
- d. *nùy-â:* bòl-ì-∅  
sing-PastAnt go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'He/She sang and then went.'

More often, 'go' and 'come' combine with a preceding VP in a purposive construction using the {L}-{HL} tonal pattern (§17.4.4). However, if the utterance is imperative, 'go' or 'come' takes an {L}-toned version of the chaining form, and is followed by the main verb in regular imperative (singular or plural) form. (See the following section for similar tonal patterns.)

- (446) a. *yèlè*<sup>L</sup> [sínjè] lálà / lálà-ñ]  
come.Chain<sup>L</sup> [conversation converse.Imprt / converse.Imprt-2PlSbj]  
'Come-2Sg/2Pl and talk (converse)!'
- b. *bòl-ù*<sup>L</sup> [pá:] pâ:  
go-Chain<sup>L</sup> [meal eat.Imprt]  
'Go-2Sg eat!'

#### 15.1.10.4 Imperative *bà* as generic motion verb at end of chain

*bà* can function as a nondirectional motion verb ('go', but compatible with 'come') when directly chained to a preceding verb in imperative function: *bélú gíré bà* 'go tend the (livestock) animals!' (text 05 at 00:16), plural-addressee *bélú gíré bà-ñ*. The form *bà* is not transparently related synchronically to *bòló*, though it usually translates as 'go!'. A motion verb like 'go' or 'come' may be preposed to expand the chain: *bòlò bélú gíré bà* 'go tend the animals!', *yèlè bélú gíré bà* 'come tend the animals!' Both *bòlò* 'go' and *yèlè* 'come' are tone-dropped in this imperative construction, as they are in (446a-b) in the preceding section. Without *bà*, the motion verb would follow the other verb (and object), which would then occur in purposive form {L} plus {HL}: *[bélú*<sup>L</sup> *HL**gíré] bólò* 'go tend the animals!'

One could alternatively consider *bà* to be a special added-motion derivational suffix, but its restriction to imperative function does not mesh with other derivational verbal suffixes.

### 15.1.11 Verb iterations

In narratives, a verb in the chaining form may be iterated to indicate repetition or prolongation. The tone pattern is {L}-{HL}, i.e. the first iteration is (usually) tone-dropped while the second has a falling pattern with at most the first syllable H-toned. One textual passage had three examples: *tèmbè-témbè* ‘find-find’, *[bà-ỳ]-[bá-ỳ]* ‘beat-beat (tomtoms)’, and *[sègìr-i-ỳ]-[ségìr-i-ỳ]* (text 01 at 00:25). See also *bòl-bòl* (< *bòló* ‘go’) in text 05 at 01:08.

The same construction can be applied to verbs denoting the manner of an action (especially of motion). In this case the iteration functions as a manner adverbial and is followed by a motion verb. Examples are *[pòbùlù-m-ù]-[póbùlù-m-ù]* ‘groping along’ (from *póbòlò-mò*), *bùmbò-búmbò* ‘dragging along’, and mediopassive *[bùmb-i-ỳ]-[búmb-i-ỳ]* ‘dragging oneself along, crawling on one’s belly’).

These often colorful manner adverbials can be classified as expressive adverbials (§8.4.7.1).

## 15.2 Temporal adverbial clauses with overt subordinating morpheme

### 15.2.1 Adverbial clauses expressing temporal simultaneity or overlap

#### 15.2.1.1 Noun-headed temporal relative clause (‘[at] the time when ...’)

This is a regular relative construction with a temporal noun such as *wágùrù* ‘(point in) time, moment’, *bày* ‘day’, or *ànà-kúdù* ‘year’, in {L}-toned form as relative heads. Postposition *lè* is added, here in temporal function (§8.1.3). In (447), the verb-participle is perfective, since the event is used as a temporal locator to identify a time period.

- (447) [wágùrù<sup>L</sup> / bày<sup>L</sup> / ànà-kúdù<sup>L</sup>    ú        yél-đ=đ]                      lè  
[time<sup>L</sup> / day<sup>L</sup> / year<sup>L</sup>                      2SgSbj    come-Pfv.Ppl=Def]    Temp  
‘at the time/on the day/in the year when you-Sg came’

#### 15.2.1.2 Simultaneous *-njà:* on activity verb before motion verb

This construction indicates that two activities are or were carried out simultaneously. The subordinated activity is expressed by invariant L-toned simultaneous subordinator *-njà:*. This is distinct from H-toned *-njá:* in the immediate future combination *-njá: wò* (§10.2.2.8). One or both of *-njà:* and *-njá:* may be related to the verb *já:* ‘take (sb)’, as in ‘take a baby/child’ or ‘take (=marry) a woman’. The main-clause verb denotes a second activity, often but not necessarily motion.

- (448) a.    sé:dù                  núŋò                  nùŋó-njà:  
                    S                      song                      sing-Simul  
                    yél-è-∅ / yé-jè-∅  
                    come-Pfv-3SgSbj / come-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
                    ‘Seydou came/comes singing.’

- b. *úlù-ŋ*    *núŋò*    *nùŋó-njà:*    *tɔ́y*    *tɔ́:-d-i*  
 child-Pl    song    sing-Simul    seeds    sow-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children are singing as they sow seeds.’

Representative forms of *-njà:* are in (449). /LH/-melody verbs have the H-tone on the syllable or monosyllabic mora preceding *-njà:*.

(449)	stem	with <i>-njà:</i>	gloss
-------	------	-------------------	-------

a. /HL/-toned

<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká:-njà:</i>	‘shave’
<i>jâ:</i>	<i>já:-njà:</i>	‘eat (meal)’
<i>óbò</i>	<i>óbò-njà:</i>	‘give’
<i>tómbò</i>	<i>tómbò-njà:</i>	‘jump’
<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-njà:</i>	‘sleep’
<i>kígiùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígiùl-è:-njà:</i>	‘go back’

b. /LH/-toned

<i>n᷑:</i>	<i>n᷑:-njà:</i>	‘drink’
<i>y᷑:</i>	<i>y᷑:-njà:</i>	‘weep’
<i>bòlò</i>	<i>bòlò-njà:</i>	‘go’
<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bèndé-njà:</i>	‘hit’
<i>dàŋŋ-é:-</i>	<i>dàŋŋ-é:-njà:</i>	‘sit’
<i>yàbìl-é:-</i>	<i>yàbìl-é:-njà:</i>	‘reply’

### 15.2.1.3 Imperfective subordinators *-ni* and *-w̄*

These suffixes appear on the nonfinal verb of a loose chain, where the clause in question denotes a process that takes place simultaneously with that of the main clause. The choice between *-ni* and *-w̄* depends on the time frame of the larger sequence, with *-ni* for not-yet completed events and *-w̄* for completed (examples are given in the following sections). Elsewhere *-ni* is found in purposive clauses (§17.5.1), and as part of the nonpast anterior subordinator *-a:-ni* which also includes past anterior *-a:*. In that combination the precise semantic contribution of *-ni* is difficult to tease out (§15.2.2.1). Given the semantic divergence of these three occurrences of *-ni*, I label them differently. The cases of *-ni* covered in this section are labeled **imperfective nonpast** (“-Ipfv.Nonpast” in interlinears).

There is also a locative postposition *ni* (§8.2.2) which may or may not be related historically.

*-w̄* is presumably the same imperfective morpheme (“-Ipfv” in interlinears) as that in progressive *-w̄ w̄* (§10.2.2.3) and in past progressive-1 *-w̄ =bè-* (§10.5.1.1).

*-w̄* is L-toned and is added to the presuffixal stem with its lexical tones intact (450a-b). *-ni* by contrast has variable tone. /HL/-toned verbs combine with *-ni* to produce forms with an H-tone on the first syllable and all following tones low (450a). An /LH/-toned verb appears with an L-toned stem followed by H-toned *-ní* (450b).

(450)	stem	with <i>-ni</i>	with <i>-wà</i>	gloss
-------	------	-----------------	-----------------	-------

a. /HL/-toned

<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká:-nì</i>	<i>ká:-wà</i>	'shave'
<i>jâ:</i>	<i>já:-nì</i>	<i>já:-wà</i>	'eat (meal)'
<i>óbò</i>	<i>óbò-nì</i>	<i>óbò-wà</i>	'give'
<i>tómbò</i>	<i>tómbò-nì</i>	<i>tómbò-wà</i>	'jump'
<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-nì</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-wà</i>	'sleep'
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-nì</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-wà</i>	'go back'

b. /LH/-toned

<i>nđ:</i>	<i>nđ:-ní</i>	<i>nđ:-wà</i>	'drink'
<i>yă:</i>	<i>yă:-ní</i>	<i>yă:-wà</i>	'weep'
<i>bóló</i>	<i>bóló-ní</i>	<i>bóló-wà</i>	'go'
<i>béndé</i>	<i>béndé-ní</i>	<i>béndé-wà</i>	'hit'
<i>dàjn-é:-</i>	<i>dàjn-é:-ní</i>	<i>dàjn-é:-wà</i>	'sit'
<i>yábìl-é:-</i>	<i>yábìl-é:-ní</i>	<i>yábìl-é:-wà</i>	'reply'

Another construction apparently ending in the same *-nì*, but after a stative quasi-verb (*wò-nì*) with impersonal sense 'while it was the case that ...', and with a main-like clause as complement, occurs in text 04 at 00:26.

Another subordinated clause type used in complements of perception verbs requires imperfective *-wà* even in nonpast time contexts (§17.2.2.1).

#### 15.2.1.4 Imperfective *-ni* or *-wà* on activity verb plus time-of-day verb

The verbs *déné* 'spend the (mid-)day' and *yâ:* 'spend the night' (sometimes accompanied by *bâ:*, a noun used in collocations denoting day/night transitions) lend themselves to the construction with a preceding subordinated clause denoting a simultaneous activity.

Comparison of (451a) with (451b) shows that the imperfective subordinator is *-ni* when the main clause denotes a not-yet completed event (i.e. the time frame is general present or future), and *-wà* when the main clause denotes an already completed event. "Not-yet completed" here includes imperatives and hortatives as well as imperfective verbs (451c).

- (451) a. *[kórùkđ lè] [sínjè] lálá-ní*  
           [Ramadan Temp] [talk(n)] converse-Ipfv.Nonpast]  
*bâ: yâ:-dè-ŋ*  
           transition spend.night-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
           'During Ramadan, we (regularly) spend the night conversing.'
- b. *yâ: [sínjè lálá-wà] yè-è-ŋ*  
       yesterday [talk(n) converse-Ipfv.Past] spend.night-Pfv-1PlSbj  
       'Yesterday we spent the night conversing.'

- c. [sínjè]      *làlà-ní*  
           [talk(n)]      converse-**Ipfv.Nonpast**  
           bâ:      yá:-ñ  
           day/night      spend.night.Imprt-PlAddr  
           ‘Spend-2Pl the night conversing!’

Example (451a) has H-toned *-ní* after an {L}-toned form of a lexically /LH/-toned verb. (452) illustrates L-toned *-ní* with a lexically /HL/-toned verb.

- (452) émmè [gìr-î:      yéyy-è:-ní]      dènè-mò-ñ  
       we      [sleep(n)      sleep-MP-**Ipfv.Nonpast**]      spend.day-Hort-PlAddr  
       ‘Let’s spend the (mid-)day sleeping!’

Main-clause statives do not count as “imperfective” for purposes of choosing *-w* or *-ní* in the subordinated clause. Therefore only *-w* is possible in (453).

- (453) [tê:      jà:ndó-w / (# jà:ndà-ní) ]      dànjà-ñ  
       [tea      put.up.on-**Ipfv.Past** / (#put.up.on-Ipfv.Nonpast)]      sit.Stat-1SgSbj  
       ‘I am sitting, making tea.’

Likewise, a presentative main clause (§4.4.4) requires *-w* in the subordinated clause (454a-b).

- (454) a. sé:dù [tê:      jà:ndó-w / (# jà:ndà-ní) ]      kú-wò  
       S      [tea      put.up.on-**Ipfv** / (#put.up.on-Ipfv.Nonpast)]      there’s!  
       ‘There’s Seydou, making tea!’
- b. úlù-ñ      [kèdè-kédè      kédè-w / (#kédè-ní) ]  
       child-Pl      [play(n)      play-**Ipfv.Past** / (#play-Ipfv.Nonpast)]  
       kú-wò-yà  
       there are!  
       ‘There are the children, playing (having fun)!’

### 15.2.1.5 *kán(à)* ‘do’ plus imperfective clause

While subordinated imperfective clauses normally take *-w* suffix rather than main-clause imperfective *-dè-*, one construction is attested in texts with the main-clause suffix and a following form of *kán(à)* ‘do’ (455).

- (455) [nàmá      njěm-mò],  
       [meat      Logo-Poss],  
       bél-â:      bé      témè-dè      kánè-èlè  
       get-PastAnt      3PLSbj      eat.meat-Ipfv      do-IpfvNeg  
       ‘(He said:) you won’t be getting and eating my flesh.’ (text 01 at 01:56)

An apparent periphrastic causative with ‘do’ (i.e. ‘make’) and a subordinated clause (with stative ‘not have’) is in text 03 at 00:13.

### 15.2.1.6 Temporal ‘since ...‘ clauses and related forms (*nè*, *bà:y*, *gò-é mò-nì*)

In one construction, variant temporal postposition *nè* follows a perfective participle (or pseudo-participle) of the verb in a headless relative (456a). *nè* is an allomorph of locative *nì* that is used especially in temporal rather than spatial contexts (§8.2.2); here it specifies a temporal starting point (‘as of the time when ...’). The subject is expressed by an obligatory proclitic subject pronoun, even if there is also an overt nonpronominal subject NP (456b). See also text 01 at 01:01 and text 02 at 01:57.

- (456) a. *bé*      *yèl-é-Ø / ká-ý-Ø / tó-è-Ø*      *nè*,  
       3PlSbj    come-/ shave-/sow-Pfv-3Sg.Ppl      Loc,  
       *jǎ:*      *jnà:-ñ-ní*  
       meal      eat-PfvNeg-3PlSbj  
       ‘(Ever) since they came/shaved/planted, they haven’t eaten.’
- b. *úlù-ñ*      *bé*      *bòl-ú*      *nè*,  
       child-Pl    3Pl      go-Pfv-3Sg.Ppl      Loc,  
       *bè = ý*      *wà:-lì-ý*  
       3Pl=Acc      see-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
       ‘(Ever) since the children went away, I haven’t seen them.’

However, the same construction (headless perfective relative plus *nè*) is also attested in a text as a headless object relative (‘what they have said [is...]').

English *since X*, where X is a NP denoting a point or interval of time is translated by a) *X* *bà:y*, b) *X gò-é mò-nì*, or their combination c) *X bà:y gò-é mò-nì*. (457a-b) illustrate with *yâ:* ‘yesterday’ and *gà:lí* ‘last year’.

- (457) a. *[yâ:      bà:y]*  
       *[yâ:    gò-é      mò-nì]*  
       *[[yâ:      bà:y]      gò-é      mò-nì]*  
       [yesterday ... ]      since  
       *[jnà:    nà:-lì-ý]*  
       [meal      eat-PfvNeg-1SgSbj]  
       ‘Since yesterday I haven’t eaten.’
- b. *[gà:lí      (bà:y)      gò-é      mò-nì]      [yàlú      bòl-lù-ý]*  
       [last.year (since)      since      ]      [place      go-PfvNeg-1SgSbj]  
       ‘Since last year, I haven’t gone anywhere (travelled).’

*gò-é mò-nì* is nontransparent in form. It begins with a perfective pseudo-participle of *gò:* ‘go out’. This verb often has the sense ‘be ended’ (as with seasons of the year which ‘come down’ and then ‘go out’). *mò-nì* looks like a form of *-mò-nì*, which is elsewhere attested in ‘before ...’ clauses (§15.2.3). However, the regular combination of ‘go out’ with the ‘before’ subordinator is *gò:-mò-nì* with *gò:* rather than *gò-é*. The sense ‘before it has gone out’ makes some sense in a ‘still’ clause, which denotes an extended time interval beginning with the nominate point in time (e.g. ‘yesterday’) and continues to the present or other reference time.

## 15.2.2 Adverbial clauses expressing a chronological sequence

### 15.2.2.1 Past anterior *-a:* and nonpast anterior *-a:-nì*

Past anterior subordinator *-a:* and its morphological extension nonpast anterior *-a:-nì* are featured in the sections that follow. In the present section I focus on their segmental and tonal forms.

With a lexically /HL/-toned stem, the *-a:* form has an initial H-tone followed by L-tones. With a lexically /LH/-toned stem, the *-a:* form has an L-toned stem and H-toned suffix. The *-a:* contracts with the final short vowel of a nonmonosyllabic stem. A monosyllabic stem is reduced to short-voweled *Cv-*, and mid-height {*o ɔ*} and {*e ε*} are raised to the high vowels *u* and *i*, respectively, resulting in *-u-a:* and *-i-a:*, which are optionally realized with a faint epenthetic *y* between the vowels. Mediopassive stems with suffixed *-e:- ~ -e-* likewise become *-i-a:*, and if the stem is lexically /LH/-toned like ‘sit’ the H-tone remains on the *-i-* followed by L-toned *-a:*. A *Ca:* stem contracts to what I transcribe as *Ca-a* to facilitate lexical identification, pronounced [*Ca:*] without hiatus and without super-long duration. The form in *-a:-nì* adds *-nì* to the *-a:* form, but a preceding falling *â:* flattens to *á:* before *-nì*.

(458)	stem	with <i>-a:</i>	with <i>-a:-nì</i>	gloss
a. /HL/-toned				
<i>kâ:</i>	<i>ká-à</i>	<i>ká-á-nì</i>		‘shave’
<i>tê:</i>	<i>tí-à:</i>	<i>tí-à:-nì</i>		‘send’
<i>óbò</i>	<i>ób-à:</i>	<i>ób-à:-nì</i>		‘give’
<i>tómbò</i>	<i>tómb-à:</i>	<i>tómb-à:-nì</i>		‘jump’
with initial sonorant				
<i>jâ:</i>	<i>já-à</i>	<i>já-á-nì</i>		‘eat (meal)’
<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy(-ì)-à:</i>	<i>yéyy(-ì)-à:-nì</i>		‘sleep’
<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-i-à:</i>	<i>kígùl-i-à:-nì</i>		‘go back’
b. /LH/-toned				
<i>n᷑:</i>	<i>nù-â:</i>	<i>nù-á:-nì</i>		‘drink’
<i>y᷑:</i>	<i>yà-â:</i>	<i>yà-á:-nì</i>		‘weep’
<i>d᷑:</i>	<i>dì-â:</i>	<i>dì-á:-nì</i>		‘insult’
<i>g᷑:</i>	<i>gù-â:</i>	<i>gù-á:-nì</i>		‘go out’
<i>bòló</i>	<i>bòl-â:</i>	<i>bòl-á:-nì</i>		‘go’
<i>bèndé</i>	<i>bènd-â:</i>	<i>bènd-á:-nì</i>		‘hit’
<i>dàŋŋ-é:-</i>	<i>dàŋŋ-i-à:</i>	<i>dàŋŋ-i-à:-nì</i>		‘sit’

In addition to the subordinated clause types described below, *-a:* occurs in certain periphrastic predicates with auxiliary ‘be’ or ‘have’: the present perfect *-a: wò* (§10.2.1.4), the periphrastic future *-d-à: sè* (§10.2.2.7), and possibly the immediate future *-njá: wò* (§10.2.2.8). It may also be, or have once been, part of experiential perfect *-tíyà wò* (§10.2.1.3).

### 15.2.2.2 Clauses with *-a:* ‘and then’ (same-subject, anterior, past)

This high-frequency subordinator is used to “conjoin” (so to speak) two clauses that denote chronologically sequenced events when the whole event sequence is construed as perfective,

i.e. generally completed in the past. When the subjects of the two clauses are the same, there is no proclitic subject pronoun in the first clause. The two underlying VPs may also share nonsubject constituents, as in (459a) where ‘meat’ is logically the object of both ‘cook’ and ‘eat’. This makes bracketing difficult; in (459a) it might be best to bracket ‘meat’ with the first verb and think of a silent pronominal copy preceding the second verb. Looser combinations are also quite possible, as in (459b), where each verb has its own object.

- (459) a. *úlù-ŋ* [nàmó=ð] *ilè-m-à:*  
 child-Pl [meat=Def] be.cooked-Caus-PastAnt]  
*tém-i-yà*  
 eat.meat-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children cooked and ate (the) meat.’
- b. *[tánná yèŋ-â:]* [pédù =ŋ] *bènd-è-Ø]*  
 [stick take-PastAnt] [sheep=Acc hit-Pfv-3SgSbj]  
 ‘He/She picked up (a/the) stick and hit (a/the) sheep-Sg.’

If the main clause is negated, the scope of negation does not extend to the subordinated clause (460).

- (460) *úlù-ŋ* [nàmó=ð] *ilè-m-à:*  
 child-Pl [meat=Def] be.cooked-Caus-PastAnt]  
*témè-ñ-ní*  
 eat.meat-PfvNeg-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children cooked the meat but did not eat it.’

If the first clause is negated, it must take main-clause shape, so the construction is a clause juxtaposition rather than a chain. In (461a), both clauses are negated. In (461b), just the first clause is negated.

- (461) a. *úlù-ŋ* [nàmó=ð] *ilè-mè-ñ-ní]*  
 child-Pl [meat=Def] be.cooked-Caus-PfvNeg-3PlSbj]  
*témè-ñ-ní*  
 eat.meat-PfvNeg-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children did not cook and eat the meat.’  
 (i.e. ‘The children neither cooked nor ate the meat.’)
- b. *úlù-ŋ* [nàmó=ð] *ilè-mè-ñ-ní]*  
 child-Pl [meat=Def] be.cooked-Caus-PfvNeg-3PlSbj]  
*tém-i-yà*  
 eat.meat-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children didn’t cook the meat but they ate it.’  
 (i.e. ‘The children ate the meat without having cooked it.’)

In (462), the subordinated clause with *-a:* itself contains an embedded purposive clause with *-ni*.

- (462) *[[sé:dù=ŷ gèndè-ní] bòl-â:]*  
 [[S=Acc look.at-Purp] go-PastAnt]  
*[wò=ŷ tèmbè-lì-ŷ]*  
 [3Sg=acc find-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I went to see Seydou but I didn’t find him (there).’

#### 15.2.2.3 Clauses with *-a:* ‘and then’ (different-subject, anterior, past)

In this construction, subordinator *-a:* on the verb of the subordinated clause is accompanied by an obligatory preverbal proclitic subject pronoun. This pronoun is required even when it resumes a co-occurring clause-initial subject (463a). The construction denotes a sequential relationship between two events, the sequence as a whole being construed as completed in the past.

- (463) a. *[yà:-ŷ nă: bé já-yèl-â:]*  
 [woman-Pl meal 3PlSbj take-come-PastAnt]  
*[émmè jn-è-ŷ]*  
 [1PlSbj eat-Pfv-1PlSbj  
 ‘The women brought the meal, and then we ate.’
- b. *[émmè nă: émmè já-yèl-â:]*  
 [1Pl meal 1PlSbj take-come-PastAnt]  
*[yà:-ŷ jn-é-ŷ-yà]*  
 [woman-Pl eat-Pfv-3PlSbj]  
 ‘We brought the meal, and then the women ate.’
- c. *[[mí <sup>L</sup>bà:=ŷ] kè:lé mí túb-â:]*  
 [[1SgPoss <sup>L</sup>father=Acc] money 1SgSbj ask.for-PastAnt]  
*[[wó mì=ŷ òbò-lí-∅]*  
 [[3SgSbj 1Sg=Acc give-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘I asked my father for money, but he didn’t give it to me.’

#### 15.2.2.4 Clauses with *-a:-nì* ‘and then’ (same-subject, anterior, future)

Future-time counterparts of the first examples in the preceding section on *-a:* subordinators are (464a-b). As before, the events denoted by the two clauses are sequenced in time. The main-clause verb is now imperfective (464a-b), future, imperative (464c), or hortative. The subordinated clause has *-a:-nì*, i.e. with suffix *-nì* superimposed on the past anterior *-a:* subordinating suffix.

- (464) a. *úlù-ŷ [nàmó=ð ílè-m-à:-nì]*  
 child-Pl [meat=Def be.cooked-Caus-Ant-Nonpast]  
*tèmè-d-ì*  
 eat.meat-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children will cook and eat (the) meat.’

- b. *[tànná yèŋ-á:-ni]* [stick take-Ant-Nonpast] *[pédù=ŷ]* [sheep=Acc] *bèndè-dè-∅* [hit-Ipfv-3SgSbj]  
 ‘He/She will pick up (a/the) stick and hit (a/the) sheep-Sg.’
- c. *[tànná yèŋ-á:-ni]* [stick take-Ant-Nonpast] *[pédù=ŷ]* [sheep=Acc] *béndè* [hit.Imprt]  
 ‘Pick up-2Sg the stick and hit the sheep-Sg!’

It is not possible to analyse the meaning of *-a:-nì* as the product of the meanings of its two parts. Elsewhere simple *-a:* is a past anterior subordinator; only the “anterior” part is valid for *-a:-nì*. On the other hand, simple *-ni* occurs as purposive (§17.5.1) or past simultaneous subordinator (§15.2.1.3), neither of which is precisely relevant to *-a:-nì*. In interlinears for *-a:-nì*, I will trim “-PastAnt” to just “-Ant” for *-a:*, and will label *-nì* as “-Nonpast” for lack of a better name.

For tonally irregular *pinn-á:-nì* ‘later’ see §8.4.6.2.

#### 15.2.2.5 Pseudo-conditional =*yò* (same- or different-subject, anterior, future)

The sentences in (463a-c) in §15.2.2.3 above are converted into a future time frame in (465a-c). This construction is also possible for habitual imperfective, or past imperfective contexts. The first clause takes the form of a conditional antecedent with final *=yò* ‘if’ and its variants (§16.1). There is no requirement of a proclitic subject pronoun. Because this construction is normal for future-time event sequences, and therefore has no conditional semantics in the usual sense, I refer to this (and similar constructions in other Dogon languages) as **pseudo-conditional**.

Examples (465a-c) have different subjects in the two clauses.

- (465) a. *[yà:-ŷ jà: já-yèl-i-yà=yò:]*  
 [woman-Pl meal take-come-Pfv-3PlSbj=if]  
*[émmè jà:-dè-ŷ]*  
 [1PlSbj eat-Ipfv-1PlSbj]  
 ‘The women will bring the meal, and then we will eat.’
- b. *[émmè jà: já-yèl-é-n=jò]*  
 [1Pl meal take-come-Pfv-1PlSbj=if]  
*[yà:-ŷ-bè jà:-d-i]*  
 [woman-Pl-Pl eat-Ipfv-3PlSbj]  
 ‘We will bring the meal, and then the women will eat.’
- c. *[[mí <sup>L</sup>bà:=ŷ] kè:lé tÙb-ð-ń=jò]*  
 [[1SgPoss <sup>L</sup>father=Acc] money ask.for-Pfv-1SgSbj=if]  
*[[wó mì=ŷ óbè-èlè-∅]*  
 [[3SgSbj 1Sg=Acc give-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj]  
 ‘I will ask my father for money, but he won’t give it to me.’

The pseudo-conditional also commonly links two or more same-subject clauses referring to a future, present-habitual, or past imperfective event sequence. Out of many examples in the texts, I mention text 01 at 00:40: ‘Now, they were drinking their water, now they were

beating tomtoms, they kept dancing their dances. Now in that way they went to look for their dinner.' All clauses but the last clause are pseudo-conditional.

#### 15.2.2.6 'VPed until got tired' = 'VPed for a very long time'

One common device to accentuate the duration of an activity is to subordinate the clause denoting the activity to a same-subject clause with perfective 'get tired' and the emphatic particle *pâ*: 'all the way to, to the point of, until'.

- (466) *sé:dù mò:-nd-â: [pâ: dé-è-∅]*  
S laugh-PastAnt [until get.tired-Pfv-3SgSbj]  
'Seydou laughed until he got tired.' (i.e. he couldn't stop laughing)

#### 15.2.2.7 'No sooner..., than ...'

This is a parallelistic construction where two clauses have main-clause form, with the same aspectual category, but are phrased together without a prosodic break. There is no overt subordination, but the listener infers that the two events are immediately sequenced. The subjects of the two clauses may be disjoint (467a) or the same (467b).

- (467) a. *[émmè yò:-y-ñ] mé-è-∅*  
[1PlSbj go.in-Pfv-1PlSbj] rain.fall-Pfv-3SgSbj  
'As soon as we went inside, rain came down.'
- b. *[émmè yó:-dè-ñ] ná:-dè-ñ*  
[1PlSbj go.in-Ipfv-1PlSbj] eat-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
'As soon as we get inside, we will eat.'

#### 15.2.2.8 *kànà* (A-stem) after subject proclitic for switch reference

A construction with 'do' is used as a sequential switch-reference device in narratives. The two clauses denote closely sequenced or otherwise closely related events. An example is the passage in text 04 at 01:05 with *jòmó yárù wó kànà* 'Hare let go (of squirrel's tail), and squirrel ran away.' Adding *kànà* (a form of 'do') after a proclitic subject pronoun (in this example 3Sg *wó kànà*) following the first clause permits it to segue into another clause (here 'squirrel ran away') with disjoint subject. The proclitic agrees with the subject of the preceding clause (in this example, 'hare'). Another example occurs in the same text at 01:11.

In elicitation follow-up, my assistant produced examples with *wó kànà* (3Sg), *mí kànà* (1Sg), and so forth following subordinated clauses with past anterior *-a*: (§15.2.2.2), e.g. *jòb-â: wó kànà* 'after he/she ran'. He also helpfully volunteered that *bòlà* can replace *kànà* in this context (which involves motion), cf. *bòló* 'go'. The other verb that shows up in this construction in the texts is *gèndà* 'look at, consider' from verb *gèndé*, see text 05 at 02:42.

The construction looks like a headless relative clause with a stative participle. However, this construction requires final *a* (*kànà*, *bòlà*, *gèndà*). If regular stative forms of *bòló* and *gèndé* are elicited, they do not shift to a (*yé bòlò-∅* 'he/she is en route', *yé gèndè-∅* 'he/she is looking'). While a stative connection is likely etymologically, synchronically one must take

the type *wó kànà* as a distinctive construction. The old A-stem represented by *kànà*, *bòlà*, and *gèndà* is not otherwise recognizable in DS, except possibly in the 3Sg augmented future (§10.2.2.6).

Variants of this construction based one the ‘do’ verb occur in several Dogon languages. In closely related Tommo So, examples (1008a-b) in McPherson (2013: 537) can be interpreted in this light.

### 15.2.3 ‘Before …’ clause (*-m̀-nì*)

In this construction, the verb of the ‘before’ clause is {L}-toned and has a subordinating suffix complex *-m̀-nì*. Here *̀* represents a vowel ranging over {a e ɔ}, harmonic to the preceding vowel: often *-m̀-nì* after *a*, *-m̀-nì* after nonlow back rounded vowel (but also in one example after the *-e:-* variant of the mediopassive suffix), *-m̀-nì* after nonlow front unrounded vowel. There is no pronominal-subject suffix. The subject, if distinct from that of the paired main clause, is overt as a separate NP or proclitic pronoun, like ‘thief’ in (468a). If a nonpronominal subject NP is present, it is not resumed by a preverbal proclitic subject pronoun. The time frame may be past or future.

- (468) a. [mí jòb-è-ń] [1SgSbj run-Pfv-1SgSbj]  
*[bé / gè:⁻n-gé:⁻nò=ò dò:-m̀-nì]* [3PlSbj / theft-steal.Agent-Sg=Def arrive-before]  
‘I fled before they/the thief arrived.’
- b. [ém̄mè sínjè lalà-dè-ń] [pá: jà:-m̀-nì] [1PlSbj talk(n) converse-Ipfv-1PlSbj] [meal eat-before]  
‘We will converse before eating (before we eat).’
- c. mì=ń bé bēndè-m̀-nì / kà:-m̀-nì  
1Sg=Acc 3PlSbj hit-before / shave-before  
‘before they (could) hit/shave me’

The morphological analysis of the subordinator is nontransparent and the hyphenation is speculative. *-m̀-nì* looks like a *-ni* subordinator (imperfective past) added to the causative suffix (§9.2.1), though there is no causative semantics. For another, somewhat frozen occurrence of *-m̀-nì*, see *gó-ý m̀-nì* ‘since’ in §15.2.1.7.

(469)	stem	with <i>-mv-ni</i>	gloss
a. /HL/-toned			
	<i>kâ:</i>	<i>kâ:-m̀-nì</i>	‘shave’
	<i>pâ:</i>	<i>pâ:-m̀-nì</i>	‘eat (meal)’
	<i>tê:</i>	<i>tê:-m̀-nì</i>	‘send’
	<i>óbò</i>	<i>óbò-m̀-nì</i>	‘give’
	<i>tómbò</i>	<i>tómbò-m̀-nì</i>	‘jump’
	<i>yéyy-è:</i>	<i>yéyy-è:-m̀-nì</i>	‘sleep’
	<i>kígùl-è:-</i>	<i>kígùl-è:-m̀-nì</i>	‘go back’

b. /LH/-toned

<i>n᷑:</i>	<i>n᷑:-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘drink’
<i>y᷑:</i>	<i>y᷑:-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘weep’
<i>d᷑:</i>	<i>d᷑:-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘insult’
<i>g᷑:</i>	<i>g᷑:-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘go out’
<i>b᷑l᷑</i>	<i>b᷑l᷑-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘go’
<i>b᷑nd᷑é</i>	<i>b᷑nd᷑é-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘hit’
<i>d᷑ŋŋ-é:-</i>	<i>d᷑ŋŋ-é:-m᷑-n᷑</i>	‘sit’

15.2.4 *g᷑é*: as filler in verb chains

In texts, a form *g᷑é*: is attested following anterior-time subordinators like *-a:-n᷑*. It seems to serve to keep the motor running, so to speak, while the speaker formulates the next sentence. See text 01 at 00:04 (twice) and text 04 at 00:13.

### 15.3 Spatial and manner adverbials

#### 15.3.1 Spatial adverbial clause (‘where ...’)

In (470a-b), a relative clause headed by ‘place’ is an argument of the larger clause.

- (470) a. *[y᷑l᷑<sup>L</sup> mí n᷑mb-᷑=᷑] w᷑gú w᷑-Ø*  
           [place<sup>L</sup> 1SgSbj fall-Pfv.Ppl=Def] distant be-3SgSbj  
           ‘(The place) where I fell is far away.’
- b. *[úl᷑-᷑-mb᷑ y᷑l᷑<sup>L</sup> b᷑-᷑=᷑] w᷑gú w᷑-Ø*  
           [child-Pl-Pl place<sup>L</sup> go-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] distant be-3SgSbj  
           ‘(The place) where the children are going is far away.’

In (471), the same relative-clause construction functions as a spatial adverbial in the higher clause. This function is indicated by locative postposition *n᷑* or *r᷑á*: (§8.2.1-2).

- (471) *émm᷑e [[úl᷑-᷑-mb᷑ y᷑l᷑<sup>L</sup> n᷑: n᷑:-d᷑=᷑] n᷑ / r᷑á:]*  
       1PlSbj [[child-Pl-Pl place<sup>L</sup> meal eat-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] Loc/Loc]  
       y᷑:-d᷑-᷑  
       spend.night-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
       ‘We will spend the night (in the place) where the children ate.’

For similar manner adverbial relative clauses see the following section below. For similar temporal relative clauses see §15.2.1.1.

### 15.3.2 Manner adverbial clause

#### 15.3.2.1 Ordinary manner adverbial ('how ...')

Manner adverbial relatives have one or both of the following: a) an {L}-toned form of *sógònji* ‘manner’ as relative head, and b) final postposition *gìnè* ‘like, as’. (472a) has just the postposition, with covert relative head. (472b) has both, while (472c) is an NP (usable as an argument in the higher clause) with just the head. *kidé* ‘thing’ can also function as the head instead of *sógònji* (472c). The construction meaning ‘(a/no) way to VP’ is expressed by a kind of subjectless relative clause with a verbal noun with *-dù/-dú* (472d-e). Semantically the verbal noun here functions much like an imperfective participle in a headless relative with unspecified subject. Indeed the verbal noun is morphologically related to the imperfective positive (§4.2.2.1).

- (472) a. *[[sé:dù wálù kán-jò=đ] gìnè]*  
       [[S work(n) do-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] like]  
       *kán-à: nàmà-đ*  
       do-PastAnt want-1SgSbj  
       ‘I want to do (work) the way Seydou does work.’
- b. *[[sògònji<sup>L</sup> wó jòm-mò-dò=đ] gìnè]*  
       [[manner<sup>L</sup> 3SgSbj run-Caus-Ipfv.Ppl-Def] like]  
       */bày<sup>L</sup> túrù nè] bàmàkó dò:-dè-đ*  
       [day<sup>L</sup> one Loc] B arrive-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
       ‘The way he drives, we can reach Bamako in one day.’
- c. *sògònji<sup>L</sup> / kidé<sup>L</sup> wálù ú kàn-jò=đ*  
       manner<sup>L</sup> / thing<sup>L</sup> work(n) 2SgSbj do-Ipfv.Ppl=Def  
       ‘the way you-Sg work’
- d. *[wó=ŋ sògònji<sup>L</sup> nànnà-dú] wò-lí-Ø*  
       [3Sg=Acc manner<sup>L</sup> expel-VblN] be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
       ‘There was no way to get rid of him.’ (text 04 at 00:40)
- e. *[sògònji<sup>L</sup> námmá-dù] yó=đ-Ø*  
       [manner<sup>L</sup> tread-VblN] Exist=be-3SgSbj  
       ‘There is a way to go (there) on foot.’ (e.g. climbing a hill)

#### 15.3.2.2 ‘As though ...’ clause

This is a counterfactual manner adverbial relative. The structure is the same as for ordinary ‘how...’ clauses (see above), except that the relative clause is not marked as definite.

- (473) a. *úlù-đ yá: yà:-d-i*  
       child-Pl tears(n) weep-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
       *[[kidé<sup>L</sup> já: jà:-l-ú] bé wò:] gìnè]*  
       [[thing<sup>L</sup> meal eat-PfvNeg-Pfv.Ppl 3PlSbj be.Ppl] like]  
       ‘The children are crying as though they haven’t eaten.’

- b. *î:*      *yă:*      *yà:-dè-* $\emptyset$   
 child      tears(n)      weep-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
*[[kìdè<sup>L</sup>*    *wò=ý*    *mí*    *bènd-é-* $\emptyset$ *]*      *gìnè*  
*[[thing<sup>L</sup>*    3Sg=Acc    1SgSbj    hit-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl]    like]  
 ‘The child is crying, as though I had hit him.’

If the ‘as though ...’ clause is subordinated to a main verb expressing a protagonist’s intention to pretend, like ‘do’ in (474), the logophoric subject suffix occurs in the ‘as though ...’ clause. The use of a logophoric is unsurprising if *gìnè* derives from an archaic form of *gék*: ‘say’ (§8.4.1).

- (474) *[[ù=ý*    *bèndé-dè-ý]*    *gìnè*    *kán-jè-* $\emptyset$  / *kán-j-i*  
 [[2Sg=Acc    hit-Ipfv-LogoSbj]    like]    do-Ipfv-3SgSbj / -3PIsSbj  
 ‘He does/They do (=act) like he’s/they’re going to hit you-Sg.’

### 15.3.3 ‘From X, until/all the way to) Y’ (*nè*, *bă:* , *pâ:*)

To indicate both the starting and ending points of an extended time interval, perhaps with rhetorical emphasis, a ‘since’ clause with *nè* can be combined with an ‘until’ clause in the form of a regular main clause beginning with *pâ:* ‘until, all the way to’.

- (475) a. *[wò=ý*    *bé*    *làl-ú*    *nè]*  
 [3Sg=Acc    3PlSbj    bear-Pfv.Ppl    since]  
*[pâ:*    *yìm-ú*    *wò-* $\emptyset$ *]*  
 [until    die-Nom    be-3SgSbj]  
*bòlé-èlè-* $\emptyset$   
 go-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘From the time he is born (“they have borne him”) until he is dead, he won’t go.’  
 (*yìm-ú* ‘death’ or ‘dead body, corpse’)
- b. *[wó*    *yèl-é*    *nè]*    *[pâ:*    *ból-i-* $\emptyset$ *]*  
 [3SgSbj    come-Pfv.Ppl    since]    [until    go-Pfv-3SgSbj]  
*pă:*    *pă:-lì-* $\emptyset$   
 meal    eat-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘From the time he came until he went, he didn’t eat.’

In spatial contexts a particle *bă:* is translatable ‘all the way (to/from)’. It directly follows a locational expression denoting either the starting point or the terminus (476a-b). The neutrality between allative and ablative is consistent with the general restriction of directional specification to verbs (‘come’, ‘go’, ‘exit’, etc.).

- (476) a. *[ibè*    *rà:]*    *bă:*    *jòb-â:*    *yèl-è-* $\emptyset$   
 [market Loc]    all.the.way    run-PastAnt    come-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She ran all the way (here) from the market.’
- b. *[ibè*    *rà:]*    *bă:*    *jòb-á:-nì*    *bò-jè-ý*  
 [market Loc]    all.the.way    run-Ant-Nonpast    go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I will run all the way (from here) to the market.’

My assistant was uncomfortable with double *bă*: phrases, one for the origin and one for the terminus. This would also be awkward in English: *I ran all the way from the market (?all the way) to the village.*

For *bă*: in comparatives, see §12.2.1.

# 16 Conditional constructions

## 16.1 Hypothetical conditional (=yò ~ =yè ~ =jè)

In addition to its use in constructions with recognizable conditional semantics, the clitic =yò ~ =yè ~ =jè is also part of what I call the pseudo-conditional construction. This is the regular way to chain a clause with a following main clause when they jointly denote a sequence of events in the future or other imperfective context; see §15.2.2.5. There is no difference in form between a pseudo-conditional subordinated clause and a conditional antecedent clause with =yo ~ =je. This chapter is about ordinary conditionals, not pseudo-conditionals.

### 16.1.1 Positive antecedent

In this construction, the antecedent event is in the future or otherwise uncertain, and the eventual factuality of the antecedent event is a sufficient condition for the factuality of the consequent event.

The ‘if’ morpheme is =yò or variant (for the phonology, see below). The antecedent clause ending in =yò precedes the consequent clause. The antecedent is imperfective if it denotes a continuing process or state that overlaps in time with the consequent (477a). If the antecedent and consequent events are conceived as consecutive in time, the antecedent is perfective in form (477b-c). The consequent is imperfective (477a-d,g) or a deontic modal such as imperative (477e-f).

- (477) a. *àná mě:-dè-*Ø=yò,      yó:-dè-ŷ  
rain(n) rain.fall-**Ipfv**-3SgSbj=if,      go.in-**Ipfv**-1PlSbj  
‘If it is raining, we’ll go in.’
- b. *mì=jí pàd-i-ý=yò,      ù=jí dà-dá:-dè-ŷ*  
1Sg=Acc leave-**Pfv**-2SgSbj=if,      2Sg=Acc Augm-kill-**Ipfv**-1SgSbj  
‘If you-Sg leave me, I’ll kill you.’
- c. *mì=jí bènd-è-ý=yò,      ù=jí dà-dá:-dè-ŷ*  
1Sg=Acc hit-**Pfv**-2SgSbj=if,      2Sg=Acc Augm-kill-**Ipfv**-1SgSbj  
‘If you-Sg hit me, I’ll kill you.’
- d. *sé:dù mì=jí bènd è-Ø=yô:, wò=jí dà-dá:-dè-ŷ*  
S      1Sg=Acc      hit-**Pfv**-3SgSbj=if,  
3Sg=Acc      Augm-kill-**Ipfv**-1SgSbj  
‘If Seydou hits me, I’ll kill him.’

- e. *nùmb-è-ý=yò*,      *íngéél-é*  
fall-Pfv-2SgSbj=if,      arise-MP.Imprt  
‘If you-Sg fall, get up!’
- f. *nùmb-è-ń=jè*,      *íngéél-é-ị*  
fall-Pfv-2PlSbj=if,      arise-MP.Imprt-PlAddr  
‘If you-Pl fall, get up!’
- g. *yé-rà:*      *kigùl-ì-ỳ-ń=jè*,  
DiscDef-Loc      go.back-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj=if,  
*mì=jý*      *dà-dá:-d-ì*  
1Sg=Acc      Augm-kill-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
‘If I go back there, they’ll kill me.’

The ‘if’ particle is phonologically cliticized to the verb of the antecedent clause. 2Sg *-w* generally assimilates to the *y* of the clitic, hence *-ý=yò*, though my assistant also produced *-w=yò* in careful speech. The nasal of the 1Sg, 1Pl, and 2Pl suffixes combines with *=yò* as *-ń=jò* varying with *-í=jè*.

Combinations of third-person perfective verbs and *=yò* or *=yè* show tone changes, as illustrated in (478) with the verbs *pádà* ‘leave (behind), abandon’ and *yélé* ‘come’.

(478)	main clause	antecedent clause	gloss ('if ...')
-------	-------------	-------------------	------------------

a. 3rd person perfectives (with *=yô*):

*3Sg subject*

<i>pád-ì-Ø</i>	<i>pád-ì-Ø=yô:</i>	‘... he/she left’
<i>yél-è-Ø</i>	<i>yél-è-Ø=yô:</i>	‘... he/she came’

*3Pl subject*

<i>pád-Ø-yà</i>	<i>pád-ì-yà=yô</i>	‘... they left’
<i>yél-Ø-yà</i>	<i>yél-ì-yà=yô:</i>	‘... they came’

b. 1st/2nd person perfectives (L-toned *=yò*, after nasal *=jò* or *=jè*)

*1Sg subject*

<i>pád-ì-ý</i>	<i>pád-ì-ń=jè (~ =jò)</i>	‘... I left’
<i>yél-è-ý</i>	<i>yél-è-ń=jè (~ =jò)</i>	‘... I came’

*1Pl subject*

<i>pád-ì-ý</i>	<i>pád-ì-ń=jè (~ =jò)</i>	‘... we left’
<i>yél-è-ý</i>	<i>yél-è-ń=jè (~ =jò)</i>	‘... we came’

*2Sg subject*

<i>pád-ù-w</i>	<i>pád-ì-ý=yò</i>	‘... you-Sg left’
<i>yél-è-w</i>	<i>yél-è-ý=yò</i>	‘... you-Sg came’

*2Pl subject*

<i>pád-í-ý</i>	<i>pád-í-ń=jè (~ =jò)</i>	‘... you-Pl left’
<i>yél-é-ý</i>	<i>yél-é-ń=jè (~ =jò)</i>	‘... you-Pl came’

The third person subject perfective forms (478a) drop to {L} tone before *=yò*, which itself then shifts to <HL>-tone, and the contour tone required lengthening the vowel. This happens even when the verb is clause-initial (in a one-word clause), as in *yél-è-Ø=yô:* ‘if he/she comes’. In the 1Sg, 1Pl, and 2Sg subject forms, the regular perfective {LH} overlay is applied

before *=yò*, which remains L-toned. In these three forms, the H-tone is realized on the final mora of the verb proper, hence on the pronominal suffix, as in *kìgùl-i-ŷ-í=jè* in (477g) above. For 2Pl, the falling-toned syllable before *=jè* may be flattened to H-tone, hence variants like *pàd-i-í=jè* aside from those shown in (478). Monosyllabic verbs express {LH} as rising tone: *kà-ŷ-ý=yò* ‘if you shave’.

There are no special tonal interactions involving imperfective verbs plus *=yò*, though the consonantal processes described above do apply: *nă:-dè-ŷ* ‘we eat’ becomes *nă:-dè-ñ=jò* ‘if we are eating’.

The loss of H-tone on third-person perfective positives, combined with the appearance of an unexpected H-tone on the ‘if’ particle in the same combinations, suggests that the H-tone of the third-person perfective has shifted rightward onto the particle. This also happens with interrogatives *mà→* and *=lò* (§13.2.1.2-3). For tonal analysis see §3.7.3.3.

### 16.1.2 Negative antecedent

The antecedent and/or the consequent may be (separately) negated. The antecedent is negative in (479a-b). (479b) is shown with imperfective negative and perfective negative alternatives. The consequent is negative in (479a), positive in (479b).

- (479) a. *àná      mìyé-èlè-∅=yò*,  
       rain(n)    rain.fall-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj;if,  
       *tɔ:      bélè-mé-èlè-∅*  
       sow      get-Pass-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
       ‘If it doesn’t rain/isn’t raining, it isn’t possible to plant (seeds).’  
       (= ‘Unless it rains, it isn’t possible to plant.’)
- b. *sé:dù      yélé-èlè-∅ / yél-lí-∅=yò*,  
       S            come-IpfvNeg/PfvNeg-3SgSbj;if,  
       émmè      ògùlú                      *bò-jè-ŷ*  
       1Pl           outback                  go-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
       ‘If Seydou isn’t coming/has not come, we’ll go to the bush (=fields).’

In (479a), *mìyé-èlè-∅=yò* is phonologically unproblematic, simply adding the L-toned form of the clitic to the imperfective negative form *mìyé-èlè-∅*. However, when the contracted vowel in the penultimate syllable is L-toned, as in *óbè-èlè-∅* ‘he/she doesn’t give’, the final syllable *lè* shifts to H-tone (480a). The 3Pl form is likewise *-ñ-ní* in this environment (480b), in which case it is distinguished from the segmentally identical perfective negative (480c) by the presence of an H-tone in the stem.

- (480) a. *óbè-èlè-∅=yò*  
       give-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj;if  
       ‘if he/she doesn’t/won’t give’
- b. *óbò-ñ-ní=yò*  
       give-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj;if  
       ‘if they don’t/won’t give’

- c. *òbò-ñ-ní=yò*  
 give-PfvNeg-3PlSbj=if  
 ‘if they don’t give (i.e. haven’t given)’

## 16.2 Alternative ‘if’ particles

16.2.1 ‘Even if ...’

16.2.1.1 *=yò lò ~ =ye lè, hállù*

*lè* ‘also’ can follow *=yò* ‘if’ to form an ‘even if’ conditional antecedent. The vowels usually assimilate one way or the other, to *=yò lò* or to *=ye lè*. The sense is that the factuality of the (hypothetical) antecedent eventuality would not affect that of the consequent. For rhetorical emphasis, clause-initial *hállù* ‘even’ (§19.1.4) may be added (481b).

- (481) a. *yògó yèl-è-ý=yò lò, jà: nâ:-lò-w*  
 tomorrow come-Pfv-2SgSbj=if also, meal eat-IpfvNeg-2SgSbj  
 ‘Even if you-Sg come tomorrow, you won’t eat.’
- b. */hállù àná mè-è-∅=yé lè,*  
 [even rain rain.fall-Pfv-3SgSbj=if also,  
*tòy tú-èlè-ñ*  
 sowing sow-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘Even if it rains, I’m not going to plant (seeds).’

16.2.1.2 VERB-*yà*-VERB

In a text the form *yèlù-yà:-yélè* means ‘even if (X) comes’; see text 02 at 00:20. It consists of an iteration of the verb *yélè* ‘come’ and a linking element *-yà*.

## 16.3 Willy-nilly antecedents (‘whether X or Y ...’)

This construction, usually rhetorically emphatic, indicates that whether the core proposition in the antecedent is factual or not, the consequent is factual. The two poles of the complex antecedent, such as a positive clause and its negation, are juxtaposed without an overt subordinator (such as ‘if’). Both clauses are pronounced with what I call **dying-quail** intonation (symbol *:.*), i.e. unbounded intonational prolongation of the final syllable and (if the clause ends with an H-tone) a slow pitch decline. In (482), *mé-è-∅.:* is realized as [*méēè*] with additional prolongation, and *mè:-lí-∅.:* is realized as [*mè:lín*] with a noticeable pitch decline in addition to the prolongation.

- (482) *[àná mè-è-∅.:] [mè:-lí-∅.:]*  
 [rain(n) rain.fall-Pfv-3SgSbj] [rain.fall-PfvNeg-3SgSbj]  
*[ògùlú bō:-jè-ñ]*  
 [outback Augm.go-Ipfv-1SgSbj]  
 ‘(I don’t care) whether it rains or doesn’t rain, I’m going to the fields.’

With 1st/2nd person subjects, the prolongation and pitch fall are realized on the suffixal sonorant. In (483a), the 2Pl suffix **-ñ** is already L-toned, so the only audible effect is prolongation. In (483b), with atonal 1Sg **-ŋ**, the verb of the first (positive) clause, theoretically **yèl-è-ñ** with optional final H-tone, is heard as all L-toned (as often in perfectives that follow another constituent). In the second (negative) clause, **yèl-lí-ñ** would normally end with an H-toned nasal, but here the pitch decline is audible: IPA [jèl:iñ]. In other words, 2Pl **yèl-lí-ñ:** in (483a) and 1Sg **yèl-lí-ñ:** in (483b) are indistinguishable. My transcriptional practice is to add **..** after the form in its regular transcription, so **yèl-lí-ñ:** and **yèl-lí-ñ:** are transcribed differently.

- (483) a. **é**      **yèl-é-ñ:**      **yèl-lí-ñ:**  
           2PlSbj    come-Pfv-2PlSbj    come-PfvNeg-2PlSbj  
           'whether you-Pl come or not'
- b. **mí**      **yèl-è-ñ:**      **yèl-lí-ñ:**  
           1SgSbj    come-Pfv-1SgSbj    come-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
           'whether I come or not'

#### 16.4 Counterfactual conditional (*bènè*)

In this construction, the eventuality encoded by the antecedent is understood to be not true. It may refer to a present situation (484a) or to a past event (484b). The consequent may therefore refer to a future eventuality that is not expected to happen (484a) or to a past event that did not happen (484b).

The consequent is an augmented imperfective in (484a). In the more typical past counterfactual (484b), the consequent is the augmented past counterfactual form (§10.5.1.7). The antecedent, if based on a normal active verb, is in past anterior subordinated form with **-a:** (§15.2.2.1-3), followed by a proclitic pronominal subject and **bènè**. Statives (quasi-verbs as well as derived statives) do not allow **-a:**, so they have regular pronominal-subject suffixes (484c).

- (484) a. **[àná      mì-â:]**      **[wó      bènè],**  
       [rain(n)    rain.fall-PastAnt]    [3SgSbj    Counterf],  
       **émmè      yò-yó:-dè-ñ**  
       1Pl           Augm-go.in-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
       'If it were raining (=if it were to rain), we'd (we'll) go in.'
- b. **[yâ:      àná      mì-â:]**      **[wó      bènè],**  
       [yesterday    rain(n)    rain.fall-PastAnt]    [3SgSbj    Counterf],  
       **émmè      yò-yó:=bè-ñ**  
       1Pl           Augm-go.in=Past-1PlSbj  
       'If it had rained yesterday, we'd have gone in.'
- c. **ă:njò-w**      **[ú      bènè]**  
       Augm.lie.down.Stat-**2SgSbj**    [2SgSbj    Counterf]  
       'if you-Sg were lying down, ...'

Further examples of the more common type involving counterfactual past eventualities are in (485).

- (485) a. *[mòtô: yí sè-ñ]* [mí / émmè bénè],  
          [motorcycle Exist have-1Sg] [1SgSbj/1PlSbj Counterf],  
*yògó àndá bò:lò=bè-ñ*  
          tomorrow village Augm.go=Past-1SgSbj/1PlSbj  
          ‘If I/we had a motorcycle, I/we would go to the village tomorrow.’
- b. *[yâ: sé:dù yèl-l-ú]* [wó bénè],  
          [yesterday S come-PfvNeg-Pfv.Ppl] [3SgSbj Counterf],  
*àndá bò:lò=bè-ñ*  
          village Augm.go=Past-1SgSbj  
          ‘If Seydou hadn’t come yesterday, I’d have gone to the village.’
- c. *[yâ: mì=í bènd-â:]* [ú bénè],  
          [yesterday 1Sg=Acc hit-PastAnt] [2SgSbj Counterf],  
*mí ù=í dà-dá:=bè-ñ*  
          1SgSbj 2Sg=Acc Augm-kill=Past-1SgSbj  
          ‘If you-Sg had hit me yesterday, I’d have killed you.’
- d. *[tìbó=ò wà:-l-ú]* [mí bénè],  
          [stone=Def see-PfvNeg-Pfv.Ppl] [1SgSbj Counterf],  
*nǔ:mbò=bè-ñ*  
          Augm.fall=Past-1SgSbj  
          ‘If I hadn’t seen the stone, I would have fallen.’
- e. *[sé:dù yèl-â:]* [wó bénè],  
          [S come-PastAnt] [3SgSbj Counterf],  
*mí wò=í kè:lé ó:bò=bè-ñ*  
          1SgSbj 3Sg=Acc money Augm.give=Past-1SgSbj  
          ‘If Seydou had come, I would have given him (some/the) money.’

The antecedent ends with *bénè* (K&P p. 74 “beni”), which appears to be an irregular participial form of *bè* ‘was’, the past tense counterpart of *wò* ‘be (somewhere)’. The antecedent has relative-clause form. It has a covert adverbial head with an implied adverbial sense like ‘situation’. A pronominal subject therefore appears as a proclitic to *bénè* (484a, 485a), and is required even if the pronoun is coindexed to an overt subject NP (485b).

# 17 Complement and purposive clauses

## 17.1 Quotative complements

Quoted clauses may be marked by a) either a conjugated ‘say’ verb *gɛ:* or a clause-final quotative particle *wà*; b) an obligatory quotative-subject phrase including another *wà* particle; c) absence of the usual pronominal-subject suffixes on predicates; and d) logophoric pronominals coindexed to the “author” of the quotation (whether spoken or thought). For logophorics see §18.3.

### 17.1.1 Direct versus indirect in quotative complements

Basic clause-level inflectional categories (perfective or imperfective aspect, imperative or hortative mood, negation) do not change from regular to quoted clauses. Original 1Sg and 1Pl pronouns become logophorics. Original second and third person pronominals are reset in accordance with the deictic structure of the current speech event. Thus an original “Seydou hit me” can be reset as “He said, you hit Logo” if the current speaker is addressing Seydou. Likewise, an original “where are you-Pl?” is usually converted into “where are they,” with a third person pronoun, unless the original addressee happens to be the current speaker or addressee.

Animal tales abound in quoted clauses. In (486), ‘we’ becomes logophoric plural, ‘you-Sg’ becomes 3Sg, and the aspectual category (here imperfective) is carried over.

(486)	<i>háyà</i>	<i>wò = ï</i>	<i>ñjém-bè</i>	<i>yɔ:r-á:-nì</i> ,
	well	3Sg=Acc	Logo-Pl	roast-Ant-Nonpast,
	<i>ñjém-bè</i>	<i>má:bà</i>	<i>kán-j-i</i>	
	Logo-Pl	meat.sauce	do-Ipfv-3PlSbj	
‘(They said:) well, we’ll roast you-Sg and make meat sauce.’				
	[lit.: “well, Logo-Pl will roast him ...”]			

### 17.1.2 ‘Say that ...’ with inflectable ‘say’ verb (*gɛ:*)

The regular inflectable verb *gɛ:* ‘say’ follows the quoted material. It occurs in all inflectional categories.

(487)	a.	<i>sé:dù</i>	<i>[ñjémé]</i>	<i>yɛ:jè-ñ]</i>	<i>gì-ỳ-</i> Ø
		S	[Logo	Augm.come-Ipfv-LogoSbj]	say-Pfv-3SgSbj
‘Seydou <sub>x</sub> said that he <sub>x</sub> is coming.’					
	b.	<i>úlù-ñ]</i>	<i>[ñjémé-mbè]</i>	<i>yɛ:jè-ñ]</i>	<i>g-i-yà</i>
		child-Pl	[Logo-Pl	Augm.come-Ipfv-LogoSbj]	say-Pfv-3PlSbj
		‘The children <sub>x</sub> said that they <sub>x</sub> are coming.’			

- c. *[l̩àndá rà:] mè-è-* $\emptyset$  *gè:-lì-ń*  
 [[village Loc] rain.fall-Pfv-3SgSbj] say-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
 'I didn't say that it rained in the village.'
- d. *[l̩anùgě: ú-mò wà] yéłè gē:*  
 [friend 2Sg-Poss QuotSbj] come.Imprt say.Imprt  
 'Tell-2Sg your friend to come!'

*gě:* may also take an NP or a manner adverb as complement, referring back to something said.

- (488) a. *sé:dù yògó-njì: gì-ỳ-* $\emptyset$   
 S how? say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 'What did Seydou say?'
- b. *[sò:<sup>L</sup> mí gì-ỳ=gò] wó=là:-* $\emptyset$   
 [thing<sup>L</sup> 1SgSbj say-Pfv.Ppl=Def] 3Sg=it.is.not-3SgSbj  
 'That isn't what I said.'

3Sg and 3Pl subject perfective verbs are {L}-toned before the 'say' verb (in any inflection and with any pronominal-subject category), as in (487c) above. Furthermore, while perfective *gì-ỳ* 'he/she said' and *gì-ì-yà* 'they said' are normally tone-dropped to *gì-ỳ* when they immediately follow a quotation or an NP, as in (487a-b) and (488) above, when they follow a tone-dropped perfective positive they are heard as *gí-ỳ* and *gí-ì-yà* with initial H-tone (489a). This also applies when optional 3Pl subject suffixation is present on a preceding perfective positive verb (489b).

- (489) a. *sé:dù [ú wà] yèł-è gí-ỳ-* $\emptyset$   
 S [2Sg QuotSbj] come-Pfv say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 'Seydou said that you-Sg have come.'
- b. *sé:dù [úlù-ń wà] yèł-ì-yà gí-ỳ-* $\emptyset$   
 S [child-Pl QuotSbj] come-Pfv-3PlSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 'Seydou said that the children have come.'

The tonal behavior of perfectives plus *gě:* is matched by their behavior before quotative particle *wà*, see below. It is also consistent with the tonal behavior of perfectives before *=yò* 'if' and variants (<HL>-toned *=yō:* after {L}-toned perfective verb). In §3.7.3.3 I interpret this as an actual shift of the initial H-tone of the third person perfective positive verb onto the relevant following morpheme. The isolation form of *gì-ỳ-* $\emptyset$  'he/she said' already has an initial H-tone (as with all 3Sg and 3Pl perfective positive verbs), so in this case one could argue that the shifted H-tone merely resuscitates an H-tone that would otherwise fall prey to downdrift (or defocalizaiton) after a quotation. Similarly, when the 'say' verb is a 1st/2nd person perfective positive with word-final H-tone, like *gì-ỳ-ń* 'I said', it keeps those tones when preceded by a tone-dropped quoted third-person perfective positive: *[ú wà] yèł-è gí-ỳ-ń* 'I said that you came'. This too is consistent with the view that the shifted H-tone merges with an existing H-tone, rather than behaving like a traditional floating H that docks on the nearest available host syllable or more.

*gě:* is omitted when the quotative particle *wà* occurs clause-finally. In extended quotations, either *wà* or conjugated *gě:* can be regularly repeated.

In text 01 at 00:20, *gè:* (low-toned) after a quotation appears to be unconjugated, functioning like *wà*.

- (490) *háyà*              *bøy=gò,*  
                 well              tomtom=Def  
                 [*nê: gày]*    *wò=í*    *bà:-mà-dù*    *kò-lí*              *gè:*  
                 [now Topic] 3Sg=Acc beat-Caus-VblN be.Nonh-StatNeg saying,  
                 ‘Well now, there won’t be any letting him beat tomtoms,’ (they) said.’

### 17.1.3 Quotative clitic

#### 17.1.3.1 Clause final *wà*

The unconjugated clause-final quotative particle *wà* is often used instead of a conjugated ‘say’ verb when reporting speech that was actually uttered. The attributed author of the quotation is contextually understood but is not overt. The author may be the addressee or a third party. Normally *wà* is not used for self-quotation.

- (491) a. *[àndá      rà:]      àná      mè-è*              *wá*  
                 [village      Loc]      rain(n)      rain.fall-Pfv      Quot  
                 ‘(... said) it rained in the village.’
- b. *[àndá      rà:]      àná      mè:-lí*              *wà*  
                 [village      Loc]      rain(n)      rain.fall-Pfv      Quot  
                 ‘(... said) it didn’t rain in the village.’
- c. *yě:-jè-ñ*              *wà*  
                 Augm.come-Ipfv-LogoSbj      Quot  
                 ‘(X said) he<sub>x</sub>/she<sub>x</sub> will come.’
- d. *àná      mì-éélè*              *wà*  
                 rain      rain.fall-IpfvNeg      Quot  
                 ‘(... said) it doesn’t rain.’

The tonal behavior of *wà* resembles that of *=yò* ‘if’. *wà* is always L-toned except when immediately preceded by a perfective positive verb (which in the absence of pronominal-subject marking in quotative clauses is identical in form to the 3Sg perfective of a main clause). The perfective positive verb loses its own H-tone in the process (491a). In §3.7.3.3 I analyse this type of process as a rightward shift of the verb’s H-tone onto the following particle. The fact that *wà* becomes H-toned *wá*, not HL-toned #*wâ:*, suggests that *wà* is underlyingly atonal. Contrast *=yò* ‘if’, which becomes *=yô:* in the same context (after third-person perfective positive), where the alternation suggests that *=yò* has an underlying L-tone combined with the shifted H-tone to produce HL.

An interesting practical effect of Rightward H-Tone Shift onto *wà* is that quoted perfective positives are tonally distinguished from quoted imperatives, even when the two are homophonous in main clauses. The shift occurs with the perfective positive in (492a), resulting in L-toned verb and H-toned quotative particle. It does not occur with imperatives,

so (492b) keeps its H-tone on the imperative and the quotative particle surfaces with L-tone. In main clauses, 3Sg perfective *yéł-è-*Ø and imperative *yéłè* are homophonous.

- (492) a. [ú            wà]            yéł-è            wá  
       [2Sg            QuotSbj]        come-Pfv        Quot  
       '(... said) you-Sg have come.'
- b. [ú            wà]            yéłè            wà  
       [2Sg            QuotSbj]        come.Imprt        Quot  
       '(... said) for you-Sg to come.' (transmitted imperative)

The quoted material preceding *wà* may be a single word or a clause. Utterances of the type X *wà* are commonly used in conversation to repeat a word or clause just uttered by the addressee, either for confirmation or to express surprise or skepticism. (493) is a two-part mini-conversation.

- (493) A: *gòñéy*            dà-ŷ-í  
       elephant        kill-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       'I killed an elephant.'
- B: *gòñéy*            wà  
       elephant        Quot  
       'An elephant, huh?' (skeptical) or 'An elephant?' (incredulous)

In an extended quotation involving multiple main clauses, the clause-final quotative particle may be repeated periodically. However, it is not added at the end of a nonfinal clause that is connected to the main clause by an explicit subordinator such as past anterior *-a:* (494a-b) or conditional *=yò* (494c). Note the ungrammatical occurrences of #*wà* in these examples. However, an initial quotative subject construction is fine in the subordinated clause (494c).

- (494) a. *yéł-â:*                    (# *wà*)  
       come-PastAnt        (# Quot)  
       ù=í                    tèmbè-lì-í                    wà  
       2Sg=Acc        find-PfvNeg-LogoSbj        Quot  
       '(He<sub>x</sub>/She<sub>x</sub>) said that he<sub>x</sub>/she<sub>x</sub> came but (he<sub>x</sub>/she<sub>x</sub>) didn't find you-Sg.'
- b. *wó*            [n̊jémé]            *yéł-â:*                    (# *wà*),  
       3Sg            [Logo]        come-PastAnt        (# Quot)],  
       [gín            dà]            tó:=bè-ló-wà                    wà  
       [house        Loc]        be.in=Past-Neg-2SgSbj        Quot  
       '(He<sub>x</sub>/She<sub>x</sub>) said that he<sub>x</sub>/she<sub>x</sub> came, but you-Sg weren't in the house.'
- c. *sé:dù*            [ú            wà]            [n̊jém-mò]            rà:  
       S            [2Sg            QuotSbj]        [Logo-Poss        Loc]  
       yéł-è-ý=yò                    (# *wà*),  
       come-Pfv-2SgSbj-if        (# Quot),  
       ù=í            kè:lé            óbò-dè-í                    wà  
       2Sg=Acc        money        give-Ipfv-LogoSbj        Quot  
       'Seydou<sub>x</sub> said that if you-Sg go to his<sub>x</sub> (house), he<sub>x</sub> will give you the money.'

Clause-final quotative *wà* (unlike quotative-subject *wà*) is not used other than to report actual speech (or thought). It is absent in contexts like negative ‘did not say’, interrogative ‘did he/you say?’, future ‘will say’, and imperative ‘say!’, all of which regularly use the inflectable verb *gɛ:* ‘say’.

### 17.1.3.2 Quotative subject *wà*

A referentially specific subject of a quoted clause is frequently provided with its own quotative particle *wà*. Quotative subject *wà* co-occurs readily with either clause-final particle *wà* or an inflected form of ‘say’.

This construction is especially common with 1st/2nd person pronominal subjects, since regular 1st/2nd person pronominal-subject suffixation on the verb is not allowed (495a). 1Pl *émmè* contracts with *wà* as *émm-à:*, and 1Sg *mí* contracts as *má-à* (495b). 2Sg *ú* *wà* and 2Pl *é* *wà* are uncontracted (495a), as are 3Sg *wó* *wà* and 3Pl *bé* *wà*.

- (495) a. *[ú / é      **wà**]      yèl-è      wá / gí-ỳ-Ø*  
           [2Sg / 2Pl    QuotSbj]    come-Pfv    Quot / say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘(... said) you-Sg/Pl have come.’
- b. *wó      émm-à: / má-à      yélè      **wà***  
       3SgSbj    1Pl-QuotSbj / 1Sg-QuotSbj    come.Imprt    Quot  
       ‘He/She says for us/me to come.’

Quotative subject *wà* may occur in any quoted clause, even one that does not allow a clause-final quotative *wà*. This is the case in (496), where ‘say’ is negated, so the utterance as a whole does not report actual speech.

- (496) *[ú      **wà**]      yèl-è      gè:-lí-Ø*  
           [2Sg    QuotSbj]    come-Pfv    say-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She did not say that you-Sg have come.’

### 17.1.3.3 Pronominal-subject suffixation in quoted clauses

When the subject of a quoted clause is coindexed with the quoted author (‘X said that X would come?’), i.e. when the original utterance had a 1Sg subject (‘X said, “I will come”’), the logophoric subject suffix *-ŋ* is used instead of a regular pronominal-subject suffix. This *-ŋ* is homophonous with the 1Sg subject suffix in unquoted clauses, but it is extendable to plural subjects, as in (‘X and Y said that X and Y would come’). Examples are in (487a-b) in §17.1.2 above. For more examples and analysis, see §18.3.2.

The remainder of this section deals with subjects in quoted clauses that are not coindexed with the quoted author. 1st/2nd person subject pronominal suffixes are not allowed, which precludes confusion between logophoric subject *-ŋ* and fully or partially homophonous regular subject suffixes (1Sg, 1Pl, 2Pl). This effectively enforces the use of the quotative-subject construction with *wà* for 1st/2nd person pronouns. See the preceding section for examples.

When the subject is a third-person NP or pronoun, the quotative-subject construction is also common. However, when the subject is plural, the verb optionally shows overt 3Pl

pronominal-subject suffixation, as opposed to the pronominally unmarked form required by 1st/2nd person subjects. Therefore in (497a), with ‘children’ as subject, the perfective verb can either be *yèl-è* (pronominally unmarked) or the explicitly 3Pl *yèl-ì-yà* (in {L}-toned form due to Rightward H-Tone Shift). This applies even when an overt 3Pl pronoun is used with the quotative-subject particle (497b).

- (497) a. *sé:dù [úlù-ì] wà yèl-è / yèl-ì-yà*  
           S [child-Pl QuotSbj] come-Pfv / come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
*gí-ỳ-Ø*  
       say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou said that the children have come.’
- b. *sé:dù [bé wà yèl-è / yèl-ì-yà*  
           S [3Pl QuotSbj] come-Pfv / come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
*gí-ỳ-Ø*  
       say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou said that they have come.’

Because of the alternation between unmarked and overtly 3Pl-subject verb forms in (497a-b), when the subject is 3Sg, we cannot be sure whether a verb form pronounced [*jèlè*] should be analysed as *yèl-è* (marked only as perfective, without a pronominal-subject suffix) or as 3Sg *yèl-è-Ø*.

#### 17.1.4 Jussive complement (reported imperative or hortative)

##### 17.1.4.1 Quoted imperative and prohibitive

A quoted imperative has the same structure as a quoted indicative clause (quotative subject construction, final ‘say’ verb or quotative particle), except that the verb is imperative in form. If the original addressee was plural, the plural-addressee suffix *-ñ* is optional (498c).

- (498) a. *sé:dù [ú wà] / má-à yélè wà*  
           S [2Sg QuotSbj] / 1Sg-QuotSbj come.Imprt Quot  
       ‘Seydou says for you-Sg/for me to come.’
- b. *[sé:dù wà yélè gí-ỳ-ì]*  
       [S QuotSbj] come.Imprt say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I told Seydou to come.’
- c. *[úlù-ì wà yélè(-ì) gí-ỳ-ì]*  
       [child-Pl QuotSbj] come.Imprt(-PlAddr) say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I told the children to come.’

Negative versions of these quoted positive imperatives are the quoted prohibitives in (499). Either the short prohibitive in *-w* or the longer one with *-naw* may be used.

- (499) a. *sé:dù* [ú *wà*] / *má-à* *yèlè-w* *wà*  
           S [2Sg QuotSbj] / 1Sg-QuotSbj come-Prohib Quot  
           ‘Seydou says for you-Sg/me not to come.’
- b. *[sé:dù      wà]* *yèlè-w* *gì-ỳ-ñ*  
       [S        QuotSbj] come-Prohib say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I told Seydou not to come.’
- c. *[úlù-ñ      wà]* *yèlè-w / yèlè-gí-ñ* *gì-ỳ-ñ*  
       [child-Pl QuotSbj] come-Prohib(-PlAddr) say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I told the children not to come.’

#### 17.1.4.2 Quoted hortative

In a quoted hortative, the quotative subject construction treats the original addressee as the “subject.” The verb is the regular hortative, with optional use of the plural-addressee suffix. In (500a), Seydou had proposed that he and the current speaker should go. In (500b), Seydou had proposed that he and a nonsingular group including the current speaker should go.

- (500) a. *sé:dù* *má-à* *bòlò-mó* *gì-y-Ø*  
       S 1Sg-QuotSbj go-Hort say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou said to me, let’s go!’
- b. *sé:dù* *émm-à:* *bòlò-mó(-ñ)* *gì-y-Ø*  
       S 1Pl-QuotSbj go-Hort(-PlAddr) say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou said to us, let’s go!’

The quoted hortative negative is based directly on the regular hortative negative verb form, with the original addressee as “subject.”

- (501) a. *sé:dù* *má-à* *bòló-ñnì* *gì-y-Ø*  
       S 1Sg-QuotSbj go-HortNeg say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou said to me, let’s not go!’
- b. *sé:dù* *émm-à:* *bòló-ñnì* *gì-y-Ø*  
       S 1Pl-QuotSbj go-HortNeg say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Seydou said to us, let’s not go!’

## 17.2 Propositional complements

In this section are included main-clause like indicative complements without an overt subordinator, ‘whether’ complements in the form of polar interrogative clauses, and (generally headless) relatives that denote propositions.

### 17.2.1 Clausal complements of ‘know’ and ‘forget’

#### 17.2.1.1 Positive ‘know that ...’ with main-clause complement

For the paradigms of *igù wɔ̄* ‘know’ and suppletive negative *inné* ‘not know’ see §11.2.5.1. In positive form (e.g. ‘I know’ or ‘I knew’), they may take as “complement” a proposition in the form of a regular main clause. There is no complementizer or other overt mark of subordination. Especially in present (nonpast) contexts, the ‘know’ predicate (e.g. ‘I know’) can precede as well as follow the proposition (502b). In either case the two may be separated prosodically, suggesting that the ‘know’ predicate can function as a parenthesis.

- (502) a. *yèlé-èlɔ̄-wà* [igù wɔ̄-j] come-IpfvNeg-2SgSbj [know be-1SgSbj]  
                  ‘I know that you-Sg are not coming.’
- b. *[igù wɔ̄-j] [úlù-ñ-mbè pédù éd-ì-yà]* [know be-1SgSbj] [child-Pl-Pl sheep buy-Pfv-3PlSbj]  
                  ‘I know (that) the children bought a sheep.’
- c. *[úlù-ñ=gò bòl-ì-yà] igù=bè-ñ* [child-Pl=Def go-Pfv-3PlSbj] know=Past-1SgSbj  
                  ‘I knew that the children had gone.’

#### 17.2.1.2 ‘Not know’ with ‘whether’ complement

If the ‘know’ predicate is negated (503a-c) or questioned (503d), the complement clause takes the form of a polar interrogative with *mà→* (§13.2.1.2), which becomes *mâ→* after a third-person perfective by Rightward H-Tone Shift (§3.7.3.3). The translation may have either ‘whether’ or ‘that’, i.e. the truth of the underlying proposition cannot be presupposed. After a third-person perfective, variant *mâ→* extends its H-tone to the end of the syllable (*má→*) if immediately followed by ‘not know’ or ‘know’ (which begin with L-tone).

- (503) a. */bàmàkó bòl-ù-∅ / yèl-è-∅ mà→]*  
      [B go-Pfv-3SgSbj/come-Pfv-3SgSbj Q]  
*inné=bè-ñ*  
**not.know=Past-1SgSbj**  
      ‘I didn’t know that/whether he/she had gone/come to Bamako.’
- b. */bàmàkó bòl-ù-ñ / yèl-è-ñ mà→]*  
      [B go-Pfv-1SgSbj / come-Pfv-1SgSbj Q]  
*inné=bè-∅*  
**not.know=Past-3SgSbj**  
      ‘He/She did not know that/whether I had gone/come to Bamako.’

- c. *[wó <sup>L</sup>dèlò=ð] bòl-ù-∅ mâ→]*  
 [[3SgPoss <sup>L</sup>elder.sib=Def] go-Pfv-3SgSbj Q]  
*[inné-∅]*  
**[not.know-3SgSbj]**  
 ‘He/She doesn’t know that/whether his/her elder (same-sex) sibling has gone.’
- d. *[ú <sup>L</sup>dèlò=ð] bòl-ù-∅ má→]*  
 [2SgPoss <sup>L</sup>elder.sib=Def] go-Pfv-3SgSbj Q]  
*[igù wó-̀w mà→]*  
**[know be-2SgSbj Q]**  
 ‘Do you-Sg know that/whether your elder (same-sex) sibling has gone?’

#### 17.2.1.3 ‘Forget’ with ‘whether’ complement

As with ‘not know’, *nă:* ‘forget’ with propositional complement (as opposed to the infinitival type ‘forget [to VP], §17.3.4) does not presuppose the factuality of its complement. It therefore takes interrogative complements with question particle *mà→* (504).

- (504) *[ídù témè-èlè-̀w mà→]*  
 [fish eat.meat-IpfvNeg-2SgSbj Q]  
*nă: bòl-ù-̀j*  
**forget.Chain go-Pfv-1SgSbj**  
 ‘I (went and) forgot that you don’t eat fish.’

For the disparaging use of a motion verb in (504) see §15.1.10.2.

#### 17.2.2 Complements of perception verbs (‘see’, ‘find’, ‘hear’)

##### 17.2.2.1 Imperfective complement *-̀w*

When the higher subject has perceived a nonpunctual process, the complement may be expressed with unconjugated imperfective subordinator *-̀w*. Unlike the similar subordinator described in §15.2.1.3, which is replaced by another suffix *-ní* ~ *-nì* in nonpast-time contexts, in this construction *-̀w* occurs even in future-time examples like (505d). The lower subject is expressed by an NP (505a-b,d) or by an independent pronoun (505c). A progressive construction with ‘be’ auxiliary can be used instead of the simple imperfective, but in this case the auxiliary also has subordinator *-̀w* (505e).

- (505) a. *[úlù-̀g g᷑: g᷑-̀w] wè-è-̀j*  
 [child-Pl dance(n) dance-Ipfv] see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I saw the children dance(-ing).’
- b. *[úlù-̀g nūjò nūjó-̀w] èg-è-̀j*  
 [child-Pl song sing-Ipfv] hear-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I heard the children sing(-ing).’

- c. [é            gɔ̃:            gɔ̃-w̄]            wè-è-íj  
     [2PlSbj    dance(n)    dance-Ipfv]    see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I saw you-Pl dance(-ing).'
- d. [úlù-ŋ        gɔ̃:            gɔ̃-w̄]            wà-wá:-dè-íj  
     [child-Pl    dance(n)    dance-Ipfv]    Augm-see-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
     'I will see the children dance(-ing).'
- e. [gɔ̃:            gɔ̃-w̄        émmè        wɔ̃-w̄]            wè-è-Ø  
     [dance(n)    dance-Ipfv    1PlSbj    be-Ipfv]    see-Pfv-3SgSbj  
     'He/She saw us dancing.'

One alternative to this is to structure the complement as an imperfective or progressive relative clause with the lower subject as head NP (506).

- (506) [úlù-ŋ<sup>L</sup>        gɔ̃:            gɔ̃:-dò=ð-mbè]            wè-è-íj  
     [child-Pl<sup>L</sup>    dance(n)    dance-Ipfv.Ppl=Def-Pl]    see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I saw the children who were dancing.'

#### 17.2.2.2 Perception verb ('see', 'hear') with main-clause complement

In (507), the higher subject has some reason to believe the factuality of the complement proposition, which may be negative as well as positive, either by inference from visual evidence (507a-b) or from hearsay (507c). The complement has regular main-clause form including pronominal-subject marking on the verb.

- (507) a. [úlù-ŋ        wɔ̃-ñ-ní]            [wà-w̄        wð-ŋ]  
     [child-Pl    be-StatNeg-3PlSbj]    [see-Ipfv    be-1SgSbj]  
     'I see that the children are not here.'
- b. [pédò=ð        sèmè-ñ-ní]            [wà-w̄        wð-ŋ]  
     [sheep=Def    slaughter-PfvNeg-3PlSbj]    [see-Ipfv    be-1SgSbj]  
     'I see that they haven't slaughtered the sheep-Sg.'
- c. [bàmàkó    bɔ̃:-jð-w̄ / -jè-ŋ]            èg-è-íj  
     [B            Augm.go-Ipfv-2SgSbj/-Ipfv-2PlSbj]    hear-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I hear/have heard that you-Sg/Pl are going to Bamako.'

In (508a-b), the complement in main-clause form is elaborated by addition of a short relative clause with a pronominal copy of the lower-clause subject plus 'be'. The form of 'be' here is *wð* as in main clauses, not the usual participial form *wð̄*. The construction is resultative, describing a state produced by the past event.

- (508) a. [nǎ:        n-è-íj]            [é        wð=gð]            w-è-íj  
     [meal    eat-Pfv-2PlSbj]    [2PlSbj    be.Ppl=Def]    see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
     'I see/have seen that you-Pl have already eaten.'

- b. [nǎ: jn-ɛ-w̄] [ú w̄=ḡ] w-ɛ-í  
 [meal eat-Pfv-2SgSbj] [2SgSbj be.Ppl=Def] see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 'I see/have seen that you-Sg have already eaten.'
- c. [úlù-ŋ̄ nǎ: jné-ŷ-yà] [b̄é w̄=ḡ] w-ɛ-í  
 [child-Pl meal eat-Pfv-3PlSbj] [3PlSbj be.Ppl=Def]  
 see-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 'I see/have seen that the children have already eaten.'

### 17.3 Verbal noun complements

Two complement-clause types that are partially interchangeable are the verbal noun complement (similar to the English infinitival *to VP*) and the {L}-{{HL}} tonal complement. In the latter, the object (construed broadly to include pro forma cognate nominals) is treated like an {L}-toned compound initial and the verb has {HL} overlay. See §17.4 for details.

The productive verbal noun involves the suffix *-du* (for a few verbs *-ju*), in H- or L-toned form (§4.2.2.1). In this section I present constructions where a VP including a verbal noun suffix functions as the complement of a control verb or similar higher element. In many such combinations, the subjects of the two clauses are obligatorily coindexed, and the construction denotes a conceptually integrated event. The subject is overtly expressed in the higher clause, so the complement is basically a subordinated VP similar to an English infinitival complement. Most of the control verbs are also transitive verbs that can take ordinary NP objects.

#### 17.3.1 Structure of verbal-noun complement

A verbal-noun complement is similar to a main clause, with the conjugated and AN-marked verb replaced by an unconjugated verbal noun. Usually the verbal-noun complement lacks a separate subject, it being understood that the logical subject is the same as that of the main clause. Objects and other nonsubject complements take the same form as in main clauses.

Occasionally a distinct subject is present, like 'dog' in (510a) in §17.3.2 below. However, in most cases the presence of an overt subject favors an alternative complement type, such as a headless relative.

#### 17.3.2 'Be afraid to' (*níjn-ɛ:*) with verbal-noun or other complement

This mediopassive verb can be intransitive or transitive, as in *X níjn-ì-ŷ-Ø* 'X was afraid' and *X idú níjn-ì-ŷ-Ø* 'X was afraid of/fear (the dog)'.

With a clausal, same-subject complement ('be afraid [to VP]'), we get a verbal-noun complement (509a-b) or an {L}-{{HL}} complement (509c).

- (509) a. [ŋ̄ḡ-n̄ i-ŷ-jú] níjn-ì-ŷ-Ø  
 [here come-VblN] fear-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 'He/She was afraid to come here.'

- b. *[kìdù-kídù                    L<sub>nàmà</sub>]                    témè-dù]*  
       [[bat                            L<sub>meat</sub>]]                    eat.meat-VblN]  
*nì:jn-é:-dè-ŷ*  
     Augm.fear-MP-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
     'I am afraid to eat bat meat.'
- c. *i:<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>béndè                    níjp-Ø-à:                    wð-ŷ*  
     child<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>hit                    fear-MP-PastAnt                    be-1SgSbj  
     'I am afraid (have become afraid) to hit (a/the) child.'

Two constructions are found with different-subject clausal complements denoting subsequent hypothetical events. In (510a), the same verbal-noun complement seen above is elaborated by adding a subject ('dog'). In (510b), there is a headless imperfective relative, as shown by the preverbal subject pronominal.

- (510) a. *[idú                    mì=ŷ                    kérè-dù]                    nì:jn-é:-dè-ŷ*  
       [dog                            1Sg=Acc                    bite-VblN]                    Augm.fear-MP-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
       'I fear that (the) dog will/might bite me.'
- b. *[mì=ŷ                    ú                    kérè-dè]                    nì:jn-é:-dè-ŷ*  
       [1Sg=Acc                    2SgSbj                    bite-Ipfv.Ppl]                    Augm.fear-MP-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
       'I fear that it (=dog) will/might bite me.'

If the feared eventuality has probably already either happened or not happened, the complement is a 'whether' clause with polar interrogative. (511) might be uttered in the context of a search for someone missing in a dangerous area for whom one fears the worst.

- (511) *[sé:dù                    yìm-è-Ø                    má→]                    nìjp-i-ŷ-ŷ*  
       [S                            die-Pfv-3SgSbj                    Q]                    fear-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       'I fear that/lest Seydou may have (already) died.'

### 17.3.3 'Like' (*ibé*) with verbal-noun or {L}-{{HL}} complement

For the forms of this stative quasi-verb, see §11.2.5.3. In simple main clauses it takes an NP direct object as in English. The relevant complement construction is same-subject 'X want [to VP]'.

Most examples involve a verbal-noun complement (512a-d).

- (512) a. *[kè:lé                    mì=ŷ                    óbò-dù]                    ibè-lè-Ø*  
       [money                            1Sg=Acc                    give-VblN]                    like-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
       'He/She doesn't like to give me money.'
- b. *[gɔ:                            gèndè-dú]                    ibò-w                    wð-ŷ*  
       [dance(n)                            watch-VblN]                    like-Ipfv                    be-1SgSbj  
       'I like to watch dancing.'

- c. [àndá            bò-jú]            *ibè-ñ*  
       [village        go-VblN]        like-1SgSbj  
       'I enjoy traveling.'
- d. [gɔ:            gò:-dú]            *ibè-ñ*  
       [dance(n)      dance-VblN]        like-1SgSbj  
       'I enjoy dancing.'

A tonal compound complement with {L}-{HL} overlay is also possible. (513a) was freely elicited as an alternative to the verbal noun in (513b).

- (513) a. [èmme<sup>L-HL</sup> wálà]            *ibè-lè-ñ*  
       [sorghum<sup>L-HL</sup> do.farming]        like-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
       'I don't like cultivating sorghum.'
- b. [èmmé            wálà-dú]            *ibè-lè-ñ*  
       [sorghum      do.farming-VblN]        like-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
       [= (a)]

#### 17.3.4 ‘Forget’ (*ná:*) with verbal-noun or {L}-{HL} complement

This verb can take same-subject infinitival complements ('X forget [to VP]'). A verbal-noun complement is one possibility (514a-b).

- (514) a. *yè-jú*nà-ý-ñ  
       come-VblN        forget-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       'I forgot to come.'
- b. [*té:*            *já:*            *yè-jú*]            *nà-ý-ñ*  
       [tea            take            come-VblN]        forget-Pfv-2PlSbj  
       'You-Pl forgot to bring the tea.'

Alternatively, the complement can take the {L}-{HL} tonal form.

- (515) *ibè<sup>L-HL</sup> bólò*            *nà-ý-náw*  
       market<sup>L-HL</sup>go        forget-Chain-Prohib  
       'Don't-2Sg forget to go to the market!'

These infinitive-like complements are of course distinct from full propositional complements ('X forget [that/whether ...]'), on which see §17.2.1.3.

#### 17.3.5 *yàbá* ‘consent’ with verbal-noun complement

As a simple transitive verb, *yàbá* means ‘receive, accept, take possession of’. It can also mean ‘accept (a proposal), consent’. When the complement is an act that the consenting subject will carry out, as in ‘X consent [(for X) to come]’, the complement takes verbal-noun form: *yè-jú* ‘to come’, *gò:-dú* ‘to exit’, *pá:-dù* ‘to eat’.

## 17.4 Tonal {L}-{{HL} complements}

In this complement-clause type, the verb takes {{HL}} overlay but otherwise appears in its presuffixal stem (not the chaining form). A nonpronominal object, construed broadly, takes the form of an {L}-toned compound initial. The range of forms of this initial is described in detail for complements *gà:nd-é:-* ‘prevent’ (see just below), but those details are applicable to other {L}-{{HL}} complements. A difference is that the complement of *gà:nd-é:-* ‘prevent’ also requires a possessor while other verbs do not.

Sections covering some main-clause verbs that can take either verbal-noun or {L}-{{HL}} complements have been put in subsections under §17.3 above (see the subsection titles).

The {L}-{{HL}} tone pattern is equivalent to the [n̄ v̄] agentive compound type (§5.1.5.1). However, the general {L}-{{HL}} complement type is not agentive semantically and does not take nominal suffixes like human singular *-nv*.

### 17.4.1 ‘Prevent’ (*gà:nd-é:-*) with {L}-{{HL}} complement

The verb *gà:nd-é:-* is mediopassive in form (but not sense). The complement is a possessed deverbal compound nominal, expressed tonally. The compound initial, is a {L}-toned noun denoting the lower object. The compound initial can be expanded to include modifiers. If the lower object is a pronoun, it takes accusative form and is not tone-dropped (see end of this section) The compound final is a {{HL}}-toned form of the presuffixal stem. Unlike other verbs with {L}-{{HL}} complements, *gà:nd-é:-* requires an overt possessor of the (nominalized) complement. A preposed possessor, like ‘the children’ in (516c), induces no tone change on the compound nominal (arguably it tone-drops just the initial, vacuously).

- (516) a. [wó      *nà:*<sup>L</sup> - <sup>HL</sup>*ŋâ:*      èm-mð / m̄-mð]  
       [3SgSbj    meal<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>eat    1Pl-Poss / 1Sg-Poss]  
*gà:nd-i-ŷ-∅*  
**prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj**  
  ‘He/She prevented us/me from eating.’
- b. [wó      *kɔnjð*<sup>L</sup> - <sup>HL</sup>*nð:*      m̄-mð]      *gà:nd-i-ŷ-∅*  
       [3SgSbj    beer<sup>L</sup>-drink    1Sg-Poss]    **prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj**  
  ‘He/She prevented me from drinking beer.’
- c. [*úlù-ŷ*      *kɔnjð*<sup>L</sup> - <sup>HL</sup>*nð:*]      *gà:nd-i-ŷ-ý*  
       [child-Pl    beer<sup>L</sup>-drink]      **prevent-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj**  
  ‘I prevented the children from drinking beer.’
- d. [*gìrì*<sup>L</sup> - <sup>HL</sup>*yéyy-è:*      m̄-mð]      *gà:nd-i-ŷ-∅*  
       [sleep(n)<sup>L</sup> sleep-MP 1Sg-Poss]    **prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj**  
  ‘He/She prevented me from sleeping.’

If there is no natural nominal complement to the nominalized verb, as with ‘come’ in (517a) and ‘reply’ in (517b), the verb stem is simply iterated (as an “instant” cognate nominal).

- (517) a. *[yèlè<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>yélè      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-∅-yà*  
           [come<sup>L</sup>-come      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3PlSbj  
           'They prevented me from coming.'
- b. *[[yàbìl-è:<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>] [yábìl-è:<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>]      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [[reply-MP]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>[reply-MP]    1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from replying.'

In (518a), what would normally be a locative PP complement ('to the village') is reduced to a noun ('village') as compound initial. In (518b), the compound initial is a morphologically plural noun. In (518c), a postnominal demonstrative is included in the compound initial. In (518d), a numeral is included.

- (518) a. *[àndà<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>bólò      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [village<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>go      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from going to (the) village.'
- b. *[[ùlù-ȷ]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>béndè      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [[child-Pl]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>hit      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from hitting (the) children.'
- c. *[[gìnè-ȷgɔ]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>tégérè      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [[house-Prox]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>burn      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from burning this house.'
- d. *[[pèdù-tà:ndù]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>édè      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [[sheep-three]<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>buy      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from buying three sheep.'

My assistant balked at allowing a postnominal pronominal possessor in the compound initial. In (519), *gìné ù-m̄ò* 'your-Sg house' with postposed possessor is restructured by using 2Sg *ú* as a preposed (pseudo-)possessor, even though the 1Sg possessor remains in place after the compound. Preposed pronominal possessors are, in ordinary syntactic contexts, restricted to inalienable possession (kin terms), but are here resorted to in order to avoid a complex compound initial. The preposed possessor *ú* has no overt tonal effect on the compound noun.

- (519) *[ú      gìnè<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>tégérè      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [2SgPoss    house<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>burn      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from burning your-Sg house.'

If the object of the complement is pronominal, it takes regular accusative form and is not tone-dropped, but the subordinated verb still has {HL} overlay (520).

- (520) *[ù=ȷ      <sup>HL</sup>béndè      m̄-m̄ò]      gà:nd-i-ȳ-∅*  
           [2Sg=Acc    <sup>HL</sup>hit      1Sg-Poss]    prevent-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'He/She prevented me from hitting you-Sg.'

#### 17.4.2 ‘Help’ (*bàrá*) with {L}-{{HL}} or verbal-noun complement

This verb takes an object (usually a human NP or pronoun in accusative form) as in (521a), and this can be elaborated by adding a complement whose logical subject is coindexed with the main-clause object NP. The {L}-{{HL}} complement type is regular (521a-c). In Dogon languages the word translated ‘help’ sometimes means ‘join, pitch in (with someone, in an effort)’. DS *bàrá* also means ‘increase, raise (e.g. a price)’.

- (521) a. *sé:dù*      *mì=í*      *bár-i-Ø*  
           S            1Sg=Acc      help-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘Seydou helped me.’
- b. *sé:dù*      *nàjà*<sup>L</sup><sub>HL</sub> *kómmò* / *yù*<sup>L</sup><sub>HL</sub> *wáli*  
           S            cow<sup>L</sup>-<sub>HL</sub>tie / millet<sup>L</sup>-<sub>HL</sub>do.farming  
           *mì=í*      *bári-i-Ø*  
           1Sg=Acc      help-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘Seydou helped me tie up the cow/cultivate the millet.’
- c. *dògòtòrò*    *[ù=í]*    *[HL jóŋò]*    *mì=í*    *bár-i-Ø*  
           doctor    [2Sg=Acc]    [HL treat]    1Sg=Acc    help-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘The doctor helped me treat you-Sg (medically).’

A verbal noun complement is also attested. It may be relevant that the lower verb in (522) is intransitive.

- (522) *[mí*      <sup>L</sup>*bà:]*      *mì=í*      *yè-jú*      *bár-i-Ø*  
       [1SgPoss    <sup>L</sup>father]    1Sg=Acc    come-VblN    help-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘My father helped me to come.’

#### 17.4.3 ‘Begin’ (*tɔlɔ*) with {L}-{{HL}} or *-í* complement

This verb can take a NP complement (‘X begin Y’ where Y is a NP denoting some activity), as in *wáli tɔlɔ* ‘begin (the) work’. A clausal complement can take tonal {L}-{{HL}} form. This construction is given by my assistant in spontaneous utterances translating ‘begin’ when the complement contains an object (or cognate nominal). The overall time frame (completed or not) as expressed in aspectual marking of ‘begin’ does not affect the form of the complement.

- (523) a. *jà:*<sup>L</sup><sub>HL</sub> *jà:*      *tɔl-ɔ-í* / *tɔl-è-Ø*  
       meal<sup>L</sup>-<sub>HL</sub>eat    begin-Pfv-1SgSbj / -3SgSbj  
       ‘I/he-or-she began to eat.’
- b. *nàmà*<sup>L</sup><sub>HL</sub> *témè*      *tɔlɔ*  
       meat<sup>L</sup>-<sub>HL</sub>eat.meat    begin.Imprt  
       ‘Begin-2Sg to eat (the) meat!’

An alternative is a form with *-í* suffix after {L}-toned verb stem. This subordinating suffix is not attested with any other main-clause verb. For lack of a better gloss I will use “-Comp” in interlinears. This construction is given spontaneously by my assistant in ‘begin’ constructions

when the complement lacks an object (524a-b). It is accepted by him when there is an object (524c). Again, whether the event is completed or not does not affect the complement. Tommo So has a similarly quirky subordinating suffix *-n* with this verb, but with lexical tone melody. McPherson argues that it is “plausible” that this *-n* is a syncopated form of Tommo So *-nú*, a participial suffix with future-time connections (2013: 531).

- (524) a. *yàbìl-è:-j* / *jòbò-j*      *tòl-è-Ø* / *tò:ló-dè-Ø*  
           reply-MP-/ run-**Comp**    begin-Pfv-/Augm.begin-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She began/will begin to reply/run.’
- b. *tòmbò-j* / *kà:-j*      *tòl-è-Ø* / *tò:ló-dè-Ø*  
           jump-/shave-**Comp**    begin-Pfv-/Augm.begin-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She began/will begin to jump/shave.’
- c. *[nàmá      tèmè-j]*      *tòl-è-Ø* / *tò:ló-dè-Ø*  
           [meat      eat.meat-**Comp**]    begin-Pfv-/Augm.begin-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She began/will begin to eat (the) meat.’

Intransitive ‘begin’ can also be expressed by *tòlò*, as in *àná tòl-è-Ø* ‘the rain has begun’. However, seasons of the year do not usually ‘begin’, rather they *súgò* ‘descend’ (wet season) or they *dò:* ‘arrive, approach’ (any season).

#### 17.4.4 Motion verb plus purposive {L}-{HL} complement

In this construction, the motion verb is preceded by the {L}-{HL} complement type, including an L-toned compound initial. The complement expresses the purpose of the motion, which in this case temporally precedes the event denoted by the complement.

- (525) a. *[[àndá      <sup>L</sup>*kòlò]*      rà:]      wàlù<sup>L-HL</sup>*kánà*      bòl-i-Ø*  
           [[village      L-interior] Loc]    work(n)<sup>L-HL</sup>do      go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He went to the city in order to do work (=for a job).’
- b. *tè: <sup>L-HL</sup>*nò:**      *yèl-i-yà*  
           tea<sup>L-HL</sup>drink      come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
           ‘They came to drink tea.’
- c. *[mì = j]      <sup>HL</sup>*béndè]*      *yèl-è-Ø*  
           [1Sg=Acc      <sup>HL</sup>hit]      come-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He/She came in order to hit me.’*
- d. *jàn<sup>L-HL</sup>*dâ:**      *bò:jè-ñ*  
           fire<sup>L-HL</sup>kill      go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
           ‘I’m going (there) to put out the fire.’

This construction competes with one that has *-ni* subordinator in the purposive clause (§17.5.1). In fact (525c), with a pronominal object rather than an {L}-toned compound initial, was accepted by my assistant, but for this meaning he spontaneously produced a purposive

clause with *-ni*. The *-ni* complement is also useful when the complement is intransitive, so it has no obvious candidate for the {L}-toned initial.

#### 17.4.5 *pádà* ‘abandon’ with {L}-{HL} or verbal-noun complement

*pádà* ‘leave (behind), abandon’ is elsewhere a simple transitive, as in *tibú pàd-ì-ń* ‘I left the stone (there)’. The verb can also take a clausal complement. An {L}-{HL} tonal complement is favored when the subordinated verb has a natural object that can serve as {L}-toned compound initial (526a). Verbal-noun complements are also possible (526b).

- (526) a. *tè:<sup>L</sup> <sup>HL</sup> nɔ:*      *pàd-ì-ń*  
 tea<sup>L</sup> -<sup>HL</sup> drink      leave-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I have abandoned (permanently ceased) drinking tea.’
- b. *yè-jú*      *pàd-ì-ń*  
 come-VblN      leave-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I have abandoned (permanently ceased) coming.’

For temporary cessation, a different construction is used. (527) might be used in the context where an interruption such as a loud noise caused the singers to cut off their song temporarily.

- (527) *úlù-ń*      *[núŋò*      *nùŋó-w]*      *í:-nd-i-yà*  
 child-Pl      [song      sing-Ipfv]      stop-Tr-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 ‘The children stopped singing.’  
 [“The children were singing and stopped (it).”]

#### 17.4.6 ‘Want’ (*nàmà*) with anterior and relative complements

For the forms of this stative quasi-verb, see §11.2.5.2. In simple main clauses it takes an NP direct object as in English. The relevant complement constructions are same-subject ‘X want [to VP]’ and different-subject ‘X want [Y to VP]’.

Same-subject examples are in (528a-c). The complement clause has the past anterior subordinator *-a:*.

- (528) a. *[bàmàkó*      *bòl-â:]*  
 [B      go-PastAnt]  
*nàmà-là-ń* / *nàmà=bè-lè-ń*  
 want-StatNeg-1SgSbj / want=Past-Neg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I don’t/didn’t want to go to Bamako.’
- b. *[mí*      <sup>L</sup>*dèlè]*      *[yògó*      *pédò=ð=ń*      *sém-à:]*  
 [1SgPoss      <sup>L</sup>elder.sib]      [tomorrow      sheep=Def=Acc]      slaughter-PastAnt]  
*nàmà-Ø*  
 want-3SgSbj  
 ‘My elder (same-sex) sibling wants to slaughter the sheep tomorrow.’

- c. [tē: nánà wà-â:] *nàmà-là-ñ*  
 [tea even see-PastAnt] want-StatNeg-1SgSbj  
 'I don't even want to see (the) tea.'

Different-subject examples are (529a-b). The complement usually takes a headless imperfective relative complement, i.e. with *-dè* ~ *-jè* (529a) or variant *-dɔ* by Back/Rounding Harmony (529b). In (529a), my assistant also allowed a perfective pseudo-participle *yèl-é*.

- (529) a. [ú <sup>L</sup>bà:] [ú *yèl-é* / *yè-jè*]  
 [2SgPoss <sup>L</sup>father] [2SgSbj come-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl / come-Ipfv.Ppl]  
*nàmà-Ø*  
**want-3SgSbj**  
 'Your-Sg father wants you to come.'
- b. [mí <sup>L</sup>bà:] [kònjas mí *èbè-dè* / *nɔ:-dɔ*]  
 [1Sg <sup>L</sup>father] [beer 1SgSbj buy-/drink-Ipfv.Ppl]  
*nàmà-là-Ø*  
**want-StatNeg-3SgSbj**  
 'My father doesn't want me to drink/buy beer.'
- c. [mí <sup>L</sup>bà:] [sé:dù kònjas *nɔ:-dɔ*]  
 [1Sg <sup>L</sup>father] [S beer drink-Ipfv.Ppl]  
*nàmà-là-Ø*  
**want-StatNeg-3SgSbj**  
 'My father doesn't want Seydou to drink beer.'

#### 17.4.7 Obligational ‘must’ with invariant perfective verb

In the obligational construction, the verb is perfective (even though the required event has not yet been performed). The verb is otherwise unsuffixed, so it looks like a 3Sg subject form. The subject is expressed by an obligatory preverbal subject proclitic. This resembles a perfective relative clause but the verb does not have the {LH} contour of a perfective participle.

- (530) a. *úlù-ñ* *módù* *bé* *bòl-ì*  
 child-Pl Mopti 3PISbj go-Pfv  
 'The children must (are obligated to) go to Mopti.'
- b. *yògó* *yû:* *mí* *wàl-ì*  
 tomorrow millet 1SgSbj do.farming-Pfv  
 'Tomorrow I must do farming (toil in the millet field).'

Negative ‘must not’ is expressed by a paraphrase such as (531) rather than by directly negating the type (530).

- (531) *[yògó mí yû: wàlà-dè] dàgà-lí-∅*  
 [tomorrow 1SgSbj millet do.farming-Ipfv] be.good-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘I must not do farming tomorrow.’  
 [“It would be bad for me to do farming tomorrow.”]

## 17.5 Purposive and causal clauses

Preceding a main-clause motion verb, the {L}-{HL} tonal complement may be used in purposive sense (§17.4.4). Other purposives and causals are covered below.

### 17.5.1 Purposive clauses with *-ni*

A construction with *-ni* purposive subordinator seems to occur mainly when the {L}-{HL} complement is not easily formed, either because the purposive clause has a pronominal object (532a) or because it is intransitive (532b).

- (532) a. *[mì=í bèndè-ní] yèl-è-∅*  
 [1Sg=Acc hit-Purp] come-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She came in order to hit me.’
- b. *[[àndá rà:] dàgn-è:-ní] bòl-i-∅*  
 [[village Loc] sit-MP-Purp] go-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She went to sit in the village.’

The combination of a lexically /HL/-toned verb with *-ni* has an initial H-tone followed by L-tones. The combination of a lexically /LH/-toned verbs with *-ni* has a {L}-toned stem with H-toned *-ní*.

*-ni* is also an imperfective subordinator in verb/VP chains in nonpast-time contexts. See §15.2.1.3-4 for the form it takes with various types of stem.

### 17.5.2 Purposive clauses with *jă:* particle

A purposive construction with NP complement is *[X lè] jă:*, i.e. the combination of a dative PP *[X lè]* with a causal-purposive particle *jă:* (§8.3.1).

*jă:* also occurs in purposive clauses. The main verb of the clause is imperative in form. If the subject of the purposive clause is human, the quotative-subject construction is used (533a-b). If the subject is nonhuman, and therefore not a normal recipient of an actual imperative utterance, it appears as a simple NP or pronoun (533c). The purposive clause normally precedes the main clause.

- (533) a. *[[ú wà] [sđy mógđ] jă:]]*  
 [[2Sg QuotSbj] [clothing wash.Imprt Purp]]  
*[sámínè jă-yèl-è-ñ]*  
 [soap take-come-Pfv-1SgSbj]  
 ‘So that you may wash the clothes, I’ve brought soap.’

- b. *[sé:dù wà [bàmàkó bólò jǎ:]*  
 [[S QuotSbj] [B go.Imprt Purp]]  
*[wò=ŋ kè:lé ób-ù-ŋ]*  
 [3Sg=Acc money give-Pfv-1SgSbj]  
 ‘So that Seydou might go to Bamako, I gave him money.’
- c. *[mìnñó=ð dágà jǎ:]*  
 [field=Def be.good.Imprt Purp]  
*[úbù künd-ù-ŋ]*  
 [manure put-Pfv-1SgSbj]  
 ‘So that the field turn out well (=be productive), I have put manure (in it).’

If the purpose clause is negative, the verb before *jǎ:* takes prohibitive form.

- (534) a. *[àná yò-ý-nǎw jǎ:]*  
 [rain go.in-Chain-Prohib Purp]  
*[gìnñó=ð dèmbè-dè-ŋ]*  
 house=Def plaster.roof-Ipfv-1PlSbj  
 ‘We will (re-)plaster the roof (with mud) so the rain won’t get in.’
- b. *[tàŋá píŋì-l-í:-nǎw jǎ:]*  
 [door shut-Rev-MP-Prohib Purp]  
*[tìbú dù:nd-ù-ŋ]*  
 [stone put.down-Pfv-1SgSbj]  
 ‘I put a stone down, so the door won’t open.’

In a different *jǎ:* construction, from text 01 at 00:15, my assistant indicated that *jǎ:* implies distributivity (multiplicity of the event type).

- (535) *[súgùlò=ð kébèl-ð=ð jǎ: [bé bòl-â:]]*  
 [ear=Def pick.a.little-Pfv.Ppl=Def Purp] [3PlSbj go-PastAnt]  
 ‘They went and picked off (lots of) pieces of their ears.’

See also text 04 at 00:44 and text 05 at 00:50 (twice).

### 17.5.3 Causal ('because') clause

With an NP complement, ‘because of X’ can be expressed by the same combination *[X lè] jǎ:* that is used in purposives, or by an expression containing *sá:bù* ‘reason’ (§8.3.1). For clausal ‘because’, my assistant often juxtaposed the two clauses with no overt ‘because’.

- (536) a. *[sínjò=ð gáb-â: bòl-i-∅]*,  
 [noise-Def be.much-PastAnt go-Pfv-3SgSbj]  
*[wálò=ð i:-ndé-d-ì]*  
 [work=Def stand-Tr-Ipfv-3PlSbj]  
 ‘The noise went and became too much, (so) they are stopping the work.’

- b. [íyè                  gù-é'lè-ñj]  
  [today                  go.out-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj]  
 [[ànùgë:    m̩-mɔ]      yɛ:-j-à:                  sè-Ø]  
 [[friend    1Sg-Poss]   Augm.come-Ipfv-PastAnt   have-3SgSbj  
 'I'm not going out today, (because) my friend is about to come over.'

An explicit ‘because’ element is the PP  $[X^L sà:bù] lè$ , where X is an NP or clause, is also possible. It is based on a variant of a regionally widespread ‘cause’ noun, ultimately Arabic *sabab-*.

*paskə* ‘because’ (French *parce que*) is ubiquitous in Malian languages, including DS, especially among youth.

#### 17.5.4 *wó-wà nà* ‘it being the case that’ or ‘while/when’

This subordinated clause type ends in invariant *wó-wà nà*. Here we can identify quasi-verb *wò* ‘be’ in a subordinated imperfective form with suffix *-wà*, and a particle *nà* not otherwise attested, but resembling locative allomorph *nè* as well as topical ‘now’ adverb *nê:*. I will gloss it “Loc” in interlinears for lack of a clearer function.

If the sense is ‘X being (there)’, no further verb is needed (537a). Any other predicate, including ‘not be (there)’ (537b), must precede *wó-wà nà* and end in either imperfective *-wà* or past anterior *-a:* (537b-c).

- (537) a. *jòmɔ / émmè      yé-rà:      wó-wà      nà,*  
       hare / 1Pl           DiscDef-Loc    be-Ipfv    Loc,  
       ‘Hare / We being there, ...’
- b. *émmè      yé-rà:      wò-ló-wà      wó-wà      nà,*  
       1Pl           DiscDef-Loc    be-StatNeg-Ipfv    be-Ipfv    Loc,  
       ‘We not being there, ...’
- c. *jòmɔ      yèlé-w / yèl-â:      wó-wà      nà,*  
       hare           come-Ipfv / come-PastAnt    be-Ipfv    Loc,  
       ‘Hare being on his way (here) / having already come, ...’

The following clause may have the same or a disjoint subject.

- (538) a. *jòmɔ      yèlé-w      wó-wà      nà,    émmè      jná:      jnè-è-ñj*  
       hare    come-Ipfv    be-Ipfv    Loc, 1Pl    meal eat-Pfv-1PlSbj  
       ‘While Hare was on his way (here), we ate.’
- b. *jòmɔ      yèl-â:      wó-wà      nà,      jná:      jnè-è-Ø*  
       hare    come-PastAnt    be-Ipfv    Loc,    meal    eat-Pfv-3SgSbj  
       ‘Hare having come, he (=Hare) ate.’

## 17.6 *-nú* or *-nda* plus *bě:* ‘remain’ (‘keep VP-ing’)

Extended temporal prolongation of an activity can be expressed by a form of the activity verb with {L}-toned stem and H-toned suffix *-nú*, plus an appropriate form of *bě:* ‘remain’. The suffix is not otherwise attested. I will gloss it as “Dur[ative]” for lack of a better term.

- (539) *[gɔ̄: bě-mɔ̄] gò:-nú bì-ŷ-yà=yô:*  
[dance(n) 3Pl-Poss] dance(v)-**Dur** remain-Pfv-3PlSbj=if  
‘They kept dancing their dances, and ...’

## 18 Anaphora

Reflexive is, and reciprocal can be, expressed by the intransitivizing mediopassive derivation of the verb. There is a logophoric noun that coindexes a referent to a quoted speaker-author, and a reciprocal object form that can be used instead of the mediopassive derivation.

### 18.1 Reflexive

Reflexives are usually expressed either by intransitivizing the verb (subject-object coindexation) or by using ordinary pronouns that are not specifically reflexive. However, a possessed form of *kâ*: ‘head’ can also be used reflexively.

#### 18.1.1 Reflexive object expressed by mediopassive verb

The primary reflexive-object construction requires intransitivization of the verb, using the mediopassive (MP) suffix (§9.4) in reflexive sense. The construction is therefore not transitive ‘X hit himself’, rather intransitive ‘X self-hit’. Compare transitive (540a) with reflexive (540b).

- (540) a. *i: = ã bënd-è-ý*  
child=Acc hit-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I hit-Past the child.’
- b. *bënd-i-ý-ý*  
hit-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I hit myself.’
- c. *bénd-i-ý-Ø*  
hit-MP-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘He/She hit himself/herself.’

The mediopassive construction can extend to ‘say’. The dative complement of this verb is overt even in the reflexive construction (541a-b).

- (541) a. *mí [mí] lè gìyy-i-ý-ý*  
1SgSbj [1Sg] Dat say-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj  
‘I said to myself ...’
- b. *sé:dù [wó] lè gìyy-è:-lí-Ø*  
S [3Sg] Dat say-MP-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
‘Seydou did not say to himself ...’

### 18.1.2 Reflexive PP complement expressed by regular pronouns

Postpositional complement NPs are only occasionally coindexed to the clausemate subject. When they are, ordinary (nonreflexive) pronouns are used. When the pronouns are third person, they may or may not refer to the same entity as the subject (542b).

- (542) a. *[pòròjá: m̩-mɔ] [jóè m̩-mɔ] rà:] bèl-è-ŷ*  
           [boubou 1Sg-Poss] [[under 1Sg-Poss] Loc] get-Pfv-1SgSbj  
           ‘I found my boubou (=robe) under myself.’
- b. *[pòròjá: wò-mɔ] [jóè wò-mɔ] rà:] bèl-è-∅*  
           [boubou 3Sg-Poss] [[under 3Sg-Poss] Loc] get-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He<sub>x</sub> found his<sub>x/y</sub> boubou under himself<sub>x/y/z</sub>’

### 18.1.3 Reflexive possessor expressed by regular pronouns

There is no special reflexive possessor marking. In (543) we see that in DS as in English the possessor may or may not be coindexed with the subject.

- (543) *[pòròjá: wò-mɔ] mì=í òb-ì-∅*  
           [boubou 3Sg-Poss] 1Sg=Acc give-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He<sub>x</sub> gave me his<sub>x/y</sub> boubou.’

### 18.1.4 *kû*: ‘head’ in reflexives

Reflexives are usually expressed, if overtly at all, by mediopassive verbs as shown above. However, *kû*: ‘head’ did occur in a textual example that verges on reflexivity (544).

- (544) *[n̩dé wôy] [kû: wò-mɔ=ŷ]*  
           [person all] [head 3Sg-Poss=it.is]  
           ‘Everyone is on his own.’ (lit. “Every person is his own head.”)

Example (545) occurred during elicitation of expressions meaning ‘X imitates Y’.

- (545) *[kû: wò-mɔ] [mí lè] túmɔ-dè-∅*  
           [head 3Sg-Poss] [1Sg than] measure-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘He measures himself by/against me.’

### 18.1.5 “Sama” reflexives

Culy reports “an invariant reflexive pronoun *sama* ... [that] occurs only in the more conservative outlying variety of DS” (Culy, Kadio & Togo 1994:320). He argues that it is archaic. I do not find this form in the Kervran dictionary. Similar transpersonal reflexives, used for example as direct objects, occur productively in two other Dogon languages known to me (Togo Kan *să*<sup>n</sup> and Tomo Kan *să* ~ *hă*).

## 18.2 Emphatic pronouns

There is no distinctive morphological form for emphatic pronouns ('myself' in 'I built it myself'). Constructions are available for the senses 'X unassisted' and 'X instead of others'.

### 18.2.1 'X unassisted'

To emphasise that the subject has done something unassisted, two constructions are possible. The first is to combine the subject (nonpronominal or pronominal) with *túrù* '1' in the sense 'alone, singly', or occasionally a slightly higher numeral like '2' (546a-b).

- (546) a. [gìné      m̄-mɔ]      [mí      túrù]      ùd-è  
[house      1Sg-Poss]    [1Sg      one]      build-Pfv  
'I built the house by myself (=unassisted).'
- b. [émmè      lè      wôy]      [tìbú      jènè]      bélé-èlè-ŷ  
[1Pl      two      all]      [stone      lift]      get-IpfvNeg-1PlSbj  
'The two of us can't lift the rock (by ourselves).' (<*l̄ey* '2')

The other construction is to add *kă:y* 'only' to any NP or pronoun (547).

- (547) úlù-ŷ      [bé      kă:y]      [tìbú      jènè]      bélé-ñ-nì  
child-Pl      [3Pl      only]      [stone      lift]      get-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj  
'The children can't lift the rock by themselves.'

With either the numeral or *kă:y*, if the referent is expressed by a nonpronominal NP, it is optionally resumed by a coindexed independent pronoun, as in (547) and as in English *the women (by) themselves*. Resumption is not obligatory: (547) could also be phrased with initial *úlù-ŷ kă:y* 'only (the) children'. With a numeral: *sé:dù túrù* or *sé:dù [wó túrù]* 'Seydou alone'.

### 18.2.2 'X instead of others'

When the pragmatic context is of the type 'X instead of others', the constructions used for 'X unassisted' are not applicable. In most cases 'X instead of others' is expressed by focalization, as in (548), where the 1Sg subject is a proclitic rather than a suffix on the verb as in unfocalized clauses. It is possible to add a coindexed possessor as an optional emphatic.

- (548) [î:      m̄-mɔ=ŷ]      tí-à:      nàmà-là-ŷ,  
[child      1Sg-Poss=Acc]      send-PastAnt      want-StatNeg-1SgSbj,  
(mɔ=ð)      mí      bò-jè  
(1Sg.Poss=Def)      1SgSbj      go-Ipfv  
'I don't want to send my child, I'm going myself.'

The emphatic *mɔ=ð* is the irregular absolute definite form of *m̄-mɔ* 'my'. See §6.2.1.2 for the full set of pronominal forms. A nonpronominal NP is resumed by a coindexed pronoun: *sé:dù [wó-mɔ=ð]* 'Seydou himself'.

There is one textual example of *ñjèmé*, normally logophoric, in apparent ‘by himself’ function (text 01 at 00:45).

### 18.3 Logophoric and indexing pronouns

#### 18.3.1 Third person logophoric noun (*ñjèmé*)

The third-person logophoric pronoun, more noun-like than pronominal morphologically, is *ñjèmé* (549a), plural *ñjèmé-mbè* (549b), possessor (optional) *ñjèm-mò* (text 01 at 01:23).

- (549) a. *sé:dù [ú wà] [ñjèmè=ŷ bènd-è] gí-ŷ-∅*  
           S       [2Sg QuotSbj] [Logo=Acc hit-Pfv] say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘Seydou<sub>x</sub> said that you-Sg hit him<sub>x</sub>.’
- b. *úlù-ŷ [ú wà] [ñjèmé-mbè=ŷ bènd-è]*  
     child-Pl [2Sg QuotSbj] [Logo-Pl=Acc hit-Pfv]  
*g-í-yà*  
     say-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     ‘The children<sub>x</sub> say that you-Sg hit them<sub>x</sub>.’

#### 18.3.2 Transpersonal logophoric subject (-ŷ)

A suffix identical in form to the 1Sg subject subject suffix *-ŷ* (atonal) is used in the quoted clause to index the quoted speaker, whether singular or plural, as subject. The quoted speaker may be the addressee(s) (550a), the current speaker (550b), or a third party (550c). That this *-ŷ* is unpalatalized and is therefore specifically homophonous to the 1Sg suffix, rather than to the 1Pl or 2Pl suffix, is shown by forms like *dă:ŷà-ŷ* in (550b). This is homophonous to 1Sg *dă:ŷà-ŷ* ‘I am sitting’ but not to 1Pl and 2Pl *dă:ŷà-ŷ* ‘we/you-Pl are sitting’.

- (550) a. *[ñjú jà:] yĕ:-jè-ŷ*  
     [what? cause] Augm.come-Ipfv-**LogoSbj**  
*gì-ŷ-w / gì-ŷ-ŷ*  
     say-Pfv-2SgSbj / -2PlSbj  
     ‘Why did you-Sg/Pl say that you were coming?’
- b. *mí / émmè dă:ŷà-ŷ*  
     1SgSbj/1PlSbj sit.Stat-**LogoSbj** say-Pfv-1SgSbj/1PlSbj  
     ‘I/We said that I am/we are sitting (=seated).’
- c. *sé:dù [ñjèmé/ wó yĕl-lì-ŷ] gí-ŷ-∅*  
     S [Logo/3SgSbj come-PfvNeg-**LogoSbj**] say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
     ‘Seydou<sub>x</sub> said that he<sub>x</sub> didn’t come.’
- d. *úlù-ŷ [bé yĕl-lì-ŷ] g-í-yà*  
     child-Pl [3PlSbj come-PfvNeg-**LogoSbj**] say-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     ‘The children<sub>x</sub> said that they<sub>x</sub> didn’t come.’

The logophoric subject suffix is required in all such quoted clauses. It is therefore a more reliable anaphor than the optional logophoric noun *injèmé* in sentences like (550c). However, it is limited to subject position.

### 18.3.3 Logophorics in stacked quotations

Example (551a) includes three distinct protagonists and two levels of quotation. The only logophoric is the subject suffix *-ŋ* on ‘kill’, which is coindexed with ‘you’, the author of the lower quotation. In (551b), the object in the lower clause is coindexed with Seydou, the author of the higher quotation. This shows that nothing prevents the logophoric noun *injèmé* from finding a higher antecedent.

- (551) a. *sé:dù*

S	<i>[[ú      wà]      [mì=ŋ      dà-dá:-dè-ŋ]      gí-ŷ]</i>
	<i>[[2Sg    QuotSbj]    [1Sg=Acc   Augm-kill-Ipfv-LogoSbj]    say-Pfv]</i>
<i>gì-y-Ø</i>	

say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘Seydou said that you-Sg said that you will kill me.’

- b. *sé:dù*

S	<i>[[ú      wà]      [nјèmè=ŋ      dà-dá:-dè-ŋ]      gí-ŷ]</i>
	<i>[[2Sg    QuotSbj]    [Logo=Acc   Augm-kill-Ipfv-LogoSbj]    say-Pfv]</i>
<i>gì-y-Ø</i>	

say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘Seydou<sub>x</sub> said that you-Sg said that you will kill him<sub>x</sub>.’

However, logophoric subject *-ŋ* must take the first quoted author up as its antecedent. (552a) shows that the higher quoted author, Seydou, can only be resumed by a regular 3Sg pronoun (*wó*) in the lowest quoted clause. Logophoric subject *-ŋ* is allowed in (552b) because it is coindexed with the lower quoted author (‘you’).

- (552) a. *sé:dù*

S	<i>[[ú      wà]      [[wó      wà]      [yógù      wɔ]]      gí-ŷ]</i>
	<i>[[2Sg    QuotSbj]    [[3Sg    QuotSbj]    [nasty   be]]    say-Pfv]</i>
<i>gì-y-Ø</i>	

say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘Seydou<sub>x</sub> said that you-Sg said that he<sub>x</sub> is nasty.’

- b. *sé:dù*

S	<i>[[ú      wà]      [yógù      wɔ-ŋ]      gí-ŷ]</i>
	<i>[[2Sg    QuotSbj]    [nasty   be-LogoSbj]    say-Pfv]</i>
<i>gì-y-Ø</i>	

say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
‘Seydou<sub>x</sub> said that you-Sg said that you-Sg are nasty.’

#### 18.3.4 No subject-to-subject indexing

In DS there is no special anaphoric coindexing of a relative-clause subject with the subject of the higher main clause. Regular pronouns are used for the relative-clause subject, which is 1Sg in (553a) and 3Sg in (553b).

- (553) a. *[kidè<sup>L</sup> kán-ù bè-j-à: mí sé:=gò]*  
           [thing<sup>L</sup> do-Chain get-Ipfv-PastAnt 1SgSbj have.Ppl=Def]  
*kàn-ù-íj*  
           do-Pfv-1SgSbj  
           'I did what I could (do).'
- b. *sé:dù [kidè<sup>L</sup> kán-ù bè-j-à: wó sé:=gò] kàn-i-Ø*  
           S [thing<sup>L</sup> do-Chain get-Ipfv-PastAnt 3SgSbj have.Ppl=Def] do-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           'Seydou<sub>x</sub> did what he<sub>x</sub> could (do).'

#### 18.3.5 *bàŋâ*: ‘owner’ as ‘the (same) fellow’

A previously introduced generic discourse referent can be referred to in subsequent sentences as *bàŋâ*: ‘the (same) fellow/guy’, cf. French *le type* or *le mec*, without further determination. Despite the translation there is no gender bias. This is a variant of the noun ‘owner’, which is otherwise chiefly found as a compound final (§5.1.8). The plural is *bàŋâ:-mbè* ‘the fellows’.

### 18.4 Reciprocal

#### 18.4.1 Reciprocal use of mediopassive

The versatile intransitivizing mediopassive verb derivation can be used in reciprocals as well as reflexives, if the subject and object are coindexed.

- (554) a. *émmè [yò-gó rà:] wèyy-i-ŷ-ñ*  
           1Pl [which? Loc] see-MP-Pfv-1PlSbj  
           ‘Where have we seen each other?’
- b. *úlù-ñ bénd-i-ŷ-ña*  
           child-Pl hit-MP-Pfv-3PlSbj  
           ‘The children hit each other.’
- c. *dèyy-è:-gí-ñ*  
           insult-MP-Prohib-PlAddr  
           ‘Don’t-2Pl insult each other!'

*gɛ:* ‘say’ normally takes a dative rather than direct-object complement (§8.1.1). However, it can take mediopassive form in reciprocal sense, with no overt dative marking (555).

- (555) [s<sup>ò</sup>:<sup>L</sup>      túrù-lò]      gìyy-è:-gí-ñ  
      [talk(n)<sup>L</sup>      any]      say-MP-Prohib-PlAdd  
      ‘Don’t-2Pl say a word to each other!’

#### 18.4.2 Reciprocal object *tùmò=j*

The alternative is to maintain the transitive clause structure and use *tùmò=j*, originally the accusative of a noun meaning ‘peer (group)’ (*tùmò*, cf. *mí tùmò-nò* ‘my generation-mate’) but now somewhat frozen. The verb may nonetheless be mediopassive in form (556b-c).

- (556) a. *bě:*      *tùmò=j*      *iбе-ñ-ní*  
      3Pl      Recip=Acc      like-StatNeg-3PlSbj  
      ‘They don’t like each other.’
- b. *émmè*      *tùmò=j*      *bènd-é:*      *wð-ñ*  
      1Pl      Recip=Acc      hit-MP      be-1PlSbj  
      ‘We are hitting each other.’ (progressive-2)
- c. *tùmò=j*      *bènd-é:-ñ*  
     Recip=Acc      hit-MP.Imprt-2PlSbj  
      ‘Hit each other!’

See also text 02 at 00:20.

I was unable to elicit a distinct dative form #*tùmò lè* in e.g. ‘we said to each other’. My assistant used the same accusative form *tùmò=j* (557).

- (557) *tùmò=j*      *gìyy-è:-lì-ñ*  
     Recip=Acc      say-MP-PfvNeg-1PlSbj  
      ‘we did not say to each other’

# 19 Grammatical pragmatics

## 19.1 Topic

### 19.1.1 Topic (*gày*)

An independent pronoun or other NP can be topicalized by adding a final topic particle *gày*. The topic is commonly clause-initial and sometimes preclausal, though it is not necessarily set off prosodically. The referent is often the subject of the following clause. The topic phrase can be translated as ‘as for X’ or ‘personally’.

- (558) a. [mí      *gày*]      bòlé-èlè-ñ  
[1Sg      Topic]      go-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
‘As for me, I’m not going.’
- b. [sé:dù      *gày*]      ñgó-nì      jǎ:      jà:-dè-Ø  
[S      Topic]      here      meal      eat-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
‘As for Seydou, he eats here.’

When the object is topicalized, my assistant produced a preclausal topic phrase, with a resumptive accusative pronoun in the following clause.

- (559) [mí      *gày*]      sé:dù      mì=íj      bендè-lí-Ø  
[1Sg      Topic]      Seydou      1Sg=Acc      hit-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
‘As for me, Seydou didn’t hit me.’

### 19.1.2 ‘Now’ (*nê:*)

‘Now’ as a discourse marker is *nê:*. It is very common in the texts at the beginning of paragraph-like segments, i.e. implying some kind of break with the immediately preceding segment. It may occur in simple form or as *nê: gày* with the topic particle.

This is distinct from the temporal adverb *kandɔw* ‘now, at this time’, but the latter can also be used in discourse in a similar way.

### 19.1.3 ‘Also, too’ (*lè*)

This is a particle (or clitic) that follows a pronoun or other NP. The accusative clitic or a postposition (including the homophonous multipurpose *lè* postposition) follow the NP directly, preceding *lè* ‘also, too’ (560b-c).

- (560) a. [mí      *lè*]      bō:jè-ñ  
[1Sg      too]      Augm.go-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
‘I too will go.’

- b. *[mì =j lè] bén̄d-è-∅*  
 [1Sg=Acc too] hit-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She hit me too.’
- c. *[[mí lè lè] kɔ: gì-y-∅]*  
 [[1Sg Dat too] NearDist say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She said that (same thing) to me too.’

*lè* is not added to to a predicate. For example, in (561), although in context the pragmatic scope of ‘too’ is the entire VP ‘sweep (the place)’, the pro forma object ‘place’ attracts the particle *lè*.

- (561) *[páná kǎ:n-jè-∅],*  
 [cooked.meal Augm.do-Ipfv-3SgSbj],  
*[yálú lè sè:mbé-dè-∅]*  
 [place too] Augm.sweep-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She does the cooking, and sweeps (the place) too.’

However, the expanded form *yàgá lè*, with *yàgá* ‘other’, can be used adverbially and can have scope over a predicate.

In ‘even if ...’ conditional antecedents, the combination *=yò lè* (with *=yò* ‘if’) is normally assimilated either to *=yò lò* or *=yè lè* (§16.2.1.1). *-lò* in *túrù-lò* ‘(not) any’ from *túrù* ‘1’ may be related to *lè* ‘also, too’.

#### 19.1.4 ‘Even’ (*hállù*)

*hállù* ‘even’, which belongs to a regional diffusional set, can occur before a subject NP (562a) or before a VP (562c). In (562b) one could bracket *hállù* with ‘children’ or with the VP ‘killed the children’, as suggested by the alternative English translations.

- (562) a. *[hállù i:] [wàlù<sup>L</sup> ñgɔ] kán-ù bě:-jè-∅*  
 [even child] [work<sup>L</sup> Prox] do-Chain Augm.get-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘Even a child can do this work.’
- b. *gè:<sup>n</sup>-gé:<sup>n</sup>-nè hállù úlù-ị dà-ỳ-∅*  
 [theft-steal.Agent-Sg] even child-Pl kill-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘The thief killed even (the) children.’  
 (or: ‘The thief even killed children.’)
- c. *hállù yèl-è-ń*  
 even come-Pfv-1SgSbj  
 ‘I even came.’

‘Not even’ is the same *hállù* in combination with a negative predicate.

- (563) a. *hállù pò:-ndò-lì-ị*  
 even greet-Tr-PfvNeg-1SgSbj  
 ‘I didn’t even say hello.’

- b. *hállù*   *mì=ń*   [kè:lè-ŷ]      *túrù-lòj*      *òbò-lí-Ø*  
 even    1Sg=Acc [money-child one-too]    give-PfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 ‘He/She didn’t even give me a small coin.’

For *hállù* in ‘even if ...’ conditional antecedents, see §16.2.1.1.

## 19.2 Preclausal discourse markers

### 19.2.1 ‘Well, ...’ (*háyà*)

The regional word *háyà* is a common preclausal discourse marker. It is used roughly like English ‘well, ...’. Like other such markers it connects the clause pragmatically to the preceding discourse. (564) might be used to encourage the addressee to be energetic in a demanding job (cf. French *bon courage*).

- (564)   *háyà*      *mà:nd-ê:*  
 well,      have.courage-MP.Imprt  
 ‘Well, be courageous (energetic)!’

### 19.2.2 ‘So, ...’ (*wálà:*)

The regional word *wálà:*, from French *voilà*, is another clause-initial discourse marker. It has weak presentative force, and can be used in an utterance that marks the culmination of a conversation or activity. For the productive presentatives see §4.4.4. Like its French source, *wálà* can also signal the speaker’s vindication on a point, as when the interlocutor has just provided supporting evidence.

- (565)   a. *wálà:*      *dág-i-Ø*  
 so            be.good-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 ‘So, it’s fine!’
- b. *wálà:*      *yèl-è-w*  
 so            come-Pfv-2SgSbj  
 ‘So, you-Sg have come!’

In English we would be more likely to use an overt evaluative (e.g. “Great, you have come!”). *wálà:* is an ‘alas!’ particle expressing disappointment.

### 19.2.3 ‘But ...’ (*lă:-Ø=yè ~ lă:-Ø=yò*)

This clause-initial form occurs at the beginning of the second clause, indicating that an expectation generated by the preceding clause (or discourse) is not met. Both clauses take main-clause form.

- (566) a. *[yèl-â: wò-Ø] [lă:-Ø=yè jă: jà:-lí-Ø]*  
           [come-PastAnt be-3SgSbj] [but meal eat-PfvNeg-3SgSbj]  
           ‘He/She came, but he/she didn’t eat.’
- b. *[yèl-è-ý [lă:-Ø=yò jă: jà:-lì-ý]*  
           come-Pfv-1SgSbj [but meal eat-PfvNeg-1SgSbj]  
           ‘I came, but I didn’t eat.’

Morphologically, *lă:-Ø=yè ~ lă:-Ø=yò* is the combination of the zero 3Sg subject form of the ‘it is not’ clitic =*lă:* with =*yè* ~ =*yò* ‘if’. Therefore the form has a literal sense similar to ‘otherwise’ or ‘else’.

### 19.3 Pragmatic adverbs or equivalents

#### 19.3.1 ‘Again’ (*ígèlè*, *kígùl-ì-à:*, *kígùl-ì-à:-nì*)

An invariant adverb ‘again’ is *ígèlè*. Ordinarily it has scope over a VP. An alternative is to use a subordinated anterior form of *kígùl-è:-* ‘return, go/come back’ in a loose chain with the following verb. The forms are, as expected, *kígùl-ì-à:* in past-time contexts (567a-b) and *kígùl-ì-à:-nì* in future contexts (567c), and motion is not necessarily involved.

- (567) a. *yèl-â: bòl-â:*  
           come-PastAnt go-PastAnt  
           *[ígèlè / kígùl-ì-à: yèl-è-Ø]*  
           [again / return-MP-PastAnt come  
           ‘He/She came, went, and came back.’
- b. *wàl-â: dè:l-í-à:*  
           do.farming-PastAnt rest-MP-PastAnt  
           *[ígèlè / kígùl-ì-à: wàl-ì-ý]*  
           [again / return-MP-PastAnt do.farming-Pfv-1SgSbj]  
           ‘I worked (in the field), then I rested, then I worked again.’
- c. *yògó wàl-ì-ñ=jè dè:l-í-Ø-ñ=jè*  
           tomorrow do.farming-Pfv-1SgSbj;if rest-MP-Pfv-1SgSbj;if  
           *ígèlè / kígùl-ì-à:-nì wàlà-dè-ý*  
           [again / return-MP-Ant-Nonpast do.farming-Ipfv-1SgSbj  
           ‘Tomorrow I will work (in the field), then rest, then work again.’

‘Again’ overlaps pragmatically with ‘more, additionally’, see the following section.

#### 19.3.2 ‘More, additionally’ (*yàgá*)

The adjective ‘other’ is *yàgá* (§4.6.1.1). It can be used adverbially, without a modified noun, in the sense ‘(some) more, additionally’ (568a). In many contexts, like (568b), it competes with the ‘again’ expressions in §19.3.1 just above. (568c) involves a negative predicate ('not again', 'not any more').

- (568) a. [nǎ: p-è-ý=yò] [yàgá pé:-nǎw]  
          [meal eat-Pfv-2SgSbj;if] [other eat-Prohib]  
          ‘If you-Sg have (already) eaten, don’t eat any more!’
- b. yàgá yèl-i-yà  
       other come-Pfv-3PlSbj  
       ‘They came (back) again.’
- c. yàgá [àndá ém-mò rà:] túrù-lò bòlé-èlè-ñ  
       other [village 1Pl-Poss Loc] any go-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
       ‘I will never again go to my village.’

## 19.4 ‘Only’ particles

### 19.4.1 ‘Only’ (*kă:ŋ*, *-mɔŋ*)

There is a strong preference for phrasing *kă:ŋ* ‘only’ with an NP or other non-verb constituent, rather than putting it clause-finally with clausal or VP scope. *kă:ŋ* is NP-final, not post-NP, as shown by the fact that a postposition like dative *lè* may follow it (569a-b).

- (569) a. [[n̄d̄e<sup>L</sup> túrù / l̄ey kă:ŋ] lè] gì-ŷ-ñ  
       [[person<sup>L</sup> one / two only] Dat] say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I said (that) to only one person/two people.’
- b. [[n̄d̄e l̄ey / t̄a:ndú kă:ŋ] lè] gì-ŷ-ñ  
       [[person two / three only] Dat] say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I said (that) to only two/three people.’

For the adjectival numeral *túrù* ‘1’, there is an optional lexically specific form *túrù-mɔŋ* ‘only one’ that can be used instead of *túrù kă:ŋ*, compare English *sole*, *single*, *unique*, and (adjectival) *only* as in *my only complaint*. (569a) is therefore equivalent to (570). *-mɔŋ* is not allowed after other numerals, e.g. #*l̄ey-mɔŋ* ‘only two’ is rejected.

- (570) [[n̄d̄e<sup>L</sup> túrù-mɔŋ] lè] gì-ŷ-ñ  
       [[person<sup>L</sup> one-only] Dat] say-Pfv-1SgSbj  
       ‘I said (that) to only one person.’

Rarely, *kă:ŋ* occurs clause-finally, but only if the clause is converted into a relative clause, with definite clitic. I was able to elicit (571a) with some difficulty, using the context ‘he/she didn’t do anything (bad), he/she merely came’. Logically, an ‘it is’ particle *=ŋ* is needed in (571a). It is segmentally inaudible after the velar nasal of *kă:ŋ*, but its negative counterpart *=lă:* is audible in (571b).

- (571) a. [wó / bé yèl-é=gò] kă:ŋ(=ñ)  
       [3SgSbj / 3PlSbj come-Pfv.Ppl=Def] only(=it.is)  
       ‘He-or-she / they only came.’  
       (lit. “It’s only that he-or-she/they came.”)

- b. [wó / bé                    yèl-é=gò]                    kǎ:y=lǎ:  
       [3SgSbj / 3PlSbj      come-Pfv.Ppl=Def]      only=it.is.not  
       ‘He-or-she / they didn’t only come.’  
       (lit. “It’s not only that he-or-she/they came.”)

## 19.5 Final emphatics

### 19.5.1 Confirmation of interlocutor’s statement

*nánà=ị* ‘it’s the truth’ is an all-purpose expression of agreement to something the interlocutor has just said. The regionally widespread *já:tì* ‘indeed, exactly’ is still in use among older speakers.

### 19.5.2 Clause-final *góy* ‘sure’ (emphatic agreement)

This particle (cf. *kòy* in several neighboring languages) is a clause-final particle and is not used in isolation. The content of the clause is repeated from an interlocutor’s statement or polar interrogative. A says ‘It’s hot!’ or asks ‘Is it hot?’, and B responds ‘It’s hot *góy*’, i.e. ‘It sure is (hot)!’. An example is in text 05 at 00:45.

### 19.5.3 Clause-final *dé* (admonitive)

This particle is used in warnings and in statements that tend to contradict what the interlocutor has stated or is thought to believe. A has just returned from the fields on a very hot day. B says that he (B) is going to the fields, and A warns: ‘It’s hot today *dé*’, i.e. ‘Watch out, it’s hot today!’ English clause-final discourse particle (not temporal adverb) *now* as in ‘Don’t go near the crocodiles now!’ is similar pragmatically.

## 19.6 Backchannel and uptake checks

*pà:mú kàn-ú-w* ‘did you-Sg understand?’ is a common request by a narrator for a confirmation that the listener has understood (uptake check). The phrase contains *pà:mú* ‘understanding’, the 2Sg perfective form of *kán(à)* ‘do’ as auxiliary, and a final L-tone for polar interrogation.

*᳚h᳚n*, *᳚h᳚:* or other variant is the usual ‘uh-huh’ backchannel form volunteered by listeners at intonational break points in the speaker’s narration. Alternatives or add-ons to this are *kâ:wò=ị* ‘that’s it!’ and *dágì-y-Ø* ‘it was good’.

To indicate real surprise at something the interlocutor has said, one can say *hă:n* ‘huh?’.

## 19.7 Greetings

Some simple time-of-day greetings and the responses to them are in (572). Some include dialectal or archaic forms.

- (572) a. *yá:-mò* ‘good morning’ (said before noon)  
*jâŋ yà-ý-̀w* (reply)
- b. *[jâŋ nà] wò-̀w* ‘good day’ (noon to 2:30 PM)  
*yòw kò-ló* (reply)
- c. *dènè-mò* ‘good evening’ (said from 3 PM to evening)  
*jâŋ dènó-̀w* (reply)

*yá:-mò* (572a) and *dènè-mò* (572c) are based respectively on the verbs *yâ*: ‘spend the night’ and *dènè* ‘spend the (mid-)day’. The *-mò* suffix is opaque. It resembles the hortative form but could also be parsed as the causative suffix (imperative form). The choice of verbs shows that the greetings are retrospective as in English ‘how did you sleep?’ or ‘how was your day?’, rather than prospective as in English ‘good morning/night!’. The responses contain the abstract noun *jâŋ* ‘being well’ (§8.4.4.2) and a 2Sg perfective form of the same verb as in the first turn, *yâ*: or *dènè*, i.e. ‘did you spend the night/day well?’ The polar interrogative adds a final L-tone that pushes the normal final H-tone of the perfective leftward one mora in *dènó-̀w* and *yà-ý-̀w*.

In (572b), *jâŋ nà* seems to function as a PP with the same noun *jâŋ*, made predicative by *wò-̀w* ‘you-Sg are’. *nà* does not occur elsewhere as a postposition, but *nì ~ nè* is a locative postposition. The reply means ‘there is nothing wrong (no trouble)’, with noun *yòw* ‘trouble’ and *kò-ló* ‘it (nonhuman) is absent’. Except in this greeting, *kò-ló* ‘it is absent’ has been replaced in the focal dialect by generalization of *wò-ló* ‘he/she/it is absent’ to nonhumans.

Another type of greeting is of the type ‘you and X’, where X is the addressee’s current activity or situation. The variants of (573a) involve three synonyms for ‘work (n)’. Any variant can be addresseed to someone working in the fields or at a workplace. Elsewhere *wálù* is the usual noun for ‘work’. (573b) ‘you and fatigue’ is addressed to someone who is doing physical work. Elsewhere ‘fatigue’ is *dě*: or *dèyyé*, while *dó:lò* occurs in *dó:lò=ì* ‘it isn’t worth (the trouble)’ and in *dó:lò* <sup>L</sup>*pò*: ‘thanks!’ (573c) could be said to someone who is carrying water from the well and garden area to the village proper.

- (573) a. *[ú lè] [wál / bírè / ká:dù lè]*  
[2Sg and] [work(n)] and]  
‘You-Sg and work!’
- b. *[ú lè] [dó:lò / dèyyé lè]*  
[2Sg and] [fatigue] and]  
‘You-Sg and fatigue (working hard!)’
- c. *[ú lè] [gólò lè]*  
[2Sg and] [garden] and]  
‘You-Sg and the garden!’

Greetings to departing and returning travelers, respectively, are in (574a-b). (574b) is an example of an imprecation with ‘God’ as addressee; *àmbá* ‘God’ is L-toned in such imprecations.

- (574) a. *bòl-ù [jây lè] yéle*  
          go-Chain [being.well Inst] come.Imprt  
          ‘Go-2Sg and come (back) without trouble!.’
- b. *àmbà ù=jáy jây jé:lé*  
          God 2Sg=Acc being.well bring.Imprt  
          ‘May God bring you-Sg (back) without trouble!’

Condolences expressed by a visitor (A) at the house of a deceased person and the ‘thanks!’ response (B) are in (575). Elsewhere both *gà:nâ:* and *dó:lò* <sup>1</sup>*pò:* are used as ‘thanks!’ for a service.

- (575) A: *àmbà úlù-ñ=gò ké:*  
          God child-Pl=Def raise.Imprt  
          ‘May God raise the children!’
- B: *gà:nâ:*  
          thanks

A standard greeting to other villagers on one of the two major Muslim holy days is (576). ‘Next year’ is a subordinated clause with *bâ:* ‘season transition’ as pseudo-subject and *gò:* ‘exit’ as verb, see (160d) in §8.4.6.1.

- (576) A: *àmbà [bâ: gù-á:-nì] témbè-mò*  
          God [season exit-Ant-Nonpast] find-Caus.Imprt  
          ‘May God have (you) encounter (=live until) next year?’
- B: *gà:nâ: ,*  
          thanks,  
*àmbà [émmè yà-wôy] gù-á:-nì témbè-mò*  
          God [1Pl all] exit-Ant-Nonpast find-Caus.Imprt  
          ‘Thanks. May God have all of us come out (=survive) next year!’

Formal Islamic greetings, in Arabic and used chiefly among men, are the AB sequence in (577).

- (577) A: *àssàlà:mú àlè:kûj*  
          peace to.you-Pl  
          ‘Peace to you-Pl!’
- B: *[màlé:kùm àssàlà:mú] [wà-rá:màdù llâ:y] wà-bàràká:dù*  
          [to.you-Pl peace] [and-praise of.God] and-his.blessing  
          ‘To you peace, and praise and blessing of God!’

## Texts

Texts in Donno So, recorded June 2014 in Wendegele village near Bandiagara  
speakers: A: Étienne, B: Daouda

### Text 01: Hare outsmarts the other animals

recording DS 02, taped in Wendegele June 2014

00:02 A: *mí ségèlòw*  
A: 1Sg story  
B: *wédòw*  
B: OK

[formulaic tale-opening phrase and audience response, authorizing the tale to proceed;  
an alternative sequence is A: *mí pá:niyà*, B: *némiyà*; the rest of the text is A speaking]

00:04 A: *[[ògùlù-nàmá wôy] <sup>L</sup>kù:-nò] künd-ù-ñj,*  
A: [[outback-meat all] <sup>L</sup>head-Sg] put-Pfv-1SgSbj,  
*ògùlù-nàmá-mbè bé mòl-í-à:, [bè <sup>L</sup>fû:] nê:,*  
outback-meat-Pl 3PlSbj assemble-MP-PastAnt, [3Pl<sup>L</sup> all] now,  
*mòl-í-à:-ní gè:, súgùlù ñjèmè-mbè-mò,*  
assemble-MP-Ant-Nonpast (filler), ear Logo-Pl-Poss,  
*kébèl-à: kébèl-à: dìg-â: mò:-nd-á:-ní gè:,*  
pick.a.little-PastAnt pick.a.little-PastAnt join-PastAnt gather-Tr-Ant-Nonpast (filler),  
*ñjèmè-mbè bøy dàngà-mó wà,*  
Logo-Pl tomtom cover.with.hide-Hort say,

A: ‘I have put the head of (=my story is about) all the wild animals. The animals assembled. Now they all assembled and picked off pieces of their own ears and bound them together. They said, “let’s put an animal-hide covering on the tomtom.”’

[‘I put head of X’ is a standard phrase for defining the subject of a tale; pronoun tone-dropped before *fû*: ‘all’ §6.6.1; mediopassive *mòl-é:-* ‘assemble, come together’ and transitive *mò:-ndó* ‘assemble (them), bring together’, §9.4.4; past anterior *-a:* and nonpast anterior *-a:-ní*, §15.2.2.1; *gè:* is used as a filler to keep a loose clause chain going, §15.2.4; quoted hortative §17.1.4.2]

00:15 *nê: yéng-ì-à: [bé yà-wôy],*  
now discuss-MP-PastAnt [3Pl all],  
*[súgùlò=ð kébèl-ð=ð jã:] [bé bòl-â:],*  
[ear=Def pick.a.little-Pfv.Ppl=Def Purp] [3PlSbj go-PastAnt],  
*nê: [jòmò gày],*  
now [hare Topic],  
*[ñjèm-mò súgùlò=ð] kébèl-è-mè-èlè-ñj gì-ỳ-∅,*  
[Logo-Poss ear=Def pick.a.little-Caus-IpfvNeg-LogoSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj],

‘Now after they all discussed that, they went and picked off (lots of) pieces of their ears. Now hare said “I won’t let anyone pick off a piece of my ear.”’

[*kébèl-ò=ò* perfective participle in headless relative, §14.2.4; *jă:* here adds a distributive element §17.5.2; topic *gày* §19.1.1; *ñjém-mò súgùlò=ò* shows apposition-like inversion of the usual pronominal possessor pattern, equivalent to *súgùlù ñjém-mò(=ò)*; logophoric subject *-ŋ* §18.3.2]

- 00:20 *háyà*      *yěŋ*      *bì-ỳ-**Ø=yō:*,  
       well        thus        become-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
*[jòmò wà]*      *wó-mò*      *kébèlè-mè-èlè-íj*      *gi-ỳ-**Ø=yō:*,  
 [hare QuotSbj] 3Sg-Poss pick.a.little-Caus-IpfvNeg-LogoSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj;if  
*háyà*      *bøy=gò,*  
 well        tomtom=Def,  
*[nē: gày]*      *wò=íj*      *bà:-mà-dù*      *kò-ló*      *gè:*,  
 [now Topic] 3Sg=Acc beat-Caus-VblN be.Nonh-StatNeg say,  
 ‘(The animals said:) ‘Well, if that’s how it is, if hare has said that he won’t let anyone pick off a piece of his (ear), well now there won’t be any letting him beat tomtoms,’ (they) said.’  
 [*yěŋ* ‘thus’, §8.4.1; clitic *=yō:* ‘if’ with {L}-toned third person perfective, §16.1; *gè:* appears to be an unconjugated form of *gě:* ‘say’ functioning like quotative particle *wà*, §17.1.2]

- 00:25 *njém-bè*      *wàdó=ò-mbè*      *bày*      *tèmbè-témbè,*  
 Logo-Pl      remainder=Def-Pl      day      find-find,  
*nē:*      *[sègìr-i-ỳ]-[ségir-i-ỳ]*  
 now        [encounter-MP-Chain]-[encounter-MP-Chain]  
*bøy=gò*      *[bà-ỳ]-[bá-ỳ]*      *[kó*      *lè]*      *ñjém-bè,*  
 tomtom=Def      [beat-Chain]-[beat-Chain]      [NearDist      too]      Logo-Pl,  
*[gò:]*      *ñjémé-mbè-mò]*      *gò:-mò*      *wà,*  
 [dance      Logo-Pl-Poss]      dance-Hort      Quot,  
 ‘The other ones (animals) said, let’s keep finding some days (occasionally), let’s all get together (recreation), beat tomtoms too, and dance our dances.’  
 [*wàdú* ‘rest, remainder’; three verb iterations §15.1.11 leading up to a single overt hortative; *tèmbè* ‘find (by accident), encounter’, here implies occasional rather than high-frequency activity]

- 00:31 *nē:*      *yěŋ*      *gì-â:*      *bě:*,  
 now        thus        say-PastAnt      3Pl,  
*bøy=gò*      *tílù*      *bé*      *kàn-ò=ò,*  
 tomtom=Def      finish(n)      3PlSbj      do-Pfv.Ppl=Def,  
*nē:*      *[bày<sup>L</sup>*      *túrù]*      *bøy=gò*  
 now        [day<sup>L</sup>      one]      tomtom=Def  
*[yàlú nè]*      *bé*      *bòd-â:*      *bé*      *sé:=gò,*  
 [place      Loc] 3PlSbj deposit-PastAnt 3PlSbj have.Ppl=Def,  
*[yàlù<sup>L</sup> dì:-[nò-ý]]*      *ñgó-nì*      *bèrú:*      *[yàlú nè],*  
 [place<sup>L</sup> water-[drink-Nom]]      here      nearby      [place      Loc]  
*[gúlù-gùlù nè]*      *kúnd-à:*,  
 [dense.forest      Loc]      put-PastAnt,

‘Now having said that, when they had finished the tomtom, one day when they had deposited the tomtom in a (certain) place, they had put a drinking area nearby in a dense forest.’

[*bé*: prepausal rising-toned form of *bé* ‘they’, §4.3.3; *kàn-ò=ò* headless perfective relative; *-a*: *sè* present perfect ‘have (done)’ §10.2.1.4; *bèrù*: adverbial ‘neaby’ §8.4.5]

00:40	<i>[n̩é: gáy] [d̩í: bè-mò] nò-ì-yà=yó: ,</i>
	[now Topic] [water 3Pl-Poss] drink-Pfv-3PlSbj=if,
	<i>n̩é: bøy=gò bà-ì-yà=yó: ,</i>
	now tomtom=Def beat-Pfv-3PlSbj=if,
	<i>[gò: bè-mò] gò:-nú bì-ì-yà=yó: ,</i>
	[dance(n) 3Pl-Poss] dance(v)-Dur remain-Pfv-3PlSbj=if,
	<i>[n̩é: kó-njí: [pàñà<sup>L</sup> - dénnè bè-mò] bò-j-i, ,</i>
	[now DiscDef-like [food <sup>L</sup> - <sup>HL</sup> look.for 3Pl-Poss] go-Ipfv-3PlSbj,

‘Now, they were drinking their water, now they were beating tomtoms, they kept dancing their dances, then in that way they went to look for their food.’

[*=yó*: pseudo-conditional §15.2.2.5; durative *-nú* plus *bé*: ‘keep VP-ing’ §17.5.4; *pàñà<sup>L</sup> - dénnè* {L}+{HL} complement of motion verb §17.4.4]

00:45	<i>[n̩é: jòmò [yàlù<sup>L</sup> bòd-â: bé wò: ]</i>
	[now hare [place <sup>L</sup> deposit-PastAnt 3PlSbj be.Ppl]
	<i>[tày wó kànò=ò, ,</i>
	[country 3SgSbj do.Ppl=Def,
	<i>wó yèl-ò=ò ñjémé bøy=gò, ,</i>
	3SgSbj come-Pfv.Ppl=Def Logo tomtom=Def,
	<i>wó [wó lè wó yèg-ò=ò, ,</i>
	3Sg [3Sg too] 3SgSbj pick.up-Pfv.Ppl=Def,
	<i>n̩é: bøy=gò tòg-à: , ,</i>
	now tomtom=Def tap-PastAnt,

‘Now when hare did (that), when he came to the place where they had deposited it in the country, he picked it (=tomtom) up himself. Now he beat (=played) it.’

[nonsubject relative with preverbal subject pronoun *bé* and {L}-toned *yàlù<sup>L</sup>* as head, §14.7.2; *yèl-ò=ò* and *yèg-ò=ò*, headless relatives]

00:51	<i>èndè-jòmò</i>
	hare
	<i>[kèbèlè-mé gi-ì-Ø]</i>
	[pick.a.little-Caus.Imprt say-Pfv-3SgSbj]
	<i>kèbèlè-mà-lí:-Ø dán-dàn</i>
	pick.a.little-Caus-PfvNeg-3SgSbj.Q bang-bang
	<i>[kèbèlè-mé gi-ì-Ø]</i>
	[pick.a.little-Caus.Imprt say-Pfv-3SgSbj]
	<i>kèbèlè-mà-lí:-Ø</i>
	pick.a.little-Caus-PfvNeg-3SgSbj.Q
	<i>yěŋ gë: wó wò-ì-</i>
	thus say 3SgSbj be-Ipfv,

‘Hare (sang and beat the tomtom): “he said to let (them) pick off a piece, didn’t he let (them) pick it off? Bang-bang!, he said to let (them) pick off a piece, didn’t he let (them) pick it off?” He (=hare) was singing (and beating the tomtom) like that.’

[the song is slightly stylized and has only 3Sg pronominals; **-lì:-Ø** is the polar interrogative form of 3Sg perfective negative **-lì-Ø**, §13.2.1; **dán-dàŋ** is onomoatopoeic for the sound of the tomtom; **gě:** ‘say’ or ‘make (a sound)’ is not confined to speech, §11.1.2.3]

00:56    *ògùlù-nàḿ=ð-mbè*         *bé*         *èg-ð=ð,*  
           outback-meat=Def-Pl         3PlSbj         hear-Pfv.Ppl=Def,  
*jòb-â:*         *yèl-â:*         *wò=ý*         *kòr-ì-yà,*  
           run-PastAnt         come-PastAnt         3Sg=Acc         surround-Pfv-3PlSbj,  
           ‘When the wild animals had heard (that), they came running and surrounded him.’

00:59    *háyà*         *wò=ý*         *kór-â:* ,  
           well         3Sg=Acc         surround-PastAnt,  
*[súgùlù    wò-mò]*         *kébèlè-mè-èlè-ý*         *gì-ỳ-Ø*  
           [ear         3Sg-Poss]         pick.a.little-Caus-IpfvNeg-LogoSbj         say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
           ‘Well, they surrounded him, (but) he (=hare) said he wouldn’t let (them) pick off a piece of his ear.’

[Regular 3Sg possessor **wò-mò** as alternative to logophoric possessor **ñjém-mò**]

01:01    *ígèlè*         *bòy<sup>L</sup>*         *ñjém-bè*         *yègèr-â:*         *d-ð=ð,*  
           again         tomtom<sup>L</sup>         Logo-Pl         fix-PastAnt         arrive-Pfv.Ppl=Def,  
*kú=gò*         *yèl-â:*         *[wò=ý              dàg-ú              nè]*  
           NearDist=Def         come-PastAnt         [3Sg=Acc         be.fine-Chain         Loc]  
*[bǎ:-w*         *gèl-è-Ø*         *gìnè*         *bìl-è-Ø=yô: ,*  
           [beat-Ipfv         hold-Pfv-3Sg         like]         become-Pfv-3SgSbj=if,  
*háyà*         *ñjém-bè*         *kô:*         *yàbà-lù-ý*         *wà*  
           well         Logo-Pl         NearDist         accept-PfvNeg-LogoSbj         Quot  
*[yěŋ*         *jà:]*         *wò=ý*         *ág-ì-yà,*  
           [thus         Purp]         3Sg=Acc         catch-Pfv-3PlSbj,  
           ‘(Animals:) “The tomtom that we have just fixed (=manufactured), you (=hare) have come and have since been merrily beating that (tomtom). Well, we didn’t (=don’t) accept that,” (they) said. Because of that they arrested him.’

[object relative clause based on recent perfect construction with ‘arrive’ §10.2.1.5; **kú=gò** ‘that (same) one’ §4.4.2; chaining form **dàg-ú** plus locative **nè** in ‘since’ clause §15.2.1.7; stative **gèlè** ‘be holding’ as progressive auxiliary §10.2.2.5; **bìlē** ‘become, turn into’ is hard to translate idiomatically here but emphasizes hare’s dramatic change in behavior; purposive **já:** §8.3.1.]

01:07    *háyà*         *tàrá:=j*         *tùb-ì-yà,*         *tàrá:*         *wà*         *nê: ,*  
           well         hyena=Acc         ask-Pfv-3PlSbj,         hyena         QuotSbj         now,  
*íyè*         *jòmò=ý*         *ág-à:*         *bèlì-m-ì-Ø=lô: ,*  
           today         hare=Acc         catch-PastAnt         get-Pass-Pfv-3SgSbj=right?,  
*yògó-njì:*         *kán-j-ì*         *mà→,*  
           how?         do-Ipfv-3PlSbj         Q,  
           ‘Well, they asked hyena (their chief): “hey hyena, now hare has been caught and is in custody, right? So (now) what will we do?”’

[**bèlē** ‘get’ in passive form ‘be gotten, be in custody’ §9.3; clitic **=lò** rhetorical tag question (*n’est-ce pas?*), glossed ‘=right?’, §13.2.1.3]

- 01:11 [wó      wà]      súgùlù      kébèlè-mè-èlè-ý  
       [3Sg      QuotSbj]    ear      pick.a.little-Caus-IpfvNeg-LogoSbj  
       gì-ŷ-Ø      gìnè      bìl-è-Ø=yô:,  
       say-Pfv-3SgSbj    like      become-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
       háyà      wò=ý      ñjèm-bè      yð:r-á:-ní,  
       well      3Sg=Acc      Logo-Pl      roast-Ant-Nonpast,  
       ñjèm-bè      má:bà      kán-j-i,  
       Logo-Pl      meat.sauce      do-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
       '(Animals to hare:) "Since you-Sg been saying that you won't allow (us) to pick off a piece of your ear; well, we'll roast you and make meat sauce."  
       [*meat sauce (red) can be added on top of the regular green baobab-leaf sauce served on millet cakes*]
- 01:16 háyà      yěj      bé      gì-â:,      jðmó      nánà=ý      wà,  
       well      thus      3PlSbj      say-PastAnt,      hare      truth=it.is      Quot,  
       ñjèmé      [sê:^n]      gă:w]      sè-ý      wà,  
       Logo      [fat(n)      a.lot]      have-LogoSbj      Quot,  
       'Well, they said that. Then hare said, "that's true, (but) I (=my flesh) have plenty of fat."  
       [*fatty meat is preferred to lean meat; gă:w 'a lot' is treated tonosyntactically like a numeral, §6.4.3*]
- 01:20 bămmòw      [[tìnù<sup>L</sup>]      sé:^n-sè:^n]      lè]      ñjèmè=ý      kán-à:  
       by.chance      [[wood<sup>L</sup>]      good-good]      Inst]      Logo=Acc      do-PastAnt  
       yð:r-i-yà=yê:,  
       roast-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
       [sê:^n=gò      sé:nèj      pû→]      [năj      dà:]      yò:-dè-Ø  
       [fat(n)=Def      all      all]      [fire      Loc]      enter-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
       '(Hare:) "if by chance you roast me using good firewood, all the fat will go (=drip down) into the fire."  
       [=yê: variant of =yô: 'if'; sé:nèj 'all' §6.6.1]
- 01:23 ñjèmè=ý      pòñò-sùdëy,  
       Logo-Acc      fonio-greens,  
       [bé      wà]      dènn-â:      jè:l-è-Ø=yô:,  
       [3Pl      QuotSbj]    look.for-PastAnt      bring-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
       [pòñò-sùdëy=gè      nì]      bìg-è-Ø=yô:,  
       [fonio-greens=Def      Loc]      bury-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
       [bé      wà]      năj      kündò,  
       [3Pl      QuotSbj]    fire      put.Imprt,  
       năj      künd-ù-Ø=yô:      [nàmá      ñjèm-mò]  
       fire      put-Pfv-3SgSbj;if      [meat      Logo-Poss]  
       [wó      L'ellù]      bë:-dè-Ø  
       [3SgPoss      L'sweet]      remain-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
       '(Hare:) "you-Pl look for and bring fonio greens, bury me in the fonio greens, and set the fire. When (you) have set the fire, the good taste of my meat will remain."  
       [*two pseudo-imperatives =yô: chained to a terminal imperative kündò, §15.2.2.5; fonio is a cultivated grass crop, the greens being the stems and leaves after threshing;*

*the final vowel of künd-i-Ø ‘he/she put’ does not undergo Back/Rounding Harmony except in cliticized forms like künd-ù-Ø=yô: with ‘if’ clitic]*

01:30	<i>háyà yěŋ bì-ŷ-Ø=yô:, bě: pðyð-sùdëy dènn-â:,</i>
	well thus be-Pfv-3SgSbj;if, 3Pl fonio-greens look.for-PastAnt,
	<i>háyà jómð=ð=j [kú nè] künd-à:,</i>
	well hare=Def=Acc [NearDist Loc] put-PastAnt,
	<i>bě: jãŋ=gð künd-i-yà</i>
	3Pl fire=Def put-Pfv-3PlSbj
	<i>[nè: gày] gid-i-yà gíd-i-yà</i>
	[now Topic] block-Pfv-3PlSbj block-Pfv-3PlSbj

‘Well, that being the situation, they looked for fonio greens. Well, they put hare in that (pile of fonio greens), and they set the fire. Now they were blocking (hare’s escape).’

01:37	<i>[yěŋ wó-w] jómð=ð mè:-mě: këbú bél-â:</i>
	[thus be-Ipfv] hare=Def gently gap get-PastAnt
	<i>lís-i-à: wó gò-è-Ø=gð,</i>
	go.through-MP-PastAnt 3SgSbj exit-Pfv-3Sg.Ppl=Def
	<i>nè: pðyð-sùdëy=gð jãŋ bě künd-à:,</i>
	now fonio-greens=Def fire 3PlSbj put-PastAnt,
	<i>pðyð-sùdëy=gð tégè-w tégè-w sé:nèŋ</i>
	fonio-greens=Def burn-Ipfv burn-Ipfv all
	<i>úndò=j wó kàn-i-Ø=lă: =yò,</i>
	ashes=it.is 3SgSbj do-Pfv=it.is.not;if,

‘After hare found a gap (between two animals) in that situation and quietly escaped through it, now they set fire to the fonio greens. The fonio greens were all blazing (with fire). It (onio greens) had finished becoming nothing but ashes.’

*[wó in the last line refers to ‘onio greens’; the iteration tégè-w tégè-w is reduced from progressive tégè wò ‘be burning’]*

01:44	<i>gànjà-l-â: bě kànà, kú-rà: nàmð=ð tò:-lò,</i>
	dig.up-Ø-PastAnt 3PlSbj do, DiscDef-Loc meat=Def be.in-StatNeg,
	<i>háyà bě: kág-i-Ø kág-à: bòl-i-Ø g-í-ya,</i>
	well 3Pl be.charred-Pfv-3SgSbj be.charred-PastAnt go-Pfv-3SgSbj say-Pfv-3PlSbj
	<i>jómð yé-rà: wó-w nà,</i>
	hare DiscDef-Loc be-Ipfv Loc,
	<i>[njémé ñdâ: yð=ð=j] gí-ŷ-Ø,</i>
	[Logo here Exist=be-LogoSbj] say-Pfv-3SgSbj
	<i>[bě wà] [jãŋ bě kündò mò-nì]</i>
	[3Pl QuotSbj] [fire 3PlSbj put before]
	<i>[njémé gày] lís-i-à: gò-è-íj gí-ŷ-Ø,</i>
	[Logo Topic] go.through-MP-PastAnt exit-Pfv-LogoSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj,

‘They poked around (in the ashes), but the meat wasn’t in there. They said, “well, it (=meat) was charred, it went and got charred.” Being there (nearby), hare said “I am here. Before you-Pl set the fire, as for me, I escaped.”’

*[gànjà-lá ‘try to dig up, poke around for’ is related to gànjá ‘dig up (sth buried)’ but is not exactly reversive; ‘went and got charred’ with disparaging ‘go’, §15.1.10.2; wó-w*

*nà* ‘it being the case that’, §17.5.4; *yó=ò* ‘be present’ from *yó wò*, §11.2.2.2; ‘before’ clause with *mò-nì* after {L}-toned verb, §15.2.3]

01:52    *ě:, kó-njì:*    [wó    wà]    *jòb-â:*    *gò-è*    *mâ→*  
 hey, DiscDef-like [3Sg QuotSbj] run-PastAnt exit-Pfv or  
 [/bé                        gi-â:],  
 [3PlSbj say-PastAnt],  
 [/é    wà]    *nê:    njí*    *dàbìlè=ý*    *mâ→*    [/bé                        gi-â:],  
 [2Pl QuotSbj] now what? trick(n)=it.is or [3PlSbj say-PastAnt],  
 ‘They said (=asked), “hey, is that how you ran away? Hey you-Pl, now what was the trick?” they said.’

[*mâ→* in ‘whether (*X* or not-*X*)’ complements (here expressing wondering out loud how hare had escaped), §17.2.1.2; noun *dàbìlè* can mean ‘magical device/solution’]

01:56    *háyà*    [nјémé    gày]    *bòl-ù-ý*    *wà,*  
 well [Logo Topic] go-Pfv-Logo Quot,  
 [nàmá    *nјém-mò],    bél-â:    *bé*    *tèmè-dè*    *kánè-èlè,*  
 [meat Logo-Poss], get-PastAnt 3PlSbj eat.meat-Ipfv do-IpfvNeg,  
*bøy-gèlè*    [nјém-bè    *yà-wôy*    *kéw],*  
 tomtom [Logo-Pl all all],  
 [/bá:-náw    gày]    [/bé    wà]    *bèlé-èlè*  
 [beat-Prohib Topic] [3Pl QuotSbj] get-IpfvNeg  
 ‘(Hare:) “Well, as for me, I went (out). You-Pl won’t be getting and eating my flesh. The tomtom is for us all. You-Pl can’t tell me not to beat (the tomtom).”’*

[*kán(à)* ‘do’ plus imperfective complement §15.2.1.7; logophoric ‘all of us’ is understood to be reduced from a possessive predicate ‘belongs to all of us’ §11.5.2; quoted prohibitive §17.1.4.1; *bèlé* as main-clause verb ‘can VP’ §15.1.4.1]

02:03    *yěj*    *já:,    jòmós*    *yěj*    *bì-ý-Ø=yò:,*  
 thus Purp, hare thus remain-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
 [[ògùlù-nàmá    *wôy]*    *lè]*    *nê:*    *wó*    *sàw,*  
 [[outback-meat all] than] now 3SgSbj clever,  
 [íyè    námmà]    *sàw-sàw=gò*    [/bé                        gi-â:],  
 [today until.now] clever-clever=Def [3PlSbj say-PastAnt]  
*wò=ý*    *dò:-n-ní,*  
 3Sg=Acc arrive-PfvNeg-3PlSbj,  
 ‘Therefore hare being like that, he is the cleverest of all the animals. To this day, they say (=recognize) that he is the clever(est) one. They have not matched him.’

[comparative clause with predicate adjective, §12.1.1.1; superlative, §12.1.4]

02:08    *kó-njì:*    *bé*    *wó:=gò*  
 DiscDef-like 3PlSbj be.Ppl=Def  
*wò=ý*    *háyà*    *bòl-â:*    *yèl-è-ý,*  
 3Sg=it.is well go-PastAnt come-Pfv-1SgSbj,  
 à:mbâ:  
 (the.end)  
 ‘They being like that, that’s it. Well, I have gone and come (back). The end.’  
 [*I have gone and come back* is a standard tale-ending phrase; à:mbâ: ‘the end’ in tales is not otherwise in use]

## Text 02: Report on trip to Burkina.

recording DS 09, taped in Wendegele June 2014

- 00:02 A: *áywà kàndɔw, nê: kàndɔw [é ságàtarà-mbè],*  
          A: well now, now now [2Pl young.man-Pl],  
*[é fû→] ye yàlà-ŋ*  
          [2Pl all] Exist walk.Stat-2PlSbj,  
          A: 'Well nowadays, nowadays you young men, all of you travel.'  
          [stative form of *yàl-é*: - 'take a walk; travel']
- 00:06 A: *[íyè gày] [yàlù<sup>L</sup> é yàlò=ð] nì,*  
          A: [today Topic] [place<sup>L</sup> 2PlSbj walk.Stat.Ppl=Def] Loc,  
*[kàló=ð nì] [kàndò ngó] gènd-ì-ý=yò: bùrgìnè-mbè→*  
          [boundary=Def Loc] [now Prox] look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj=if Burkina-Pl  
*kó-rà: [bòbó ye gè:-d-i] [wàgàdùgú ye gè:-d-i]*  
          NearDist-Loc [B Exist say-Ipfv-3PlSbj] [Ou Exist say-Ipfv-3PlSbj]  
*yàlú dêŋ-dèŋ kó-rà:,*  
          place apart-apart NearDist-at,  
*ye yàlà-ŋ, nê: kó-rà: gándò=ð yògó-njì: wò-*  
          Exist walk.Stat-2PlSbj, now NearDist-Loc country=Def how? be-3SgSbj  
          A: 'Nowadays, in the places where you-Pl travel, now (concerning) everything that you-Sg have looked at (=experienced), Burkina (cities), they call it Bobo (=Bobo Dioulasso), they call it Ouagadougou, different places, (where) you-Pl travel, now what is the country like there?'  
*[B had recently spent time in the neighboring country Burkina Faso; *ye gè:-d-i*, existential *ye* with imperfective, end of §11.2.2.1; *dêŋ-dèŋ* iterated EA, §8.4.7.3]*
- 00:13 B: *kó-rà: [kàndɔw gày],*  
          B: NearDist-Loc [now Topic]  
*[[gàndà<sup>L</sup> [ém-mò ñdâ:]] lè] [yé-rà: lè],*  
          [[country [1Pl-Poss here]] and] [DiscDef-Loc and],  
*gándò=ð dêŋ*  
          country=Def apart  
          A: *mím*  
          A: Uh-huh  
          B: 'There now, our country here (=Mali) and there (=Burkina), the country is different.'  
          A: 'Uh-huh?'  
*[tones in *gàndà*<sup>L</sup> *ém-mò=ð ñdâ:*] suggest that *gándà* here is a compound initial or modified noun, compare *gándà èm-mò(=ð)* 'our country', discussed in §6.2.1.2]*
- 00:17 B: *gándò=ð dêŋ-dèŋ*  
          B: country=Def apart-apart  
          A: *kàb-ú yó tò-*  
          separate(v)-Nom Exist be.in-3SgSbj  
          B: *kàb-ú yó tò-, èdú→ èdú→ yó tò-,*  
          separate(v)-Nom Exist be.in-3SgSbj, greatly greatly Exist be.in-3SgSbj,  
          B: 'Each country is different.'

- A: ‘There is a difference (between them).’  
 B: ‘There is a difference (between them). There is a big (difference) (between them).’  
*[dēŋ-dēŋ §8.4.7.3; èdú → §8.4.2]*

00:20 B: *é̄m-m̄ò=ð ñdâ:, n̄é:, ñdé-mb̄è b̄é: t̄umð=j ìb̄ð-w̄ w̄ð-yyà,*  
 B: 1Pl-Poss=Def here, now, person-Pl 3Pl Recip=Acc like-Ipfv be-3PlSbj  
*mais yé-râ: b̄é: t̄umð=j ìb̄ð-ñ-ní,*  
 but DiscDef-Loc 3Pl Recip=Acc like-StatNeg-3PlSbj,  
*yé-râ: b̄ðl-ù-y=yð, ñdð=ð w̄ðy,*  
 DiscDef-Loc go-Pfv-2SgSbj;if, person=Def all,  
*digé dè-è-∅:: dè:-lí-∅::,*  
 night night.fall-Pfv-3SgSbj night.fall-PfvNeg-3SgSbj,  
*[gìnè-kólð râ:] túyy-è:-d-ì,*  
 [house-interior Loc] remain.inside-MP-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
 B: ‘In our (country) here now, people love each other (=are friendly). But there (in Burkina) they don’t love each other. If you-Sg go there, (you’ll find that) everyone stays inside the house whether night or day.’

*[reciprocal object t̄umð=j §18.4.2; ibé ‘like, love’ §11.2.5.3; conditional ‘if you go’ §16.1; willy-nilly conditional antecedent (lit. “[night has fallen] (or) [has not fallen]” with dying-quail terminal effect, symbol ∴, §16.3; túyy-è: mediopassive verb related to stative tò: ‘be in’ §11.2.3.1]*

00:32 B: *[ñdé w̄ðy] [kû: w̄ò-m̄ò=j],*  
 B: [person all] [head 3Sg-Poss=it.is]  
*[pàràL túrù-lð] gò:-ní-nì,*  
 [outside<sup>L</sup> any] exit-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj,  
*hállù yèlù-yà:-yéélè [ú wà] pð: gè:-ní-nì,*  
 even come-Link-come [2Sg QuotSbj] hello say-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj  
*hállù [kúbð ù-m̄ò=ð] [námmà-ñ gìnè]*  
 even [foot 2Sg-Poss=Def] [step.on.Stat-LogoSbj like]  
*[gà-j-ì=yé lè] [yëŋ gà-j-ì],*  
 [pass.by-Ipfv-3PlSbj;if too] [thus pass.by-Ipfv-3PlSbj],

B: ‘Everyone is on his own. They don’t go anywhere outside (on the street). Even if they come by they don’t say “hey you, hello!” They are almost stepping on your foot (as you sit in a chair). If they pass by, they pass by like that.’

*[‘head’ = ‘self’, §18.1.4; túrù-lð §6.6.3; yèlù-yà:-yéélè §16.2.1.2; quotative-subject phrase here represents an original vocative; hállù ‘even’ §19.1.4; námmà-ñ gìnè, ‘as though’ clause with logophoric subject -ñ §15.3.2.2, here after a stative verb, cf. augmented stative nă:mmà ‘be stepping on (sth)’]*

00:40 B: *[sð:L túrù-lð] gè:-ní-nì,*  
 B: [word(s)<sup>L</sup> any] say-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj  
*[yëŋ bò-j-ì] [yëŋ yè-j-ì]*  
 [thus go-Ipfv-3PlSbj] [thus come-Ipfv-3PlSbj]  
*n̄é: [màlî: ñdâ:] kàndðw,*  
 now [Mali here] now,  
*[hállù jñ: gò-è-∅=yé lè]*  
 [even meal exit-Pfv-3SgSbj;if too]

[ú      wà→]      [yèlè      [nă:      nâ:]]      gè-gé:-d-ì  
 [2Sg    QuotSbj]    [come.Chain    [meal    eat.Imprt]] Augm-say-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
 B: ‘They don’t say a word. They go and they come like that. Now here in Mali nowadays, even if the meal has come out (=has been served), they (=Maliens) will say “hey you, come and eat!”’  
*[‘come eat a meal!’, direct chain with {L}-toned ‘come’ and imperative, §15.1.10.3, likewise ‘come drink tea!’ below]*

00:45 B: [tē:      jà:nd-ì-yà=yé      lè]  
 B: [tea      put.up.on-Pfv-3Pl=if      too]  
 [yèlè      [tē:      nò:]]      gè-gé:-d-ì,  
 [come.Chain    [tea      drink.Imprt]]    Augm-say-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
 [kìdè<sup>L</sup>      bér      kàn-jò=ò      wôy]  
 [thing<sup>L</sup>      3Pl      do-Ipfv.Rel=Def      all]  
 nê:      [bùrgîn      dà:]      kô:      wò-ló-Ø  
 now      [Burkina      Loc]      NearDist      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 B: ‘If they (Maliens) have put tea up on (the burner) too, they’ll say “come and drink some tea!” Everything that they (=Maliens) do, that doesn’t exist in Burkina now.’  
*[direct quotation of imperative]*

00:50 B: ù=í      iğù      wó-yyà=yè      lè,  
 B: 2Sg=Acc    know      be-3PlSbj=if      too,  
 [fìnne-íj      ginè]      kô-njí:      yěŋ      bè:-d-ì,  
 [not.know-LogoSbj    like]    DiscDeft-like    thus    remain-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
 B: ‘Even if they know you-Sg, they remain (=behave) as though they don’t know (you).’  
*[‘as though’ manner adverbial clause, §15.3.2.2]*

00:53 A: nê:      [kô:      lè]      gènd-ù-ý=yò,  
 A: now    [NearDist    too]    look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj=if  
 kô:      nê:      [injú      lè]      kìdè<sup>L</sup>-dígè=ò,  
 NearDist    now    [what?    Inst]    thing<sup>L</sup>-follow=it.is  
 A: ‘Now, regarding that, what is their activity (behavior)?’

00:57 B: bon,      [kô:      gày]      [mí      gày]      nê:  
 B: well,    [NearDist    Topic]    [1Sg    Topic]    now  
 yòw-yòw=ò      gi-ý      bè:-rì-íj,  
 bad-bad=it.is    say-Chain    get-FutNeg-1SgSbj,  
 yòw-yòw=lá:-Ø      gi-ý      bél-é-lé-ò=yè,  
 bad-bad=it.is.not-3SgSbj    say-Chain    get-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj=it.is.not=if,  
 B: ‘Well, as for that, as for me now, I can’t say that it is (out of) nastiness, but I can’t say that it is not (out of) nastiness either.’  
*[bè:-rì-íj future negative of bél-é ‘get’ or ‘can VP’]*

01:02 B: kô:      nê:      [jígù      bë-mò],      [mò      nì      gày],  
 B: NearDist    now    [character    3Pl-Poss],    [1SgPoss    Loc    Topic]  
 [jígù<sup>L</sup>      së:=nă:]      ginè]      wò-Ø,  
 [[character<sup>L</sup>      good=it.is.not]    like]      be-3SgSbj,

A: è→      *donc*      [[gándà      bè-mò]      <sup>L</sup>jigì]=jì  
A: yes      so      [[country      3Pl-Poss]      <sup>L</sup>character]=it.is  
B: [[gándà      bè-mò]      <sup>L</sup>jigì]=jì  
B: [[country      3Pl-Poss]      <sup>L</sup>character]=it.is  
[ndé      wôy]      [gándà      wôy]      [jigù      wò-mò]      sè-Ø  
[person      all]      [country      all]      [character      3Sg-Poss]      have-3SgSbj  
[gándà      wôy]      [jigù      wò-mò]      sè-Ø  
[country      all]      [character      3Sg-Poss]      have-3SgSbj

B: ‘So their (Burkina people’s) character, in my opinion, it’s a somewhat bad character.’

A: ‘So, it’s the character of their country.’

B: ‘It’s the character of their country. Everybody, each country has its character. Each country has its character.’

01:12 A: [kó-njì:      lè]      kídé      kán-i-Ø  
A: [DiscDef-like      too]      thing      do-Pfv-3SgSbj  
B: [kó-njì:      lè]      kídé      kán-i-Ø  
B: [DiscDef-like      too]      thing      do-Pfv-3SgSbj  
A: nê:      bě:      kó-rà:      nê:      yû:      wàlà-d-ì      mà→,  
A: now      3Pl      NearDist-Loc      now      millet      do.farming-Ipfv-3PlSbj      Q,  
mà→      bě: ,      bě:      [wálù      bè-mò],  
or      3Pl,      3Pl      [work(n)      3Pl-Poss],  
[wálù<sup>L</sup>      yògó]      gá:rà      kán-j-ì  
[work<sup>L</sup>      which?]      mostly      do-Ipfv-3PlSbj

A: ‘It (=country) does things like that.’

B: ‘It does things like that.’

A: ‘Now, do they do farming (“cultivate millet”) there? Or their work, which (type of) work do they mostly do?’

[“cultivate millet” can mean ‘do farming’ more generally, cf. yû:-[wálù-nè] ‘farmer’, lit. “millet-cultivator,” so A’s question is ambiguous, as B’s reply (below) implies; double mà→ in two-part question, §13.2.1.2]

00:19 B: yé-rà:      lè→,      yû:      wà:lá-d-ì      mais→,  
B: DiscDef-Loc      too,      millet      Augm.do.farming-Ipfv-3PlSbj      but,  
yû:      té<sup>n</sup>→      já:      [bé-mò      rà:]      gá:w      wò-ló-Ø  
millet      exactly      take      [3Pl-Poss      Loc]      a.lot      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
sàmèmmè-níbè→,      [árà-mbè      lè]      gá:léy-gá:léy      wà:lá-d-ì,  
maize-Pl      [rice-Pl      and]      a.little-a.little      Augm.do.farming-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
lá: = yé      [wálù      bè-mò]      bà:rà: ,  
it.is.not;if      [work(n)      3Pl-Poss]      additionally,  
[[sàdìnè<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>kúndò]      bè-mò]      gá:w      wò-ló-Ø,  
[[garden<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>put]      3Pl-Poss]      a.lot      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,  
[[sàdìnè<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>kúndò]      bè-mò]      gá:w      wò-ló-Ø,  
[[garden<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>put]      3Pl-Poss]      a.lot      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,

B: ‘They do farming there but there isn’t much millet as such in their (country). They grow a little maize and rice. (As for) their work other than that, there isn’t a lot of their (vegetable) gardening. There isn’t a lot of their (vegetable) gardening.’

[*wà:lá-dì* augmented imperfective answering a polar interrogative, §13.1.2.3; *té<sup>n</sup>*→ ‘exactly’, §8.4.3.1; plural *-mbè* in conjunction or list, §7.1.3; *sàdìnè<sup>L</sup>-<sup>HL</sup>kúndò* “garden-putting,” i.e. growing vegetables and fruits]

- 01:34 A: *nê:* *jàbá* —  
A: now onion —  
B: *kô: lă: yè*  
B: NearDist=it.is.not;if  
*bě: [ém-mđ=đ ndâ:] [[wálù bé kàn-jđ=đ] gìnè]*  
3Pl [1Pl-Poss=Def here] [[work(n) 3PlSbj do-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] like]  
*[[émmè kàn-jđ=đ] gìnè]*  
[[1PlSbj do-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] like]  
*yé-rà: kánà-n-nì,*  
DiscDef-Loc do-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj,  
A: ‘Now onions—.’  
B: ‘Other than that, (as for) the way they (in Burkina) and (we) here in our country do work, they don’t do (that) there.’
- 01:38 B: *yé-rà: jàbà-mbè [[nâdâ: émmè kündò-dđ=đ] gìnè],*  
B: DiscDef-Loc onion-Pl [[here 1PlSbj put-Ipfv.Ppl=Def] like]  
*jàbà-mbè sàdínè [kàndđ ngó] dây→ künd-i-yâ=yô:,*  
onion-Pl garden [now Prox] a.little put-Pfv-3Pl=if,  
*[émmè ndâ:], mèlđñ-mbè→, kòñkòñ,*  
[1Pl here], melon-Pl, cucumber,  
*kòr-i:-mbè kòr-i-yâ=yê: yàlù<sup>L</sup> kán-jđ=đ gìnè,*  
fenced.garden-child-Pl fence.in-Pfv-3PlSbj;if place<sup>L</sup> do-Ipfv.Ppl=Ded like,  
*kú-rà: kó-njì: dây-dây-dây kó-njì: kă:n-j-i,*  
DiscDef-Loc DiscDef-like a.little NearDist-like Augm.do-Ipfv-3Pl  
B: ‘They do a little gardening and onion (growing) there, like the way we here do it. Here (in Mali), like where they have built small fenced-off gardens (for) onions, melons, and cucumbers, there (Burkina) they do like that a little bit.’
- 01:48 A: *kô: lá:yè nê: sá<sup>n</sup>→,*  
A: NearDist otherwise now correctly,  
*[[émmè nâdâ: gìnè] sémbè künd-à:-nì...]*  
[[1Pl here] like] power put-Ant-Nonpast...  
B: *wò-lɔ-*  
B: be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
A: ... *kánà wò-lɔ-*  
A: ... do.Imprt be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
A: ‘Really putting emphasis (on it) like we do here ...’  
B: ‘It doesn’t happen.’  
A: ‘... doesn’t happen,’  
*[sémbè kündò ‘put force (into sth)’, i.e. effort, emphasis; kánà could be a quoted imperative or possibly an {HL} nominal without the usual compound initial]*

01:53 B: *yà:-j̄ = gò-mbè*      *kú-rà:*      *wàlù<sup>L</sup>*      *kán-jò = ð,*  
           B: woman-Pl=Def-Pl      DiscDef-Loc      work(n)<sup>L</sup>      do-Ipfv.Ppl=Def,  
           [*émmè*      *ndâ:]*      *kð:*      *kánà-ñ-nì,*      *m̄ →*  
           [1Pl      here]      NearDist      do-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj,      uh-huh  
           B: ‘The work that women do there (Burkina), they (=Malian women) don’t do.’  
           [*i.e. Burkina women work harder*]

01:57 A: *[kàndò*      *ŋgó]*      *bé*      *sáyy-i-ỳ*      *nè,*      *bon,*  
           A: [now      Prox]      3PlSbj      speak-MP-Pfv-3Sg.Ppl      Loc,      well,  
           [*bé-mð*      *rà:],*      *yà:-j̄ = gò-mbè*      *hállù,*  
           [3Pl-Poss      Loc],      woman-Pl=Def-Pl      even,  
           [*lègèsõm-bè*      *lè]*      *[ògùlú*      *dà:]*      *bòl-á:-nì*  
           [bicycle-Pl      Inst]      [outback      Loc]      go-Ant-Nonpast  
           *tinú*      *mènj-á:-nì,*  
           wood      collect.firewood-Ant-Nonpast,  
           [*î:*      *bè-mð]*      *bòmb-í-à:-nì,*  
           [child      3Pl-Poss]      carry.on.back-MP-Ant-Nonpast,  
           [*kð:*      *wôy]*      *kán-ù*      *bě:-j-ì,*  
           [NearDist      all]      do-Chain      Augm.get-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
           [*ém-mð = ð*      *ndâ:]* —  
           [1Pl-Poss=Ded      here] —

A: ‘Now what they have said (is), well, in their (country), even the women go into the bush, gather firewood, and carry their child on their back, they can do all that. In our (country) —’

[*nè* after chaining form, here in a headless perfective object relative, compare the same construction in ‘since’ clauses, §15.2.1.7]

02:06 B: *ndâ:*      [*émmè*      *ndâ:]*  
           B: here      [1Pl      here]  
           [*yà:-nà<sup>L</sup>*      *gìdèy*      *ág-ù*      *bě:-jè]*      *wò-ló-∅,*  
           [woman-Sg<sup>L</sup>      handlebar      catch-Chain      Augm.get-Ipfv.Ppl]      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
           B: ‘Here in our country (Mali), there is no woman who can hold onto the handlebars.’

[imperfective particle §14.2.2.1]

02:08 A: *[nâj-gù*      *wò-∅]*      *nè:*      *[nâj-gù*      *wò-∅],*  
           A: [difficult-Link      be-3SgSbj]      now      [difficult-Link      be-3SgSbj],  
           *nè:*      [*gánda*      *èm-mð]* —  
           now      [country      1Pl-Poss] —  
           B: *[[bé-mð = ð*      *rà:]*      *lè]*      *[[ém-mð = ð*      *rà:]*      *lè]*  
           B: [[3Pl-Poss=Def      Loc]      and]      [[1Pl-Poss=Def      Loc]      and]  
           *[[bé-mð = ð*      *rà:]*      *nâj = lâ:*  
           [[3Pl-Poss=Def      Loc]      difficult=it.is.not.Q  
           A: ‘It’s difficult, now, it’s difficult. Now in our country —’  
           B: ‘(Between) their (country) and ours, is not theirs (more) difficult?’  
           [*gù* in adjectival predicate, (337b) in §11.4; final L-tone in *nâj = lâ:* is that of the polar interrogative, cf. declarative *nâj = lâ:-∅* ‘it is not difficult’]

- 02:11 A: *wǎy-wày* [[[*gándà*    *èm-mò=ð*]    <sup>L</sup>*jìgù]=lǎ: -Ø]*  
          A: yes-yes    [[[country    1Pl-Poss=Def]    <sup>L</sup>character]=it.is.not-3SgSbj]  
<sup>L</sup>*sà:bù*            *lè*  
<sup>L</sup>reason]            Inst  
     B: *hállè*,    *ê: ,*    [*àndá*    *wôy*]    [*jígù*    *wò-mò*]    *sè-*Ø,  
     B: even,    yes,    [village    all]    [character    3Sg-Poss]    have-3SgSbj,  
<sup>ê: ,</sup>            *kɔ:*            *wò=j*  
     yes,            NearDist    3Sg=it.is  
     A: ‘Yes, yes. Because it is not the (same) character as our country.’  
     B: ‘Even, yes, every village has its (own) character. Yes, that is it.’
- 02:16 A: *háyà*    [*gándà*    *bè-mò=ð*]    *nâŋ-gù*    *wð-*Ø  
          A: well        [country    3Pl-Poss=Def]    difficult            be-3SgSbj  
          A: ‘Well, their country is difficult.’

### Text 03: Where's the blacksmith when you need him?

recording DS 10, taped in Wendegele June 2014

- 00:01 B: *nê: írì-mbè* [[ándà èm-mò] *nì],*  
     B: now blacksmith-Pl [[village 1Pl-Poss] Loc],  
*[injí lè] jā: wò-yyà*  
 [what? Dat] Purp be-3PlSbj  
     A: [[ánda èm-mò] *nì] gènd-ì-ý=yò*  
     A: [[village 1Pl-Poss] Loc] look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if  
*[émmè gày] émmè gò-é-Ø* *lè,*  
 [1Pl Topic] 1Pl exit-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl Loc,  
*nê: írì-nè, wó [írì-nè túrù]=j,*  
 now blacksmith-Sg, 3Sg [blacksmith one]=it.is,  
*àmbà sá: kànà,*  
 God protection do.Imprt,  
 B: 'Now, in our village, why are blacksmiths there?'  
 A: Concerning our village, as for us, (where) we have emerged (=were born), a blacksmith now, he is (just) one blacksmith, may God save (him)'  
*[gènd-ì-ý=yò < gènd-ì-w=yò 'if you looked at', i.e. 'concerning, with respect to', also pronounced gènd-ù-w=yò etc.; gò-é-Ø perfective pseudo-participle]*
- 00:10 A: *wó lè* [wà:gùrù<sup>L</sup>] *gàmbañj* bë-bé:-dè-Ø,  
     A: [3Sg too] [time<sup>L</sup> certain] Augm-stay-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
*[wà:gùrù<sup>L</sup> gàmbañj] ndâ: biyé-èlè-Ø,*  
 [time<sup>L</sup> certain] here stay-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj,  
 A: 'He (=blacksmith) sometimes does stay (in our village), some (other) times he doesn't stay here.'  
*[gàmbañj §6.3.2; augmented (reduplicated) imperfective for verb focus (allowed in the positive only)]*
- 00:13 A: *kó=já:=yè,* émmè írì-nè sè-lè-j,  
     A: DiscDef=it.is.not;if, 1Pl blacksmith-Sg have-StatNeg-1PlSbj,  
     B: *írì-nè sè-lè-j,*  
     B: blacksmith have-StatNeg-1PlSbj,  
*kú=gò nê: [yògó-njì: lè] kán-à:-nì gè:,*  
 DiscDef-Def now [how? Loc] be.done-PastAnt-Nonpast (filler),  
*[émmè írì-nè sè-lé] kán-ì,*  
 [1Pl blacksmith-Sg have-StatNeg] make-Pfv,  
 A: 'Other than that, we have no blacksmith.'  
 B: 'We have no blacksmith. So now, what has happened to make us not have a blacksmith?'  
*[“if it isn't that” = ‘otherwise, anyhow’; gè: filler §15.2.4; periphrastic causative §15.2.1.5]*
- 00:20 A: *áywà, írì-nè-mbè→,*  
     A: well, blacksmith-Sg-Pl,  
     bé àbádà bɔ: dìmb-ì-yà má→ inné-ŋ,  
     3Pl always kin follow-Pfv-3PlSbj or not.know-1SgSbj,

*donc*    *ndâ:*    *nê:*    *yěŋ*    *bé*    *gă:w*    *sámù*    *wò-n-ní,*  
 so       here       now       thus      3Pl       many       many      be-StatNeg-3PlSbj,  
*[sá:bì*    *lè]*    *nê:*    *[wó*    *túrù]*  
 [reason      Inst]       now       [3Sg       alone]  
*[yěl-á:-nì]*    *gă:w*    *bì-ý*    *bél-é-lè-Ø,*  
 [come-Ant-Nonpast]       much       stay-Chain      get-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj,

A: ‘Well, blacksmiths, they have always followed (=stayed with) kin, or I don’t know (what). So here now, they aren’t all that numerous. For (that) reason now, he alone cannot come alone (to the village) and stay very long.’

*[L-toned form of túrù ‘one’ in the sense ‘alone, by oneself’]*

00:28 A: *[[kó-njì:                  wô:]*    *nì*    *bì-y-Ø=yô:*  
 A: [[DiscDef-like      be.Ppl]    Loc]    stay-Pfv-3SgSbj=if  
*[jùgù                  túrù]*    *mà→*    *kàn-i-Ø=yô:,*  
 [week       one]       or       do-Pfv-3SgSbj=if,  
*ígèlè                  yé-rà:                  bòl-i-Ø=yô:,*  
 again       DiscDef-Loc       go-Pfv-3SgSbj=if,  
*émmè                  kàndōw                  kój                  mà→,*  
 1Pl       now       daba       or,  
*ínè                  mmà→                  hájè                  bél-è-ý=jò,*  
 pick-hoe    or       need(n)    get-Pfv-1PlSbj=if,  
*kàndōw                  bânjâ:rá-mbè→,                  púròlù-mbè→                  sîngánùmà-mbè→*  
 now       Bandiagara-Pl,       Poroli(village)-Pl       Sinkarama(village)-Pl  
*kó-rà:                  bòl-á:-nì,                  ínè                  pégè-rè-dì-mbè,*  
 NearDist-Loc       go-Ant-Nonpast,       pick-hoe       attach.blade-Tr-Ipfv.Ppl-Pl,  
 A: ‘If he remains that way, or if he does (=spends) a week, if he then goes (away) there, if we now need a daba (=hoe) or a pick-hoe (for planting), now (places like) Bandiagara, Poroli, (or) Sinkarama, (we) will go there and have the pick-hoe (blade) fitted (to a wooden handle).’

*[plural mbè, often with “intonational” prolongation, is used in extended lists; wooden shafts are punctured at the business end so a prong behind the ax or hoe blade is inserted, or else the blade has a sleeve that fits over the end of the shaft]*

00:39 A: *kój                  yé                  nàmđ-ñ=w=yò*  
 A: daba       Exist       want-2SgSbj=if  
*kó-rà:                  bòl-á:-nì,                  ébè-dì-mbè,*  
 NearDist-Loc       go-Ant-Nonpast,       buy-Ipfv.Ppl-Pl,  
*émmè                  nànâj                  kó-njì:                  kánà-w                  sê-ñ,*  
 1Pl       all       DiscDef-like       do-Prog       have-1PlSbj,  
 A: ‘If you-Sg need a daba, you’ll go over there and buy (one). We all are doing (=acting) like that.’

00:44 B: *nê:                  kú-rà:                  bòlò-bólò                  émmè                  ébè-dò=ð,*  
 B: now       DiscDef-Loc       go-go       1Pl       buy-Ipfv.Ppl-Def,  
*ndâ:                  írì-nè-mbè                  biyé-èlè-Ø                  wó                  d-ð=ð,*  
 here       blacksmith-Sg-Pl       stay-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj      3SgSbj       arrive-Pfv.Ppl=Def,  
*kídè                  wálù                  kán-jò=ð                  bél-é-lè                  wò-Ø                  mà→,*  
 thing       work(n)       do-Ipfv.Ppl=Def       get-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj      be-3SgSbj Q,

*ou.bien*      *ándò=ò*      *ibè-lé*      *wò-Ø*,  
 or.else      village=Def      want-StatNeg      be-3SgSbj,

B: ‘Now we keep going there (other villages) and buying (tools). (As for) blacksmiths here, (given) that recently he (=a blacksmith) hasn’t stayed (very long), is it that he doesn’t get the thing that he works on (=the jobs he does)? Or is it that he doesn’t like the village?’

[nonsubject relative clause based on recent perfect construction with ‘arrive’  
 §10.2.1.5]

- 00:50 A: *áywà*,      *[ŋgò-ná]:*      *gày]*      *gènd-i-ý=yò*,  
 A: well      [that.fellow      Topic]      look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if,  
*[[wálù      gǎ:w      kán-à:]*      *nàmà-lá-Ø]*      *gínè*      *wò-Ø*,
- [[work(n)      much      do-PastAnt]      want-StatNeg-3SgSbj]      like      be-3SgSbj,  
*[mó=ñ      gà]*      *wò-Ø*,  
 [1SgPoss=Loc      Top]      be-3SgSbj,
- A: ‘Well, regarding that fellow, it appears that he doesn’t want to work a lot, in my (view).’
- [*mó=ñ* ‘in mine’, slightly contracted from *mò*: ‘mine’ and locative postposition *ñì* ]

- 00:54 A: *kó=lă:=yò*,  
 A: DiscDef=it.is.not;if,  
*[[ándà      èm-mò]*      *nì]*      *té<sup>n</sup>→*      *[írì-nè*      *túrù]*  
 [[village      1Pl-Poss]      Loc]      exactly      [blacksmith-Sg      one]  
*[wálù      èm-mò]*      *kán-ì*      *bèlé-èlè-Ø*,
- [work(n)      1Pl-Poss]      do-Chain      get-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj,  
*kó-njì:*      *kídé*      *kán-ì-Ø*,  
 DiscDef-like      thing      be.done-Pfv-3SgSbj
- A: ‘Otherwise, in our village specifically, one blacksmith cannot do (all) our work. That’s how the thing happens.’

- 01:01 A: *íyè*      *wá:gùrù*      *gènd-i-ý=yò*  
 A: today      time      look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if  
*ínè*      *pégèrè-dù*      *mmà→*,      *gùló-mbè*      *tólè-dù*      *mmà→*,  
 pickhoe      attach.blade-Ipfv.Ppl      or,      ax-Pl      sharpen-Ipfv.Ppl      or,  
*írì-nè*      *há:jè*      *[émmè*      *lè]*      *yò=ð-Ø*,
- blacksmith-Sg      need(n)      [1Pl      with]      Exist=be.3SgSbj,  
*[kó      yà-wôy]*      *írì-nè=ŋ*      *gènd-á:-nì*  
 [DiscDef      all]      blacksmith-Sg=Acc      look.at-Ant-Nonpast  
*[gírú      lè]*      *wá-álè-ŋ*  
 [eye(s)      with]      see-IpfvNeg-1PlSbj
- A: ‘Concerning nowadays, to attach pick-hoe blades (to wooden shafts) or to sharpen axes, a blacksmith is a necessity for us too. (For) all that, if you look at (=concerning) a blacksmith, we won’t see (=find) him.’

- 01:08 A: *fó:*      *bànjà:rá*,      *mà→*      *púròlù*,      *sìngánùmà*,  
 A: all.the.way      Bandiagara      or      Poroli,      Sinkarama,  
*kú-rà:*      *bòló-bòlò*,  
 DiscDef-Loc      go-go,

[írì-nè]      *ŋgód-nì:*      *yó=ð-Ø*]      *bìl-è-Ø=yô:*,  
 [blacksmith-Sg like.that Exist=be.3SgSbj] turn-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
 [táròlò]      *èm-mòj*      *gàmbìl-é:-dè-Ø,*  
 [bother(n) 1Pl-Poss] reduce-MP-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
 [jgód-nì:]      *bérú:*      [wálù      *èm-mòj*      *kánà,*  
 like.that nearby [work(n) 1Pl-Poss] be.done.Imprt,  
 [wálù      *èm-mòj*      *yô:*      *bé:-jè-Ø,*  
 [work(n) 1Pl-Poss] enter Augm.get-Ipfv-3SgSbj,

A: ‘All the way to Bandiagara, or Poroli, (or) Sinkarama, (we are) going there over and over again. If it turns (out) that a blacksmith is there in that situation, our (annoying) problem is lessened. May our work be done nearby (=in our village) in that way. Our work can come in (=be done here).’

- 01:20 A: *wó*      *ndâ:*      *bé:-dí*      *yàbé-èlè-Ø*  
 A: 3Sg here stay-VblN accept-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 B: *nê:*      *írì-nè*      *wó,      njé-mbè*      *dùbò-dè-Ø*  
 B: now blacksmith-Sg 3Sg, what?-P1 forge-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 A: ‘He won’t agree to stay here (in the village).’  
 B: ‘Now, the blacksmith, what (things) does he forge?’  
 [< *bé:-dú* ‘staying’ (verbal noun)]

- 01:24 A: *wó*      *gènd-i-ý=yò,*      *kóy-bè*      *dùbó-dè-Ø,*  
 A: 3Sg look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if, daba-Pl forge-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
*[inè*      *tòy-tóy]*      *kó=ð,*      *gùló,*      *gèbélèy,*  
 [pick.hoe sow-sow] DiscDef=Def, ax short.pick.hoe,  
*nê:*      [wálù      *wò-mòj],*      *gàmbăñ,*      *kó-nì:*      *kán-jè-Ø,*  
 now [work(n) 3Sg-Poss], sometimes, over.there do-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
 A: ‘Regarding him, he forges dabas (=hoes). There are (also) sowing pick-hoes, axes, short pick-hoes. Now he sometimes does his work over there (still inside the village).’

- 01:34 B: *nê:*      [wálù      *yàgà*]<sup>L</sup>      *wó*      *kán-jè-Ø-mbè*  
 B: now [work(n) other]<sup>L</sup> 3SgSbj do-Ipfv-3SgSbj.Ppl-Pl  
*já:*      *gà:=lâ:-Ø,*  
 take much=it.is.not.Q,  
 A: *[ú*      *gày]*      [*kàndòw*      *ŋgód*]      *gènd-i-ý=yò*  
 A: [2Sg Top] [now Prox] look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if  
*ínè-mbè→*      *kóy-bè→*      *gèbélèy-bè→*      *dùbò-dú-mbè→,*  
 pick.hoe-Pl daba-Pl short.pickhoe-Pl forge(v)-Ipfv-Pl ,  
*pégùrù*      *òbú*      *gi-wó=yò,*      *pégèrè-dì-mbè→,*  
 attach.blade give.me.Imprt say-Pfv-2SgSbj;if, attach.blade-Ipfv.Ppl-Pl,  
*kú=gò*      [wálù      *wò-mòj]*      *kó-nì:*      *bòl-á:*      *wò-Ø,*  
 DiscDef=Def [work(n) 3Sg-Poss] there go-PastAnt be-3SgSbj,  
 B: ‘Now, there aren’t many other jobs that he has in mind (=is willing) to do?’  
 A: ‘As for you-Sg, right now, concerning pick-hoes, dabas (hoes), and short pick-hoes to be forged, if you tell him to attach the blade (to a wooden shaft) and give (it to you), things that need fitting, that’s his work, he has gone there.’

01:44 B: *nê: wó jànjírù-mbè* → *nàyá-mbè* → *[yû: wàlá-d=ð: mð]*,  
 B: now 3Sg donkey-Pl cow-Pl [millet cultivate-Ipfv.Ppl=Def Poss],  
*sàrí: =gò* *[yû: wàlá-d=ð:]*,  
 plow(n)=Def [millet cultivate-Ipfv.Ppl=Def],  
*wó kú=gò* *dùb-ú bélé-èlè-Ø* *mà* →  
 3Sg DiscDef=Def forge-Chain get-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj Q  
 B: ‘Now he, (for) donkeys and cows (=oxen), the thing of when (one) cultivates millet, the plow, can he forge that?’

01:50 A: *áywà, wó dùb-ú bě:jè-Ø* *[yàgá lè]*,  
 A: well, 3Sg forge(v) Augm.get-Ipfv-3SgSbj [other also]  
*[ém-mð rà:]* *gènd-ì-y=yò* *[gándà èm-mð=ð]*,  
 [1Pl-Poss Loc] look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if [land 1Pl-Poss=Def]  
*bon, hállù tý däy-däy kán-i-Ø,*  
 well, even earth little-little be.done-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
*nê: dî: bâlú jă:-d-ì,*  
 now water gather-Chain take-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
*[sá:bì lè] pògòlòj kánà-kánà,*  
 [reason Inst] dike.ridge make-make,  
 A: ‘Well, he can forge (plows) too. Regarding our land, a little soil happens (to be there), (rain)water just collects it (and washes it away). That’s why (we) keep making dike ridges (in the fields).  
*[adverbial däy-däy < däy ‘small’; dî: ‘water’ treated as plural]*

01:57 A: *[kàndžw íyè] kó-njì: [sàrí: lè]*  
 A: [now today] DiscDef-like [plow(n) Inst]  
*yàlù<sup>L</sup> yû: wàlà-dú,*  
 place<sup>L</sup> millet cultivate-VblN,  
*[ògùl=ð: nì] nê: yàlú émmè yëŋ*  
 [the.bush=Def Loc] now place 1Pl thus  
*yègèr-â: sè-lè-ñj*  
 repair-PastAnt have-StatNeg-1PlSbj  
 A: ‘These days, in that way, a place to cultivate millet with a plow, out in the bush now, we have not (been able to) repair places (=fields with dikes) like that.’  
*[a plow would damage the earthen dike-ridges that are shaped to hold rainwater in the fields]*

02:03 A: *tý yð=ð [yàgá lè]*,  
 A: earth Exist=Def [other too],  
*[èmmè fú→] gìd-á:-gìd-á: kánà-w sè-ŋ,*  
 [1Pl all] dam.up-Link-dam.up do-Prf have-1PlSbj,  
*kàndžw émmè [nùmò lè] yû: wàlá-w sè-ŋ,*  
 now 1Pl [hand Inst] millet cultivate-Prf have-1PlSbj,  
 A: ‘There is also some land (where) all of us have been damming up (=constructing dikes). Now we have been cultivating millet by hand (=with hand-held hoes).  
*[< gìd-é: (mediopassive in form) ‘dam up’, also ‘trap, box in’]*

- 02:10 B: *[sàrî: lè] wàl-i-yà=yê: nànáj*  
 B: [plow(n) Inst] cultivate-Pfv-3PlSbj;if all  
*dî: bâl-ú jà:-dè-*Ø  
 water gather-Chain take-Ipfv-3SgSbj  
 B: 'If they have cultivated with a plow, then (rain-)water will gather up and take (away) (the earth)?  
*[‘all’ as right-edge marker of conditional antecedent]*
- 02:12 A: *dî: bâl-ú jà:-dè-*Ø,  
 A: water gather-Chain take-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
*[sàrî: lè] wàlâ-dú bâ:*  
 [plow(n) Inst] cultivate-VblN all.the.way.from  
*[tây<sup>L</sup> wáyà] émmè sè-lè-íj*  
 [land<sup>L</sup> wide] 1Pl have-StatNeg-1PlSbj  
 A: '(Rain-)water will gather up and take (away) (the earth). As a result of cultivating with a plow, we don't (=wouldn't) have a wide plot (to farm).'

## Text 04: Squirrel and hare (tale)

recording DS 03, taped in Wendegele June 2014

00:00 A: *à: ígèlè kàndɔw [[ké:<sup>n</sup>] lè] [jɔmɔ́ lè]*  
 A: ah again now [[[squirrel and] [hare and]]]  
<sup>l</sup>*kù:] nè] künd-ù-ŋ,*  
<sup>l</sup>*head] Loc] put-Pfv-1SgSbj,*

A: ‘Ah, another one now. I have put (=will tell a tale) on squirrel and hare.’

00:06 A: *nê: kêt:<sup>n</sup>, wó kîdé yàb-ì-∅=yô:, pêy óbè-èlè-∅,*  
 A: now squirrel, 3Sg thing receive-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
<sup>n</sup>*nê: [jɔmɔ́ lè] [[kîdé wò-mɔ́] ndé yàb-â:, pâd-à: bòl-ì-∅ gày] kân-tâ-lí-∅,*  
 now [hare too] [thing 3Sg-Poss] person receive-PastAnt,  
 leave-PastAnt go Topic] be.done-ExpPrf-PfvNeg-3SgSbj,

A: ‘Now squirrel, if he has taken possession of something, he doesn’t give it (to anyone) at all. Now hare too, it has never happened that a person (=anyone else) kept anything of his (=hare’s) and he (=hare) went away and left him alone.’

[experiential perfect negative in sense ‘has never VPed’]

00:16 A: *háyà [bé llè wòy] kó-njì: nê: óbè-èlè-n lè, yàb-â: bèl-è-∅=yô: pâd-èlè-n lè, [bé llè wòy] ségùr-ì-y,*  
 A: well [3Pl two all] DiscDef-like  
 now give-IpfvNeg.Ppl-Sg and,  
 receive-PastAnt get-Pfv-3SgSbj;if leave-Ipfv.Ppl-Sg and,  
 [3Pl two all] go.out.to.meet-MP.Pfv-3SgSbj,

A: ‘Well, the two of them (are) like that. Now the one who doesn’t give, and the one who doesn’t leave alone someone who has kept (something of his), the two of them went out to meet each other.’

00:22 A: *háyà yěŋ bì-y-∅=yô: [ké:<sup>n</sup>] gày] yòrɔ́=ð [jɔmɔ́ mɔ́] ni] yàb-ì-∅*  
 A: well thus stay-Pfv-3SgSbj;if [squirrel Topic]  
<sup>y</sup>*credit(n)=Def [[hare Poss] Loc] receive-Pfv-3SgSbj*

A: ‘Well, when things were like that, as for squirrel, he took a loan from hare.’

00:26 A: *jɔmɔ́ [kîdé wò-mɔ́] yàb-á:-nì gè:, [kígùlù-m-à: yàb-à-lí-∅] wò-nì] pâd-èlè-∅,*  
 A: hare, [thing 3Sg-Poss] receive-Ant-Nonpast (filler),  
<sup>[k</sup>*ígùlù-m-à: yàb-à-lí-∅] wò-nì] [return-Caus-PastAnt receive-PfvNeg-3SgSbj] be-Ipfv]  
 leave-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj,*

A: ‘Hare would not leave (squirrel) alone after receiving (something of hare’s), without him (=hare) getting it back.’

[3Sg *yàbà-lí-Ø* agrees with ‘hare’, while the following *wò-nì* is invariant; 1Sg version would be *kígùlù-m-à: yàbà-lí-ý] wò-nì*]

- 00:29 A: *[kê:n] lè] [[nđé mò] nì]*  
 A: [squirrel too] [[person Poss] Loc]  
*yàb-â: bél-è-Ø=yô:, yágá óbè-èlè-Ø,*  
 receive-PastAnt get-Prf-3SgSbj;if, again give-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj,  
*[kñ-njí: lè] kidé kàn-i-Ø,*  
 [DiscDef-like too] thing be.done-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
 A: ‘Squirrel too, if he has gotten (something) from someone, he doesn’t give it back again. (The) thing was done like that too.’

- 00:32 A: *nê: [bày<sup>L</sup>] túrù=gò]*  
 A: now [day<sup>L</sup>] one=Def]  
*[[jòmò mò] rà:] [kidé wò-mò] dímbò-w yèl-è-Ø,*  
 [[hare Poss] Loc] [thing 3Sg-Poss] follow.Stat-Ipfv.Past come-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 A: ‘Now one day, hare came following up on his thing (=what he had loaned).’  
 [cf. stative *yé dimbè* ‘be following, in pursuit’]

- 00:36 A: *háyà kê:n njémé [kidé wò-mò]*  
 A: well, squirrel Logo [thing 3Sg-Poss]  
*ób-â: bél-lí-ý g-ì-y,*  
 give-PastAnt get-PfvNeg-LogoSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
*[òbò-lí-Ø=yè gày] mòré-èlè-Ø g-ì-ý*  
 [give-PfvNeg-3SgSbj;if Topic] be.in.peace-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 A: ‘Well, squirrel said that he (=squirrel) couldn’t give his (=hare’s) thing (back). (Hare) said that as long as he (=squirrel) hadn’t given (it back), he (=squirrel) would have no peace.’

*/logophoric subject of quoted clause/*

- 00:40 A: *yëŋ [kánà-w]-[kánà-w], kán-à: d-ì-yà,*  
 A: thus [do-Ipfv.Past]-[do-Ipfv.Past], do-PastAnt get.tired-Pfv-3PlSbj,  
*[wó=ŋ sògònjì<sup>L</sup> nànnà-dú] wò-lí-Ø*  
 [3Sg=Acc manner<sup>L</sup> expel-VblN] be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 A: ‘They kept on doing like that until they got tired (=for a very long time). There was no way for him (=squirrel) to get rid of him (=hare).’

*/verbal noun in ‘a/no way to VP’, §15.3.2.1/*

- 00:44 A: *wó kàn-i-Ø=lă:=yè,*  
 A: 3Sg be.done-Pfv-3SgSbj=it.is.not;if,  
*háyà íyè [wó wà] [bólò wà],*  
 well, today [3Sg QuotSbj] [go.Imprt Quot],  
*jòmò njémé dégè-dégè dènn-á:-nì,*  
 hare Logo a.little-a.little look.for-Ant-Nonpast,  
*wó-mò wó=ý jă: yé-jè-ý wà,*  
 3Sg-Poss 3Sg=Acc take come-Ipfv-LogoSbj Quot,  
 A: ‘That being the situation, anyway (squirrel) said, “hey you, go away!” Hare said that he (=hare) would try to bring (=recover) his thing a little at a time.’

00:50 A: *kē<sup>n</sup>*    *ịg̚-nji:*    [d̚lú]    *nè]*    *gō:-ŋ*    *tɔl-è-*Ø,  
           squirrel like.this [drainhole Loc] exit(v)-Comp begin-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
*j̚mō*    *yēl-â:*    *wó-mò*    *dúlō*    *ág-i-*Ø,  
           hare come-PastAnt 3Sg-Poss tail catch-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
           A: ‘At that point squirrel began to leave through the drainhole. Hare came and grabbed him by the tail.’  
           [*‘begin’ construction §17.4.3*]

00:55 A: *dúlō*    *ág-à:* ,  
           tail catch-PastAnt,  
*háyà*    [wó    wà]    [íyè]    *gàl-i-*Ø=yē:,  
           well, [3Sg QuotSbj] [today pass-Pfv-3SgSbj=if],  
*yàgá*    *yēlē-èlē-*Ø    *gè*  
           again come-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj say  
[iwó    wà]    *yà:rá*    *g-i-y,*  
           [3Sg QuotSbj] release.Imprt say-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
           A: ‘After he grabbed him by the tail, (squirrel) said “well, you, after today, you will not come back.” (Squirrel) said: “you, let go!” ’

00:59 A: *yà:ré-èlē-ŋ*    *g-i-y,*  
           A: release-IpfvNeg-LogoSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
*j̚imb-â:*    *tán-tàŋ*    *gè-gélè*  
           pull-PastAnt holding.firmly Augm-hold.Stat  
           A: ‘(Hare) said, “I won’t let go!” He pulled hard (on the tail) to hold (squirrel) in place.’

01:01 A: *wó*    [íyè]    *gàl-i-*Ø=yē:  
           A: 3Sg [today pass-Pfv-3SgSbj=if]  
*yàgá*    *yòrù-túb̚*    *yēlē-èlē-*Ø    *gè,*  
           again credit-ask come-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj say,  
           A: ‘(Hare) said, “you, after today, you won’t again come in order to ask about a loan.” ’  
           [*purposive with {L}-{{HL}} overlays*]

01:04 A: [wó    wà]    *yà:rá*    *g-i-ỳ,*  
           A: [3Sg QuotSbj] release.Imprt say-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
*yà:ré-èlē-ŋ*    *g-i-ỳ,*  
           release-IpfvNeg-LogoSbj say-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
           A: ‘(Squirrel) said: “you, let go!” (Hare) said: “I won’t let go!” ’

01:05 A: *kó-njì:*    *pírgèw-pírgèw*    *j̚mō*    *yár-ù*    *wó*    *kànà,*  
           A: DiscDef-like thrashing.around hare release-Nom 3SgSbj do,  
*kē<sup>n</sup>*    *j̚b-â:*    *bòl-i-*Ø,  
           squirrel run-PastAnt go-Pfv-3SgSbj,  
           A: ‘At that point, (squirrel) was thrashing around. Hare let go, and squirrel ran away.’  
           [*wó kànà*, §15.2.2.8]

- 01:07 A: *wó ból-ð=ð, yàgá kó-njì: [[jòŋ́] mð] rà:;*  
 A: 3Sg go-Pfv.Ppl=Def, again DiscDef-like [[hare Poss Loc],  
*yàgá kígl-y-à: [[jòŋ́] mð] rà:;*  
 other go.back-MP-PastAnt [[hare Poss] Loc]  
*yòrù<sup>L</sup>-túbð yàgá yèl-lí-Ø,*  
 credit<sup>L</sup>-ask other come-PfvNeg-3SgSbj,  
 A: ‘When he went away, he didn’t (ever) again come back and ask for a(nother) loan from hare.’
- 01:11 A: *donc gènd-ì-ý=yò, óbè-èlé-ý lè,*  
 A: so look-at-Pfv-2SgSbj;if, give-IpfvNeg.Ppl-Sg and,  
*nê: [pádè-èlé-n lè] [bé llè] ségùr-ì-yà*  
 now [leave-IpfvNeg.Ppl-Sg and] [3Pl two] go.out.to.meet-MP.Pfv-3PlSbj  
*wó kànà námmà,*  
 3Sg do now  
*[námmà lè jòmð wó sàw,*  
 [now Loc] hare 3SgSbj wise,  
 A: ‘So, considering, one who doesn’t give, and one who doesn’t leave alone (anyone who has something of his), when they come together, nowadays, now hare is wise(r).’  
*[another example of wó kànà, cf. 01:05 above in this text, and §15.2.2.8; hare is depicted as a sucker in this story, but A alludes to text 01 in which hare is clever]]*
- 01:17 A: *donc [[[ògùlù-nàmá wòy] kù:] nè]*  
 A: so [[[the.bush-meat all] head] Loc]  
*[wó gày] námmà yà-yáŋà,*  
 [3Sg Topic] now Augm-be.on.top,  
*yòrú yàb-â: bél-è-Ø=yê: yàgá sárè-èlè-Ø,*  
 credit(n) accept-PastAnt get-Pfv-3SgSbj;if again pay-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 A: ‘So now he (=hare) is placed on top of all the wild animals. If he has taken out a loan, he won’t pay it back.’

## Text 05: Fulbe herders

recording DS 11, taped in Wendegele June 2014

- 00:00 B: *ŋgó-ní mí yél-é-* *ø nè*  
     B: here 1SgSbj come-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl since,  
*púlò-ŋ jà-â: gǎ:w wà-w wò-lò-ŷ,*  
     Fulbe-Pl take-PastAnt many see-Ipfv be-StatNeg-1SgSbj,  
*púlò-ŋ=gò nê: [àndá è-mò] ibè-n-ní wò-Ø mà→*  
     Fulbe-Pl=Def now [village 1Pl-Poss] like-PfvNeg-3PlSbj be-3SgSbj Q  
*yògó-njì: kánà wò,*  
     how? be.done be-3SgSbj,  
     B: 'Since I came here, I don't see (notice) that many Fulbe. Is it that they don't like your-Pl village (Wendegele)? Or how is it?'  
  
 00:05 A: *púlò-ŋ=gò [[àndá èm-mò] ní]*  
     A: Fulbe-Pl=Def [[village 1Pl-Poss] Loc]  
*[nánà gày] gènd-i-ý=yò,*  
     [up.to.now Topic] look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj=if,  
*kě:bày púlò-ŋ ndâ: bérú-bérú yé bì-yà*  
     first Fulbe-Pl here near-near Exist be.Past-3PlSbj  
*g-i-yà*  
     say-Pfv-3PlSbj  
     A: 'Regarding the Fulbe in our village at this time, they (=people) say that in the old days Fulbe used to keep coming up (to us) here.'
- 00:11 A: *nê: [íyè mò] yěŋ púlò-ŋ jà-â:*  
     A: now [today Poss] thus Fulbe-Pl take-PastAnt  
*yè-jú yàbá-w wò-n-ní,*  
     come-VblN accept-Ipfv be-StatNeg-3PlSbj,  
     A: 'Now these days, Fulbe therefore mainly refuse to come here.'
- 00:16 A: *púlò-ŋ-bè gènd-i-ý=yò, [bé lè] bɔ: dìmb-i-yà,*  
     A: Fulbe-Pl-Pl look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj=if, [3Pl too] kin follow-MP-Pfv-3PlSbj,  
*bé [yàlù] gǎ:w mòl-í-yà wó-ð] ní*  
     3PlSbj [place<sup>L</sup>] many gather-MP-Pfv-3PlSbj be.Ppl=Def Loc  
*[ú lè] kàndòw [i:] dày-ná:-dày] yí sè-ŷ=yò*  
     [2Sg too] now [child<sup>L</sup> small-X-small] Exist have-2SgSbj=if,  
*ú [gín dà:] b-i-ý=yò*  
     2SgSbj [house Loc] remain-Pfv-2SgSbj=if  
*[wó wà] bélú gíré bà,*  
     [3Sg QuotSbj] animals tend go.Imprt,  
     A: 'Regarding the Fulbe, they too follow (=stay with) kinsmen, in places where many come together. You-Sg too, if you have a very young child now at home, (you'll) tell him to go take the livestock to pasture.'  
     *[dày-ná:-dày §5.1.10.1; bà as general motion imperative at end of a chain, §15.1.10.4]*

00:25 A: *bé nànây [hánnè bé-mò] kó:=j,*  
 A: 3Pl entirely [preference 3Pl-Poss] NearDist=it.is,  
*émmè nê:, [mìnne èm-mò] lè,*  
 1Pl now, [field 1Pl-Poss] than,  
*[bélú-mbè yàlù<sup>L</sup> gíré-dò=j] èdú bérú wò-Ø,*  
 [animal-Pl place<sup>L</sup> graze=Ipfv.Ppl=Def] very near be-3SgSbj,  
 A: ‘That their clear preference. As for us now, where the animals graze is near our fields.’

00:30 A: *[i:<sup>L</sup> däy=gò] bélù<sup>L-HL</sup> gíré lè*  
 A: [child<sup>L</sup> small=Def] animal<sup>L-HL</sup>tend(n) too  
*[[ògùlú èm-mò] rà:] yëg nànàw wò-lò-Ø,*  
 [[the.bush 1Pl-Poss] Loc thus easy be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,  
*kú-gò [[[émmè yàbé-èlè-íj]=gò sá:bù lè]*  
 DiscDef [[[1PlSbj accept-IpfvNeg-1PlSbj]=Def reason] and]  
*[[[púlò-η=gò [[yàlù<sup>L</sup> nùmò] nè]*  
 [[[Fulbe-Pl=Def [[place<sup>L</sup> hot] Loc]  
*ibè-lè-Ø] sá:bù lè]*  
 like-StatNeg-3SgSbj] reason] and]  
*ñdá: bë:-dú gä:w yëg yàbá-w wò-ló-Ø,*  
 here remain-VblN a.lot thus accept-Ipfv be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,  
 A: ‘It isn’t easy for the (Fulbe) child to take animals to pasture in our bush (outback) like that. That’s why we (Dogon) don’t allow (them to tend animals near our fields), (and) why the Fulbe don’t like hot (=hostile) places. They refuse to stay around here for very long.’

00:40 B: *nê: púlò-η [àndà yé-rà:],*  
 B: now Fulbe-Pl [village DiscDef-Loc],  
*[yàlù<sup>L</sup> ém-mò ñgó-rà: kă:y=j] mà→*  
 [place<sup>L</sup> 1Pl-Poss Prox.Loc only=it.is] Q  
*[[pènnè<sup>L</sup> yògò] rà:]mbè*  
 [[side which?]] Loc]-Pl  
*[[yàlù<sup>L</sup> yàgá] rà:]mbè yó=w-yà,*  
 [[place which?]] Loc]-Pl Exist=be-3PlSbj,  
 B: ‘Now Fulbe, in some (Dogon) village of there (=that area), is it just in our places (=zone) around here? In what areas and in what places are they (=Fulbe)?’  
*[ñgó-rà: ‘here’ more spatially diffuse than ñgó-nì, §4.4.3.1]*

00:45 A: *ë: , [yé-rà: gày] ògùlú púlò-η yó=w-yà gøy,*  
 A: yes, [DiscDef-Loc Topic] the.bush Fulbe-Pl Exist=be.3PlSbj Emph,  
*yé-rà: jadù kàn-i-ý=yò,*  
 DiscDef-Loc calculation do-Pfv-2SgSbj;if,  
*[púlò-nò gày] [yàlù nùmò] ibè-lè-Ø,*  
 [Fulbe-Sg Topic] [place hot] like-StatNeg-3SgSbj,  
 A: ‘Yes, there sure are Fulbe there in the bush. If you calculate (=think about it), a Fulbe person doesn’t like a hot (=hostile) place.’

00:50 A: *kàndɔw* *yé-rà:* *bòl-i-yà=yô:*,  
 A: now DiscDef-Loc go-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
*[párɔ=ð rà:]* *nàŋð=ð, nànná* *t-i-yà=yô:,*  
 [outside Loc] cow=Def, drive.away send-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
*[[bè=j ðàg-í-∅]* *nè]*  
 [[3Pl=Acc be.good-Pfv-3SgSbj.Ppl] in]  
*[[gɔrɔ* *bè-mð]* *rà:],*  
 [[animal.place] 3Pl-Poss]] Loc]  
*[wàgùrù<sup>L</sup>* *bè=j ðàg-ú]* *lè*  
 [time<sup>L</sup> 3Pl=Acc be.good-Pfv.Ppl] Temp  
*hállù* *gìnègă:* *já:* *wò-ló-∅*  
 even rainy.season take be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,  
*nà-númð* *já:* *wò-ló-∅,*  
 dry.season take be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,

A: 'Now they will go there, they will drive the cattle out into the wilderness, at their pleasure, in their animals' (reserved) area, whenever it suits them. It doesn't even matter whether it's the rainy season or the dry season.'

00:58 B: *mìnne* *bèrú* *wò-ló-∅=là*  
 B: field near be-StatNeg-3SgSbj=right?  
 A: *mìnne* *bèrú* *wò-ló-∅*  
 A: field near be-StatNeg  
*[[wàgùrù<sup>L</sup>* *bè=j ðàg-ú]* *lè]* *bòl-á:-nì,*  
 [[time<sup>L</sup> 3Pl=Acc be.good-Pfv.Ppl] Temp] go-Ant-Nonpast,  
*[nàŋá* *bè-mð]* *ségér-à:* *yèl-i-yà=yô:,*  
 [cow 3Pl-Poss] go.out.to.meet come-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
*[írù* *bè-mð]* *èm-i-yà=yô:,*  
 [milk 3Pl-Poss] draw.milk-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
*[wálù* *bè-mð]* *kɔ:=ñ*  
 [work(n) 3Pl-Poss] NearDist=it.is

B: 'Fields are not nearby, right?'

A: 'Fields are not nearby. They go at whatever time suits them, they go out to meet (=and bring back) their cows, they draw their milk. That is their work.'

[=là as rhetorical tag question, §13.2.1.3]

01:06 A: *nè:* *[írù* *bè-mð]* *èm-i-yà=yô:,*  
 A: now [milk(n) 3Pl-Poss] draw.milk-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
*[yɔgð-njì: lè]* *kàn-j-ì*  
 [how? Inst] do-Ipfv-3PlSbj

B: 'Now when they have drawn their milk, what do they do?'

01:08 A: *áywà,* *[írù* *bè-mð]* *èm-i-yà=yô:,*  
 A: well, [milk(n) 3Pl-Poss] draw.milk-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
*pùlð-yà:-nð=ð* *ób-i-yà=yô:*  
 Fulbe-woman-Sg=Def give-Pfv-3PlSbj;if  
*[[àndá* *kðlð]* *rà:]* *[yàlù<sup>L</sup>* *dðgð-mbè* *wð:]* *rà:,*  
 [[village interior] Loc] [place<sup>L</sup> Dogon-Pl be.Ppl] Loc  
*bòl-bòl* *dðnð-d-ì*  
 go-go sell-Ipfv-3PlSbj

A: ‘Well, when they have drawn their milk, they give (the milk) to the Fulbe woman.  
They (=women) go around selling (the milk) inside villages, where Dogon are.’

*[bòl-bòl verb iteration with {L}-{HL} tones, §15.1.11]*

- 01:16 A: *[bú:dù lè bél-è-∅, dɔnɔ́-dè-∅, gàmbăŋ,*  
 A: [money too] get-Pfv-3SgSbj, sell-Ipfv-3SgSbj, certain  
*yû: [mànî: Lkòlò], òb-i-∅=yô:,*  
 millet [plastic Linterior], give-Pfv-3SgSbj;if,  
 A: ‘She sells it for cash. Sometimes, he (=Dogon) gives (her) a dry measure worth of millet (grains).’

- 01:21 A: *írð=ð ígèlè [mànî: Lkòlò], mà yàb-i-∅=yô:*  
 A: milk=Def again [plastic Linterior], or receive-Pfv-3SgSbj= if  
*kó-njì: [pàná bè-mò] dènnè-ní*  
 DiscDef-like [food 3PlPoss] look.for-Ipfv.Nonpast  
*nê: kó-njì: gà-j-ì*  
 now DiscDef-like pass-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
 A: ‘Or he (=Dogon) will also get a volume measure of the milk (in exchange). That’s how they (=Fulbe) go around to look for food.’  
*[dènnè-ní with nonpast-time imperfective subordinator, §15.2.1.3]*

- 01:26 B: *kó-njì: nê: [pàná bè-mò] nàñâŋ*  
 B: DiscDef-like now [food 3Pl-Poss] entirely  
*kó-njì: tò-ñ-ní*  
 DiscDef-like be.in-StatNeg-3PlSbj  
 B: ‘That’s how they always get their food? Are they not in it like that?’

- 01:27 A: *[púlò-ŋ gày] [pàná bè-mò] kó-njì: tò:-∅,*  
 A: [Fulbe-Pl Topic] [food 3Pl-Poss] DiscDef-like be.in-3SgSbj,  
*B: kó-njì: tò:-∅,*  
 B: DiscDef-like be.in-3SgSbj,  
 A: *[kɔ̄: = lǎ: = yè [púlò-ŋ gày] yû: wàlà-dú*  
 A: [DiscDef=it.is.not;if] [Fulbe-Pl Topic] millet cultivate-VblN  
*yěŋ gă:w yàbá-w wɔ̄-n-ní*  
 thus a.lot accept-Ipfv be-StatNeg-3PlSbj  
 A: ‘As for Fulbe, their food are in it like that.’  
 B: ‘It’s in it like that.’  
 A: ‘Anyway, as for Fulbe, in that way they usually refuse to cultivate millet.’

- 01:32 B: *nê: [ndè mò nàñâŋ]L bé gèlò=ð,*  
 B: now [person Poss cow]<sup>L</sup> 3PlSbj hold.Stat.Ppl=Def  
*bàñá bè=í pànà ò:bó-dè-∅ mà → óbè-èlè-∅*  
 owner 3Pl=Acc food Augm.give-Ipfv-3SgSbj or give-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj  
 B: ‘Now the (Dogon) person whose cow they are in charge of, does the fellow (=the Dogon) give them (=Fulbe) food, or doesn’t he give (it to them)?’  
*[possessor relative, §14.7.3, see also the version without mò in the following segment; augmented imperfective for verb focalization, §10.2.2.2, §13.1.2.3]*

01:36 A: *áywà*, *[ndè nàŋjá]<sup>L</sup>* *gìró-w* *bé* *d-ð=ð]* *bàŋjâ:=gð*  
A: [well, [person cow]<sup>L</sup>] tend-Ipfv 3PlSbj arrive-Pfv.Ppl=Def] owner=Def,  
*bàŋjâ:* *[[mìnne wò-mò]* *nì]* *dàŋ-ì-yà=yò,*  
owner [[field 3Sg-Poss] Loc] sit-Stat-3PlSbj=if,  
*nê:* *[júgù wôy]* *[tàdù-sibè<sup>L</sup>* *túrù-túrù]*  
now [week all] [basket-layer<sup>L</sup>] one-one]  
*háyà kð:* *[pàná bë-mò]* *bà-bá:-dè-Ø,*  
well DiscDef [food 3Pl-Poss] Augm-suffice-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
A: ‘Well, the (Dogon) person whose cow(s) they are tending, the owner, if they (=Fulbe) are occupying his field (tending his cattle), now every week (they get) one basketful (of millet). Well, that is enough (for) their food.’

01:45 A: *nê:* *ób-ù* *bë:-jè-Ø,*  
A: now give-Chain Augm.get-Ipfv-3SgSbj,  
*[[mìnne wò-mò]* *nì]* *dàŋjà-ñ-ní,*  
[[field 3Sg-Poss] Loc] sit.Stat-StatNeg-3PlSbj,  
*[nàŋjá wò-mò]* *gìré-d-ì* *jà-á:-nì,*  
[cow 3Sg-Poss] tend-Ipfv-3PlSbj take-Ant-Nonpast,  
*[pàná bë-mò]* *dùyy-í-ÿ* *bëlé-èlè-Ø,*  
[food 3Pl-Poss] carry.on.head-MP-Chain get-IpfvNeg-3SgSbj,  
A: ‘Now (in that case) he (=owner) can give (it to them). (However, if) they go around tending his cow(s) without staying in his field, he (=owner) cannot carry their food (to them).’

01:52 A: *íyè* *kàndòw* *[nàŋjá* *mímò]=jì* *mais* ,  
A: today now [cow 1SgPoss]=it.is but,  
*púlò-nò* *[kàndòw* *ŋgó]* *jǎ:*  
Fulbe-Sg [now Prox] take.along  
*[párá* *yàlù]* *rà:]* *bòl-i-Ø=yô:,*  
[wilderness <sup>L</sup>place] Loc go-Pfv-3SgSbj=if,  
A: ‘Today now it’s my cow(s), but now the Fulbe person takes (it) and goes to somewhere in the wilderness.’

01:56 A: *mí* *[pàná* *wò-mò]* *dùyy-í-èlè-jì*  
A: 1Sg [food 3Sg-Poss] carry.on.head-MP-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
*[pàná wò-mò]* *dùyy-í-èlè-jì*  
[food 3Sg-Poss] carry.on.head-MP-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
*[wó wà]* *[[yògò-njì: wò: mà→] lè]* *túbè-èlè-jì,*  
[3Sg QuotSbj] [[how? be.Ppl Q] even] ask-IpfvNeg-1SgSbj  
A: ‘Me, I can’t carry his food (there). I can’t carry his food. I don’t (i.e. can’t) even ask him, “how are you?” ’

02:00 A: *[[bày<sup>L</sup>* *mì=jí* *dàg-ú]* *lè*  
A: [[day<sup>L</sup> 1Sg=Acc be.good-Pfv.Ppl] Temp]  
*nàŋjó=ð-mbè* *bòl-â:*  
cow=Def-Pl go-PastAnt  
*[séw wò-yyà mà]* *gènd-ù-ñ=jò,*  
[welfare be-3PlSbj Q] look.at-Pfv-1SgSbj=if  
A: ‘On the day that suits me, I will go and see whether the cows are okay.’

- 02:03 A: *kò = ý* *kó: = lă:-Ø = yō*  
A: DiscDef=it.is DiscDef=it.is.not-3SgSbj;if  
[*bé* *lè*] *bérú-bérú* *wò-lò-ní=jè*  
[3Pl Loc] near-near be-StatNeg-1SgSbj;if  
*nàjó=ð* [[*sògònjí*]<sup>L</sup> *bè = ý* *dàg-új* *gìnè*]  
cow=Def [[manner<sup>L</sup>] 3Pl=Acc be.good-Pfv.Ppl] like]  
*dònó* *bë:-j-i,*  
sell get-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
A: 'It's fine (this time). Otherwise, if I don't stay near them (=Fulbe), they can sell the cow as it pleases them.'
- 02:09 A: *bé* *yé-rà:* *bòl-i-yà = yê:* *gày,*  
A: 3Pl DiscDef-Loc go-Pfv-3PlSbj;if Topic,  
[*pàná* *bè-mòj*] [*nàjá* *ù-mòj*] *sè-yyà* *jà-á:-nì,*  
[food 3Pl-Poss] [cow 2Sg-Poss] have-3PlSbj take-Ant-Nonpast,  
[*pàná* *bè-mòj*] *dùyy-è:-dú]* *wò-ló-Ø,*  
[food 3Pl-Poss] carry.on.head-MP-VblN be-StatNeg-3SgSbj,  
A: 'If they have gone there, their food, they have your cow, there is no (way) to carry their food.'
- 02:15 B: *nê: ,* *[ú* *lè]* *[[ú* *mà:rù]* *nè]*  
B: now, [2Sg too] [[2SgPoss <sup>L</sup>intention] Loc]  
*yé-rà:* *bòl-i-yà = yô:*  
DiscDef-Loc go-Pfv-3PlSbj;if  
*bé* *nàjó=ð* *dòn-i-yà = yô:*,  
3Pl cow=Def sell-Pfv-3PlSbj;if,  
[*ú-mò* *rà:j*] *yèl-i-yà = yô:*  
[2Sg-Poss Loc] come-Pfv-3PlSbj;if  
*yògó-njì:* *bé* *gàmbăj* *dò:nó-d-i*  
how? 3PlSbu certain Aug.sell-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
*gàmbăj* *yím-à:-nì* *bë:-dè-Ø = lò,*  
certain die-Ant-Nonpast remain-Ipfv-3SgSbj=right?,  
B: 'Now, in your thinking, if they have gone there and sold the cow, then they come to your place. How is it that sometimes they have sold it, and sometimes it has actually died (of natural causes)?'
- 02:23 B: *bé* *gàmbăj* *nàjà-dúlò-mbè* *já:* *yèl-á:-nì,*  
B: 3Pl certain cow-tail-Pl take come-Ant-Nonpast,  
*nàjó=ð* *yím-à:* *wò-Ø* *gè-gé:-d-i*  
cow=Def die-PastAnt be-3SgSbj Augm-say-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
*gàmbăj* *nàjà* *tùmò=j,*  
certain cow similar=it.is,  
*nàjá-nàjá* *tùmò=j* *mòlò-mòlò* *gă:w* *wò-Ø,*  
cow-cow similar=it.is resemble-resemble many be-3SgSbj,  
B: 'They sometimes bring cow tails, and they say that the cow has died. Sometimes cows are similar-looking (same colors). There are many cows that look the same.'

02:28 B: *dúlb-mbè jā: yèl-ì-yà=yô: yím-à: wò-Ø mà→*  
 B: tail-Pl take come-Pfv-3PlSbj=if die-PastAnt be-3SgSbj Q  
*yògó-njì: mà→ bé gè-gé:-d-i,*  
 how? Q 3PlSbj Augm-say-Ipfv-3PlSbj,  
*kú-gò [púlb-ŋ=gò mò] nánà=ìj mà→*  
 DiscDef [Fulbe-Pl=Def Poss] truth=it.is Q  
 B: ‘If they bring tails, did it (=cow) die (naturally)? How is it that they (=Fulbe) say (that)? That (claim) of the Fulbe, is it true?’

02:34 A: *áywà, [kɔ: Lärágà] nè,*  
 A: well, [DiscDef Lside] Loc  
*yěŋ pùlb-ŋ L kán-jè-mbè yó=y-yà,*  
 thus Fulbe-Pl do-Ipfv.Pfv-Pl Exist=be-3PlSbj,  
*bè=ìj gènd-i-ý=yò [púlb-ŋ wòy]=lā:-yà,*  
 3Pl=Acc look.at-Pfv-2SgSbj=if [Fulbe-Pl all]=it.is.not-3PlSbj  
 A: ‘Well, on that side (=concerning that), there are some Fulbe who do that. Regarding them, they (the dishonest ones) are not all of the Fulbe.’

02:39 A: *ú [[nàŋá ù-mò] lè] bérú-bérú wò-w=yè*  
 A: 2Sg [[cow 2Sg-Poss] Loc] near-near be-2SgSbj=if  
*kɔ: kánà-ñ-nì,*  
 DiscDef do-IpfvNeg-3PlSbj,  
 A: ‘If you-Sg are (=stay) close to your cow(s), they (=Fulbe) won’t do that.’

02:42 A: *nè: bé gèndà, ùgó bà→,*  
 A: now 3PlSbj look.at, month since,  
*[nàŋá=ð-mbè rà:] bòlé-èlè-w mà→ kàn-i-Ø=yô:,*  
 [cow=Def-Pl Loc] go-IpfvNeg-2SgSbj Q be.done-Pfv-3SgSbj=if  
*gènd-á:-gènd-á: bé kánà,*  
 look.at-PastAnt-look.at-PastAnt 3PlSbj do,  
*[ú lè] nàŋá=ð-mbè wàgú wò-Ø=yò*  
 [2Sg Loc] cow=Def-Pl distant be-3SgSbj=if  
*[sɔ: L bè=ìj dàg-ú-dàg-ú],*  
 [talk<sup>L</sup> 3Pl=Acc be.good-Pfv.Ppl-be.good-Pfv.Ppl]  
*[kɔ: nì] kàn-j-i*  
 [DiscDef Loc] do-Ipfv-3PlSbj  
 A: ‘They observe, since a month ago it happens that you-Sg haven’t gone to the cows. When they have kept observing, if the cows are far away from you. (Now) whatever suits them, they do (something) in that.’

[*bé gèndà* and *bé kánà*, §15.2.2.8; *sɔ:* ‘talk (n), words, language; matter, issue’]

02:50 A: *kàndòw, däy bè=í gándò=ð,*  
 A: now, a.little 3Pl=Acc country=Def,  
*[tè: L dònù bè-mò]=ìj mà→ dùm-ð-Ø=yô:*  
 [tea L price 3Pl-Poss]=it.is Q end(v)-Pfv-3SgSbj=if  
*[nàŋá L túrù] ág-à: dòn-i-yà=yô:*  
 [cow<sup>L</sup> one] catch-PastAnt sell-Pfv-3PlSbj=if  
*kð-rà: yálà-w [íbè rà:]=ìj mà→ bòl-â:*  
 NearDist-Loc walk-Ipfv [market Loc]=it.is Q go-PastAnt

<i>nàŋà-dúlò</i>	<i>[íbè</i>	<i>rà:] = ñ</i>	<i>mà →</i>	<i>bòl-â:</i>
cow-tail	[market	Loc]=it.is	Q	go-PastAnt
<i>wáyngè-mbè</i>	<i>dǎ:-dò = ñ,</i>	<i>nàŋà-dúlò</i>	<i>èb-i-yà = yô:</i>	
butcher-Pl	kill-Ipfv.Ppl=Def,	cow-tail	buy-Pfv-3PlSbj=if	

*[ú      wà]*      *[nàŋà<sup>L</sup>      túrù]*      *bè:-lí*      *wà*

[2Sg      QuotSbj]      [cow<sup>L</sup>      one]      remain-PfvNeg      Quot

A: ‘Now, (if) the country (=the situation) isn’t going well for them, perhaps their tea money is exhausted, if they catch and sell one cow, they go on foot maybe to the (weekly) market there, they go to the market (to buy) a cow’s tail, they go and buy a cow’s tail, (one) that the butchers have slaughtered. They say to you, one cow (of yours) died.’

[‘not remain’ in the last line is euphemistic for ‘die’]

- 03:00 B: *nê:*      *[nàŋá      ù-mò]*      *már-ì-∅*  
 B: now      [cow      2Sg-Poss]      be.lost-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 A: *nàŋá*      *már-ì-∅*  
 A: cow      be.lost-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 B: *dóng-è-∅*  
 B: be.finished-Pfv-3SgSbj  
 A: *[kɔ:*      *lè      wôy]*      *jágà*      *dɔ:n-ì-yà*  
 A: [DiscDef      too      all]      lo!      Augm-sell-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 B: *[yàlù<sup>L</sup>      dènnè-dú]*      *wò-ló-∅*  
 B: [place<sup>L</sup>      look.for-VblN]      be-StatNeg-3SgSbj  
 A: *ăy*  
 A: no!  
 B: *[kɔ:*      *lè      wôy]*      *ból-ì-yà*  
 B: [DiscDef      too      all]      go-Pfv-3PlSbj  
 B: ‘Now your cow has been lost.’  
 A: ‘(The) cow has been lost.’  
 B: ‘It (=cow) is finished.’  
 A: ‘At this point, lo! they have sold (it).’  
 B: ‘There’s no place (for you) to search (for the cow)?’  
 A: ‘No.’  
 B: ‘At this point, they (=cows) have gone away (=been lost).’

## References

- Culy, Christopher. 1995. Ambiguity and case marking in Donno Sɔ (Dogon). In: Akinbiyi Akinlabi (ed.), *Theoretical approaches to African Linguistics*. (Trends in African Linguistics, 1.) Trenton NJ: Africa World Press.
- Culy, Christopher. 1994a. Aspects of logophoric marking. *Linguistics* 32(5): 1055-94.
- Culy, Christopher. 1994b. A note on logophoricity in Dogon. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 15: 113-125.
- Culy, Christopher. 2002. The logophoricity hierarchy and variation in Dogon. In: Tom Güldemann & Manfred von Roncador (eds.), *Reported Discourse: A Meeting Ground for Different Linguistic Domains*, 201-210. Philadelphia: Benjamins.
- Culy, Christopher and S. Fagan. 2002. The history of the middle in Dogon. *Studies in African Linguistics* 30(2): 171-94
- Culy, Christopher, Koungarma Kodio, and Patrice Togo. 1994. Dogon pronominal systems: Their nature and evolution. *Studies in African Linguistics* 23(3): 315-44.
- Heath, Jeffrey. 2015. Dogon noncompositional constructional tonosyntax. *Journal of African Languages and Linguistics* 36(2): 233–252.
- Heath, Jeffrey. 2016. Dogon adjective-numeral inversion. *Linguistics* 54(1): 189-214.
- Kervran, Marcel. 1993. *Dictionnaire dogon - français*, Donno Sɔ, Région de Bandiagara, 2nd ed. Brussels: R. Deleu.
- Kervran, Marcel & André Prost. 1969. *Les parlers dogon, 1: Donno so*. Dakar: Publications du Département de Linguistique Générale et Linguistique Africaine de la Faculté des Lettres et Sciences Humaines de l'Université de Dakar.
- Kervran, Marcel & André Prost. 1986. *Un parler dogon, le Donno Sɔ: Notes de grammaire*. Bandiagara: Paroisse catholique.
- McPherson, Laura. 2013. *A grammar of Tommo So*. (Mouton Grammar Library, 62.) Berlin/Boston: de Gruyter.
- Plungian, Vladimir. 1995. *Dogon*. (Languages of the World/Materials, 64). Munich: Lingcom Europa.

# Abbreviations and symbols

## Abbreviations

Acc	accusative
Adj	adjective
Agent	agentive nominal
Ant	anterior (subordinated clause)
ATR	advanced tongue root (vowel feature)
C	consonant (in formulae like CvCv)
Caus	causative
Char	characteristic nominal derivational suffix, §4.2.1
Comp	complementizer (- <i>j</i> in ‘begin’ complement)
Counterf	counterfactual conditional
Dat	dative postposition
Def	definite clitic
Dem	demonstrative
Det	determiner (demonstrative or definite)
DF	discourse-functional elements
Dimin	diminutive
DiscDef	discourse-definite (‘that same ...’)
Dist	distal (in NearDist and FarDist demonstratives)
DS	Donno So (language)
Dur	durative (subordinator)
EA	expressive adverbial
Emph	emphatic (clause-final particle)
Exist	existential particle
ExpPf	experiential perfect
Fact	factive (‘cause to become’ with adjective)
Foc	focus
Fut	future
H	high (tone)
Hort	hortative
Ipfv	imperfective
ImmFut	immediate future
Imprt	imperative
Inch	inchoative (‘become’ with adjective)
Inst	instrumental postposition
Iter	iteration (full reduplication)
K&P	Kervran & Prost
L	a) low (tone) b) any sonorant (in formulae like <i>CvL</i> )
Loc	locative
Logo	logophoric
MP	mediopassive

N	a) noun (in e.g. “N-Adj”) b) nasal consonant (in formulae like <i>CvN</i> )
(n)	noun, in interlinear glosses like ‘work(n)’
Neg	negative
Nom	nominalization
Nonh	nonhuman
NP	noun phrase
Num	numeral
O	see “SOV”
Pfv	perfective
Pl	plural
Poss	possessive, possessor
PP	postpositional phrase
Ppl	participle, in relative clauses
Prf	perfect (in ExpPrf)
Pron	pronoun
Prox	proximal (demonstrative)
Prohib	prohibitive
Purp	purposive
Q	question
Quot	quotative particle
QuotSbj	quotative subject particle, §17.1.4
Rdp	reduplication
RelCl	relative clause
Rev	reversive
Sbj	subject
Sg	singular
Simul	simultaneous (subordinator)
Stat	stative
SOV	subject-object-verb order
Temp	temporal postposition (‘at’ a time)
Top	topic
Tr	transitive derivational suffix, §9.4
V	a) see “SOV” b) vowel (in names of phonological rules)
v	vowel (in formulae like <i>CvCv</i> )
(v)	verb, in interlinear glosses like ‘fight(v)’
VblN	verbal noun
VP	verb phrase

## Symbols

*	reconstructed
#	ungrammatical, unacceptable, unattested
á, à, â, ã, ã̂	tones on vowels (or syllables), §3.7
̄x, ̄̄x, ̄̄̄x, ̄̄̄̄x	tone changes on stem in compounds, Chapter 5
/.../	a) lexical tone melody, e.g. /LH/, /H/ b) underlying or lexical representation
{...}	a) tone overlay, e.g. {HL}, {H}, {L} b) enclosing any set, e.g. { <i>u a i</i> }
[...]	a) phonetic (IPA) representation, e.g. [b̄u:]; or phrasal grouping
↓	downstep
[...] <sup>L</sup>	{L} tone overlay controlled by an element to the right
[...] <sup>L+H</sup>	like preceding but with extra H-tone on final syllable/mora
HL[...]	{HL} tone overlay in compound finals and verbs in {L}-{HL} complements
L[...]	{L} tone overlay controlled by a possessor to the left
⊂...⊃	tonosyntactic island
→	intonation-like variable prolongation of final vowel or sonorant
..	dying-quail terminal intonation effect (prolongation plus pitch fall)
=	clitic boundary
&	conjunction (in interlinears, e.g. X.& Y.& ‘X and Y’)

# Index

## 1. prosody

/.../, lexical melody

/L/

- derived stative verb, §10.4.1
- stative quasi-verb, §11.2.2.1, §11.2.3.1, §11.2.5.1-2, §11.5.1.1
- core postpositions, §8.1, §8.2.1-2, §8.4.1

/LH/

- verb, §3.7.1.2
- noun, §3.7.1.3
- adjective, §3.7.1.4
- numeral, §3.7.1.4

/HL/

- verb, §3.7.1.2
- noun, §3.7.1.3
- adjective, §3.7.1.4
- numeral, §3.7.1.4

/LHL/

- noun, §3.7.1.3
- adjective, §3.7.1.4
- numeral, §3.7.1.4

/HLH/

{...}, tone overlay

{L}

- on nominal compound initial, §5.1.2, §5.1.5
- on adjective or numeral as final in bahuvrihi compound, §5.2.1
- on noun etc., after preposed possessor, §6.2.1.1, §6.2.2
- on nominal compound final in possessive-type compounds, §5.1.4
- on noun, before a modifying adjective, §6.3.1
- on noun etc., before a demonstrative, §6.5.2
- on noun etc., as internal head of relative clause, §14.2.1
- on verb before H-toned suffix, see {LH} items “including suffix” below

{LH}

- perfective positive including suffix (1st/2nd persons), §10.2.1.1
- perfective negative including suffix, §10.2.3.1
- prohibitive including suffix, §10.6.1.3
- perfective participles, §14.4.1.1

{L}+H, i.e. {L} plus a single H-tone at the right edge

- on numeral etc. before definite clitic, §6.2.1.3, §6.4.1

{HL}

- perfective positive (3rd persons), §10.2.1.1
- imperative of bimoraic stem, §10.6.1.1

on verb as agentive compound final, §5.1.5.1  
on verb in {L}+{HL} object-verb nominalization, §17.4  
on verb in agentive compound, §5.1.5.1  
C...D (tonosyntactic island), §6.2.1.3, §6.5.2-3  
final L-tone (polar interrogatives), §3.8.4, §13.2.1.1  
→ (prolongation of final vowel or sonorant)  
phrase-final, §3.8.1  
lexical, §3.8.2, §8.4.3.1, §8.4.4.1, §8.4.7  
. (dying-quail intonation), §3.8.3, §16.3

## 2. selected morphemes

notes:

in suffixes, “v” is a variable vowel;  
alphabetization: *e* follows *e*, *ɔ* follows *o*, *ɲ* then *ŋ* follow *n*;  
atonal morphemes are not tone-marked here;  
lexical stems (nouns, verbs, etc.) are shown with lexical tones.

-∅ suffix

3Sg subject, §10.3.1

à

- a) à- at onset of nouns, §4.1.7
- b) -à 3Sg suffix on future verb, §10.2.2.6

ã: ‘who?’ , §13.2.2.1

-a: anterior subordinator, §15.2.2

-a:-ni same-subject anterior future subordinator, §15.2.2.4

-a: wò ~ -a: sè present perfect, §10.2.1.4

-a: dɔ: recent perfect, §10.2.1.5

àná (àn-ná, ànà-íj) ‘man, male’, §4.1.2  
compounds, §5.1.7

àŋá ‘how much?, how many?’, §13.2.2.6

bà imperative of motion in verb-chains, §15.1.10.4

bâ: as pseudo-subject in time transitions, §11.1.1.4

bă:

in comparatives, §12.2.1

‘all the way to/from ...’, §15.3.3

báŋà (bàŋâ:) ‘owner’

compounds, §5.1.8

bàrá ‘help’

clausal complements, §17.4.2

bâ:y in ‘since’ clauses, §15.2.1.6

bé 3Pl pronoun, §4.3.1

bè ‘was’, §11.2.2.2 (*see also bénè*)

=bè conjugated past clitic, §10.5.1

in adjectival comparatives, §12.1.1.1

participles of, §14.4.6

bénè counterfactual ‘if’, §16.4

bě: (bí-y) ‘stay, remain’

paradigm, §10.1.3.3

basic sense, §11.2.4.1

as auxiliary

with expressive adverbials, §11.1.3.1, §8.4.7.2

-nú bě: ‘keep VP-ing’, §17.6.

bélé ‘get, obtain’, §10.1.3.9

‘be able to, can’, §15.1.4.1

‘finish VPing’, §15.1.4.2

bi- (*see bě:*)

bilé ‘become, be transformed into’, §11.2.4.3

binnò=ò rà: ‘between’, §8.2.9

*bòló* ‘go’, §10.1.3.9 (*see also “motion verb”*)

*bòmbùrù dà:* ‘next to, beside’, §8.2.5

-Cèm- in *X-Cèm-X* compounds, §5.1.10.2

-d- (*see under -dè ~ -jè*)

*dà:*

a) *dà: ~ rà:* locative postposition, §8.2.1

*ñgó-rà:* ‘here’, *kó-rà:*, *yó-gò-rà:*, *yé-rà:* ‘there’, §4.4.3.1

*yògó rà: ~ yògó-ní* ‘where?’, §13.2.2.3

b) *dà: rà:* ‘over/above’, §8.2.8

*dày* ‘a little’, §8.4.2

*gøy* clause-final admonitive particle, §19.5.2

*dé:* ‘get tired’

    in ‘for a very long time’ expressions, §15.2.2.6

-dè ~ -jè imperfective (positive), §10.2.2.1

    -d-à: *sè ~ -j-à: sè* periphrastic future, §10.2.2.7

*dènè* ‘spend the (mid-)day’

    with chained activity verb, §15.2.1.4

    in greetings, §19.7

*dèŋ* ‘apart’, §8.4.7.3

    iterated *dèŋ-dèŋ*, §8.4.7.3

-di future negative, §10.2.3.6

*dògòndò* ‘last’, §4.6.2.1

*dó:lò* ‘fatigue’

*dó:lò = ñ* ‘it isn’t worth (the trouble)’, §19.7

*dó:lò L pò:* ‘thanks!’, §19.7

*dɔ:* ‘arrive, reach, attain, equal’

    -a: *dɔ:* recent perfect, §10.2.1.5

    in collocations, §11.1.1.4

    ‘attain, equal’ in comparatives, §12.2.1

-du (-dù or -dú) verbal-noun suffix, §4.2.2.1

    compounds, §5.1.11

    with chained verbs, §15.1.1.1

-dv possible frozen verbal derivational suffix, §9.4.6

é 2Pl pronoun, §4.3.1

-e ~ -ε perfective of E-stem verbs, §10.2.1.1

    in perfective (pseudo-)participles, §14.4.1.1

-e:- ~ -ε:- ~ -i:- mediopassive, §9.4

    deadjectival inchoative, §9.5

-ě: suffix, §4.2.3

-ènné ordinal adjective suffix, §4.6.2.2

èré ‘better, more’

    adverbial, §12.1.2.2

    conjugated ‘be better, be more’ §12.1.1.4

-e (*see -e ~ -ε*)

-e:- (*see -e:- ~ -ε:- ~ -i:-*)

èdú→

a) ‘much, a lot’, §8.4.2

b) ‘well’ (evaluation), §8.4.4.1

-èlè imperfective negative, §10.2.3.4

- émmè** (*ém-*) 1Pl pronoun, §4.3.1  
**fû** → ‘all, every’, §6.6.1  
**-g-** (*see -g-e:- ~ -g-e:-*)  
**gă:** ‘be more’, §12.1.1.2  
**gàmbăj** ‘certain (ones)’, §6.3.2  
**gálá** ‘pass, go by’, §10.1.3.9  
    ‘surpass’ in comparatives, §12.1.3  
**gă:lĕy** ‘a little’, §8.4.2  
**gă:nd-é:-** ‘prevent’  
    complements, §17.4.1  
**gă:w** (*see also gă:*)  
    a) ‘many, much’, §6.4.3  
    b) ‘a lot’, §8.4.2  
**gày** topic, §19.1.1  
**-g-e:- ~ -g-e:-** denominal verbalizer, §9.6  
**gè:** “filler” medially in verb chain, §15.2.4  
**gě:** (*gí-y*) ‘say’, §11.3.1, §17.1.2  
    paradigm, §10.1.3.3  
    in collocations, §11.1.2.3  
**gélè** ‘be holding’ in progressive, §10.2.2.5  
**gi**  
    a) **-gí-** characteristic derivative, §4.2.1  
    b) **-gí-ñ** plural-addressee prohibitive, §10.6.1.3  
    c) (*gi- verb stem, see gě:*)  
**gìnè** ‘like’, §8.4.1  
**girù dà:** ‘in front of’, §8.2.6  
**gō:** ‘go out’  
    in collocations, §11.1.1.4  
    **gò-é mò-nì** in ‘since’ clauses, §15.2.1.6  
**gøy** ‘sure’ (clause-final, emphatic agreement), §19.5.2  
**=gð (=ð)** definite, §4.4.1  
    in relative clauses, §14.6.1  
**-gù**  
    a) in complex numerals, §4.6.1.3  
    b) in adjectival predicate, (337b) in §11.4  
**-gù: ~ -ù:** deadjectival expressive adverbial, §8.4.7.6  
**-gvlv** verbal derivational suffix  
    a) causative, §9.2.2  
    b) deadjectival factitive, §9.5  
**hállù** ‘even’, §19.1.4  
    ‘even if’, §16.2.1.1  
**hă:n** ‘huh?’, §19.6  
**háyà** ‘well, ...’, §19.2.1  
**hɔ:n** → ~ **hø:n** → ‘here, take this!’, §10.6.1.2  
**-i:- ~ -i-** (*see -e:- ~ -e:- ~ -i:-*)  
**i:** ‘child’, §4.1.2  
    in compounds, §5.1.6  
**ibé**, ‘like’, §11.2.5.3  
    complements, §17.3.3

*ígèlè* ‘again’, §19.3.1

*igù wó* ‘know’

paradigm, §11.2.5.1

complements, §17.2.1.1

*inné*, ‘not know’, §11.2.5.1

complements, §17.2.1.2

*injú ~ njí ~ injê*: ‘what?’, §13.2.2.2

*-j-* (see under *-dè* ~ *-jè*)

*já:*

a) *já: ~ jě:* ‘take (sb)’, §10.1.3.2

in verb chains, §15.1.9

b) *[X lè] já:* purposive postposition, §8.3.1

in purposive clauses, §17.5.2

in causal (‘because’) clauses, §17.5.3

c) in VP focalization, §13.1.2.2

*jāŋ* ‘being well’, §8.4.4.2

in greetings, §19.7

*já-yèlé* (*jè:lé*) ‘bring’, §10.1.3.10

in relative clauses, §14.5.2

verbal noun, §15.1.1.2

= *jè* (see = *yò* ‘if’)

*-jè* imperfective (positive), §10.2.2.1

*je:* (see *já:*)

*jé-bòló* ‘convey, take (away)’, §10.1.3.11

in relative clauses, §14.5.2

verbal noun, §15.1.1.2

*jè:lé* (see *já-yèlé*)

*jòè rà:* ‘under’, §8.2.8

*-jú* verbal-noun suffix, §4.2.2.1

*kán(à)* ‘do’

paradigm, §10.1.3.12

in collocations, §11.1.2.2

in subordinated clauses, §15.2.1.5

*kă:y* ‘only’, §19.4.1, §18.2.1

*kě:* ‘first’, §4.6.2.1

*kě:=gò* ‘firstly’, §8.4.6.2

*kéy-kèy* ‘equally’, §12.2.1

*kēw* ‘equally’, §12.2.1

*kidé* ‘thing’, §4.1.2

*kígùl-è:-* ‘go back’

*kígùl-ì-à:* , *kígùl-ì-à:-nì* ‘again’, §19.3.1

*kâ:* (*kú*, *kú-gò*, *kó*) ‘that’ (near-distal), §4.4.2

*kó-rà:* ‘at that’, ‘there’, §4.4.2, §4.4.3.1

*kó-nì* ‘over there’, §4.4.3.1

*kòlò rà:* ‘inside’, §8.2.3

*kú* (see also under *kâ:*)

*kú-wò* (*kú-wà:* , *kú-wò-yà*) distal presentative, §4.4.4

*kû*: ‘head’

in reflexives, §18.1.4

<sup>L</sup>*kû: nè* ‘on (the head of)’ or ‘(tale) of’, §8.3.2.

*kù: rà*: ‘on (the head of)’, §8.2.4

*=lă*: ‘it is not’

with NP in identificational predicate, §11.2.1.2

in adjectival predicates, §11.4.2

*=lă, =lâ*: in rhetorical tag questions, §13.2.1.3

*lă: =yè ~ lă: =yò* ‘but, on the other hand’, §19.2.3

*lè*

a) postposition

dative, §8.1.1

instrumental, §8.1.2

comitative, §8.1.2

temporal, §8.1.3

after locational (‘toward’), §8.1.4

b) ‘also, too’, §19.1.3

c) *X lè Y lè* ‘X and Y’ (conjoined NP), §7.1.1

in greetings, §19.7

d) ‘than X’ in comparatives, §12.1

e) *=yo lò ~ =ye lè* ‘even if’, §16.2.1.1

*lè* (see *lĕy*)

*lĕy* (*lè*) ‘2’, §4.6.1.2

*-lí* perfective negative, §10.2.3.1

*-tâ-lí* experiential perfect negative, §10.2.3.2

*lò* (see *lè* ‘also’)

*=lò, =lô*: in rhetorical tag questions, §13.2.1.3

*-lú-* (see *-lí*)

*-lv* (with nonhigh vowel)

a) reversive derivational suffix (verbs), §9.1

b) transitive derivational suffix in a few verbs, §9.4.5

c) *-lìv* (-*lò*, -*lă*, -*lè*) nominalizing suffix in a few compounds, §5.1.3.2

d) *-lv* stative negative

with derived statives, §10.4.2

*wđ-ló* ‘not be’, §11.2.2.2

*sè-lé* ‘not have’, §11.5.1.2

*ibè-lé* ‘not like’, §11.2.5.3

*nàmà-lá* ‘not want’, §11.2.5.2

*=bè-lé* past negative, §10.5.1

in negative adjectival comparatives, §12.1.1.1

participles of, §14.4.5.2

*-m* 1Sg subject (dialectal), §10.3.1

*mà→*

a) ‘or’ disjunction, §7.2.1

b) clause-final polar interrogative marker, §13.2.1.2

tones after third-person perfective positive verbs, §3.7.3.3

*má:nù* ‘So-and-So’, §4.1.3

*-mbè* plural, §4.1.1

in relative clauses, §14.6.2

*mí* 1Sg pronoun, §4.3.1

*-mmò* 3Pl future, §10.2.2.6

*mō:* (*mú-y*) ‘immerse’, §10.1.3.3

*mò* possessor (*see also -mv*)

*mɔ*

a) [*X mò*] possessor

with X = pronoun, §4.3.1

with X = nonpronominal NP, §6.2.1.1

without overt possessum, §6.2.4

in ‘Y belong to X’ predicates, §11.5.2

b) *mó* 1Sg possessor (reduced from *m-mò*), §4.3.1

c) *gò-é mò-nì* in ‘since’ clauses, §15.2.1.6

d) *-mó ~ -mò* in greetings, §19.7

e) *see -mv* (causative, etc.)

*mò:-ndú* ‘assemble, put together’, §3.5.4.1, §9.4.4

in verb chains, §15.1.8

*-mɔŋ* ‘only (one)’, §19.4.1

*mòl-é:-* ‘assemble, come together’, §3.5.4.1

in verb chains, §15.1.8

*mu-*

a) verb stem (*see mō:*)

b) *-mù-* linker in a compound, §5.1.14

*-mv* (-*mɔ*, -*mɛ*)

a) causative, §9.2.1

deadjectival factitive, §9.5

b) hortative, §10.6.2.1

quoted hortative, §17.1.4.2

c) passive (‘be seen’, etc.), §9.3

d) suffix in a few compounds, §5.1.13

e) *-mèv-nì* in ‘before’ clauses, §15.2.3

*-N-* linker in a few compounds, §5.1.12

*-n-*

a) (*see -ná-ní, -ná-nì* 3Pl negatives)

b) (*see -n-ɛ:-*)

*nà*

*wò-wò nà* ‘it being the case that’ or ‘while/when’, §17.5.4

[jâŋ nà] *wò-wò* greeting, §19.7

*-nà:-* in *X-nà:-X* compounds, §5.1.10.1

*nă:* ‘forget’

complements, §17.2.1.3

*nâ:* ‘authentic; entire’, §5.1.9

*nâmà*, ‘want’, §11.2.5.2

complements, §17.4.6

*nânâj* ‘everything’, §6.6.2

*năj* ‘sun’ as pseudo-subject, §11.1.1.4

*nâ:j* ‘first’, §4.6.2.1

*-nâw* prohibitive, §10.6.1.3

in quoted prohibitive, §17.1.4.1

*nâdâ:* ‘here’, §4.4.3.1

*ndé* ‘person’, §4.1.2  
*nd-é:-* ‘bathe’, §10.1.3.5

*-nd-é:- ~ -nd-e:-*

deadjectival inchoative verb, §9.5

*-nd-e:-mv ~ -nd-e:-mv* deadjectival factitive, §9.5

*-ndv-*

a) transitive derivational suffix, §9.4.4

deadjectival factitive, §9.5

‘greet’, §9.7

b) denominal verbalizing suffix, §9.6

*-n-é:-* verbal derivational suffix (‘go in circles’), §9.7

*né:* ‘now’, §19.1.2

*-něy (pě:-něy)*, §4.6.1.3

*ně*

a) locative postposition, §8.2.2

b) in ‘since’ clauses, §15.2.1.6

‘from, all the way to’, §15.3.3

*ni*

a) *nì, -nì* locative postposition, §8.2.2  
*yðgð-nì* ‘where?’, §13.2.2.3

b) 3Pl negative forms (*see -n-ní, -n-nì*)

c) *-ni* imperfective subordinator for past-time contexts, §15.2.1.4-5

*-a:-nì* same-subject, anterior, nonpast subordinator, §15.2.2.4

d) *-ni* purposive clause, §17.5.1

*nípn-è:-* ‘be afraid to’, §17.3.2

*-nú* in ‘keep VP-ing’ construction, §17.6

*-njá:* simultaneous subordinator before activity verb, §15.2.1.2

*-njá: wð* immediate future, §10.2.2.8

*njémé* logophoric, §18.3.1

*njí* ‘what?’, §13.2.2.2

*-njí:* in manner adverbs

‘like this/that’, §8.4.1

*yðgð-njí:* ‘how?’, §13.2.2.5

*-n-ní*

a) 3Pl perfective negative, §10.2.3.1

b) 3Pl stative negative, §10.4.2

*-n-nì ~ -n-ní*

a) 3Pl imperfective negative, §10.2.3.4

b) hortative negative, §10.6.2.2

*-nú* plus *bě:* ‘remain’ (‘keep VP-ing’), §17.6

*-nv* (human) singular, §4.1.1

*-ý* in final of locational and instrumental compounds, §5.1.5.2

*-ý* 2Pl subject on verb (~ *-yj*), §10.3.1

in plural-addressee imperatives, §10.6.1.1

in plural-addressee prohibitives, §10.6.1.3

in plural-addressee hortatives, §10.6.2.1

in quoted imperatives and prohibitives, §17.1.4.1

b) pronominal-subject suffix on verb

1Sg subject, §10.3.1

transpersonal logophoric subject, §18.3.2

1Pl subject on verb (~ *-yŋ*), §10.3.1

c) deadjectival expressive adverbial, §8.4.7.6

=*yŋ* (atonal clitic)

a) accusative at end of NP, §6.7

b) ‘it is’ clitic

after NP, §11.2.1.1, §11.2.1.3

in adjectival predicates, §11.4.1.2

*ýgà:* (plural *ýgò-yà*), proximal presentative ‘here’s’, §4.4.4

*ýgò* ‘this’ (proximal), §4.4.2

in relative clauses, §14.6.1

*ýgò-rà:* (*àdâ:*) ‘here’, §4.4.3.1

*ýgò-nì* ‘here’, §4.4.3.1

*ýgò-yà* (see *ýgà:*)

*pá:* (*pé-è*) ‘eat (meal)’, §10.1.3.2

*pé-è* (see *pá:*)

*óbò* ‘give’

paradigm, §10.1.3.8

syntax, §11.1.3.3

in verb chains, §15.1.6

=*ò* (see =*gò*)

*òñhòñ~òñhòñ* ‘uh-huh’, §19.6

*pâ:* ‘from, all the way to’, §15.3.3

*pádâ* ‘leave (behind), abandon’

in verb chains, §15.1.5

complements, §17.4.5

*pè:-, pe:-* (see *pélù*)

*pélù* ‘10’, §4.6.1.2

*pè:-, pe:-* in decimal numerals, §4.6.1.3

*pínnè* ‘remain’, §11.2.4.1

*pínn-á:-nì* ‘later’, §8.4.6.2

*pû→* ‘all, every’, §6.6.1

*rà:* (see *dâ:*)

*-ri ~ -di* future negative, §10.2.3.6

*-rv* transitive verbal derivation, §9.4

denominal, §9.6

*-rùŋ* nominalizing suffix in compounds, §5.1.3.2

[*X*<sup>L</sup> *sà:bù*] *lè* ‘because of X’, §17.5.3

*sáñ→* ‘correctly’, §8.4.4.3

*sè* ‘have’, §11.5.1.1

participle *sê:*, §14.4.5.1

as auxiliary:

*-a: sè* present perfect, §10.2.1.4

*sé:nèŋ* ‘all, every’, §6.6.1

*sê:w* ‘being well’, §8.4.4.2

*sigé* ‘more’

adverbial, §12.1.2.1

conjugated ‘be more’, §12.1.1.3

in superlatives, §12.1.4

*-tà-lí* experiential perfect negative, §10.2.3.2

*tàŋà nè* ‘about, concerning’, §8.3.2

*táŋá* ‘become’, §11.2.4.2

*tê:* (*tí-ŷ*)

‘send’, §10.1.3.3

in verb chains, §15.1.7

*témbè* ‘find (by chance)’, §4.1.7

in greetings, §19.7

*té<sup>n</sup>→* ‘exactly’, §8.4.3.1

*těŋ→* ‘straight’, §8.4.7.2

iterated *těŋ-těŋ*, §8.4.7.2

*ti-* (see *tê:*)

*tí→* ‘‘1’’, §4.6.1.1

*-tíyà wɔ* experiential perfect, §10.2.1.3

*tò: ~ tò* ‘be in’, §11.2.3.1

participle *tô:*, §14.4.5.1

*tółò* ‘begin’

complements, §17.4.3

*tùmò=ŷ* reciprocal object, §18.4.2

*túrù* ‘1’, §4.6.1.1

‘unassisted’, §18.2.1

*ú* 2Sg pronoun, §4.3.1

*-ú* (-ŷ with monosyllabic stem or mediopassive), after {L}-toned stem

a) perfective participle in relatives, §14.4.1.1

a) product-of-action (uncompounded nouns), §4.2.2.3

b) deverbal adjective, §4.5.2

c) in finals of locational and instrumental compounds, §5.1.5.2

*-ù:* in a few deadjectival expressive adverbials, §8.4.7.6

*ùnnù*

*ùnnò=ò rà:* ‘behind’, §8.2.7

*ùnnù nè* ‘after’, §8.2.7

*-ŵ*

a) 2Sg subject on verb, §10.3.1

b) imperfective suffix on verb before auxiliary, §10.2.2.3

c) simultaneous subordinator, §15.2.1.3-4

*-ŵ* prohibitive, §10.6.1.3

in quoted prohibitive, §17.1.4.1

*wà* quotative particle, §17.1.3.1

quotative subject particle, §17.1.3.2

*wálà:* ‘so’, §19.2.2

*wă:* (*wé:*) ‘see’, §10.1.3.2

complements, §17.2.2.1-2

*wàdá* ‘remain’, §11.2.4.1

[*wágùrù<sup>L</sup> yògó]* *lè* ‘when?’, §13.2.2.4

*wé-è* (see *wă:*)

*wó* 3Sg pronoun, §4.3.1

*wôy* ‘all, every’, §6.6.1

in relative clauses, §14.6.3

*wò* locational or existential ‘be’, §11.2.2.2

participle *wô:*, §14.4.5.1

as auxiliary:

with expressive adverbials, §11.1.3.1, §8.4.7.2

in adjectival predicates, §11.4.1.1

-*tíyà wò* experiential perfect, §10.2.1.3

-*a: wò* present perfect, §10.2.1.4

-*à wò* progressive, §10.2.2.3

*wò* (after unsuffixed verb) progressive, §10.2.2.4

*wô-wò nà* ‘it being the case that’ or ‘while/when’, §17.5.4

-*ȳ*

a) after monosyllabic or mediopassive stem, see -*ú*

b) 2Sg perfective -*W̄* before =*yo* ‘if’, §16.1.1

-*ȳ* perfective of I-stem verbs, §10.2.1.1

*yâ:* ‘spend night’, §10.1.3.2

with chained activity verb, §15.2.1.4

in greetings, §19.7

*yă:*

a) *yă:*, *yâ:-*, *yâ:-ná* ‘woman, female’, §4.1.2

compounds, §5.1.7

b) *yă:*, *yé-è* ‘weep’, §10.1.3.2

-*yâ:-* in VERB-*yâ:-*-VERB construction, §16.2.1.2

*yâgá* ‘other’, §4.6.1.1

adverb ‘more, additionally’, §19.3.2

*yâ-wôy* ‘all, every’, §6.6.1

*yé* (see *yv̄*)

=*yè*, =*yê*: (see =*yò*)

*yé-è* (see *yă:*)

*yélé* ‘come’, §10.1.3.9

-*ŋ̄* (see -*ŋ̄* and atonal -*ŋ̄*)

=*yò*, =*yô:*, =*yè*, =*yê*:

a) conditional ‘if’, §16.1

tones after third-person perfective positive verbs, §3.7.3.3

b) pseudo-conditional (same-subject anterior future subordinator), §15.2.2.5

c) *lă:=yè ~ lă:=yò* ‘but, on the other hand’, §19.2.3

*yó-gò* ‘that’ (far-distal), §4.4.2

*yó-gò-nì* ‘over there’ (far-distal), §4.4.3.1

*yògò* ‘which?’, §13.2.2.7

*yògò râ: ~ yògò-nì* ‘where?’, §13.2.2.3

*yògò-njì:* ‘how?’, §13.2.2.5

*yv̄* (*yí*, *yé*, *yó*, *yô*) existential particle, §11.2.2.1

### 3. grammar

‘about’, §8.3.2

adjective

    inventory, §4.5

    as predicates, §11.4

    comparative, §12.1.1

    intensifiers, §6.3.3.2

    syntax, §6.3

    inversion, §6.4.2

| Adjective-Numeral Inversion, §6.4.2

adverb (*see also “expressive adverbial”*)

    manner, §8.4.1

        deadjectival, §8.4.5

        spatial, §4.4.3.1, §8.4.6.3

        temporal, §8.4.6.1-2

        extent, §8.4.2

        evaluation, §8.4.4

        adverbial clauses, §15.2

    ‘again’, §19.3.1

    agentive, §4.2.4, §5.1.5.1

    ‘also’, §19.1.3

    anaphora, chapter 18 (*see also “definite”*)

    apocope, §3.5.3.3

    aspect, §10.1.2

    aspect-negation suffix, §10.1

    ATR-harmony, §3.4.5

    augmented (verb stem)

        augmented perfective, §10.2.1.2

        augmented imperfective, §10.2.2.2

        augmented stative, §10.4.1

    autosegmental, §3.7.3.1

    Back/Rounding Harmony, §3.4.5

    backchannel, §19.6

    bahuvrihi compound, §5.2.1

        bahuvrihi-like diminutive compounds, §5.1.6

    ‘be’

        locative/existential, §11.2.2.2

        ‘it is X’ (identificational), §11.2.1

        ‘be in’, §11.2.3.1

        ‘be (adjective)’, §11.4.1

        ‘be (adverbial)’, §8.4.7.2

    ‘because’

        clause, §17.5.3

        ‘because of (NP)’, §8.3.1

‘become’  
    with noun, §11.2.4.2-3  
    with adjective, §9.5  
    with adverbial, §11.1.3.1  
‘before ...’ clause, §15.2.3  
‘begin’, §17.4.3  
bracketing (within NP), §6.1.1  
causative  
    verbal derivation, §9.2, §9.4.2  
    valency of, §11.1.3.4  
chaining (of verbs or VPs), chapter 15  
    chaining form of verbs, §10.1.3  
    arguments of chained verbs, §15.1.2  
    in relative clauses, §14.5  
characteristic (nominal derivative), §4.2.1  
cliticization, §3.6  
clusters (consonants), §3.3.12  
cognate nominal, §11.1.2.5-6  
comparatives, chapter 12  
compounds, chapter 5  
    agentive, §5.1.5.1  
    bahuvrihi, §5.2.1  
    locational, §5.1.5.2  
    X-Y-X with fixed medial element Y, §5.1.10  
    instrumental, §5.1.11  
    possessive-type, §5.1.4  
conjunction, §7.1  
conditionals, chapter 16  
    counterfactual, §16.4  
    willy-nilly, §16.3  
    pseudo-conditionals, §15.2.2.5  
consonants, §3.3  
Contour-Tone Mora-Addition, §3.7.4.1  
Contour-Tone Stretching, §3.7.4.3  
*d ~ j* alternation, §3.5.4.4  
deejectival verb, §9.5  
definite, §4.4.1, §6.5.3  
    in relative clauses, §14.6.1  
defocalized, §13.1.2.4  
*deictic* (see “demonstrative,” “definite”)  
demonstrative, §4.4.2  
    in relative clauses, §14.6.1  
denominal verb, §9.6  
“bifurcation” (of NP component), §6.1.3  
diphthongs, §3.4.6  
*discourse-definite* (see “definite”)  
discourse markers, chapter 19  
disjunction, §7.2

distributive  
‘each’, §6.6.1  
iterated adverbials, §4.6.1.6, §8.4.8  
‘do’  
    in collocations, §11.1.2.2  
    in subordinated clauses, §15.2.1.5  
dying-quail effect, §3.8.3, §16.3  
emphatic  
    pronouns, §18.2  
    clause-final particles, §19.5  
epenthesis  
    vocalic (absent), §3.5.3.1  
evaluation, §8.4.4  
‘even’, §19.1.4  
    ‘even if’, §16.2.1-2  
existential particle, §11.2.2.1  
    ‘be’, §11.2.2.2  
experiential perfect, §10.2.1.3  
expressive adverbial, §8.4.7  
extent, §8.4.2  
factitive (deadjectival transitive verb), §9.5  
Final High-to-Rising Tone, §3.7.4.2  
‘finish’, §15.1.4.2  
focalization, chapter 13  
    truth-value focus, §13.1.2.1  
    verb/VP focus, §13.1.2.2-3  
    effect on verbs, §13.1.2.4  
‘forget’  
    complement of, §17.2.1.3  
fraction, §4.6.3  
‘from’, §15.3.3  
‘give’  
    in chains, §15.1.6  
greetings, §19.7  
‘have’, §11.5.1  
‘help’, §17.4.2  
hortative, §10.6.2  
    quoted, §17.1.4.2  
immediate future, §10.2.2.8  
imperative, §10.6.1 (*see also “prohibitive”*)  
    quoted (jussive), §17.1.4.1  
imperfective, §10.2.2.1  
    augmented, §10.2.2.2  
    negative, §10.2.3.4  
    complement, §15.2.1.3-4, §17.2.2.1  
inchoative, §9.5  
instrumental-comitative (‘with’)  
    postposition, §8.1.2  
intensifier (adjectival), §6.3.3.2

interrogatives, §13.2  
polar, §13.2.1  
    tonal expression of, §3.8.4  
content (WH), §13.2.2  
embedded, §13.2.3  
Intervocalic *I*-Deletion, §3.5.4.1  
Intervocalic Nasal-Deletion, §3.5.4.2  
Intervocalic Tapping (/d/ → r), §3.5.4.3  
intonation, §3.8  
iteration (*see also reduplication*)  
    lexicalized (nouns), §4.1.6  
    deadjectival  
        abstractive nominal, §4.2.5  
        ‘-ish’, §8.4.7.5  
    distributive, §4.6.1.6, §8.4.8  
    verb stems, §15.1.11  
jussive, §17.1.4  
‘know’, §11.2.5.1  
    complements, §17.2.1  
*/l/ → n*, §3.5.4.7  
*I ~ r* alternation, §3.5.4.5  
Leftward Tone-Pushing, §3.7.4.5  
*lengthening* (*see “augmented”*)  
‘like’  
    a) (similarity), §8.4.1 (*see also “manner”*)  
    b) verb ‘like (sth)’, §11.2.5.3  
        with complement clause, §17.3.3  
locative (spatial)  
    postpositions, §8.2.1-2  
    deictic and other spatial adverbs, §4.4.3.1, §8.4.6.3, §11.1.3.2  
    ‘be (somewhere)’, §11.2.2.2  
    ‘be in’, §11.2.3.1  
        spatial adverbial clauses, §15.3.1  
logophoric, §18.3  
manner  
    adverb, §8.4.5  
    manner verb in chain, §15.1.10.1  
    adverbial clause, §15.3.2  
mediopassive (verbal derivation), §9.4  
    in reflexives, §18.1.1  
    in reciprocals, §18.4.1  
melody (lexical tone pattern), §3.7.1  
metrical structure, §3.2.2  
modal (*see also imperative, hortative*)  
    obligation, §17.4.7  
    ‘can’, §15.1.4.1  
Monophthongization, §3.5.7.2

motion verb  
    in verb chains, §15.1.10  
    plus purposive complement, §17.4.4

Nasal Assimilation, §3.5.5.3

negation  
    indicative verbal inflections, §10.2.3  
    stative, §10.4  
    ‘it is not (NP)’, §11.2.1.2  
    ‘not be (adjective)’, §11.4.2  
    scope, 367-8, 460, 531

noun phrase, chapter 6

numeral, §4.6  
    in bahuvrihi compounds, §5.2.1.2

object  
    low-referentiality objects, §11.1.2.4  
    cognate nominals, §11.1.2.6

*obligation* (*see “modal”*)  
‘only’, §19.4

ordinal, §4.6.2

Palatal Coalescence, §3.5.3.4

participle (relative-clause verb), §14.4

passive, §9.3 (*see also “mediopassive”*)

past (conjugatable clitic in verb morphology), §10.5.1

perception verb (‘see’, ‘hear’)  
    transitivity, §11.1.2.1  
    complements of, §17.2.2

perfect  
    experiential perfect, §10.2.1.3  
    present perfect, §10.2.1.4  
    recent perfect, §10.2.1.5  
    past perfect, §10.5.1.6

perfective, §10.2.1.1  
    participle, §14.4.1.1  
    augmented, §10.2.1.2  
    negative, §10.2.3.1

*person* (*see pronouns*)

plural  
    nouns, §4.1.1.1140, 254  
    imperatives, §10.6.1.1

possessive, §6.2  
    predicates, §11.5  
    possessive-type compounds, §5.1.4  
    possessor relative, §14.7.3

postposition, §8.1-3  
    relative clause, §14.7.4

presuffixal stem, §10.1.3

‘prevent’, §17.4.1

Prevocalic V-Raising, §3.5.6.1

prohibitive, §10.6.1.3

prolongation (prosodic), §3.8.1-2  
pronouns, §4.3  
    preparticipial subject pronoun in relatives, §14.3  
    possessor, §6.2.1.2  
    pronominal-subject suffixes on verbs, §10.3  
pseudo-conditional, §15.2.2.5  
pseudo-participle (perfective), §14.4.1.1  
pseudo-subject, §11.1.1.4  
purposive  
    purposive-causal postposition, §8.3.1  
    purposive clause, §17.4.4, §17.5.1-2  
quantification (*see also* “extent”)  
    ‘all’, §6.6  
    ‘many/much’, §6.4.3  
    ‘certain (ones)’, §6.3.2  
quasi-verb, §11.2.2-3, §11.2.5, §11.5.1.1  
quotation  
    verb ‘say’, §11.3.1  
    connection to *gìnè* ‘like’, §8.4.1  
    *gè*: as chain-final filler, §15.2.4  
    quotative complement, §17.1  
    clause-final quotative particle, §17.1.3.1  
    quotative-subject phrase, §17.1.3.2  
recent perfect, §10.2.1.5  
reduplication (*see also* iteration)  
    in nouns, §4.1.4-5  
    in verbs (*see* “augmented”)  
relative clauses, chapter 14  
    headless, §14.2.4, §15.2.1.1  
reversive, §9.1  
Roghtward H-Tone Shift (after third-person perfective positive), §3.7.3.3  
simultaneous subordinator, §15.2.1.2  
‘since ...’ (temporal), §15.2.1.6  
‘So-and-so’, §4.1.3  
sound symbolism, §3.4.8  
*spatial* (*see* “locative”)  
stance verbs,  
    stative forms, §10.4.1  
stative  
    derived stative verbs, §10.4  
    *underived stative quasi-verbs* (*see* “quasi-verbs”)  
Stranded-Tone Re-Linking, §3.7.4.4  
subject, §11.1.1  
    pseudo-subject, §11.1.1.4  
Suffixal Vowel-Spreading, §3.5.2.1  
syllables, §3.2.1  
syncope, §3.5.3.2

temporal  
    postposition, §8.1.3  
    adverbs, §8.4.6.1  
    past clitic, §10.5.1  
    adverbial clauses, §15.2  
‘together’, §15.1.8  
tonal {L}-{HL} complements, §17.4  
tone, §3.7  
    tone polarization (numerals), §3.7.2.3  
tone-dropping, §6.1.1  
‘too’, §19.1.3  
topic, §19.1.1  
valency  
    transitives, §11.1.2.1  
    ditransitives, §11.1.3.3  
    of causatives, §11.1.3.4  
verb  
    derivations, chapter 9  
    inflections, chapter 10  
    verbal participle in relatives, §14.4  
verbal noun, §4.2.2.1  
    compounds, §5.1.11  
    of chained verbs, §15.1.1.2  
    verbal noun complement, §17.3  
verb phrase, §11.1.4 (*see also “chaining”*)  
vowels, §3.4  
Vowel-Semivowel Assimilation, §3.5.7.1  
VV-Contraction, §3.5.6.2  
‘want’, §11.2.5.2  
    complements, §17.4.6  
WH interrogatives, §13.2.2  
‘with’ (*see “instrumental-comitative”*)  
**y**-Epenthesis, §3.5.4.6